

COMPLICATIONS OF REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Etiology - Signs and Symptoms - Treatment

COMPLICATIONS OF REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Etiology - Signs and Symptoms - Treatment

By

DANIEL C. MOORE, MD

Director, Department of Anesthesiology

Mason Clinic

Chief of Anesthesia

Virginia Mason Hospital

Seattle, Washington

BLACKWELL SCIENTIFIC
PUBLICATIONS, OXFORD

DEDICATION

*To our children Barbara, Nancy, Daniel and Susan, who have
enriched our lives with their antics, problems, happiness
and love*

CHARLES C THOMAS PUBLISHER
BANNERSTONE House
301 327 East Lawrence Avenue Springfield Illinois U S A

Published simultaneously in the United States of America by
CHARLES C THOMAS PUBLISHER 301-327 EAST LAWRENCE AVENUE
SPRINGFIELD ILLINOIS

Published simultaneously in Canada by THE RYER
SON PRESS 299 QUEEN STREET WEST TORONTO CANADA

This monograph is protected by copyright
No part of it may be reproduced in any manner
without written permission from the publisher

Copyright 1955 by CHARLES C THOMAS PUBLISHER

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 55 8868

"It is unfortunate, considering that enthusiasm moves the world, that so few enthusiasts can be trusted to speak the truth"

A J Balfour

Introduction

In 1952, Ralph Knight, then Professor of Anesthesiology at the University of Minnesota School of Medicine invited me to participate in a continuation course in anesthesiology for the general practitioner. One of my assigned subjects was titled "Complications of Regional Anesthesia and Their Treatment." Following the presentation Frederick H. Van Bergen who at the present time is Associate Professor and Director, Department of Anesthesiology, at that institution suggested that this material be expanded and set forth in a book.

Since that time the literature on the complications of regional block procedures has been reviewed and our own experiences with complications from these techniques analyzed. It was found that the complications of regional blocks are primarily due either to the untoward results of the normal pharmacological actions of the blocking solutions used or to trauma associated with the technique. They may be either catastrophic, i.e., occur in 1 to 30 minutes following regional block or take days or weeks to develop.

The untoward results of the normal pharmacologic actions of a drug usually result in the catastrophic type of complication which is reversible in most instances as the drug's action is dissipated provided that immediate and correct treatment is given. If rapid diagnosis and correct therapy are not instituted then the severe hypotension, oxygen want, unconsciousness and/or vomiting—signs and symptoms which reflect altered body physiology—result in irreparable tissue damage. Haldane emphasized this point "Anoxemia not only stops the machine but wrecks the machinery!" On the other hand trauma to the tissues usually produces slowly developing pathological changes which while they may result in serious sequelae, do not immediately threaten the patient's life. Obviously these slowly developing sequelae should be treated correctly but time alone will reveal the outcome. Every physician or dentist using a regional block technique is obligated to be fully aware of the inherent dangers of either type of complication. If he does not have the knowledge and facilities to institute effective treatment of these complications he should not employ the technique!

This book represents an attempt to present the complications of regional anesthesia to the profession in a concise, complete and explicit fashion which will be of practical use in everyday practice. An effort has been made to make each chapter in this book complete within itself so that the physician will not be burdened by having to read the whole book in order to review one complication. This necessitated some repetition which it is hoped will not be too distasteful to the majority of readers.

The material in this book is divided into three parts. Part I considers the complications of local infiltration and peripheral nerve block, Part II reviews the complications of spinal (subarachnoid) and epidural (peridural) block, and Part III discusses incidental complications.

Although this book is entirely devoted to the complications of regional block procedures, this should not be construed to mean that complications following regional nerve blocking occur frequently or that this type of anesthesia is more dangerous than other types.

Introduction

In 1952, Ralph Knight, then Professor of Anesthesiology at the University of Minnesota School of Medicine invited me to participate in a continuation course in anesthesiology for the general practitioner. One of my assigned subjects was titled "Complications of Regional Anesthesia and Their Treatment." Following the presentation Frederick H. Van Bergen, who at the present time is Associate Professor and Director, Department of Anesthesiology, at that institution suggested that this material be expanded and set forth in a book.

Since that time the literature on the complications of regional block procedures has been reviewed and our own experiences with complications from these techniques analyzed. It was found that the complications of regional blocks are primarily due either to the untoward results of the normal pharmacological actions of the blocking solutions used or to trauma associated with the technique. They may be either catastrophic, i.e. occur in 1 to 30 minutes following regional block, or take days or weeks to develop.

The untoward results of the normal pharmacologic actions of a drug usually result in the catastrophic type of complication which is reversible in most instances as the drug's action is dissipated provided that immediate and correct treatment is given. If rapid diagnosis and correct therapy are not instituted then the severe hypotension, oxygen want, unconsciousness and/or vomiting—signs and symptoms which reflect altered body physiology—result in irreparable tissue damage. Haldane emphasized this point "Anoxemia not only stops the machine but wrecks the machinery!" On the other hand trauma to the tissues usually produces slowly developing pathological changes which while they may result in serious sequelae do not immediately threaten the patient's life. Obviously these slowly developing sequelae should be treated correctly but time alone will reveal the outcome. *Every physician or dentist using a regional block technique is obligated to be fully aware of the inherent dangers of either type of complication. If he does not have the knowledge and facilities to institute effective treatment of these complications he should not employ the technique!*

This book represents an attempt to present the complications of regional anesthesia to the profession in a concise, complete and explicit fashion which will be of practical use in an everyday practice. An effort has been made to make each chapter in this book complete within itself so that the physician will not be burdened by having to read the whole book in order to review one complication. This necessitated some repetition which it is hoped will not be too distasteful to the majority of readers.

The material in this book is divided into three parts. Part I considers the complications of local infiltration and peripheral nerve block. Part II reviews the complications of spinal (subarachnoid) and epidural (peridural) block and Part III discusses incidental complications.

Although this book is entirely devoted to the complications of regional block procedures this should not be construed to mean that complications following regional nerve blocking occur frequently or that this type of anesthesia is more dangerous than other types.

Acknowledgments

THE AUTHOR wishes to express his deepest appreciation to

John J. Bonier, MD, anesthesiologist for reading the manuscript contributing to the material in the book and offering many excellent suggestions

John J. Owen MD, and Catherine K. Owen, MD, anesthesiologists for reading the manuscript and offering many valuable suggestions

I. Donald Bridenbaugh, MD, my associate at the Mason Clinic in Anesthesiology, for his many helpful suggestions and his worthy criticisms. The labor involved in preparing this work was time consuming and I am especially indebted to him for the relief from duties which his presence afforded

Knute Berger, MD, surgeon, medical depictor and consultant on preparation of manuscripts for reading and correcting the original manuscript

Helmut W. Bonheim, a most astute instructor of English at the University of Washington for his conscientious and invaluable help in correcting the final manuscript galley proofs and page proofs

Joy Polis, medical illustrator, whose excellent drawings have made this text more easily understandable

Martin Baker, photographer for his superb photography

Lyle M. Harrah, for her interest and complete cooperation in translating the French articles used as references

Jean Ashford, Acting Chief Librarian University of Washington Medical School for ordering foreign articles and preparing the references

Eunice J. Gilbertson and Phyllis J. Lindstrom, medical secretaries, for typing the rough and finished manuscript

George C. Buck, Instructor German Languages at the University of Washington for translating German articles

G. D. Searle and Company and Astra Pharmaceutical Products, Inc., for helping defray the cost of translations and the reproduction of the colored illustration

Charles C. Thomas, publisher and his staff for their cooperation attention to details general counsel and interest associated with the publication of this book

D C M

Contents

Introduction	ix
Acknowledgments	xi

PART I

Complications of Local Infiltration and Peripheral Nerve Block

Introduction to Part I	5
1 Systemic Reactions to High Blood Levels of Local Anesthetic Drugs	6
Etiology 9 Signs and Symptoms 16 Prophylaxis 19 Treatment 23 Comments 28	
2 Systemic Allergic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs	33
Etiology 33 Signs and Symptoms 31 Prophylaxis 31 Treatment 34 Comment 36	
3 Systemic Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs Used to Prolong the Effect of Local Anesthetic Drugs	37
Etiology 37 Signs and Symptoms 38 Prophylaxis 39 Treatment 40 Comment 41	
4 Primary Oxygen Want and Hypotension	42
Etiology 42 Signs and Symptoms 45 Prophylaxis and Treatment 47 Comment 47	
5 High and/or Total Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block Following Peripheral Nerve Block	48
Etiology 48 Signs and Symptoms 52 Prophylaxis 53 Treatment 53 Comment 53	
6 Pneumothorax	55
Etiology 55 Signs and Symptoms 58 Prophylaxis 62 Treatment 63 Comments 65	
7 Death and Cardiac Failure	69
Sudden Cardiac Failure 69 Etiology 71 Signs and Symptoms 73 Prophylaxis 73 Treatment 74 After Care of the Patient Resuscitated from Cardiac Arrest or Ventricular Fibrillation 80 Comment 81	
8 Pain	84
Etiology 84 Signs and Symptoms 85 Prophylaxis 85 Treatment 85	
9 Bleeding Following Puncture of Blood Vessels	87
Etiology 87 Signs and Symptoms 89 Prophylaxis 90 Treatment 91	
10 Local Toxic Reactions to Drugs Used in Regional Block	93
Etiology 93 Signs and Symptoms 102 Prophylaxis 105 Treatment 107	
11 Lesions of the Peripheral Nerves	112
Etiology 112 Signs and Symptoms 114 Prophylaxis 115 Treatment 116 Comment 117	
12 Complications Following the Use of Neurolytic Drugs	119
Overflow 119 Corneal Ulcers Keratitis of the Cornea and Ulcerations of the Skin Following Block of the Gasserian Ganglion or its Branches 121 Transverse Myelitis 122 Oil Embolism 122	

27	Unsatisfactory Anesthesia	247
28	Amnesia in Outpatients Following Regional Block Procedures	248
29	Retention of Urine	250
	Etiology 250 Signs and Symptoms 250 Prophylaxis 250 Treatment 251	
30	Atelectasis and Bronchopneumonia	253
	Etiology 253 Signs and Symptoms 253 Prophylaxis 253 Treatment 255	
31	Hiccough and Paralytic Ileus	256
	Appendix—Complications of Specific Regional Nerve Blocks	257
	Index	267

13	Puncture of Organs and Large Blood Vessels During Block Procedures	124
14	Dermatitis	127
	Etiology 127 Signs and Symptoms 125 Prophylaxis 129 Treatment 131	
	Comments 132	

PART II

Complications of Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block and Epidural (Peridural) Block

Introduction to Part II		137
15	Hypotension from Spinal or Epidural Block During the Induction of Anesthesia or During the Operative Period	138
	Etiology 138 Signs and Symptoms 143 Prophylaxis 144 Treatment 146	
	Comments 150	
16	Hypotension from Spinal and Epidural Block in the Immediate Postoperative Period	156
	Etiology 156 Signs and Symptoms 157 Prophylaxis 157 Treatment 158	
17	Oxygen Want Secondary to the Hypotension Following Spinal or Epidural Block	159
	Etiology 159 Signs and Symptoms 160 Prophylaxis 162 Treatment 162	
18	Nausea and Vomiting	165
	Etiology 165 Signs and Symptoms 166 Prophylaxis 166 Treatment 166	
	Comment 168	
19	High or Total Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block Following Spinal and Epidural Block	170
	Etiology 170 Signs and Symptoms 172 Prophylaxis 173 Treatment 174	
	Comment 175	
20	Headache	177
	Etiology of Headache from Hypotension of the Spinal Fluid 178 Signs and Symptoms of Headache from Hypotension of the Spinal Fluid 182 Prophylaxis of Headache from Hypotension of the Spinal Fluid 183 Treatment of Headache from Hypotension of the Spinal Fluid 190	
21	Backache	197
	Etiology 197 Signs and Symptoms 199 Prophylaxis 199 Treatment 200	
22	Meningitis and Meningeal Irritation	202
	Etiology 202 Signs and Symptoms 204 Prophylaxis 206 Treatment 209	
23	Lesions of the Spinal Cord Following Regional Block Procedures	212
	Etiology 213 Signs and Symptoms 217 Prophylaxis 219 Treatment 220	
	Comment 221	
24	Lesions of the Brain and/or the Intracranial Portion of the Cranial Nerves	226
	Etiology 226 Signs and Symptoms 229 Prophylaxis 230 Treatment 230	
	Comments 231	
25	Miscellaneous Complications from Paralysis of the Autonomic Nervous System	235
	Pulmonary Embolism 235 Acute Pulmonary Collapse 236 Perforation of the Bowel 237 Phlebothrombosis and Thrombophlebitis 238	

PART III

Incidental Complications

Introduction to Part III		241
26	Broken Needles or Catheters	242
	Etiology 242 Prophylaxis 242 Treatment 245 Comment 246	

COMPLICATIONS OF REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

Etiology - Signs and Symptoms - Treatment

PART I

COMPLICATIONS OF LOCAL INFILTRATION AND PERIPHERAL NERVE BLOCK

PART I

COMPLICATIONS OF LOCAL INFILTRATION AND PERIPHERAL NERVE BLOCK

Introduction to Part I

THE COMPLICATIONS considered in this part of the book are those which are primarily encountered following local infiltration and peripheral nerve block. Fortunately, these procedures if carefully executed seldom are followed by the serious complications—namely, systemic toxic reactions, an inadvertent total spinal block or a bilateral pneumothorax sequelae which may result in cardiac failure and death in 1 to 50 minutes. Because of their catastrophic nature these complications are considered first, although they may not occur as frequently as the less serious ones such as tissue swelling overflow onto nerves not intended to be blocked or bleeding into tissues.

It must be remembered that if the epidural (peridural) or subarachnoid spaces are entered while executing a peripheral nerve block all complications found in Part II may develop and that those complications which are incidental to regional block procedures and discussed in Part III may occur.

whether due to the local anesthetic agent or the vasoconstrictor drug should not be viewed lightly since they may herald the onset of a more serious situation progressing to convulsions, respiratory or cardiac failure, and death.

The seriousness of overlooking a systemic reaction from a local anesthetic drug or misjudging its magnitude can be vouchsafed for by the following reports. In 1924 and again in 1928 the reports of a committee of the American Medical Association which studied reactions from local anesthetic agents reviewed 57 deaths from various local anesthetic drugs.⁹⁻¹⁰ The greater number of these deaths followed topical applications. In 1951, Ireland et al.¹¹ after a survey of the largest otolaryngological clinics in the United States and Canada, reported 7 fatalities due to either cocaine hydrochloride or Pontocaine (tetracaine) hydrochloride in 39,278 instances of local anesthesia. Furstenberg¹² reported 3 fatalities in 30,000 tonsillectomies using cocaine hydrochloride and Williams¹³ 2 deaths in 6,378 nose-throat operations employing the same drug. Schindler¹⁴ found 3 fatalities from cocaine hydrochloride and tetracaine hydrochloride in a total of 22,351 patients undergoing gastroscopic examinations in 60 clinics in the United States, England and Australia. While these studies point out the potential hazards of local anesthetic agents they also show their relative safety.

Clarification and Definition of Terms.—As noted previously systemic toxic reactions to local anesthetic agents reflect either an *allergy* or a *high blood level* of the drug and some clarification and definition of terms is needed so that those used in this book are clearly understood (see Table II, page 8).

The word *allergy* is used by Dorland¹⁵ and Vaughan and Black¹⁶ as a general all inclusive term embracing anaphylaxis, idiosyncrasy, susceptibility, hypersensitivity, etc. It covers the whole field of antigen-antibody type reactions. It should be noted that while in most instances Vaughan and Black¹⁶ restrict the word anaphylaxis to experimental animal work they do feel it can be used in clinical allergy to denote shock and the term

"clinical anaphylactic shock" is so used in this book to differentiate the true allergic shock from the severe cardiovascular-respiratory collapse which occurs as a result of a high blood level (overdosage) of the drug. From this discussion as well as from the definitions in Table II, it is easy to see why these various terms (idiosyncrasy, etc.) have been applied by different authors to any systemic toxic reaction following the use of local anesthetic.

TABLE I

CLASSIFICATION OF SYSTEMIC TOXIC REACTIONS

(Modified from Sater et al.¹⁷ and Collins¹⁸)

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM EFFECTS

1 Stimulation of

- a Cerebral cortex → convulsions
- b Medulla

- (1) cardiovascular center → increased blood pressure and pulse
- (2) respiratory center → increased respiratory rate and/or variations in rhythm
- (3) vomiting center → nausea and/or vomiting

2 Depression of

- a Cerebral cortex → unconsciousness
- b Medulla

- (1) vasomotor → fall in blood pressure and rapid or absent pulse (syncope)
- (2) respiratory → variations in respirations and/or apnea

PERIPHERAL EFFECTS

1 Cardiovascular (syncope)

- a Heart → bradycardia, i.e. depression from Novocain etc. or tachycardia i.e. stimulation, from cocaine
- b Blood vessels → vasodilatation

ALLERGIC RESPONSES

- 1 Skin → dermatitis, etc.
- 2 Respiration } → depression (clinical anaphylactic shock)
- 3 Circulation }

MISCELLANEOUS REACTIONS

- 1 Psychogenic
- 2 To other drugs e.g. vasopressor, etc.

Systemic Reactions to High Blood Levels of Local Anesthetic Drugs

Two types of toxic reactions to drugs are usually recognized: local and systemic.¹ Local toxicity is defined as a reaction of the tissue at the site of the injection and is discussed in Chapter 10, page 93.

Systemic toxic reactions are defined as those reactions which occur when absorption of a given drug takes place. Systemic toxic reactions which occur following the injection of a local anesthetic drug are due to either a high blood level of the drug or a true allergy to it. In most instances—98% or more—a systemic reaction indicates an overdose, i.e., a high blood level of the drug for that particular individual—not a true allergy. Such toxic reactions are seen following the use of large quantities of local anesthetic drugs in the following techniques: local infiltration, peripheral nerve block, and occasionally, in epidural blocks. Systemic toxic reactions are seldom seen when small quantities of the local anesthetic drugs are used in methods such as spinal (subarachnoid) block.

Classification of Systemic Reactions—Systemic reactions have been classified both according to their clinical signs and symptoms and according to the basic pharmacological action of the drugs.^{1,7} Knoefel *et al.*⁷ have classified reactions according to prolonged course with primary respiratory failure⁸ and "short course with primary cardiac failure." Betlach⁶ and Adrian^{1,5} prefer to distinguish between "neurological" and "circulatory" reactions. Cullen³ prefers to classify them according to onset—"immediate" and "delayed." On the other hand, Sadove *et al.*² and Collins⁴

classify them according to central nervous system effects, peripheral effects, allergic responses, and miscellaneous reactions. A satisfactory working classification for the material contained in this chapter may be found in Table I, page 7.

Systemic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Agents vs. Systemic Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs—Solutions containing local anesthetic agents with or without vasoconstrictor drugs are potentially toxic systemically whether administered topically, orally, or by injection. When a local anesthetic agent and a vasoconstrictor are mixed together, it is not always immediately apparent which drug has caused the systemic reaction. If the reaction is characterized by convulsions, respiratory or cardiovascular collapse, singly or together, there can be little doubt that the anesthetic agent must be responsible. On the other hand, mild reactions of a transient nature such as excitement, talkativeness, or incoherent speech—the usual signs of cortical stimulation—reflect a systemic reaction either to the anesthetic drug, to the vasoconstrictor drug, or to both of these. It is the author's opinion, as well as Bonica's⁸, that the vasoconstrictor agent, not the local anesthetic agent, is responsible for the signs of cortical stimulation in most of these mild reactions (see Chapter 3, page 38). Nevertheless, a physician must never discredit the patient's history of a previous reaction to local anesthetic solutions without ascertaining the circumstances involved.

Such mild and mostly transient reactions

whether due to the local anesthetic agent or the vasoconstrictor drug should not be viewed lightly, since they may herald the onset of a more serious situation progressing to convulsions, respiratory or cardiac failure, and death.

The seriousness of overlooking a systemic reaction from a local anesthetic drug or misjudging its magnitude can be vouched for by the following reports. In 1924 and again in 1928 the reports of a committee of the American Medical Association which studied reactions from local anesthetic agents reviewed 57 deaths from various local anesthetic drugs.⁹⁻¹⁰ The greater number of these deaths followed topical applications. In 1951, Ireland *et al*¹¹ after a survey of the largest otolaryngological clinics in the United States and Canada, reported 7 fatalities due to either cocaine hydrochloride or Pontocaine (tetracaine) hydrochloride in 39,278 instances of local anesthesia. Furstenberg¹² reported 3 fatalities in 30,000 tonsillectomies using cocaine hydrochloride and Williams¹³ 2 deaths in 6,378 nose-throat operations employing the same drug. Schindler¹⁴ found 3 fatalities from cocaine hydrochloride and tetracaine hydrochloride in a total of 22,351 patients undergoing gastroscopic examinations in 60 clinics in the United States, England and Australia. While these studies point out the potential hazards of local anesthetic agents, they also show their relative safety.

Clarification and Definition of Terms.—As noted previously, systemic toxic reactions to local anesthetic agents reflect either an *allergy* or a *high blood level* of the drug and some clarification and definition of terms is needed so that those used in this book are clearly understood (see Table II, page 8).

The word *allergy* is used by Dorland¹⁵ and Vaughan and Black¹⁶ as a general all inclusive term embracing anaphylaxis, idiosyncrasy, susceptibility, hypersensitivity, etc. It covers the whole field of antigen antibody type reactions. It should be noted that while in most instances Vaughan and Black¹⁶ restrict the word anaphylaxis to experimental animal work they do feel it can be used in clinical allergy to denote shock and the term

"clinical anaphylactic shock" is so used in this book to differentiate the true allergic shock from the severe cardiovascular respiratory collapse which occurs as a result of a high blood level (overdosage) of the drug. From this discussion as well as from the definitions in Table II, it is easy to see why these various terms (idiosyncrasy, etc.) have been applied by different authors to any systemic toxic reaction following the use of local anesthetic

TABLE I

CLASSIFICATION OF SYSTEMIC TOXIC REACTIONS

(Modified from Seltzer *et al*¹⁷ and Colson¹⁸)

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM EFFECTS

- 1 Stimulation of
 - a Cerebral cortex → convulsions
 - b Medulla
 - (1) cardiovascular center → increased blood pressure and pulse
 - (2) respiratory center → increased respiratory rate and/or variations in rhythm
 - (3) vomiting center → nausea and/or vomiting
- 2 Depression of
 - a Cerebral cortex → unconsciousness
 - b Medulla
 - (1) vasomotor → fall in blood pressure and rapid or absent pulse (syncope)
 - (2) respiratory → variations in respirations and/or apnea

PERIPHERAL EFFECTS

- 1 Cardiovascular (syncope)
 - a Heart → bradycardia, i.e. depression from Novocain etc. or tachycardia i.e. stimulation from cocaine
 - b Blood vessels → vasodilatation

ALLERGIC RESPONSES

- 1 Skin → dermatitis, etc.
- 2 Respiration } → depression (clinical allergic shock)
- 3 Circulation }

MISCELLANEOUS REACTIONS

- 1 Psychogenic
- 2 To other drugs etc.

Systemic Reactions to High Blood Levels of Local Anesthetic Drugs

Two types of toxic reactions to drugs are usually recognized: local and systemic.¹ Local toxicity is defined as a reaction of the tissue at the site of the injection and is discussed in Chapter 10, page 93.

Systemic toxic reactions are defined as those reactions which occur when absorption of a given drug takes place. Systemic toxic reactions which occur following the injection of a local anesthetic drug are due to either a high blood level of the drug or a true allergy to it. In most instances—98% or more—a systemic reaction indicates an overdose, i.e., a high blood level of the drug for that particular individual—not a true allergy. Such toxic reactions are seen following the use of large quantities of local anesthetic drugs in the following techniques: local infiltration, peripheral nerve block, and occasionally in epidural blocks. Systemic toxic reactions are seldom seen when small quantities of the local anesthetic drugs are used in methods such as spinal (subarachnoid) block.

Classification of Systemic Reactions.—Systemic reactions have been classified both according to their clinical signs and symptoms and according to the basic pharmacological action of the drugs.^{1,7} Knoefel *et al.*⁷ have classified reactions according to “prolonged course with primary respiratory failure” and “short course with primary cardiac failure.” Betlach⁶ and Adami^{1,5} prefer to distinguish between “neurological” and “circulatory” reactions. Cullen² prefers to classify them according to onset: “immediate” and “delayed.” On the other hand, Sadove *et al.*³ and Collins⁴

classify them according to central nervous system effects, peripheral effects, allergic responses, and miscellaneous reactions. A satisfactory working classification for the material contained in this chapter may be found in Table I, page 7.

Systemic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Agents vs Systemic Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs.—Solutions containing local anesthetic agents with or without vasoconstrictor drugs are potentially toxic systemically whether administered topically, orally, or by injection. When a local anesthetic agent and a vasoconstrictor are mixed together, it is not always immediately apparent which drug has caused the systemic reaction. If the reaction is characterized by convulsions, respiratory or cardiovascular collapse, singly or together, there can be little doubt that the anesthetic agent must be responsible. On the other hand, mild reactions of a transient nature, such as excitement, talkativeness, or incoherent speech—the usual signs of cortical stimulation—reflect a systemic reaction either to the anesthetic drug, to the vasoconstrictor drug, or to both of these. It is the author's opinion, as well as Bonicas's⁸, that the vasoconstrictor agent, not the local anesthetic agent, is responsible for the signs of cortical stimulation in most of these mild reactions (see Chapter 3, page 38). Nevertheless, a physician must never discredit the patient's history of a previous reaction to local anesthetic solutions without ascertaining the circumstances involved.

Such mild and mostly transient reactions

month possible dilatation of the pupils, and even rarely atropin convulsions is hyperergic to atropin. He reacts in the normal way but overreacts. A person who after taking atropin reacts with urticaria or a vasomotor rhinitis reacts in an altered manner and is allergic.

"The person who sunburns extremely easily is hyperergic to the actinic rays. The one who following similar exposure reacts with urticaria is allergic. The person who reacts in a normal manner but more easily or more intensely is hyperergic. The term implies increased reactivity. To me this is the logical significance of the term hypersensitivity and it would be in this sense that I would prefer to use the latter but since it has been used so widely as a synonym for allergy or anaphylaxis it would seem more rational to avoid its use altogether substituting another equally appropriate term."

Other terms which should be clearly defined are *relative toxicity*, *relative potency*, and *anesthetic index*. The relative toxicity of a local anesthetic drug used for infiltration refers to the minimum lethal dose (MLD) of that drug in relationship to the minimum lethal dose of Novocain (procaine). The minimum lethal dose of Novocain is that weight of Novocain per kilogram of mouse which when injected subcutaneously into healthy white mice weighing 16 to 24 grams which have not been fed for 6 to 8 hours will kill two out of three mice.¹⁷ The experiment is carried out in a temperature of 65 to 80 degrees Fahrenheit. From tests conducted on over 300 mice the minimum lethal dose of Novocain has been determined as 800 ± 10 mg per kg.¹⁷ Therefore to determine the relative toxicity of an other local anesthetic agent its minimum lethal dose is compared to that of Novocain.

$$\frac{\text{MLD Novocain}}{\text{MLD New Drug}} = \text{RELATIVE TOXICITY}$$

For instance, a compound the minimum lethal dose of which is double that of Novocain would have a relative toxicity of 0.5 i.e. it would be half as toxic as Novocain.

By experiments the minimum potent dose (MPD) of a local anesthetic drug may be determined and compared with the minimum

potent dose of Novocain. The equation for calculation of the potency of the compound relative to Novocain is

$$\frac{\text{MPD Novocain}}{\text{MPD New Drug}} = \text{RELATIVE POTENCY}$$

When the relative potency is high and the relative toxicity is low, it follows that the margin of safety will be high. The comparison of the relative potency to the relative toxicity is called the *anesthetic index* of the drug and this, theoretically at least is the real measure of the safety of an anesthetic drug. It is calculated by the following equation

$$\frac{\text{Relative Potency}}{\text{Relative Toxicity}} = \text{ANESTHETIC INDEX}$$

ETIOLOGY

The material contained in this chapter from this point on is concerned only with systemic reactions to a high blood level of the local anesthetic drug which is by far the most common type of systemic toxic reaction to these drugs. A discussion of systemic allergic reactions to local anesthetic drugs is found in Chapter 2, page 33 while systemic reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs are reviewed in Chapter 3, page 37.

Whether or not a patient exhibits a high blood level type of reaction to a normal dose of a local anesthetic drug depends on the individual tolerance of the patient to the drug injected.^{2, 8, 16} The blood level which an agent attains is directly related to the rates of absorption, detoxification and elimination of the drug. These are influenced by the following factors:

Relative Toxicities of Local Anesthetic Drugs—Since Novocain (procaine) is chosen as a standard for infiltration and cocaine for topical application these drugs are assigned the number 1 (see Table III, page 10 and Table IV, page 10). Cocaine is used as the standard when considering topical anesthesia because Novocain is a very poor topical anesthetic unless used in large amounts and high concentrations.⁵

It can be seen from Tables III and IV that milligram for milligram one drug may have a higher relative toxicity than another but it

TABLE II

CLARIFICATION OF TERMS

- I Allergy is a condition of unusual or exaggerated specific susceptibility to a substance which is harmless in similar amounts for the majority of members of the same species. This term embraces all types of human hypersensitiveness.¹³
 - A *Anaphylaxis* is an unusual or exaggerated reaction of the organism to foreign protein or other substances. As now used the term is restricted to a condition of sensitization in laboratory animals produced by the injection of foreign matter such as horse serum.¹⁴
 - B *Idiosyncrasy* is individual and peculiar susceptibility to some drug, protein or other agent.¹⁵
 - C *Susceptibility* is the state of being readily affected or acted upon. The condition may be acquired, familial, individual, inherited, racial, specific, etc., the same as immunity.¹⁶
 - D *Hypersensitivity* is having the specific or general ability to react with characteristic symptoms to application or contact with certain substances (allergens) in amounts innocuous to normal individuals.¹⁷
- II High Blood Level
 - A *True overdosage* is a blood level of a local anesthetic drug which is greater than that which the majority of patients will tolerate.
 - B *Relative overdosage* is a blood level of a local anesthetic drug which is not excessive for the average patient but is excessive for a few patients (i.e. hyperergy) (see page 8).

agents. However, these terms should not be used loosely, and since the general term *allergy* includes all types of sensitivity, it has been selected as the term of choice for this book.

A true allergy to a local anesthetic agent is characterized by one or more of the following: dermatitis, angioneurotic edema, hypotension, wheals, itching, asthmatic breathing and "clinical anaphylactic shock." Only reactions which may occur following the use of small or infinitesimal amounts of local anesthetic drugs and which are characterized by these signs and symptoms can automatically be termed allergic. This does not mean that allergy cannot result from a large dosage

of a local anesthetic drug—clearly if small doses cause an allergic reaction in a particular patient, large doses would have the same result. Nevertheless, when a patient reacts to a large dosage (25 to 50 cc of 2% Novocain) the reaction cannot be called "allergic" unless he reacts similarly when tested with small doses (1 to 3 cc) of the same drug administered in the same concentration and fashion. *A systemic toxic reaction to a high blood level of a local anesthetic drug is not an allergy*, although conceivably both types of reaction could occur simultaneously.

The term *high blood level* in this book indicates an overdosage of the drug for a particular individual. This may be either true or relative. A *true high blood level* is caused by one or all of the following: (1) too large a dosage of the local anesthetic drug; (2) unusually rapid absorption of the drug; (3) unusually slow detoxification; or (4) slowed elimination. A *relative high blood level* is one in which the level may be high for a particular individual or a few individuals but not high for the greater majority of patients. These few patients may be blocked successfully with smaller amounts of the local anesthetic agent than usual without a reaction. It should also be noted that identical amounts of a local anesthetic solution administered in the same way to one individual at different times may at one time cause no reaction and at another time cause a reaction depending on the patient's physical status. For example, when a person is rested and in excellent physical condition, he may tolerate the average dose of a drug with no difficulty. However, should this patient be worried up all night and exhausted, he might not tolerate this dosage without an untoward reaction. Vaughan and Black¹⁸ term a relative high blood level "hyperergy" and state "This term has been proposed by the writer as indicating an increased sensitiveness or reaction capacity to a foreign substance, for example, drugs. There are persons who react much more strongly to the usual dose of atropin or belladonna than do the majority. The person who with the normal dose develops an excessively dry

From Table V, page 11, it appears that in concentrations of 0.5% or less, a larger dose of Xylocaine than Novocain can be used but in concentrations above 0.5% the lethal doses of Xylocaine are equal to or smaller than those of Novocain.

The figures for the toxicity, potency and anesthetic index for Cyclaine (hexyleine) another recently introduced local anesthetic agent, are not available at the present.

Total Weight of the Drug Injected—Through clinical experiments there has been determined the approximate maximum dose of a local anesthetic drug which may usually be injected into or applied to the mucous membranes of the healthy adult without causing an untoward reaction (see Table VI, page 12). Amounts of the drug in excess of these figures are to be considered an overdose because an untoward reaction will very probably occur. In most instances regional procedures may be executed effectively with amounts less than the maximum dosage provided the technique used is correct in all details. In the debilitated patients, the undernourished those at the extremes of age, and those whose physical status is affected by disease the total quantity of the drug injected must be reduced substantially from the maximum dosage if reactions are to be avoided. In these substandard risks the detoxification mechanisms of the body are often impaired. The liver is believed to be the site of detoxi-

fication of most local anesthetic agents but some drugs, like cocaine, are excreted by the kidney unchanged.^{8, 20}

Concentration of the Solution—The toxicity of a local anesthetic drug increases in geometrical not arithmetical progression with increase in concentration.^{21, 22} For example 120 cc of a 1% solution of Novocain will kill a rat in 20 minutes while only 10 cc of a 2% solution will produce the same lethal effect that is, with a weak solution a dose of 1.2 grams of Novocain is lethal while only 0.9 gram of Novocain kills when employed in concentrated form.⁴

This indicates the importance of using the weakest concentration which will give the required analgesia. In general large nerve trunks require higher concentrations of the agent than do skin infiltrations. Gasser and Erlanger²⁴ point out that sensory fibers are paralyzed by one tenth the strength of local anesthetic solutions needed to block motor fibers. However, irrespective of the concentration employed the recommended maximum dose of the agent should not be exceeded (see Table VI, page 12).

Vascularity of Area Injected—The vascularity of a region into which a solution is injected governs to a large extent the rapidity with which the agent is absorbed into the blood stream.^{25, 26} This may explain why the topical use of Pontocaine on the mucous membranes of the mouth, nose, pharynx, larynx

TABLE V

TOXICITY OF XYLOCAINE COMPARED WITH NOVOCAINE, PONTOCAINE, COCAINE
(From Gordan¹⁹)

Animal	Concentration	Lethal dose (LD 50) g/kg*			
		Xylocaine (Lidocaine)	Novocain (Procaine)	Pontocaine (Tetracaine)	Cocaine
Mouse (subcut)	0.5%	1.07	1.02	0.05-0.10	0.10-0.20
	1%	0.72	1.00		
	2%	0.59	0.90		
	4%	0.42	0.83		
	8%	0.33	0.63		
Rabbit (subcut)	2%	0.08-0.10	0.10-0.20		

*The lethal dose varies with the concentration and for low concentrations may vary at a higher rate.

also may produce effective anesthesia in greater dilutions, i.e. it has a greater relative potency therefore its anesthetic index would be greater, and in clinical use it might actually prove to be less toxic. While the anesthetic index of a drug as shown in Tables III and IV will help to evaluate it we must realize that figures determined in this manner may give only an approximate idea as to what might be expected of the use of that drug in man. As can be seen in Table III the toxicity of a drug was obtained by animal experiment while the potency was determined in humans. While the anesthetic index of Pontocaine determined in this fashion would indicate that the drug is slightly more toxic than Novocain when used for local infiltration and peripheral nerve block it has been the clinical experience both of the author and Bomer that in man this is not the case.^{22, 23} Species variations are difficult to assess and if a correct evaluation of a drug's anesthetic properties is to be made its action in man is the ultimate criterion.

Even if the same species is used the method of administering the drug must be the same and the experiment conducted under identical circumstances i.e. temperature etc. When toxicity and potency are not studied by the same method their comparison may be misleading e.g. if a drug is to be evaluated for topical analgesia both its toxicity and potency should be studied with topical applications. To investigate potency by topical application and toxicity by subcutaneous injection may lead to unreliable statistics. Moreover even if the anesthetic index of a drug determined in any fashion were reliable other properties of the drug e.g. duration of action might indicate its use in a particular case.

The specific figures for toxicity, potency and anesthetic index for Xylocaine (lido-caine), a basic amide and a relatively new local anesthetic drug which is being used widely both topically and parenterally were not available in the American literature and are not included in Tables III and IV. However, Lofgren¹⁸ states that (1) milligram for milligram the toxicity of Xylocaine is greater than that of Novocain (2) its efficiency is

greater than that of Novocain, and (3) the anesthetic index is greater than that of Novocain.

TABLE III

RELATIVE TOXICITIES AND POTENCIES OF LOCAL ANESTHETIC DRUGS COMMONLY USED FOR INFILTRATION AND BLOCK ANALGESIA
(From Collins⁴)

Drug	Toxicity Relative to Procaine (Subcutaneous Mouse)	Potency Relative to Procaine (Intradermal Man)	Anesthetic Index
Novocain (procaine)	1	1	1.0
Intracaine (diethoxin)	1	4.3	4.0
Metylcaine (piprocaine)	3	2.3	0.8
Cocaine	4	4	1.0
Pontocaine (tetracaine)	12	5-10	0.8
Nupercaine (dibucaine)	20	22-25	1.2

TABLE IV

RELATIVE TOXICITIES AND POTENCIES OF LOCAL ANESTHETIC DRUGS COMMONLY USED FOR TOPICAL ANESTHESIA
(From Collins⁴)

Drug	Toxicity Relative to Cocaine (Subcutaneous Mouse)	Potency Relative to Cocaine (Corneal Anesthesia)	Anesthetic Index (Potency—Toxicity)
Cocaine	1	1	1.0
Intracaine (diethoxin)	0.5	1	2.0
Pontocaine (tetracaine)	3-5	10.0	2.5
Nupercaine (dibucaine)	5	100.0	20.0

artery during a stellate ganglion or cervical block may result in convulsive seizures etc., while the same amount of the drug deposited intravascularly during a caudal injection may produce only dizziness.

Direct Action of the Local Anesthetic Agent on the Blood Vessels—Most anesthetic agents i.e. Novocain, Pontocaine, Xylocaine, Metacaine, Intracaine, and Nupercaine are vasodilators and this property increases the rate of their absorption.²¹ On the contrary cocaine is a strong vasoconstrictor and therefore absorbs slowly.

Use of Vasoconstrictor Agent—These agents by causing local constriction of the blood vessels—the so called “chemical tourniquet effect”—decrease the rate of absorption of drugs used in local anesthetic solutions thus lowering the incidence of reactions.^{20, 21, 22} The decrease in absorption also prolongs and potentiates the anesthesia in most instances.

Rate of Injection of the Solution—A rapid rate of injection of large volumes and/or high concentrations of local anesthetic solutions augments absorption resulting in higher blood levels. Often relatively large quantities

TABLE VI—Continued

DRUGS COMMONLY USED FOR REGIONAL ANALGESIA

Drugs	Uses and Dosage (Maximum)			
	Topical	Infiltration	Spinal	Epidural (Caudal or Lumbar area)
Intracaine B diethoxin USP	Nose pharynx trachea not com- monly used Urethra not com- monly used	200 cc of 0.5% = 1000 mg 100 cc of 1.0% = 1000 mg 50 cc of 2.0% = 1000 mg	3 cc of 5% = 150 mg Not commonly used	50 cc of 1% = 500 mg
Nupercaine B dibucaine NF Percaine B cinchocaine BP	Nose pharynx trachea not com- monly used Urethra 15 cc of 0.2% = 30 mg (High toxicity)	200 cc of 0.02% = 40 mg 80 cc of 0.05% = 40 mg 40 cc of 0.10% = 40 mg Not commonly used	20 cc of 0.5% or 4 cc of 0.25% = 10 mg	Not used
Cocaine USP	Nose pharynx trachea 4 cc of 5% = 200 mg Urethra 30 cc of 1% = 300 mg (High toxicity)	Not commonly used	Not commonly used	Not used
Cyclaine B hexylcaine NAR	Nose pharynx trachea 10 cc of 5% = 500 mg Urethra 10 cc of 5% = 500 mg or 15 cc of a 5% jelly = 750 mg	100 cc of 0.5% = 500 mg 50 cc of 1.0% = 500 mg 25 cc of 2.0% = 500 mg	4 cc of 1.25% = 50 mg NB Usually the solution contains 5% dextrose	50 cc of 1% = 500 mg

BP = British Pharmacopoeia USP = United States Pharmacopoeia NF = National Formulary (USA) NAR = New and Non-official Remedies (US & A) B = British and NF = British and NF = British Pharmacopoeia Commission Approved Name Code adopted from Geddes 1 C A Review of Local Anesthetics *Br J Anaesth* 25: 909-24 1953

and trachea—all areas of great vascularity—may result in a high percentage of systemic reactions while an injection of the same drug in local infiltration or nerve block procedures results in very few untoward reactions.^{20, 21}

During nerve block and local infiltrations the areas of high vascularity which must be injected with care are the scalp face neck corpus cavernosum and epidural space (particularly the sacral area). Also because the blood supply to inflamed areas is greatly increased it is best to avoid injecting them with local anesthetic agents not only because the possibility of a toxic reaction is enhanced but also because (1) the procedure might spread the infection (2) it is painful and

(3) the resulting anesthesia is often poor.

The topical application of a local anesthetic drug to an inflamed mucous membrane particularly the urethra, is singularly dangerous since systemic toxic reactions of a high blood level type will very probably ensue.

Inadvertent Intravenous Injections—When drugs are inadvertently injected into the blood stream a high blood level rapidly results. Arterial injections may be more dangerous than venous injections, but either is serious (see Figure 1 page 14). The region in which the intravascular injection is made may also determine to some extent the severity of a reaction. For example 5 to 7 cc of a local anesthetic solution injected into the vertebral

TABLE VI

DRUGS COMMONLY USED FOR REGIONAL ANALGESIA

Drugs	Uses and Dosage (Maximum)			
	Topical	Infiltration	Spinal	Epidural (Caudal or Lumbar Area)
Novocain B procaine USP BP ethocaine BS Kerocaine B Planocaine B Scurocaine B Neocaine B	Ineffective	200 cc of 0.5% = 1000 mg 100 cc of 1.0% = 1000 mg 50 cc of 2.0% = 1000 mg	4 cc of 5% = 200 mg	50 cc of 2% = 1000 mg
Pontocaine B tetracaine USP BS amethocaine BP Anethaine B Decicain B Pantocaine B Butethanol B	Nose pharynx trachea 4 cc of 2.0% or 8 cc of 1.0% = 80 mg Urethra not commonly used	1 mg per pound body weight—do not exceed 200 mg or a concentration of 0.25%	2 cc of 1% = 20 mg	50 cc of 0.15% = 75 mg
Xylocaine B lidocaine NAR lignocaine BPC Xylotox B	Nose pharynx trachea 10 cc of 2% = 200 mg Urethra 15 cc of 2% jelly = 300 mg	100 cc of 0.5% = 500 mg 50 cc of 1.0% = 500 mg 75 cc of 2.0% = 500 mg	Not established probably 4 cc of 4% = 160 mg	50 cc of 1.0% = 500 mg 25 cc of 1% = 500 mg
Metycaine B piperocaine USP BPL	Nose pharynx trachea not commonly used Urethra 30 cc of 2% = 600 mg	200 cc of 0.5% = 1000 mg 100 cc of 1.0% = 1000 mg 65 cc of 1.5% = 1000 mg	4 cc of 4% = 160 mg	50 cc of 1.5% = 750 mg

centrations and volume of an anesthetic solution are employed the addition of hyaluronidase (Diffusin, Wydase, Alidase, etc.), a spreading agent, increases the chances of a toxic reaction to the anesthetic, to the vasoconstrictor or to both.²⁷ Even though a vasoconstrictor drug is incorporated in the solution to retard absorption the spreading factor allows an increase of up to 40% above the normal anesthetized area (see Figure 2, page 15). Since greater surface permits more rapid absorption the blood level of the local anesthetic agent and vasopressor drug would be higher than normal in a shorter period of time when hyaluronidase has been added.

Patients Physical Status.—To a marked extent the physical status of a patient may determine his susceptibility to reactions from local anesthetic solutions. As mentioned

above, the liver is thought to detoxify many local anesthetic agents, therefore, perhaps the concentration and volume of these drugs should be reduced for patients with liver disease. Other physical factors which may increase the incidence of reactions are hyperpyrexia, debility, shock, starvation, lowered metabolism and the extremes of age.

Some diseases, on the other hand, may make the patient more resistant. Thyrotoxicosis with its associated high metabolic rate may result in a more rapid detoxification of the drug while arteriosclerosis may retard absorption of injected solutions.

The effect of vitamin C deficiency in increasing a patient's susceptibility to a local anesthetic drug has been pointed out by Richards.²⁸ He has shown that starvation and vitamin C deficiency increase the instances of



Figure 2 Effects of hyaluronidase on the diffusion of 2 cc of a Diodrast local anesthetic solution placed subcutaneously. *Left* Solution without hyaluronidase. *Right* Solution containing hyaluronidase.

of local anesthetic solutions may be administered to a patient, provided this is done over a long period of time or the intervals between injections are long enough to allow for detoxification. For example 2 to 3 grams of Novocain may be given intravenously by a

slow drip over a 12 or 24 hour period without causing a systemic reaction, but if more than 1 gram is used while performing a local infiltration or nerve block procedure, a systemic toxic reaction may easily result.

Spreading Agents.—Provided the usual con



Figure 1 Arteriogram from a test dose of 2 cc. of a Diodrast local anesthetic solution inadvertently deposited in the vertebral artery. This complication occurred during the execution of a stellate ganglion block although attempts to aspirate blood were unsuccessful. It is our custom in this block procedure to inject a 2 cc. test dose and wait 15 to 30 seconds before discharging another 8 to 10 cc. of the solution into the area of the stellate ganglion. The 2 cc. deposited in the artery made the patient complain immediately of dizziness of the feeling of "blacking out" and of nausea. Had the total dosage been injected, a severe systemic toxic reaction would probably have ensued.

centrations and volume of an anesthetic solution are employed, the addition of hyaluronidase (Diffusin, Wydase, Alidase, etc.), a spreading agent, increases the chances of a toxic reaction to the anesthetic, to the vasoconstrictor or to both²⁷. Even though a vasoconstrictor drug is incorporated in the solution to retard absorption the spreading factor allows an increase of up to 40% above the normal anesthetized area (see Figure 2, page 15). Since greater surface permits more rapid absorption, the blood level of the local anesthetic agent and vasoconstrictor drug would be higher than normal in a shorter period of time when hyaluronidase has been added.

Patients Physical Status—To a marked extent, the physical status of a patient may determine his susceptibility to reactions from local anesthetic solutions. As mentioned

above, the liver is thought to detoxify many local anesthetic agents, therefore, perhaps the concentration and volume of these drugs should be reduced for patients with liver disease. Other physical factors which may increase the incidence of reactions are hyperpyrexia, debility, shock, starvation, lowered metabolism and the extremes of age.

Some diseases on the other hand may make the patient more resistant. Thyrotoxicosis with its associated high metabolic rate may result in a more rapid detoxification of the drug while arteriosclerosis may retard absorption of injected solutions.

The effect of vitamin C deficiency in increasing a patient's susceptibility to a local anesthetic drug has been pointed out by Richards²⁸. He has shown that starvation and vitamin C deficiency increase the instances of



Figure 2 Effects of hyaluronidase on the diffusion of 2 cc of a Diodrast local anesthetic solution placed subcutaneously. *Left* Solution without hyaluronidase. *Right* Solution containing hyaluronidase.

of local anesthetic solutions may be administered to a patient, provided this is done over a long period of time or the intervals between injections are long enough to allow for detoxification. For example, 2 to 3 grams of Novocain may be given intravenously by a

slow drip over a 12 or 24 hour period without causing a systemic reaction but if more than 1 gram is used while performing a local infiltration or nerve block procedure a systemic toxic reaction may easily result.

Spreading Agents—Provided the usual con



Figure 1. Arteriogram from a test dose of 2 cc. of a Diodrast local anesthetic solution inadvertently deposited in the vertebral artery. This complication occurred during the execution of a stellate ganglion block although attempts to aspirate blood were unsuccessful. It is our custom in this block procedure to inject a 2 cc. test dose and wait 15 to 30 seconds before discharging another 8 to 10 cc. of the solution into the area of the stellate ganglion. The 2 cc. deposited in the artery made the patient complain immediately of dizziness, of the feeling of "blacking out" and of nausea. Had the total dosage been injected a severe systemic toxic reaction would probably have ensued.

alone by bag and mask. In this one case the convulsion was attributed to oxygen want. Ten of these 14 cases were heavily medicated and it is possible that the premedication prevented or altered the early signs of cerebral stimulation but we doubt this. A number of German investigators after extensive studies on Pontocaine in a variety of laboratory animals and man also found that respiration usually failed before the circulation did.^{4, 5}

In addition these investigators found that toxic doses in animals caused disturbances in cardiac rhythm which always disappeared without myocardial damage. Clinically we have also observed that cardiac irregularities may occur for in 10 of our patients receiving Pontocaine (50 cc of 0.25%) an irregular pulse appeared as the only sign of an untoward reaction to the drug. So far this has corrected itself within 10 minutes without treatment or with the administration of oxygen only. In only five cases in over 8 000 local infiltrations and nerve blocks using Pontocaine have we seen diffuse sweating, nausea, vomiting, palpitation, pallor, and tachycardia which so often follow the injection of Novocain. The fact that such changes are infrequent when Pontocaine is employed in local infiltration and nerve block procedures is further substantiated by a number of authors whose combined cases total over 31 000.^{29, 30, 31, 32}

Certain writers have emphasized that systemic toxic reactions to Cyclone seldom occur.³³ However at the Mason Clinic the injection of 30 cc of a 2% concentration of the drug into the crural canal of 100 obstetrical patients was followed by such reactions in three cases each of which progressed to convulsions. These reactions were evidently due to absorption of the drug not an inadvertent intravascular injection of the entire 30 cc because a level of anesthesia was established which ranged from the pubic bone to the xiphoid process.

Onset of Signs and Symptoms—While the signs and symptoms of a systemic reaction usually fit a typical pattern i.e. progress slowly from the signs of cortical stimulation (restlessness etc.) to the signs of severe de-

pression and death, depending on the rapidity of recognition and therapy, the following variations may occur: (1) all the signs and symptoms may occur simultaneously, (2) one sign may predominate the others being less obvious, and (3) the reaction may occur insidiously so that, if the patient is not being carefully observed death may occur without warning. In this book for clarity, the signs and symptoms reflected in each system i.e. nervous, circulatory, etc. will be considered separately, with full realization that they may occur either individually, progress slowly from one system to the other, or all occur at one time.

The onset of a systemic reaction to a high blood level of the local anesthetic drug may be immediate or delayed. The reaction may occur seconds to minutes after the start of the injection with all the signs and symptoms occurring at once. Such rapid onset is due to an inadvertent intravascular injection of the anesthetic solution or to rapid absorption of a large quantity of the agent in a very short period of time. There is no slow, progressive deterioration of the patient's condition, collapse is rapid and total. Death often results before treatment can be instituted. This type of reaction where *large quantities* of the drug are used should not be confused with the allergic "clinical anaphylactic shock" type occurring from relatively *infinitesimal amounts* of a drug.

On the other hand the reaction may occur 5 to 30 minutes after the injection. Fortunately, this is the more frequent of the two types of systemic reactions from a high blood level of the anesthetic drug. It is caused by a slow build up of a toxic blood level and it usually progresses in stages as listed below: the cortical signs first, then the signs of cardiovascular collapse.

Nervous System (Cortical) Signs and Symptoms—The early signs and symptoms of cortical stimulation are one or a combination of the following: restlessness, nervousness, apprehension, pugnaciousness, unreasonableness, loquacity, incoherent speech, headache, dizziness, blurred vision, metallic taste, roaring in

systemic reaction in animals. He believes that patients with poor physical status should receive an infusion of dextrose with ascorbic acid before an injection of a local anesthetic.

Environmental Temperature — The environmental temperature according to Collins,⁴ plays an important role in increasing the incidence of reaction. He states that high temperatures increase absorption and diffusion of injected drugs. This may be a significant point to remember when administering local anesthetic drugs during the summer in the tropics and to patients with a high fever. However, the experience of the author both in the army and in civilian practice would indicate that environmental temperature is not of great enough significance to warrant changing the dosages in Table VI, even in exceptionally warm climates.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Basically, the signs and symptoms of a systemic toxic reaction due to the high blood level of the local anesthetic drug whether administered parenterally, orally or topically are referable to the central nervous system and perhaps the cardiovascular system. They are first those of stimulation, i.e. restlessness, tremors and convulsions and secondly those of depression following overstimulation. Death is usually attributed to respiratory depression.^{3, 6} However, according to Beck and Mautz,³⁹ Burstein,⁴⁰ Burstein and Rovenstine,⁴¹ Craubard and Peterson,⁴² and Steinhäus,⁴³ local anesthetic drugs may cause depression of the heart when applied directly. Therefore, while death is usually attributed to respiratory depression, the direct action of these drugs upon the heart cannot be completely ignored as contributing to cardiac depression and collapse.

Goodman and Gilman²⁰ state "it is highly significant that all the local anesthetics produce the same type of symptoms when given in toxic amounts. However, it is interesting to note that while this may be true experimentally, it may not always hold true clinically. Toxic reactions in human beings

from Novocain, Intracaine, cocaine, Nupercaine, Xylocaine and Cyclaine in most instances follow the common pattern of a reaction, i.e. the onset is slow with the minor signs of cerebral stimulation slowly progressing to convulsions and peripheral vascular collapse. Nevertheless, sometimes reactions to Xylocaine may not be signalled by cerebral stimulation. When doses of 0.5 gm or more of Xylocaine are employed, central depression without any other signs or symptoms of a toxic reaction may be noted. These patients will not respond to questioning and appear to be in the first plane of surgical anesthesia. Their course during this is usually uneventful; blood pressure, pulse, and respirations remain unchanged and within one half to three fourths of an hour they regain consciousness. This type of reaction may also follow the use of large amounts of Novocain.⁴⁴

While reactions to Pontocaine may follow the above mentioned characteristic pattern, we have found that most of the reactions observed from this drug were atypical. At the Mason Clinic in over 8000 cases in which Pontocaine has been used for regional block other than subarachnoid (spinal) and epidural (peridural) block, 14 major reactions attributed to this drug have been observed. The reactions in these cases were not heralded by restlessness, nervousness, dizziness, sweating, pallor and tachycardia. As a matter of fact, there was no such warning. They occurred 5 to 10 minutes after the completion of the block and were characterized by drowsiness, shallow respiration, loss of consciousness and apnea. Blood pressure and pulse did not vary in these patients until apnea occurred and then they began to increase. When artificial respiration with oxygen by bag and mask was instituted, the blood pressure and pulse returned to normal and remained so. Operations were not cancelled in any of these cases but were delayed for 30 to 45 minutes until the patients regained consciousness and started to breathe voluntarily. Only one of these patients who was not being carefully observed started to convulse and this was corrected by the administration of oxygen.

no initial variation in the blood pressure and pulse from that determined prior to the injection. However, as respirations become shallow or cease the blood pressure rises and a tachycardia ensues. This resembles a reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug and may lead to confusion (see Chapter 3 page 38). Such a reaction reflects either oxygen want or initial stimulation of the cardiovascular center in the medulla by the local anesthetic agent. As the reaction progresses, the hypoxia becomes more severe, either from apnea or from the direct depressant effect of the local anesthetic agent on the cardiovascular center or the heart and blood vessels, the blood pressure begins to fall, and a bradycardia appears. If the hypotension is not corrected the patient usually becomes more cyanotic, he perspires profusely, the skin is clammy and there ensues syncope and peripheral vascular collapse with a weak and often unobtainable pulse. At least from a pharmacologic standpoint the hypotension which results from this type of reaction has usually been blamed on depression of the vital centers in the medulla as a result of previous overstimulation.^{3 20} However, in light of recently published articles the question arises as to whether this is the only responsible factor.^{1 4 33 39 43} These latter reports make it seem possible that hypotension which develops with the oxygen want might be at least partially caused by a direct action of the local anesthetic agent on the myocardium and/or the peripheral vessels. The authors of a number of these articles stress that with the exception of cocaine most local anesthetic agents given in adequate doses intravenously or applied in sufficient quantities directly on the heart may depress heart action and bring about bradycardia, decreased cardiac output and eventually cardiac standstill.^{39 42} Others have pointed out that local anesthetic drugs, cocaine being the exception are potent vasodilators and act directly on the peripheral vessels.^{1 4 33} Nevertheless until further experimentation proves otherwise it must be assumed that the oxygen want during a local systemic reaction is primary and that the cardiovascular collapse is

secondary to it, i.e. oxygen want is the cause of hypotension. If the oxygen want, hypotension and syncope are not corrected within two to ten minutes cardiac failure may result.

Cardiac Failure and/or Death.—When cardiac failure and/or death occur from a toxic dose of a local anesthetic drug it is presumably caused by depression of the respiratory center from previous overstimulation by the drug with cardiac failure as a secondary phenomenon.^{1 20} This theory is based on the fact that the brain, being the most sensitive organ of the body, would be the first to respond to small amounts of the local anesthetic agent in the blood.

However, when a large dose of the agent is injected inadvertently into the blood stream or rapid absorption from mucous membranes occurs, the possibility of cardiac failure with respiratory arrest as a secondary phenomenon cannot be completely overlooked. Under these circumstances, with the exception of an intra-arterial injection of the neck and head the first organ to be reached by a massive dose of the drug would be the heart. This could explain the fatalities which occur during or immediately following an administration particularly when convulsions etc. are absent. Further research would be helpful to ascertain what part direct cardiac depression from the local anesthetic plays in the picture of systemic toxic reactions, but until this is done oxygen want must be considered the cause of circulatory depression.

Irrespective of the cause cardiac failure does occasionally occur when regional anesthesia is used and must be diagnosed promptly and treated immediately if death is to be avoided. The physician must be able to recognize its signs and symptoms (see Chapter 7 page 73).

PROPHYLAXIS

While it is difficult to prevent allergic systemic reactions from infinitesimal amounts of local anesthetic agents those caused by a high blood level of these drugs from over dosage may usually be reduced to a minimum by observing the following prophylactic measures:

the ears nausea and vomiting choreiform movements, tremors and twitchings. The metallic taste, dizziness blurred vision and roaring in the ears have been the most prominent of these early cortical signs and symptoms in the author's experience. If the reaction does not progress past this initial stage these signs and symptoms are of little clinical importance. However, they do announce the fact that a toxic reaction exists and thereby warn that the reaction may progress to unconsciousness convulsions nausea and vomiting cardiovascular collapse and respiratory collapse. Convulsions indicate marked stimulation of the cortex with associated increased metabolism increased oxygen demand and since respirations usually cease during a convulsion hypoxia or anoxia results.

Nausea and/or vomiting may occur either early or late in the course of a systemic toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug and may not indicate the severity of the reaction. The vomiting center may be stimulated by hypoxia by the excessive blood level of the local anesthetic agent, or by a combination of both. The seriousness of this complication will, in most instances depend on the preoperative preparation and cooperation of the patient.

In the patient who has been prepared for an elective block procedure by restriction of the oral intake and/or by Levin tube suction of the stomach stimulation of the vomiting center usually presents less of a problem as the stomach contains little or nothing to expel. When intake has been restricted the volume regurgitated in most instances is small and the patient will be able to expel it before he takes an inspiration. However the patient whose oral intake has not been restricted and whose stomach has not been pumped presents a greater problem. The volume of stomach contents is usually large and more likely than not will contain particles of undigested food. If he vomits he may not be able to expel a large volume of vomitus from the oral cavity before he takes a breath. In that case he aspirates vomitus and the problem is twofold: the hydrochloric acid damages the

lungs and the food particles barricade the passage of air or oxygen into the trachea bronchi and/or alveoli. If the patient is conscious and will cooperate, there may be no difficulty in clearing the airway, but if he is uncooperative or unconscious much difficulty may be encountered (see Chapter 18 page 165).

Respiratory System Signs and Symptoms—In the very early stages of a reaction the occasional patient may show an increase in the rate and/or depth of respiration. In almost all cases irregular respiratory rate and excursion sighing dyspnea periods of apnea and finally complete respiratory arrest are encountered as a manifestation of depression of the respiratory center in the medulla presumably from its previous overstimulation.^{3 20} Nevertheless the part played by tissue hypoxia from the hypotension which invariably accompanies the late stages of this type of reaction cannot be ignored completely. Inasmuch as depressed respirations or apnea usually precede circulatory collapse the patient becomes cyanotic i.e., there is 5 gm or more of unreduced hemoglobin present per 100 cc of blood and since the circulation is reaching the periphery particularly the dermis, cyanosis is present. While the convulsions which attend this type of reaction are usually attributed to overstimulation of the cortex by the local anesthetic drug they may be the result of hypoxia or at least the hypoxia may have an additive effect.

On rare occasions the lungs may show signs of hypersecretion râles rhonchi, bronchospasms and/or an asthmatic type of respiration. Of course, a large dosage of the local anesthetic drug would lead us to suspect that these must be signs of a high blood level systemic reaction but the use of a large dosage does not preclude the possibility that an allergic reaction has taken place (see page 8). It is not clear at present whether these signs should be classified as an allergic systemic reaction or as a high blood level systemic reaction.

Cardiovascular System Signs and Symptoms—When a reaction starts there may be

no initial variation in the blood pressure and pulse from that determined prior to the injection. However, as respirations become shallow or cease the blood pressure rises and a tachycardia ensues. This resembles a reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug and may lead to confusion (see Chapter 3 page 38). Such a reaction reflects either oxygen want or initial stimulation of the cardiovascular center in the medulla by the local anesthetic agent. As the reaction progresses the hypoxia becomes more severe either from apnea or from the direct depressant effect of the local anesthetic agent on the cardiovascular center or the heart and blood vessels the blood pressure begins to fall and a bradycardia appears. If the hypotension is not corrected the patient usually becomes more cyanotic, he perspires profusely, the skin is clammy, and there ensues syncope and peripheral vascular collapse with a weak and often unobtainable pulse. At least from a pharmacologic standpoint the hypotension which results from this type of reaction has usually been blamed on depression of the vital centers in the medulla as a result of previous overstimulation.²⁻²⁰ However in light of recently published articles the question arises as to whether this is the only responsible factor.^{1-4, 31-33, 43} These latter reports make it seem possible that hypotension which develops with the oxygen want might be at least partially caused by a direct action of the local anesthetic agent on the myocardium and/or the peripheral vessels. The authors of a number of these articles stress that with the exception of cocaine most local anesthetic agents given in adequate doses intravenously or applied in sufficient quantities directly on the heart may depress heart action and bring about bradycardia, decreased cardiac output and eventually cardiac standstill.^{39, 42} Others have pointed out that local anesthetic drugs cocaine being the exception are potent vasodilators and act directly on the peripheral vessels.^{1-4, 33} Nevertheless until further experimentation proves otherwise it must be assumed that the oxygen want during a local systemic reaction is primary and that the cardiovascular collapse is

secondary to it i.e. oxygen want is the cause of hypotension. If the oxygen want hypotension and syncope are not corrected within two to ten minutes cardiac failure may result.

Cardiac Failure and/or Death.—When cardiac failure and/or death occur from a toxic dose of a local anesthetic drug it is presumably caused by depression of the respiratory center from previous overstimulation by the drug with cardiac failure as a secondary phenomenon.¹⁻²⁰ This theory is based on the fact that the brain being the most sensitive organ of the body would be the first to respond to small amounts of the local anesthetic agent in the blood.

However when a large dose of the agent is injected inadvertently into the blood stream or rapid absorption from mucous membranes occurs the possibility of cardiac failure with respiratory arrest as a secondary phenomenon cannot be completely overlooked. Under these circumstances with the exception of an intra-arterial injection of the neck and head the first organ to be reached by a massive dose of the drug would be the heart. This could explain the fatalities which occur during or immediately following an administration particularly when convulsions etc. are absent. Further research would be helpful to ascertain what part direct cardiac depression from the local anesthetic plays in the picture of systemic toxic reactions but until this is done oxygen want must be considered the cause of circulatory depression.

Irrespective of the cause cardiac failure does occasionally occur when regional anesthesia is used and must be diagnosed promptly and treated immediately if death is to be avoided. The physician must be able to recognize its signs and symptoms (see Chapter 7 page 73).

PROPHYLAXIS

While it is difficult to prevent allergic systemic reactions from infinitesimal amounts of local anesthetic agents those caused by a high blood level of these drugs from overdosage may usually be reduced to a minimum by observing the following prophylactic measures:

Avoid Overdosage of the Local Anesthetic Agent—This is best accomplished by (1) using local anesthetic drugs whose toxicities have been well established by clinical and experimental use (see Table VI page 12) (2) not exceeding their recommended toxic doses (3) using the weakest concentration and the least volume of the drug that will accomplish the desired degree of analgesia and (4) injecting carefully so as to not deposit a large amount of the drug intravenously.

Use of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—These drugs constrict the blood vessels thus slowing absorption. This so called "physiologic or chemical tourniquet" effect at the site of injection prevents rapid rises in the blood levels of drugs, prolongs the duration of anesthesia and produces a relatively "bloodless" field at the site of injection. Therefore when near maximum dosages of local anesthetic agents are to be employed, particularly if the area to be injected is highly vascular, it is usually

efficient to incorporate a vasoconstrictor drug in the anesthetic solution.

Choose the Local Anesthetic Agent Carefully—If the patient is known to have had a systemic toxic reaction to one specific local anesthetic and a general anesthetic is contraindicated, a local anesthetic drug of another chemical group may in most instances be used without producing a reaction. For example, *Pontocaine*, *Monocaine*, and *Novocain* are para amino benzoic acid esters; *cocaine* and *Metycaine* are benzoic acid esters; *Nupercaine* is a quinoline derivative and *Xylocaine* is a basic amide (see Table VII page 20). Therefore if a patient shows a reaction to a drug in one of the above four mentioned chemical groups, a drug in another chemical group may conceivably be injected without causing a reaction. For example if a reaction to *Novocain* occurs, *Xylocaine* in most instances may be used without an untoward reaction.

Use a Barbiturate Prior to Block—*Tatum*, *Atkinson*, and *Collins*⁶⁰ have thought that barbiturates not only arrest convulsions resulting from an overdose of local anesthetic agents in animals but noted that when they were given prophylactically the minimum lethal dose of the local anesthetic is increased four times. The higher forms of animals such as monkeys and man having a more highly developed central nervous system are thought to be more susceptible to the toxic actions of local anesthetic agents—*Tatum* and *Collins*⁶¹ showed that barbiturates afforded monkeys relatively more protection than the lower forms of the laboratory animals. They concluded that humans having an even greater development of the central nervous system than do monkeys would therefore be afforded even greater protection. A great number of publications on local anesthesia still stress the use of barbiturates prior to the injection of local anesthetic solution based on the work of *Tatum et al*^{4, 17, 20, 67, 77, 78}.

However the following are some practical reasons why barbiturates are not given for this supposedly "protective effect" prior to all nerve block analgesia at the Mason Clinic:

TABLE VII

CLASSIFICATION OF COMMONLY USED LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENTS ACCORDING TO CHEMICAL STRUCTURE

Chemical Group	Local Anesthetic Drug
Para amino benzoic acid esters	<i>Novocain</i> (procaine)
	<i>Pontocaine</i> (tetracaine)
	<i>Monocaine</i>
	<i>Benzocaine</i>
	<i>Butesin</i>
	<i>Butyn</i>
Benzoic acid esters	<i>cocaine</i> <i>Metycaine</i> (piperocaine)
Para-ethoxy benzoic acid esters	<i>Intracaine</i> (diethoxin)
Beta diethyl amino ethyl amide	<i>Nupercaine</i> (percaïne dibucaine)
<i>w</i> diethylaminoacet 2, 6-xylylidide hydrochloride	<i>Xylocaine</i> (li locaine)
1-cyclohexylamino-2-propyl benzoate hydrochloride	<i>Cyclaine</i> (hexylcaine)

First they often make the patient uncooperative and accurate acknowledgment of paresthesias often necessary for the success of some block procedures is difficult to elicit. Second they depress the cortex and thereby often obscure the cortical signs and symptoms of a toxic reaction. This is perfectly all right if the reaction does not progress past the point of cortical stimulation but if it does the barbiturates are then actually performing a disservice by hiding the "warning signals" of a reaction. Lastly they act synergistically to deepen the depression stage which follows overstimulation of the brain particularly the vital medullary centers.¹¹ Thereby they may make the treatment of a reaction more difficult.

Sadove *et al*¹² also feel that the usefulness of barbiturate prophylaxis has been greatly overrated and state "We would even go further and say that barbiturates being depressants of the central nervous system (and therefore so useful in counteracting the central nervous system stimulation type of reaction) will be decidedly harmful in those cases in which central nervous system depression follows on stimulation." Steinhaus¹³ writes "Our experience in cocaine intoxication produced by constant intravenous injections revealed the antagonism of the barbiturates to be somewhat less effective than previous workers [Tatum *et al*¹⁴]^{*} had reported." In addition according to Knoefel *et al*¹⁵ barbiturates do not remove the possibility of toxic reactions and are of little use in those reactions which are a result of rapid absorption. They claim "As most of the cases of procaine intoxication seem to be of the type in which prophylaxis is unavailing the practical value of administering barbiturates is small."

My associates and I use barbiturates only for their sedative effect on the patient and do not attempt to use doses large enough to prevent the signs of cortical stimulation. As a matter of fact when paresthesias are to be obtained prior to injecting the drug we give no preblock barbiturate.⁶ However after the

block has been completed if the patient wishes to be less aware of his surroundings a barbiturate usually $1\frac{1}{2}$ gr (90 mg) to 3 gr (150 mg) of Nembutal (pentobarbital) is given intravenously.

Swallowing of Drugs Used Topically on Pharynx, Larynx, and Trachea—Swallowing of a local anesthetic drug applied topically to the pharynx, larynx or trachea is to be discouraged according to Collins.⁴ He states that excess quantities should be spat out because rapid absorption of the agent from the mucosa of the esophagus and stomach may occur.⁴ Steinhaus¹³ does not agree with this and states "Absorption from the esophagus and stomach does not seem to be the likely cause of reactions [to local anesthetic drugs] as judged by our results which conclusion is substantiated by the comparatively low blood levels attained with oral administration of cocaine." Our own work with the oral use of Novocain (procaine) solutions and Xylocaine (lidocaine) Viscous would support the fact that the local anesthetic agents are not rapidly absorbed from the esophagus or stomach.

Use of Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)—Richards¹⁶ concluded from animal studies that starvation and vitamin C deficiencies increased the incidence of systemic toxic reactions to local anesthetic drugs in animals. Consequently he postulated that the debilitated and cachectic patient should receive infusions of dextrose and ascorbic acid prior to injection of a local drug. To date the author has never done this and has noted no greater incidence of reactions in this group of patients than in the young healthy vigorous adult probably because the dosage of the drug was individualized.

Skin Wheals, Lozenge, Patch and Mucous Membrane Tests—The efficacy of tests to ascertain beforehand whether or not a patient will exhibit a high blood level type of a systemic toxic reaction to that drug is debatable. Ryan and Shouldice⁶³ state "For the first 7 000 cases [regional blocks with procaine] an intradermal test with 2% procaine hydrochloride was carried out preoperatively. Usually there was no skin reaction, but in a number of

* Interpolation mine

Avoid Overdosage of the Local Anesthetic Agent—This is best accomplished by (1) using local anesthetic drugs whose toxicities have been well established by clinical and experimental use (see Table VI page 12) (2) not exceeding their recommended toxic doses (3) using the weakest concentration and the least volume of the drug that will accomplish the desired degree of analgesia and (4) injecting carefully so as to not deposit a large amount of the drug intravascularly.

Use of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—These drugs constrict the blood vessels thus slowing absorption. This so called physiologic or chemical tourniquet effect at the site of injection prevents rapid rises in the blood levels of drugs, prolongs the duration of anesthesia and produces a relatively bloodless field at the site of injection. Therefore when near maximum dosages of local anesthetic agents are to be employed particularly if the area to be injected is highly vascular it is usually

efficiency to incorporate a vasoconstrictor drug in the anesthetic solution.

Choose the Local Anesthetic Agent Carefully—If the patient is known to have had a systemic toxic reaction to one specific local anesthetic and a general anesthetic is contra-indicated a local anesthetic drug of another chemical group may in most instances be used without producing a reaction. For example Pontocaine, Monocaine and Novocain are para amino benzoic acid esters cocaine and Metacaine are benzoic acid esters Nupercaine is a quinoline derivative and Xylocaine is a basic amide (see Table VII page 20). Therefore if a patient shows a reaction to a drug in one of the above four mentioned chemical groups a drug in another chemical group may conceivably be injected without causing a reaction for example if a reaction to Novocain occurs Xylocaine in most instances may be used without an untoward reaction.

Use a Barbiturate Prior to Block—Tatum, Atkinson and Collins⁶⁰ have thought that barbiturates not only arrest convulsions resulting from an overdose of local anesthetic agents in animals but noted that when they were given prophylactically the minimum lethal dose of the local anesthetic is increased four times. The higher forms of animals such as monkeys and man having a more highly developed central nervous system are thought to be more susceptible to the toxic actions of local anesthetic agents—Tatum and Collins⁶¹ showed that barbiturates afforded monkeys relatively more protection than the lower forms of the laboratory animals. They concluded that humans having an even greater development of the central nervous system than do monkeys would therefore be afforded even greater protection. A great number of publications on local anesthesia still stress the use of barbiturates prior to the injection of local anesthetic solution based on the work of Tatum *et al*^{4 27 36 67 77 78}.

However the following are some practical reasons why barbiturates are not given for this supposedly protective effect prior to all nerve block analgesia at the Mason Clinic

TABLE VII

CLASSIFICATION OF COMMONLY USED LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENTS ACCORDING TO CHEMICAL STRUCTURE

Chemical Group	Local Anesthetic Drug
Para amino-benzoic acid esters	Novocain (procaine)
	Intocaine (tetracaine)
	Monocaine
	Benzocaine
	Butesin Butyn
Benzoic acid esters	cocaine Metacaine (piperocaine)
Para-ethoxy benzoic acid esters	Intracaine (diethovain)
Beta diethyl amino ethyl amide	Nupercaine (percaine dibucaine)
w diethylaminoacet ⁶ 6-ylidide hydrochloride	Xylocaine (lidocaine)
1-cyclohexylamino-2-propyl benzoate hydrochloride	Cyclaine (hexylcaine)

TREATMENT

The signs and symptoms of an overdose of a vasoconstrictor drug may resemble the initial stage i.e. stimulation stage of a toxic systemic reaction to a local anesthetic agent (see Chapter 3 page 35). However when the reaction is caused by the vasoconstrictor drug the blood pressure and pulse rate are increased and remain elevated but when the reaction is caused by the local anesthetic agent hypotension may rapidly follow the initial rise in blood pressure and pulse. Therefore frequent checks of the blood pressure and pulse will usually reveal the cause of the reaction. Haphazard routine treatment of all reactions is to be condemned and may harm rather than help the patient.

Active treatment of systemic toxic reactions from a high blood level of a drug is aimed at (1) stopping the signs and symptoms of

overstimulation of the central nervous system (2) supplying oxygen to combat tissue hypoxia which is a result of the increased cell metabolism caused by overstimulation, (3) correcting the central depression of the cortex and vital medullary centers which follows overstimulation, (4) reversing the peripheral cardiovascular collapse and (5) re-establishing circulation by direct manual systole in cases of cardiac arrest (standstill) or fibrillation (see Table VIII page 24 and Table IX page 24).

As noted previously, the onset may be immediate or delayed. In any case the treatment is the same and rapid institution of therapy is essential if life is to be salvaged. This is singularly true in the case of immediate onset as well as in those rare cases of "clinical anaphylactic shock" from a true allergy to be discussed in Chapter 2 page 35.

When a reaction begins the physician too

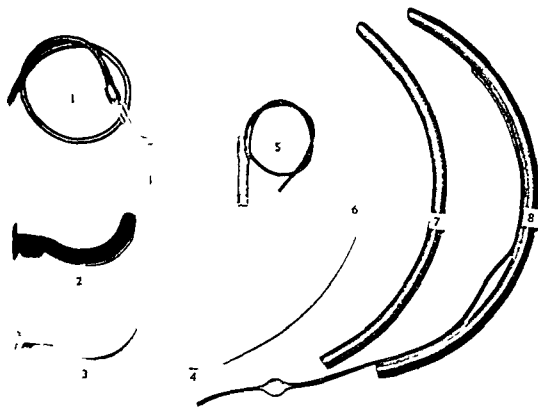


Figure 3 (1) Suction catheter with Y adapter so that intermittent suction may be applied (constant suction may damage the mucosa of the nose, pharynx and trachea) (2) Guedel oral airway (3) Berman plastic airway (4) Sanders inflatable cuff for an endotracheal tube (5) Guedel cuff for endotracheal tube (6) plastic endotracheal tube (7) rubber endotracheal tube (8) rubber endotracheal tube with inflatable cuff attached

cases an area of reaction up to two inches in diameter developed. Despite this degree of skin reaction the operations were carried out with procaine as the local anesthetic. In no case was there any suggestion of an allergic or anaphylactic reaction or any increased tendency to the early type twitching reaction. None of the eleven patients in our series who had a convulsive type of reaction had a positive skin reaction. In fact in each of these cases there was no reaction to the intradermal injection of procaine hydrochloride. Because of this lack of relationship between the intradermal reaction to procaine hydrochloride and the patient's general reaction to it these intradermal tests have been discontinued as a routine procedure. Sidove³ also feels that skin tests are of little use.

The administration of lozenges containing the local anesthetic agent as a means of determining whether or not a patient will have a systemic reaction to the topical application of that agent has not proven to be satisfactory. In one case reported recently,⁵ death followed the topical application of Pontocaine although no reaction occurred following the use of a lozenge containing Pontocaine hydrochloride. The writer attributed the death to an allergy ("sensitivity") to the drug. The designation of this death as due to an allergic reaction may be questioned; the letter makes no mention as to the amount of Pontocaine contained in the lozenge, the concentration of the Pontocaine applied topically, or the exact amount of Pontocaine used. It appears that the amount of Pontocaine sprayed into the pharynx was estimated rather than accurately measured—the author merely stated that 0.5 to 1 cc. was applied. Is it not likely that the reaction was of a high blood level type rather than an allergic one?

We have concluded from the foregoing as well as from our own experience at the Mason Clinic that tests to ascertain whether or not a patient will have a high blood level type of systemic toxic reaction or an allergic reaction to a local anesthetic agent prior to infiltration are impractical. First, they are time consum-

ing and second they are not conclusive.^{7, 10} On the other hand, Adrian¹¹ in closing the discussion of a paper states: "In answering Dr. Woodson's question regarding the use of tests, some pharmacologists feel that the intradermal test is worthless. I feel if one encounters a patient with a positive test, it is well to avoid the use of the drug in him."

Patch tests are of value in establishing whether or not a patient will show a skin allergy (contact dermatitis) to a local anesthetic agent (see Chapter 14, page 131). Nevertheless, at the Mason Clinic the results of patch tests employed prior to the parenteral use of local anesthetic agents have not proven their worth in determining which patients will have a systemic toxic reaction. However, Moore¹² states: "I believe that the markedly allergic individual at least should have a patch test before he is referred for bronchoscopy. Even though the patch test is not 100% reliable as Thomas and Fenton have pointed out, it is an additional safeguard and will pick up some of these cases [reactions to anesthetic agents applied topically to the mucous membrane] before the anesthetic is administered." It should be emphasized here that systemic reactions to local anesthetic drugs applied to the mucous membranes of the nose, mouth, pharynx, larynx, and trachea are not in the greater number of instances an allergic type of systemic reaction but due to rapid absorption of highly concentrated solutions and are a high blood level type of reaction.

Avoid Spreading Agents—Spreading agents such as hyaluronidase should not be used unless specifically indicated. When large volumes of a local anesthetic solution are to be injected and/or they are to be placed in highly vascular areas, hyaluronidase is usually contraindicated.

Elocaine and Local Anesthetic Drugs in Oil—A high blood level type of reaction to the local anesthetic drug in these mixtures may result when large quantities are employed.

Treatment of systemic toxic reactions depends on the signs and symptoms exhibited and these should be treated as they occur.

Treatment of Cortical Signs and Symptoms—When the signs and symptoms of stimulation of the cortex i.e. anxiety, disorientation, incoherent speech, etc. appear oxygen by bag and mask should be immediately administered and intravenous fluids started. These should be the first steps in the treatment of any systemic reaction to a local anesthetic agent with or without a vasoconstrictor agent. It seems reasonable to assume that when the cortex and medulla are stimulated the metabolic rate of their cells is greatly increased

and therefore the oxygen demand is increased many fold. If the oxygen requirement of these cells is not met it follows that hypoxia of the cells with a probable increase in CO_2 concentrations ensues and this in itself may result in convulsions, cardiovascular collapse and death. This premise has been experimentally substantiated by two separate investigations.^{11,12} Tunker and Thronsdon¹¹ have shown in cats that when artificial respiration is maintained during the intravenous injection of Novocain the animal will tolerate two to ten times the amount of the drug which normally causes death. They emphasize that while the respiratory center is tem-

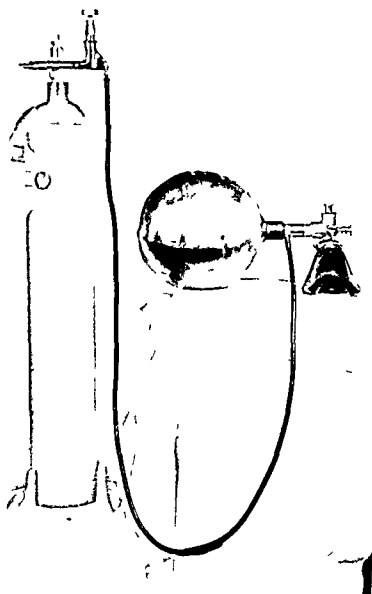


Figure 4. Minimal equipment for oxygen therapy i.e. simple reducing valve, bag and mask.

commonly gives an intravenous barbiturate and stimulating drugs irrespective of the signs and symptoms. Overtreatment is to be avoided and analeptic drugs such as caffeine

TABLE VIII

SUMMARY OF ACTIVE TREATMENT OF SYSTEMIC TOXIC REACTIONS FROM A HIGH BLOOD LEVEL OF A LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENT

While the following measures apply specifically to a toxic reaction from a high blood level of a local anesthetic agent they are general principles of resuscitation and are applicable to any reaction which may progress to shock

- I **Be Sure the Airway is Clear**—If the patient becomes unconscious establish a clear airway with an *oropharyngeal airway* or preferably an *endotracheal tube* (Figure 3 page 23). If a patient vomits the vomitus must be cleaned from the pharynx. If aspiration occurs *tracheal suction* through an endotracheal tube or preferably by *bronchoscopy* should be performed. When a bronchoscope is used it should have a side arm so that oxygen may be insufflated into the lungs while the bronchoscopy is being done.
- II **Administer Oxygen**—Oxygen administration should be performed with a *bag and mask* apparatus (Figure 4 page 25). The apparatus should be set up so that positive pressure may be used if it should become necessary to give artificial respiration to an apneic patient.
- III **Start Intravenous Fluids**—This is an essential part of the initial treatment of a reaction and it should be done when the first signs of a reaction occur because *it assists the physician of a means of intravenous administration of drugs even if the reaction progresses to cardiovascular collapse*.
- IV **Stop Convulsions**—This may be accomplished by intravenous injections of small amounts of a short acting barbiturate at one half to one minute intervals. The author prefers sodium Pentothal in 50 mg doses. *DO NOT GIVE A BARBITURATE UNLESS CONVULSIONS OCCUR AND ARE PERSISTENT. IT MERELY ADDS TO THE POST STIMULATION DEPRESSION.*
- V **Raise the Blood Pressure**—When peripheral vascular collapse starts immediate steps to raise the blood pressure to approximately the preoperative level must be taken—use vasoconstrictor.
- VI **Institute Manual Systole**—If cardiac arrest or fibrillation occurs *manual systole* (cardiac massage) must be considered and rapidly instituted.

sodium benzoate Coramine Metrazol picrotoxin etc are not to be used as they merely accentuate the overstimulation and add to the depression of medullary centers.⁶³ Likewise the indiscriminate use of barbiturates may be equally disastrous because they may deepen the depression which follows overstimulation. Barbiturates should be used only in those cases in which convulsions are not controlled by the administration of oxygen and then only short acting ones should be given in small doses sufficient to stop the convulsion without producing apnea.

TABLE IX

EQUIPMENT NECESSARY FOR THE IMMEDIATE TREATMENT OF THE COMPLICATIONS OF REGIONAL BLOCKS

Oxygen Apparatus—This may consist of nothing more than a bag and mask with a simple reducing needle valve for the oxygen tank, or it may be an anesthetic machine (Figure 4 page 25).

Suction Apparatus—If vomiting or excessive secretions occur it is important to clear the airway. Any type of adequate suction is satisfactory.

Airways—Oral airways and endotracheal tubes should be available (Figure 3 page 23).

Laryngoscope and Bronchoscope—Any type of a Jackson or Macintosh laryngoscope will suffice if the doctor can use it effectively. Laryngoscopy or bronchoscopy and intubation are often necessary to clear aspirated material from the tracheobronchial tree and to establish an unobstructed airway (Figure 5 page 26).

Intravenous Apparatus—Intravenous fluids for supportive therapy should be readily available. Syringes to administer vasoconstrictor drugs and barbiturates should be on hand.

Instruments for Thoracotomy—Instruments necessary to perform a thoracotomy including a rib retractor should always be sterile and ready for immediate use in case cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation should occur.

Cardiac Defibrillator—If the heart is fibrillating it must be brought to arrest before normal rhythm can be re-established.

Drugs—The following drugs should be readily available: vasoconstrictor drugs and the barbiturates for treating hypotension and convulsions respectively Benadryl for treating allergic reactions and calcium chloride, potassium chloride and Pronestyl for treating cardiac failure.

Treatment of systemic toxic reactions depends on the signs and symptoms exhibited and these should be treated as they occur.

Treatment of Cortical Signs and Symptoms—When the signs and symptoms of stimulation of the cortex (i.e., incoherent speech, etc.) appear, oxygen by bag and mask should be immediately administered and intravenous fluids started. These should be the first steps in the treatment of any systemic reaction to a local anesthetic agent with or without a vasoconstrictor agent. It seems reasonable to assume that when the cortex and medulla are stimulated, the metabolic rate of their cells is greatly increased

and therefore the oxygen demand is increased many fold. If the oxygen requirement of these cells is not met, it follows that hypoxia of the cells with a probable increase in CO_2 concentrations ensues, and this in itself may result in convulsions, cardiovascular collapse and death. This premise has been experimentally substantiated by two separate investigations.^{11,12} Hunter and Thronsdon¹¹ have shown in cats that when artificial respiration is maintained during the intravenous injection of Novocain the animal will tolerate two to ten times the amount of the drug which normally causes death. They emphasize that while the respiratory center is tem-

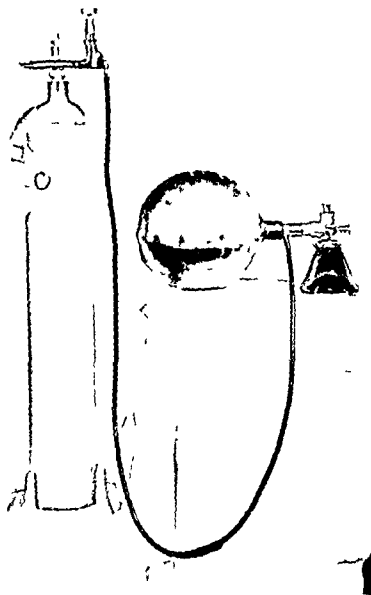


Figure 4 Minimal equipment for oxygen therapy i.e., simple reducing valve, bag and mask.

commonly gives an intravenous barbiturate and stimulating drugs irrespective of the signs and symptoms. Overtreatment is to be avoided and analeptic drugs such as caffeine

TABLE VIII

SUMMARY OF ACTIVE TREATMENT OF SYSTEMIC TOXIC REACTIONS FROM A HIGH BLOOD LEVEL OF LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENT

While the following measures apply specifically to a toxic reaction from a high blood level of a local anesthetic agent they are general principles of resuscitation and are applicable to any reaction which may progress to shock

- I **Be Sure the Airway is Clear**—If the patient becomes unconscious establish a clear airway with an oralpharyngeal airway or preferably an *endotracheal* tube (Figure 3 page 23). If a patient vomits the vomitus must be cleaned from the pharynx. If respiration occurs *tracheal suction* through an endotracheal tube or preferably by *bronchoscopy* should be performed. When a bronchoscope is used it should have a sidearm so that oxygen may be insufflated into the lungs while the bronchoscopy is being done.
- II **Administer Oxygen**—Oxygen administration should be performed with a *bag and mask* apparatus (Figure 4 page 25). The apparatus should be set up so that positive pressure may be used if it should become necessary to give artificial respiration to an apneic patient.
- III **Start Intravenous Fluids**—This is an essential part of the initial treatment of a reaction and it should be done when the first signs of a reaction occur because *it assures the physician of a means of intravenous administration of drugs even if the reaction progresses to cardiovascular collapse*.
- IV **Stop Convulsions**—This may be accomplished by intravenous injections of small amounts of a short acting barbiturate at one half to one minute interval. The author prefers sodium Pentothal in 50 mg doses. **DO NOT GIVE A BARBITURATE UNLESS CONVULSIONS OCCUR AND ARE PERSISTENT. IT MERELY ADDS TO THE POST STIMULATION DEPRESSION.**
- V **Raise the Blood Pressure**—When peripheral vascular collapse starts immediate steps to raise the blood pressure to approximately the preoperative level must be taken—use vasoconstrictor.
- VI **Institute Manual Systole**—If cardiac arrest or fibrillation occurs, manual systole (cardiac massage) must be considered and rapidly instituted.

sodium benzoate, Coramine, Metrazol, picrotoxin etc., are not to be used, as they merely accentuate the overstimulation and add to the depression of medullary centers.⁶⁵ Likewise the indiscriminate use of barbiturates may be equally disastrous because they may deepen the depression which follows overstimulation. Barbiturates should be used only in those cases in which convulsions are not controlled by the administration of oxygen and then only short acting ones should be given in small doses sufficient to stop the convulsion without producing apnea.

TABLE IX

EQUIPMENT NECESSARY FOR THE IMMEDIATE TREATMENT OF THE COMPLICATIONS OF REGIONAL BLOCKS

Oxygen Apparatus—This may consist of nothing more than a bag and mask with a simple reducing needle valve for the oxygen tank or it may be an anesthetic machine (Figure 4 page 25).

Suction Apparatus—If vomiting or excessive secretions occur it is important to clear the airway. Any type of adequate suction is satisfactory.

Airways—Oral airways and endotracheal tubes should be available (Figure 3, page 23).

Laryngoscope and Bronchoscope—Any type of a Jackson or Macintosh laryngoscope will suffice if the doctor can use it effectively. Laryngoscopy or bronchoscopy and intubation are often necessary to clear aspirated material from the tracheobronchial tree and to establish an unobstructed airway (Figure 5 page 26).

Intravenous Apparatus—Intravenous fluids for supportive therapy should be readily available. Syringes to administer vasoconstrictor drugs and barbiturates should be on hand.

Instruments for Thoracotomy—Instruments necessary to perform a thoracotomy including a rib retractor should always be sterile and ready for immediate use in case cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation should occur.

Cardiac Defibrillator—If the heart is fibrillating it must be brought to arrest before normal rhythm can be re-established.

Drugs—The following drugs should be readily available: vasoconstrictor drugs and the barbiturates for treating hypotension and convulsions respectively; Benadryl for treating allergic reactions and calcium chloride, potassium chloride and Pronestyl for treating cardiac failure.

able to the pulmonary circulation by artificial respiration. It must be remembered that respirations per se are not necessary to life except as a means to supply oxygen to the alveoli of the lungs so that it may be absorbed by the pulmonary circulation. In most instances as pointed out previously, respiratory depression precedes circulatory collapse. Cardiovascular collapse will not usually occur if when respirations become inadequate to supply sufficient oxygen to maintain normal physiological function of the body, oxygen is supplied by artificial means until the local anesthetic agent's action on the respiratory center is dissipated and spontaneous respirations return.

It has been the experience at the Mason Clinic, that, in the greater number of cases oxygen alone has avoided convulsions or corrected them without the use of barbiturates (see page 16). However, if the patient has more than one seizure, small doses (50 mg.) of a short acting barbiturate, usually sodium Pentothal (thiopental) are given at one half minute intervals until the convulsions are controlled. Larger doses of the short acting barbiturates given rapidly may stop the convulsions sooner but they also add to the depression of the medullary centers resulting in prolonged apnea.

Treatment of Respiratory Signs and Symptoms—The early sign of stimulation of the respiratory center of the medulla by local anesthetic agents is usually only increased respiration—often very transient, seldom noted and requiring no treatment. On the other hand depression of the respiratory center from overstimulation by these drugs results in respiratory failure. Respiratory failure evidenced by alteration of respiratory rhythm and rate should be treated immediately by administration of oxygen by bag and mask. If the patient should vomit the airway must be cleared of vomitus prior to giving oxygen by bag and mask. If apnea occurs then artificial respiration must be instituted. Here again although the etiology differs the treatment of respiratory depression from a systemic toxic reaction to an overdosage of a local anesthetic agent is the same as that

following oxygen want from spinal or epidural block (see Chapter 17, page 162 for specific therapy).

Let us emphasize that drugs which normally stimulate the respiratory center such as Coramine, Metrazol or picrotoxin are contraindicated since the respiratory depression is due to previous overstimulation from the anesthetic drug. Under these circumstances such drugs would only add to the depression of the respiratory center. Likewise the routine use of a barbiturate whenever it appears that a toxic systemic reaction has occurred is to be condemned since the depressing action of the barbiturates on the central nervous system would only further depress the respiratory center (see Chapter 5, Case 2 of Adman, page 51).

The author has seen respiratory failure occur a number of times as the *only* complication of a high blood level of a local anesthetic drug (namely Pontocaine) and in these cases artificial respiration using 100% oxygen was the only treatment necessary. Thus since it is not safe to assume that cardiovascular collapse automatically accompanies, precedes or follows respiratory failure, the blood pressure and pulse should be checked before aiming treatment at the cardiovascular system rather than proceeding on the basis of assumption only.

Treatment of Cardiovascular Signs and Symptoms—The early signs and symptoms of cardiovascular involvement are hypertension, increase in pulse rate and occasionally cardiac irregularities. They are usually transient reflecting a stimulation of the cardiovascular center in the medulla. No special treatment is required other than oxygen therapy and the starting of intravenous fluids.

The signs and symptoms of depression of the cardiovascular center in the medulla and/or the myocardium per se may follow those of stimulation or they may appear as the only signs of a reaction to a local anesthetic drug. The treatment of these signs and symptoms of the depression stage is aimed at the hypotension, the depressed myocardium and cardiac failure if it occurs. As with cor-

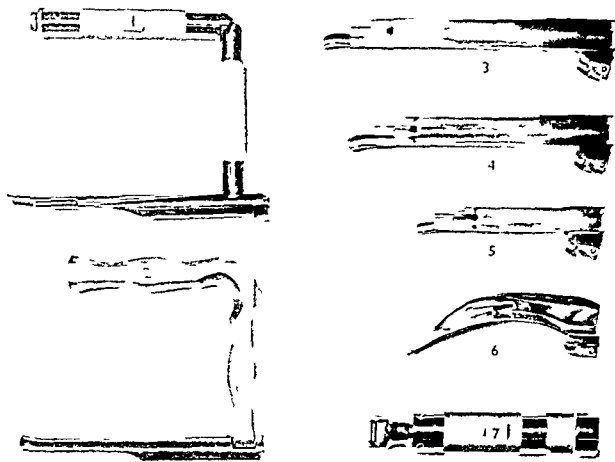


Figure 5 Laryngoscopes (1) Eversole (2) Jackson (3) large Guedel blade (4) medium Guedel blade (5) child Guedel blade (6) Macintosh blade (7) handle for detachable (hook on) blades

porarily paralyzed the artificial respiration assures oxygenation of the body.⁶⁸ The work of Steinhaus⁴³ also supports this theory. Having shown experimentally that cardiovascular collapse due to respiratory paralysis can usually be prevented by artificial respiration he concludes "Since failure of respiration occurs more readily in local anesthetic intoxication than does failure of cardiovascular function the maintenance of adequate ventilation is of primary importance even though the reaction may appear to be the result of acute cardiovascular collapse."

As noted previously the signs of minor stimulation of the brain often announce a more serious type of reaction. Therefore when they occur and while oxygen is being administered a careful check of the blood pressure pulse and respiration must be main-

tained and drugs such as short acting barbiturates and vasoconstrictors should be readied for immediate injection in case the reaction progresses. Likewise suction endotracheal tubes laryngoscopes and bronchoscopes should be on hand should the patient vomit and aspirate and/or become apneic. If the patient vomits the airway must be cleared by tracheal suction and if aspiration takes place bronchoscopy may be necessary to clear the trachea and bronchi of food particles.

If the minor signs of cerebral stimulation progress to convulsions which are always accompanied by periods of apnea or if convulsion is the initial indication of the reaction oxygen still is the first therapeutic agent to use. This can not be too strongly emphasized. If the patient is apneic either with or without convulsions the oxygen must be made avail-

patient sits on the cart or operating table. This is done so that if the patient feels faint or should faint he may be placed immediately in the recumbent position.

It is interesting to note that Macintosh and Mushin⁴² when discussing fainting as a complication of brachial plexus block report that fainting had "occurred only when the injection was given while the patient was sitting up. For this reason we recommend that the brachial plexus should be injected with the patient lying down."

Seldom if ever does loss of consciousness of this nature require treatment for hypotension. Placing the patient in the supine position usually suffices.

Rules To Be Remembered When Performing Regional Blocks—*Carefully observe the patient for at least one half hour following the completion of the injection or administration or topical application of local anesthetic solutions.* Some reactions particularly the mild ones, may be judged by the inexperienced physician to be hysterical in nature and not due to the drug or drugs. Should the reaction progress unobserved death may occur before treatment can be instituted. When a patient who has been restless and difficult to block suddenly becomes quiet the physician should not draw a sigh of relief believing that at last the patient has become cooperative. On the contrary the physician should immediately become suspicious that a reaction is taking place and make a positive diagnosis without delay.

Objectively evaluate any type of reaction no matter how mild. Do not treat a reaction without making a definite diagnosis; give only the necessary indicated therapy.

Be prepared to treat any type of reaction. Preparedness to treat all reactions be they mild and transient in nature or severe with convulsions and/or respiratory collapse and/or cardiovascular collapse is essential whenever regional block procedures are performed.

Do not overtreat or undertreat the reaction. Some reactions require no treatment; on the other hand intensive therapy and even manual systole may be necessary to save the

patient's life. Either stimulation or depression of the central nervous system may predominate so that when treatment is instituted it must be "tailored" to the individual signs and symptoms—not administered in "shotgun" doses.

Tell the patient if he has a reaction. When a reaction to a drug occurs the patient should be informed of the fact, told the drug or drugs which were employed and the method of administration so that at a later date he may pass this information on to any physician who might choose to give him a local anesthetic.

Do not exceed the recommended maximum dosage of the local anesthetic drugs (see Table VI page 12). It should be remembered that reactions with an immediate onset following the use of a relatively large amount of a local anesthetic drug are most often seen following the application of local anesthetic agents to the mucous membranes of the nose or mouth, pharynx, larynx, trachea or urethra.^{9, 10, 23, 29, 34}

When 5 to 10 cc. of 2% Pontocaine are used topically to anesthetize these structures it should be realized that 100 to 200 mg. of the drug have been administered and if a reaction follows it must be attributed to too great a dosage—not to an allergy. Steinhaus⁴³ reports that the absorption of Pontocaine from the alveoli of the lung is very rapid and approximates intravenous injection of the drug. He feels that cocaine may be a safer drug for topical anesthesia of the tracheobronchial tree because the vasoconstriction produced by the cocaine slows its absorption. Kelsall³⁴ emphasizes this rapid absorption from the pharynx, larynx and tracheobronchial tree and advocates the use of weaker solutions of Pontocaine (1%) than those usually used (2%) and recommends the addition of Adrenalin (epinephrine) to the solution to slow this absorption. Perhaps the effectiveness of the Adrenalin is not as great as Kelsall believes for Steinhaus⁴³ found that the addition of Adrenalin 1:25,000 or 1:50,000 to the Pontocaine solutions did not very effectively reduce the absorption of the Pontocaine instilled into

tical and respiratory manifestations of a toxic reaction the initial treatment is to institute oxygen therapy and start intravenous fluids. Then a vasoconstrictor drug usually one which will strengthen cardiac action as well as constrict the blood vessels should be given intravenously to correct the hypotension (see Chapter 15 page 147 for specific drug therapy). If cardiac failure occurs it must be treated by manual systole (see Chapter 7 page 76).

Adequate Personnel—When a severe systemic reaction occurs the physician who is working alone will find the task of performing all the necessary steps of resuscitation practically impossible. Additional personnel should be immediately available and he should not hesitate to summon them to start intravenous fluids, prepare necessary drugs and to hold and pass equipment.

If a reaction occurs with adequate personnel present the physician must direct the course of treatment. He should give the orders, establish a patent airway and give oxygen. His assistants should prepare the drugs and other equipment.

Application of a Tourniquet—If regional infiltration of an extremity is being performed and a reaction commences the application of a tourniquet may prevent further generalized circulation of the drug and prevent or limit a generalized systemic reaction. Once the reaction is controlled the tourniquet can be intermittently released and reapplied permitting only small quantities of the local anesthetic agent to gain access to the general circulation at any one time.

COMMENTS

Psychomotor Responses—This type of reaction is not caused by the local anesthetic agent itself but the mere mechanics of the procedure of performing the block. It occurs usually in the following groups of patients: (1) those who tend to faint at the mere sight of a needle or when the skin is traumatized by the needle; (2) those who do not want a regional procedure and on whom block anes-

thesia is performed without first convincing the patient that it is the procedure of choice and (3) those in whom a block procedure is done with the immediate relatives in attendance.

In most instances the reaction is characterized by the patient fainting or pretending to faint. None of the signs and symptoms of a true systemic reaction to a local anesthetic drug appear. The blood pressure, pulse and respirations remain normal and the lid reflexes i.e. movements of the upper eyelid following gentle stroking of its eyelashes are present. On the other hand a small number of those showing psychomotor responses may become agitated, restless, may sob and become uncontrollable. Treatment of such a patient consists in watchful waiting. A feigned reaction requires no treatment other than reassurance but if it is the start of a true toxic systemic reaction therapy discussed previously must be instituted.

The fact that psychomotor reactions to regional analgesia have been reported to be not infrequent points to the necessity of correctly preparing the patient for a block procedure. This does not only mean choosing the correct premedication for a block procedure but explaining the procedure to the patient. On anesthetic preoperative rounds he should be assured that the anesthetic of choice is being used for his particular problem and that he will not be hurt. When he arrives on the surgical floor he should be reassured that he will not be hurt either during the blocking procedure or during the operation. Gaining the patient's confidence is one of the initial steps in any block procedure. In the past seven years at the Mason Clinic my associates and I have never had a patient faint. We believe we have averted this type of reaction by (1) correct premedication, (2) explaining each step in the block technique to the patient prior to and during its execution and (3) executing the block with the patient in the recumbent position whenever possible. At the Mason Clinic a patient is never permitted to sit in a chair as he is being blocked. If the sitting position facilitates the block the

patient sits on the cart or operating table. This is done so that if the patient feels faint or should faint he may be placed immediately in the recumbent position.

It is interesting to note that Macintosh and Mushin⁶⁸ when discussing fainting as a complication of brachial plexus block report that fainting had "occurred only when the injection was given while the patient was sitting up. For this reason we recommend that the brachial plexus should be injected with the patient lying down."

Seldom if ever does loss of consciousness of this nature require treatment for hypotension. Placing the patient in the supine position usually suffices.

Rules To Be Remembered When Performing Regional Blocks—*Carefully observe the patient for at least one half hour following the completion of the injection, oral administration or topical application of local anesthetic solutions.* Some reactions particularly the mild ones may be judged by the inexperienced physician to be hysterical in nature and not due to the drug or drugs. Should the reaction progress unobserved death may occur before treatment can be instituted. When a patient who has been restless and difficult to block suddenly becomes quiet the physician should not draw a sigh of relief believing that at last the patient has become cooperative. On the contrary the physician should immediately become suspicious that a reaction is taking place and make a positive diagnosis without delay.

Objectively evaluate any type of reaction no matter how mild. Do not treat a reaction without making a definite diagnosis; give only the necessary indicated therapy.

Be prepared to treat any type of reaction. Preparedness to treat all reactions be they mild and transient in nature or severe with convulsions and/or respiratory collapse and/or cardiovascular collapse is essential wherever regional block procedures are performed.

Do not overtreat or undertreat the reaction. Some reactions require no treatment; on the other hand intensive therapy and even manual systole may be necessary to save the

patient's life. Either stimulation or depression of the central nervous system may predominate so that when treatment is instituted it must be "tailored" to the individual signs and symptoms—not administered in "shotgun" doses.

Tell the patient if he has a reaction. When a reaction to a drug occurs the patient should be informed of the fact, told the drug or drugs which were employed and the method of administration so that at a later date he may pass this information on to any physician who might choose to give him a local anesthetic.

Do not exceed the recommended maximum dosage of the local anesthetic drugs (see Table VI page 12). It should be remembered that reactions with an immediate onset following the use of a relatively large amount of a local anesthetic drug are most often seen following the application of local anesthetic agents to the mucous membranes of the nose or mouth, pharynx, larynx, trachea, or urethra.^{9 10 23 69 74}

When 5 to 10 cc of 2% Pontocaine are used topically to anesthetize these structures it should be realized that 100 to 200 mg of the drug have been administered and if a reaction follows it must be attributed to too great a dosage—not to an allergy. Steinhaus⁴³ reports that the absorption of Pontocaine from the alveoli of the lung is very rapid and approximates intravenous injection of the drug. He feels that cocaine may be a safer drug for topical anesthesia of the tracheobronchial tree because the vasoconstriction produced by the cocaine slows its absorption. Kelsall⁷⁴ emphasizes this rapid absorption from the pharynx, larynx and tracheobronchial tree and advocates the use of weaker solutions of Pontocaine (1%) than those usually used (2%) and recommends the addition of Adrenalin (epinephrine) to the solution to slow this absorption. Perhaps the effectiveness of the Adrenalin is not as great as Kelsall believes for Steinhaus⁴³ found that the addition of Adrenalin 1:25,000 or 1:50,000 to the Pontocaine solutions did not very effectively reduce the absorption of the Pontocaine instilled into

tial and respiratory manifestations of a toxic reaction the initial treatment is to institute oxygen therapy and start intravenous fluids. Then a vasoconstrictor drug usually one which will strengthen cardiac action as well as constrict the blood vessels should be given intravenously to correct the hypotension (see Chapter 15 page 147 for specific drug therapy). If cardiac failure occurs it must be treated by manual systole (see Chapter 7 page 76).

Adequate Personnel—When a severe systemic reaction occurs the physician who is working alone will find the task of performing all the necessary steps of resuscitation practically impossible. Additional personnel should be immediately available and he should not hesitate to summon them to start intravenous fluids, prepare necessary drugs and to hold and pass equipment.

If a reaction occurs with adequate personnel present the physician must direct the course of treatment. He should give the orders, establish a patent airway and give oxygen. His assistants should prepare the drugs and other equipment.

Application of a Tourniquet—If regional infiltration of an extremity is being performed and a reaction commences the application of a tourniquet may prevent further generalized circulation of the drug and prevent or limit a generalized systemic reaction. Once the reaction is controlled the tourniquet can be intermittently released and reapplied permitting only small quantities of the local anesthetic agent to gain access to the general circulation at any one time.

COMMENTS

Psychomotor Responses—This type of reaction is not caused by the local anesthetic agent itself but the mere mechanics of the procedure of performing the block. It occurs usually in the following groups of patients: (1) those who tend to faint at the mere sight of a needle or when the skin is traumatized by the needle; (2) those who do not want a regional procedure and on whom block anes-

thesia is performed without first convincing the patient that it is the procedure of choice and (3) those in whom a block procedure is done with the immediate relatives in attendance.

In most instances the reaction is characterized by the patient fainting or pretending to faint. None of the signs and symptoms of a true systemic reaction to a local anesthetic drug appear. The blood pressure, pulse and respirations remain normal and the lid reflexes i.e. movements of the upper eyelid following gentle stroking of its eyelash are present. On the other hand a small number of those showing psychomotor responses may become agitated, restless, may sob and become uncontrollable. Treatment of such a patient consists in watchful waiting. A feigned reaction requires no treatment other than reassurance but if it is the start of a true toxic systemic reaction therapy discussed previously must be instituted.

The fact that psychomotor reactions to regional analgesia have been reported to be not infrequent points to the necessity of correctly preparing the patient for a block procedure.⁶ This does not only mean choosing the correct premedication for a block procedure but explaining the procedure to the patient. On anesthetic preoperative rounds he should be assured that the anesthetic of choice is being used for his particular problem and that he will not be hurt. When he arrives on the surgical floor he should be reassured that he will not be hurt either during the blocking procedure or during the operation. Gaining the patient's confidence is one of the initial steps in any block procedure. In the past seven years at the Mason Clinic my associates and I have never had a patient faint. We believe we have averted this type of reaction by (1) correct premedication, (2) explaining each step in the block technique to the patient prior to and during its execution and (3) executing the block with the patient in the recumbent position whenever possible. At the Mason Clinic a patient is never permitted to sit in a chair as he is being blocked. If the sitting position facilitates the block the

patient sits on the cart or operating table. This is done so that if the patient feels faint or should faint he may be placed immediately in the recumbent position.

It is interesting to note that Macintosh and Mushin⁶⁴ when discussing fainting as a complication of brachial plexus block report that fainting had occurred only when the injection was given while the patient was sitting up. For this reason we recommend that the brachial plexus should be injected with the patient lying down.

Seldom if ever does loss of consciousness of this nature require treatment for hypotension. Placing the patient in the supine position usually suffices.

Rules To Be Remembered When Performing Regional Blocks.—*Carefully observe the patient for at least one half hour following the completion of the injection, oral administration, or topical application of local anesthetic solutions.* Some reactions, particularly the mild ones, may be judged by the experienced physician to be hysterical in nature and not due to the drug or drugs. Should the reaction progress unobserved death may occur before treatment can be instituted. When a patient who has been restless and difficult to block suddenly becomes quiet the physician should not draw a sigh of relief believing that at last the patient has become cooperative. On the contrary, the physician should immediately become suspicious that a reaction is taking place and make a positive diagnosis without delay.

Objectively evaluate any type of reaction no matter how mild. Do not treat a reaction without making a definite diagnosis; give only the necessary indicated therapy.

Be prepared to treat any type of reaction. Preparedness to treat all reactions, be they mild and transient in nature or severe with convulsions and/or respiratory collapse and/or cardiovascular collapse is essential whenever regional block procedures are performed.

Do not overtreat or undertreat the reaction. Some reactions require no treatment on the other hand intensive therapy and even manual systole may be necessary to save the

patient's life. Either stimulation or depression of the central nervous system may predominate so that when treatment is instituted it must be "tailored" to the individual signs and symptoms—not administered in "shotgun" doses.

Tell the patient if he has a reaction. When a reaction to a drug occurs the patient should be informed of the fact, told the drug or drugs which were employed and the method of administration so that at a later date he may pass this information on to any physician who might choose to give him a local anesthetic.

Do not exceed the recommended maximum dosage of the local anesthetic drugs (see Table VI page 12). It should be remembered that reactions with an immediate onset following the use of a relatively large amount of a local anesthetic drug are most often seen following the application of local anesthetic agents to the mucous membranes of the nose or mouth, pharynx, larynx, trachea or urethra.^{9, 10, 23, 62, 74}

When 5 to 10 cc of 2% Pontocaine are used topically to anesthetize these structures it should be realized that 100 to 200 mg of the drug have been administered and if a reaction follows it must be attributed to too great a dosage—not to an allergy. Steinhaus⁴³ reports that the absorption of Pontocaine from the alveoli of the lung is very rapid and approximates intravenous injection of the drug. He feels that cocaine may be a safer drug for topical anesthesia of the tracheobronchial tree because the vasoconstriction produced by the cocaine slows its absorption. Kelsall⁷⁴ emphasizes this rapid absorption from the pharynx, larynx and tracheobronchial tree and advocates the use of weaker solutions of Pontocaine (1%) than those usually used (2%) and recommends the addition of Adrenalin (epinephrine) to the solution to slow this absorption. Perhaps the effectiveness of the Adrenalin is not as great as Kelsall believes for Steinhaus⁴³ found that the addition of Adrenalin 1:25,000 or 1:50,000 to the Pontocaine solutions did not very effectively reduce the absorption of the Pontocaine instilled into

tial and respiratory manifestations of a toxic reaction the initial treatment is to institute oxygen therapy and start intravenous fluids. Then a vasoconstrictor drug usually one which will strengthen cardiac action as well as constrict the blood vessels should be given intravenously to correct the hypotension (see Chapter 15 page 147 for specific drug therapy.) If cardiac failure occurs it must be treated by manual systole (see Chapter 7 page 76)

Adequate Personnel—When a severe systemic reaction occurs the physician who is working alone will find the task of performing all the necessary steps of resuscitation practically impossible. Additional personnel should be immediately available and he should not hesitate to summon them to start intravenous fluids, prepare necessary drugs and to hold and press equipment.

If a reaction occurs with adequate personnel present the physician must direct the course of treatment. He should give the orders, establish a patent airway and give oxygen. His assistants should prepare the drugs and other equipment.

Application of a Tourniquet—If regional infiltration of an extremity is being performed and a reaction commences the application of a tourniquet may prevent further generalized circulation of the drug and prevent or limit a generalized systemic reaction. Once the reaction is controlled the tourniquet can be intermittently released and reapplied permitting only small quantities of the local anesthetic agent to gain access to the general circulation at any one time.

COMMENTS

Psychomotor Responses—This type of reaction is not caused by the local anesthetic agent itself but the mere mechanics of the procedure of performing the block. It occurs usually in the following groups of patients: (1) those who tend to faint at the mere sight of a needle or when the skin is traumatized by the needle; (2) those who do not want a regional procedure and on whom block anes-

thesia is performed without first convincing the patient that it is the procedure of choice; and (3) those in whom a block procedure is done with the immediate relatives in attendance.

In most instances the reaction is characterized by the patient fainting or pretending to faint. None of the signs and symptoms of a true systemic reaction to a local anesthetic drug appear. The blood pressure, pulse and respirations remain normal and the lid reflexes i.e. movements of the upper eyelid following gentle stroking of its eyelash are present. On the other hand a small number of those showing psychomotor responses may become agitated, restless, may sob and become uncontrollable. Treatment of such a patient consists in watchful waiting. A feigned reaction requires no treatment other than reassurance but if it is the start of a true toxic systemic reaction therapy discussed previously must be instituted.

The fact that psychomotor reactions to regional analgesia have been reported to be not infrequent points to the necessity of correctly preparing the patient for a block procedure. This does not only mean choosing the correct premedication for a block procedure but explaining the procedure to the patient. On anesthetic preoperative rounds he should be assured that the anesthetic of choice is being used for his particular problem and that he will not be hurt. When he arrives on the surgical floor he should be reassured that he will not be hurt either during the blocking procedure or during the operation. Gaining the patient's confidence is one of the initial steps in any block procedure. In the past seven years at the Mason Clinic my associates and I have never had a patient faint. We believe we have averted this type of reaction by (1) correct premedication; (2) explaining each step in the block technique to the patient prior to and during its execution; and (3) executing the block with the patient in the recumbent position whenever possible. At the Mason Clinic a patient is never permitted to sit in a chair as he is being blocked. If the sitting position facilitates the block, the

patient sits on the cart or operating table. This is done so that if the patient feels faint or should faint he may be placed immediately in the recumbent position.

It is interesting to note that Macintosh and Mushin¹⁴ when discussing fainting as a complication of brachial plexus block report that fainting had "occurred only when the injection was given while the patient was sitting up. For this reason we recommend that the brachial plexus should be injected with the patient lying down."

Seldom if ever does loss of consciousness of this nature require treatment for hypotension. Placing the patient in the supine position usually suffices.

Rules To Be Remembered When Performing Regional Blocks.—Carefully observe the patient for at least one half hour following the completion of the injection, oral administration, or topical application of local anesthetic solutions. Some reactions, particularly the mild ones, may be judged by the inexperienced physician to be hysterical in nature and not due to the drug or drugs. Should the reaction progress unobserved death may occur before treatment can be instituted. When a patient who has been restless and difficult to block suddenly becomes quiet the physician should not draw a sigh of relief believing that at last the patient has become cooperative. On the contrary, the physician should immediately become suspicious that a reaction is taking place and make a positive diagnosis without delay.

Objectively evaluate any type of reaction no matter how mild. Do not treat a reaction without making a definite diagnosis; give only the necessary indicated therapy.

Be prepared to treat any type of reaction. Preparedness to treat all reactions, be they mild and transient in nature or severe with convulsions and/or respiratory collapse and/or cardiovascular collapse is essential whenever regional block procedures are performed.

Do not overtreat or undertreat the reaction. Some reactions require no treatment; on the other hand intensive therapy and even manual systole may be necessary to save the

patient's life. Either stimulation or depression of the central nervous system may predominate so that when treatment is instituted it must be "tailored" to the individual signs and symptoms—not administered in "shotgun" doses.

Tell the patient if he has a reaction. When a reaction to a drug occurs the patient should be informed of the fact, told the drug or drugs which were employed and the method of administration so that at a later date he may pass this information on to any physician who might choose to give him a local anesthetic.

Do not exceed the recommended maximum dosage of the local anesthetic drugs (see Table VI, page 12). It should be remembered that reactions with an immediate onset following the use of a relatively large amount of a local anesthetic drug are most often seen following the application of local anesthetic agents to the mucous membranes of the nose or mouth, pharynx, larynx, trachea or urethra.^{15, 16, 22, 63, 64}

When 5 to 10 cc. of 2% Pontocaine are used topically to anesthetize these structures it should be realized that 100 to 200 mg. of the drug have been administered and if a reaction follows it must be attributed to too great a dosage—not to an allergy. Steinhaus⁴³ reports that the absorption of Pontocaine from the alcohol of the lung is very rapid and approximates intravenous injection of the drug. He feels that cocaine may be a safer drug for topical anesthesia of the tracheobronchial tree because the vasoconstriction produced by the cocaine slows its absorption. Kelsall⁴ emphasizes this rapid absorption from the pharynx, larynx and tracheobronchial tree and advocates the use of weaker solutions of Pontocaine (1%) than those usually used (2%) and recommends the addition of Adrenalin (epinephrine) to the solution to slow this absorption. Perhaps the effectiveness of the Adrenalin is not as great as Kelsall believes for Steinhaus⁴³ found that the addition of Adrenalin 1:25,000 or 1:50,000 to the Pontocaine solutions did not very effectively reduce the absorption of the Pontocaine instilled into

tical and respiratory manifestations of a toxic reaction the initial treatment is to institute oxygen therapy and start intravenous fluids. Then a vasoconstrictor drug, usually one which will strengthen cardiac action as well as constrict the blood vessels, should be given intravenously to correct the hypotension (see Chapter 15, page 147 for specific drug therapy). If cardiac failure occurs it must be treated by manual systole (see Chapter 7, page 76).

Adequate Personnel—When a severe systemic reaction occurs the physician who is working alone will find the task of performing all the necessary steps of resuscitation practically impossible. Additional personnel should be immediately available and he should not hesitate to summon them to start intravenous fluids, prepare necessary drugs and to hold and pass equipment.

If a reaction occurs with adequate personnel present, the physician must direct the course of treatment. He should give the orders, establish a patent airway and give oxygen. His assistants should prepare the drugs and other equipment.

Application of a Tourniquet—If regional infiltration of an extremity is being performed and a reaction commences the application of a tourniquet may prevent further generalized circulation of the drug and prevent or limit a generalized systemic reaction. Once the reaction is controlled the tourniquet can be intermittently released and reapplied, permitting only small quantities of the local anesthetic agent to gain access to the general circulation at any one time.

COMMENTS

Psychomotor Responses—This type of reaction is not caused by the local anesthetic agent itself but the mere mechanics of the procedure of performing the block. It occurs usually in the following groups of patients: (1) those who tend to faint at the mere sight of a needle or when the skin is traumatized by the needle; (2) those who do not want a regional procedure and on whom block anes-

thesia is performed without first convincing the patient that it is the procedure of choice; and (3) those in whom a block procedure is done with the immediate relatives in attendance.

In most instances the reaction is characterized by the patient fainting or pretending to faint. None of the signs and symptoms of a true systemic reaction to a local anesthetic drug appear. The blood pressure, pulse and respirations remain normal and the lid reflexes, i.e. movements of the upper eyelid following gentle stroking of its eyelash, are present. On the other hand a small number of those showing psychomotor responses may become agitated, restless, may sob and become uncontrollable. Treatment of such a patient consists in watchful waiting. A feigned reaction requires no treatment other than reassurance but if it is the start of a true toxic systemic reaction therapy discussed previously must be instituted.

The fact that psychomotor reactions to regional analgesia have been reported to be not infrequent points to the necessity of correctly preparing the patient for a block procedure. This does not only mean choosing the correct premedication for a block procedure but explaining the procedure to the patient. On anesthetic preoperative rounds he should be assured that the anesthetic of choice is being used for his particular problem and that he will not be hurt. When he arrives on the surgical floor he should be reassured that he will not be hurt either during the blocking procedure or during the operation. Gaining the patient's confidence is one of the initial steps in any block procedure. In the past seven years at the Mason Clinic my associates and I have never had a patient faint. We believe we have averted this type of reaction by: (1) correct premedication; (2) explaining each step in the block technique to the patient prior to and during its execution; and (3) executing the block with the patient in the recumbent position whenever possible. At the Mason Clinic a patient is never permitted to sit in a chair as he is being blocked. If the sitting position facilitates the block the

- 30 BONICA J J Use of Pontocaine for Regional Anesthesia An Analysis of 3000 Cases *Anesth & Analg* 30 115 and 76 83 1951
- 31 BONICA J J Regional Anesthesia with Tetracaine *Anesthesiology* 11 606 622 and 710 729 1950
- 32 MOORE D C Pontocaine Solutions for Regional Analgesia Other than Spinal and Epidural Block An Analysis of 2500 Cases *JAMA* 146 503 509 1951
- 33 BRUNNEN R Vasoconstricting Action of Some Local Anesthetics *Anesth & Analg* 27 197 203 1948
- 34 BRAUN H Lokalanästhesie Leipzig Johann Ambrosius Barth, 1913
- 35 BRAUN H Ueber den Einfluss der Vitalität der Gewebe auf die Örtlichen und Allgemeinen Giftwirkungen Lokalanästhetischer Mittel und über die Bedeutung des Adrenalins für die Lokalanästhesie *Arch. klin. Chir.* 69 511 591 1903
- 36 FICHLISTON C and HATCHER R A A Further Contribution to the Pharmacology of the Local Anesthetics *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 13 433 487 1910
- 37 MOORE, D C The Use of Hyaluronidase in Local and Nerve Block Analgesia Other than Spinal Block 1520 Cases *Anesthesiology* 12 611 626 1951
- 38 RICHARDS R. K. Effects of Vitamin C Deficiency and Starvation Upon the Toxicity of Procaine *Anesth & Analg* 26 22 29 1917
- 39 BRCK C S and MAURIZ G The Control of the Heart Beat by the Surgeon with Special Reference to Ventricular Fibrillation Occurring During Operation *Ann Surg* 106 525 537 1937
- 40 BURSTEIN C L Treatment of Acute Arrhythmias During Anesthesia by Intravenous Procaine *Anesthesiology* 7 113 121 1946
- 41 BURSTEIN C L and ROVENSTINE E A Aids in Thoracic Surgery *New York J Med* 46 2142 2146 1946
- 42 GRAUBARD D J and PETERSON M C *Clinical Uses of Intravenous Procaine* Publication 73 American Lecture Series A Monograph in American Lectures in Anesthesiology Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1950
- 43 STEINHAUS J E A Comparative Study of the Experimental Toxicity of Local Anesthetic Agents *Anesthesiology* 13 577 586 1952
- 44 CAMPBELL E B Anesthesia in the Repair of Hernia *Canad M A J* 62 364 366 1950
- 45 FUSSGANGER R and SCHLAUMANN O Ueber ein Neues Lokalanästhetikum der Novokainreihe (Pantokain) *Arch. Exper. Path. Pharmacol.* 160 53 65 1931
- 46 SCHMIDT H Pantokain Schmerz Narkose *Anästhesia* 4 277-305, Dec 1931 Jan 1932
- 47 WIRMANN O Pantokain ein neues Lokalanästhetikum *Deutsche med. Wchnschr.* 57 13-14 1931
- 48 PFFERKORN A Neuere Mittel zur Örtlichen Betäubung—ein Fortschritt *Zentralbl. Chir.* 57 2119 2125 1931
- 49 INNST M Erfahrungen mit dem neuen Lokal anästhetikum Pantocain *München med. Wchnschr.* 78 9 11 1931
- 50 KIRSS T Erfahrungen mit einem neuen Mittel zur Örtlichen Betäubung *Zentralbl. Chir.* 57 3090-3095 1930
- 51 HIRSCH C Pantokain (2593) ein neues Oberflächliches Anästhetikum *Deutsche med. Wchnschr.* 57 15 1931
- 52 PFFERKORN H Klinische Erfahrungen mit Pantokain *Zentralbl. Chir.* 59 1116-1120 1931
- 53 RUCER H G und SCHMIDT, H Pantokain ein vollwertiger Kokainersatz. *Arch. Ohren Nasen Kehlkopf* 128 232 243 1931
- 54 KLIMKO D Über Pantokain *Arch. klin. Chir.* 166 750 757, 1931
- 55 MEZÖ B Cyclic Anesthesia instead of Sympathectomy *Anesth & Analg* 28 150 155 1949
- 56 ANDRO F P BLUNDELL, A E SWEENEY J C, BODELL, B and ANDORKO J E Comparison of Two Newer Anesthetic Drugs Used in Obtaining Lumbar Epidural Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 33 406-408 1954
- 57 CRAWFORD O B Comparative Qualities of Three Local Anesthetic Drugs Cycloaine, Cyclaine and Pravocaine *Anesthesiology* 14 278 290 1953
- 58 RUBEN J E and ANDERSON E Hexylcaine Hydrochloride A Preliminary Report of Its Clinical Use in Comparison with Procaine *Am J Surg* 78 843 846 1949
- 59 ORKIN L R and ROVENSTINE E A Hexylcaine (cycloaine) Usefulness in Regional and Topical Anesthesia—Preliminary Report *Anesthesiology* 13 465-473 1952
- 60 TATUM A L ATKINSON A J and COLLINS K H Acute Cocaine Poisoning Its Prophylaxis and Treatment in Laboratory Animals *J. Pharmacol. & Exper. Therap.* 26 325 335 1925
- 61 TATUM A L and COLLINS K H Acute Cocaine Poisoning and Its Treatment in Monkeys (Macacus rhesus) *Arch. Int. Med.* 38 405 409 1926
- 62 MOORE D C *Regional Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
- 63 RYAN E A and SHOULDICE E E Allergy and Procaine Hydrochloride *JAMA* 152 1554 1953

the lung as proved by subsequent check of the drugs blood level

It has been our custom when performing topical anesthesia to allow only a measured amount of the local anesthetic solution to be placed at our disposal. The solution is poured into a medicine glass and only this amount is employed. Often the over zealous resident in an effort to please his chief will exceed the toxic dosage of a local anesthetic agent if more solution is available.

Do not rely on premedications to prevent systemic toxic reactions. As noted previously the protection afforded by heavy doses of barbiturates is unimpressive and for the reasons previously discussed the author does not recommend them for this purpose (see page 20).

RAPID TREATMENT OF SYSTEMIC REACTIONS FROM HIGH BLOOD LEVELS OF LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENTS IS ESSENTIAL TO AVOID DEATHS, BUT CORRECT TREATMENT IS EQUALLY IMPORTANT. INAPPROPRIATE TREATMENT MAY RESULT IN DEATH!

REFERENCES

- ADRIANI J. *The Pharmacology of Anesthetic Drugs*. Springfield Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher, 1952.
- CULLEN S C. *Anesthesia in General Practice*. Chicago: The Year Book Publishers, 1946.
- SADOVE M S, WYANT G M, GITTLESON L A and KRETCHMER H E. Classification and Management of Reactions to Local Anesthetic Agents. *JAMA* 148:17-22, 1952.
- COLLINS V J. *Principles and Practices of Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia, Lea and Febiger, 1952.
- ADRIANI J. Some Practical Aspects of the Chemistry and Pharmacology of Local Anesthetic Drugs. *South M J* 39:143-149, 1946.
- BETLACH, C J. Methods of Local and Regional Anesthesia. *S Clin North America* 21:277-298, 1941.
- KNOEFEL P K, HERWICK R P and LOEVENHART A S. The Prevention of Acute Intoxication from Local Anesthetics. *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 39:397-411, 1930.
- BONICA J J. Personal Communication.
- MAYER E. The Toxic Effects Following the Use of Local Anesthetics. *JAMA* 82:876-885, 1924.
- MAYER E. Fatalities from Local Anesthetics. *JAMA* 90:1290-1291, 1928.
- IRELAND P E, FERGUSON J K W and STARK E J. The Clinical and Experimental Comparison of Cocaine and Pontocaine as Topical Anesthetics in Otolaryngological Practice. *Laryngoscope* 61:767-777, 1951.
- FURSTENBERG A C, WOOD L A, MAGIELSKI J E and McMAHON G F. An Evaluation of Cocaine Anesthesia. The Perpetuation of Equivocal Concepts. *Tr Am Acad Ophth* 55:643-653, 1951.
- WILLIAMS H L. Discussion of paper by Furstenberg et al. Ref 12.
- SCHINDLER R. Results of the Questionnaire on Fatalities in Gastroscopy. *Am J Digest Dis* 7:293, 1910.
- DORLAND W A N. *Medical Dictionary*. Philadelphia: W B Saunders Co, 1951.
- VAUGHAN W T and BLACK J H. *Practice of Allergy*. St. Louis: C V Mosby Co, 1948.
- PIRKIN G P. *Conduction Anesthesia* (edited by Southworth J L and Hingson R A). 2nd Ed. Philadelphia, J B Lippincott Co, 1953.
- LOFGREN N. *Xylocaine—A New Synthetic Drug*. Stockholm: Ivar Hoeegstroms, 1948.
- GORDON T. *Xylocaine—A New Local Anesthetic*. *Anaesthesia* 4:49, 1949.
- GOODMAN L and GILMAN A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 2nd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co, 1955.
- LESEN A J. Duration of Local Anesthesia in Relation to Concentrations of Procaine and Epinephrine. *Anesthesiology* 1:203-207, 1940.
- FARR R E. *Practical Local Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger, 1923.
- WATERS R M. Procaine Toxicity: Its Prophylaxis and Treatment. *J Am Dent A* 20:2211-2215, 1933.
- GASSEN H S and ERLANGER J. The Role of Fiber Size in the Establishment of Nerve Block by Pressure or Cocaine. *Am J Physiol* 88:581-591, 1929.
- BITTER R N. Applied Pharmacology of Local Anesthetics. *Am J Surg* 34:500-510, 1936.
- GOMORI G. Accidents of Local Anesthesia with an Experimental Study of the Toxicity of the Various Anesthetics. *Surg Gynec & Obst* 62:951-959, 1936.
- ADAM L. Some Principles of Local Anesthesia. *Surg Gynec & Obst* 60:675-679, 1935.
- ADAM L. The Use of Local Anesthesia in General Surgery. *Am J Surg* 48:525-531, 1940.
- MOORE D C. The Use of Pontocaine Hydrochloride for Nerve Block and Infiltration Anesthesia, Therapeutic and Diagnostic Blocks. 1004 Cases. *Anesthesiology* 11:65-75, 1950.

Systemic Allergic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs

This chapter deals only with acute systemic allergic reactions to local anesthetic drugs which occur immediately following the use of these drugs and which are characterized by acute generalized signs and symptoms such as "clinical anaphylactic shock," generalized angioneurotic edema, etc. (see definition of allergy, page 7). These sequelae must be treated immediately and correctly, or death may result. Chapter 14, page 127, covers dermatitis, a chronic type of allergic reaction which may be generalized or localized and which rarely requires emergency resuscitative therapy.

ETIOLOGY

Systemic allergic reactions to a local anesthetic drug used parenterally occur infrequently and in all probability constitute less than two percent of systemic toxic reactions.^{1,4,15} Sadove *et al.*¹ state: "Only after errors of judgment in quantity and concentration of the drug and technical faults of administration have been ruled out is it permissible to postulate any one of these states [allergy]. It must always be remembered that when large quantities or high concentrations of local anesthetic drugs are administered either topically or by injection an actual or relative (hyperergic) high blood level reaction not an allergic one is the more probable type of systemic reaction. A reaction to a drug may be termed *allergic* with certainty only if small or infinitesimal doses have been administered (see Chapter 1, page 8)."

Recently Criepe and Ribeiro⁵ reported three deaths which they felt indicated that allergic

reactions to Novocain (procaine) hydrochloride were more frequent than stated above. However Ryan and Shouldice⁶ and Davis and Bryce Smith⁷ question their interpretation of the cause of death in these cases, pointing out that their use of Novocain topically is somewhat surprising and that the more common explanation of the deaths has been overlooked. It is known that Novocain must be used in exceptionally high concentrations to be effective topically.⁸ Ryan and Shouldice⁶ further point out that in over 9500 hernia operations using Novocain hydrochloride they have had no evidence of the type of "allergy" responses cited by Criepe and Ribeiro.⁵

The signs and symptoms of an allergic systemic reaction reflect an attempt by the body to remove a noxious agent, therefore even though the allergy results in symptoms of severe illness it is a purposeful one of protection.⁹ The intensity of the reaction is often out of proportion to the amount of the drug injected. *The cause of an allergic reaction is unknown* and Vaughan and Black⁹ state:

Whatever makes a person allergic (and this we do not know as yet) makes one or another or all shock tissues abnormally responsive so responsive that they overact. The term shock tissues or shock organs was coined by Doerr to indicate the organs or tissues in which the allergic manifestation appears i.e. in one person the skin may be the site of reactions in another the bronchi in still another the intestinal tract etc.⁹ Vaughan and Black⁹ also point out that if the allergenic substance the noxious agent gains entrance to the body via a parenteral injection or absorp-

- 64 MOORE P M (in discussion Thomas J W and Fenton M M) Fatalities & Constitutional Reactions Following the Use of Pontocaine *J Allergy* 14 145 159 1943
- 65 SCHMIDT C F Recent Developments in Respiratory Physiology Related to Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 6 113 123 1945
- 66 TAINTER M I and THOMPSON A H Influence of Vasoconstrictors on the Toxicity of Procaine Anesthetic Solutions *J Am Dent A* 25 966-979 1953
- 67 BONICA J J *Management of Pain* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 68 MACINTOSH R R and MUSHIN W W *Local Anesthesia Brachial Plexus* Oxford Blackwell Ltd 1947
- 69 DERBES V J and ENGELHARDT H T Deaths Following the Use of Local Anesthetics in Transcricoid Therapy A Critical Evaluation *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 478-482 1944
- 70 DOANE J C and COHN E M The Toxic Effect of Pontocaine Employed Locally A Case Report *Anesthesiology* 6 421 425 1945
- 71 KIERSEY D K Amethocaine Sensitivity *Irish J M Sc ser* 6 269 191 192 1948
- 72 RICHARDS R A Note on the Causation of Sudden Death *Brit M J* 2 51 53 1947
- 73 AIMOON W A Report of a Death from Pontocaine Hydrochloride *Laryngoscope* 56 320 323 1946
- 74 BELSALL P D Anaesthesia for Bronchoscopy *Brit J Anaesth* 26 182 186 1954
- 75 FOREIGN LETTERS Death from Sensitivity to Tetracaine *JAMA* 159 214 1955
- 76 PESIKIN M M Pitfalls of Skin Tests in Allergy *JAMA* 157 820 823 1955
- 77 ADRIANI J *Nerve Blocks* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- 78 MICLIARESE J F BAUER E C and RANDALL L O Prevention of Procaine Convulsions by Presidone and Sodium Pentobarbital (17573) *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 73 53 55 1950
- 79 MAYKUT M O and KALOW W Experiments with Animals on the Combined Action of Procaine and Barbiturates *Canad Anaesth Soc J* 2 109 115 1955

Systemic Allergic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs

This chapter deals only with acute systemic allergic reactions to local anesthetic drugs which occur immediately following the use of these drugs and which are characterized by acute generalized signs and symptoms such as "clinical anaphylactic shock," generalized angioneurotic edema, etc. (see definition of *allergy* page 7). These sequelae must be treated immediately and correctly or death may result. Chapter 14 page 127 covers dermatitis, a chronic type of allergic reaction which may be generalized or localized and which rarely requires emergency resuscitative therapy.

ETIOLOGY

Systemic allergic reactions to a local anesthetic drug used parenterally occur infrequently and in all probability constitute less than two percent of systemic toxic reactions.^{1,2,3} Sadove *et al*¹ state "Only after errors of judgment in quantity and concentration of the drug and technical faults of administration have been ruled out is it permissible to postulate any one of these states [allergy]." It must always be remembered that when *large quantities* or *high concentrations* of local anesthetic drugs are administered either topically or by injection an actual or relative ("hyperergic") high blood level reaction not an allergic one is the more probable type of systemic reaction. A reaction to a drug may be termed *allergic* with certainty only if small or infinitesimal doses have been administered (see Chapter 1 page 8).

Recently Criepp and Ribeiro⁴ reported three deaths which they felt indicated that "allergic"

reactions to Novocain (procaine) hydrochloride were more frequent than stated above. However Ryan and Shouldice⁵ and Davis and Bruce Smith⁶ question their interpretation of the cause of death in these cases pointing out that their use of Novocain topically is somewhat surprising and that the more common explanation of the deaths has been overlooked. It is known that Novocain must be used in exceptionally high concentrations to be effective topically.⁸ Ryan and Shouldice⁶ further point out that in over 9500 hernia operations using Novocain hydrochloride they have had no evidence of the type of "allergic" responses cited by Criepp and Ribeiro.⁴

The signs and symptoms of an allergic systemic reaction reflect an attempt by the body to remove a noxious agent therefore even though the allergy results in symptoms of severe illness it is a purposeful one of protection.⁹ The intensity of the reaction is often out of proportion to the amount of the drug injected. *The cause of an allergic reaction is unknown* and Vaughan and Black⁹ state "Whatever makes a person allergic (and this we do not know as yet) makes one or another or all shock tissues abnormally responsive so responsive that they overact. The term "shock tissues" or "shock organs" was coined by Doerr to indicate the organs or tissues in which the allergic manifestation appears i.e. in one person the skin may be the site of reactions in another the bronchi in still another the intestinal tract, etc." Vaughan and Black⁹ also point out that if the allergenic substance the noxious agent gains entrance to the body via a parenteral injection or absorp-

- 64 MOORE P M (in discussion Thomas J W and Fenton M M) Fatalities & Constitutional Reactions Following the Use of Pontocaine *J Allergy* 14 145 159 1943
- 65 SCHMIDT C F Recent Developments in Respiratory Physiology Related to Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 6 113 123 1945
- 66 TAINTER M L and THRONDSOHN A H Influence of Vasoconstrictors on the Toxicity of Procaine Anesthetic Solutions *J Am Dent A* 25 966 979 1938
- 67 BONICA J J *Management of Pain* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 68 MACINTOSH R R and MUSHIN W W *Local Anesthesia Brachial Plexus* Oxford Blackwell Ltd 1947
- 69 DERBEY V J and ENGELHARDT H T Deaths Following the Use of Local Anesthetics in Transcricoid Therapy A Critical Evaluation *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 478 482 1944
- 70 DOANE J C and COHN E M The Toxic Effect of Pontocaine Employed Locally A Case Report *Anesthesiology* 6 421 425 1945
- 71 KIERSEY D K Amethocaine Sensitivity *Irish J M Sc ser 6* 268 191 192 1948
- 72 RICHARDS R A Note on the Causation of Sudden Death *Brit M J* 2 51 53 1917
- 73 AIRMOON W A Report of a Death from Pontocaine Hydrochloride *Laryngoscope* 56 320 323 1946
- 74 KEISALL P D Anesthesia for Bronchoscopy *Brit J Anaesth* 26 182 186 1954
- 75 FOREIGN LETTERS Death from Sensitivity to Tetracaine *JAMA* 158 214 1955
- 76 PESHEKIN M M Pitfalls of Skin Tests in Allergy *JAMA* 157 820 823 1955
- 77 ADRIANI J *Nerve Blocks* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- 78 MICLIARESE J F BAUER F C and RANDALL L O Prevention of Procaine Convulsions by Residone and Sodium Pentobarbital (17573) *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 73 53 55 1950
- 79 MAYNUT M O and KALOW W Experiments with Animals on the Combined Action of Procaine and Barbiturates *Canad Anaesth Soc J* 2 109 115 1955

and even death if given too rapidly.^{11, 12} Warrington *et al.*¹⁴ do not share this opinion concerning dosage. They feel it is safe to administer 100 mg. doses of Benadryl over a 2 to 3 minute period in adults and have done so to relieve postoperative nausea and vomiting with no ill effects. They also have given as much as 400 mg. by intravenous drip over a 30 to 45 minute period with no untoward effects. Nevertheless a dose larger than 50 mg. intravenously does not seem warranted in treating allergic responses to local anesthetic drugs, because deaths have been reported from larger doses particularly in children and the increase in dosage does not seem to increase the drug's effectiveness greatly in alleviating the signs and symptoms of an allergic reaction.

Adrenalin (1:1000) 0.3 cc. (5 minims) may be given intramuscularly and repeated at 15 minute intervals to correct these problems. Ephedrine sulfate 50 mg. (1 cc.) may also be effective given intramuscularly. Nevertheless it is the author's experience that Benadryl is preferable to either of these two drugs since in most instances side reactions i.e. tachycardia etc. often seen with Adrenalin and ephedrine sulfate are rarely brought about by the antihistaminic drugs.

Intravenous or intramuscular calcium gluconate 1 to 2 gm. (5 to 10 cc. of a 20% solution) may prove valuable to control pruritis. It should be remembered that if calcium chloride is used instead of the gluconate it must not be given intramuscularly or subcutaneously because of its necrotizing action. Lotions containing calamine and phenols may alleviate the itching but they are not as effective as the antihistaminic drugs.

Asthmatic Breathing.—This may be relieved by the administration of oxygen only or oxygen helium mixtures. If this treatment does not help within a relatively short period of time drug therapy should be instituted. A 50 mg. dose of Benadryl given intravenously may suffice to stop the attack but Adrenalin (epinephrine) and/or Aminophylline (theophylline with ethylenediamine) are usually more effective. Adrenalin (1:1000) 0.3 cc. (5 minims) may be given intramuscularly

and repeated at 15 minute intervals or if the attack is persistent and seems to be intractable a dose of 1 cc. of a 1:10,000 concentration may be given slowly intravenously. However, Aminophylline 7½ gr. (450 mg.) given slowly intravenously in the adult is the author's drug of choice—it often produces dramatic relief in asthmatic conditions refractory to Adrenalin.¹⁵ Rapid injection may produce unpleasant side effects such as flushing, palpitation and at times even syncope and collapse. A similar dose of Aminophylline may be repeated in 15 to 30 minutes. If it is more convenient to use the intravenous drip method 15 gr. (900 mg.) may be dissolved in 1000 cc. of fluid usually 5% dextrose in distilled water and dripped rapidly at first until the asthmatic breathing ceases then slowed to a maintenance drip.

Hypotension.—A fall in blood pressure with an associated hypoxia may occur by itself in allergic conditions or it may accompany "clinical anaphylactic shock." It should be corrected immediately by intravenously administered vasoconstrictor drugs (see Chapter 15 page 117 for specific therapy).

Laryngeal Edema.—Laryngeal edema may result in the occasional case and if severe intubation or tracheotomy may be necessary to obviate respiratory obstruction and prevent oxygen want. However if angioneurotic edema is treated immediately, laryngeal edema is less likely to occur.

Clinical Anaphylactic Shock.—Shock of this type seldom occurs but when it does treatment is the same as for a severe systemic reaction from a high blood level of a local anesthetic drug (see Chapter 1, pages 23 to 28 for specific therapy). In addition if an allergy to a local anesthetic drug is thought to have caused this reaction, antihistaminic drugs intravenously in the doses noted above may prove valuable. Death is not unusual in this type of reaction but with the rapid institution of therapy some fatalities may be avoided. Treatment should include artificial respiration with high concentrations of oxygen intravenous fluids vasoconstrictor agents and manual systole. In these cases hypoxia is probably responsible for the convulsions,

tion from the respiratory or gastric mucosa the clinical response may be seen in any or all of the shock tissues and not localized to the point of entrance as it is with a contact type dermatitis (see Chapter 14 page 127)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of allergy to a local anesthetic drug requiring immediate therapy are reflected by one or more of the following: generalized angioneurotic edema, urticaria, pruritis, hypotension, joint pains, asthmatic breathing, nausea and vomiting and occasionally "clinical anaphylactic shock."^{1, 9, 10, 11} It must be remembered that when angioneurotic edema occurs it may involve the larynx and its associated structures with resultant severe respiratory obstruction. In DeBolt and Fox's¹¹ own series of over 1600 intravenous procaine treatments in 300 patients there were only three allergic reactions and these were characterized by "nurse wheezing and shortness of breath." To date allergic reactions of this nature have not been seen at the Mason Clinic.

The administration of infinitesimal amounts of local anesthetic solutions, e.g., raising of a skin wheal prior to insertion of large needles may on rare occasions be followed by "clinical anaphylactic shock." Shock of this type is usually characterized by a sudden cardiovascular and respiratory collapse which if not adequately treated may be fatal in 1 to 5 minutes. Equally infrequent is a systemic allergic reaction resulting from the small dosages of local anesthetic drugs required for spinal anesthesia. However, Nowill¹⁷ reports a case of convulsion following the administration of a spinal anesthetic of 17 mg of Pontocaine. He and Stephen¹⁸ believe that this reaction signified a true allergy to the drug.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis is at best not very satisfactory in allergy. It consists of taking an adequate history and the performance of a number of time-consuming tests the results of which are often not significant.^{9, 16}

History—If the history is adequately taken it will prove to be the most valuable source of information but as Vaughan and Black⁹ point out, to be of value the allergic history must be painstakingly obtained. "An adequate history does not mean just asking the patient whether he has had a local anesthetic agent injected previously and whether or not any untoward effect had followed the circumstances under which the reaction occurred must be ascertained as well as the drug or drugs used. This is most important, as unpleasant reactions are often caused by high concentrations of vasoconstrictor agents. In addition to a personal history, reactions in other members of the family should be inquired into; such evidence might reveal an important clue since heredity often plays an important part in allergy."⁹

Skin Wheals, Lozenge Patch and Mucous Membrane Tests—Intradermal skin wheal tests and tests applied to the mucous membranes may occasionally prove whether or not the patient who is known to be markedly allergic to other substances will have an allergic reaction to the injection or topical application of a local anesthetic agent. But since these tests are time consuming and since serious allergic reactions are very infrequent the practicality of such tests prior to performing local analgesia for an operative procedure or for diagnostic and therapeutic blocks is questionable (see Chapter 1 page 21).

TREATMENT

Treatment consists of the following specific therapy of the signs and symptoms.

Angioneurotic Edema, Wheals (urticaria) and Pruritis (itching)—These are best treated by an antihistaminic drug such as Benadryl (diphenhydramine) orally and intravenously. The dosage for Benadryl is 50 mg administered either orally or slowly intravenously. This dosage may be repeated at 3 to 4 hour intervals as needed. Larger intravenous doses of Benadryl, i.e., 100 mg, should be used with caution as they are seldom of more therapeutic benefit and may result in nausea and vomiting, convulsions, cardiac irregularities.

Systemic Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs Used to Prolong the Effect of Local Anesthetic Drugs

As with the local anesthetic agents two main types of toxic reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs are usually recognized i.e. *systemic* and *local* toxic reactions. Local toxic tissue reactions from these drugs are discussed in Chapter 10 page 96.

Vasoconstrictor drugs are used in regional block procedures for primarily three purposes (1) to prolong the anesthetic effect (2) to prevent hypotension and (3) to correct hypotension. This chapter deals principally with the use of Adrenalin (epinephrine) to prolong the effect of local anesthetic drugs. However, much of the discussion concerning systemic toxic reactions to Adrenalin applies to any vasoconstrictor drug regardless of the purpose for which the drug was employed.

ETIOLOGY

Systemic toxic reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs may be the result of (1) an allergy to the drug or (2) a high blood level of the drug. It must be remembered when classifying systemic reactions that the amount of a drug tolerated by the majority of patients may be an overdosage in the minority of individuals i.e. hyperergy (see Chapter 1 page 8). Smaller doses of the drug may be used in this minority without untoward effects. Therefore when a systemic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug occurs it must not be assumed that it is due to an allergy for in most instances the reaction reflects an overdose.

Allergy—Allergic systemic toxic reactions to a drug have been defined as characterized by dermatitis angioneurotic edema urticaria

pruritis hypotension asthmatic breathing or "clinical anaphylactic shock." In over 8000 regional nerve block procedures (spinal and epidural blocks not included) performed at the Mason Clinic in which Adrenalin (epinephrine) has been used no such reaction has been observed. Bonica¹ who has performed an equally large number of blocks confirms the absence of this type of reaction from vasoconstrictor drugs. The literature reviewed is devoid of reports of such allergic reactions with the following two exceptions. Halle² has observed spasmodic sneezing (from 50 to 100 times) in a number of cases following introduction of Adrenalin into the nasal duct, either with a tampon or a spray and this complication might be considered an allergic type of reaction. Gordonoff and Steube³ have suggested that death or severe reactions after Novocain Adrenalin injections in two of their cases may be due to an allergic reaction to Adrenalin i.e. "clinical anaphylactic shock" as defined by Vaughan and Black⁴ in Chapter 1 page 7. However the 2 cases of Gordonoff and Steube³ are not convincing and are open to question. One patient was known to have a very labile cardiovascular system and in the other case the Novocain Adrenalin solution was given orally.

High Blood Level—While allergic reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs are rare reactions to a high blood level of these drugs are not infrequent when the usual recommended optimum dosages of these drugs are used in local anesthetic solutions. The blood level which a vasoconstrictor agent attains is directly related to the rates of absorption detoxification

therefore the convulsions should not be treated with an intravenous barbiturate initially since oxygenation alone may eliminate the convulsions. If a barbiturate is used in advisedly in this type of case, it adds further to the cerebral and respiratory depression of the patient. Should cardiac failure occur manual systole must be performed immediately (see Chapter 7 page 76).

COMMENT

Acute Delayed Systemic Allergic Reactions

—Two cases are recorded which were labeled as acute systemic allergic reactions and which did not occur for two or more hours after the local anesthetic drug gained entrance to the body.¹⁹ This type of an acute systemic allergic reaction if it is caused by an allergy is quite unusual because of the delayed onset.

The first case was that of a three year old child who ingested eight Nupercaine (dibucaine) lozenges i.e. a total dosage of 85 mg of the drug. Two hours after taking the lozenges she was comatose and cyanotic. A soft non pitting edema appeared on the face. The blood pressure was 60/40 and the pulse was slow. She was breathing four to five times a minute and her respirations were irregular and shallow. Subsequently this child died and autopsy revealed no apparent cause of death. The author stated that this amount of the drug would not ordinarily cause symptoms of importance in a child of this size and concluded that the soft non pitting edema was apparently a sign of an allergic reaction.

The second case also cited in the report of the above case occurred following the administration of a spinal anesthesia with Pontocaine (tetracaine hydrochloride). The patient also became comatose and exhibited generalized soft non pitting edema similar to that noted in the first case. No other information concerning the dosage or the signs and symptoms in this case was made available by the article. According to the author the second case "recovered with the help of parenteral cortisone after several days of a critical illness."

REFERENCES

1. SADOVE M S, WYANT G M, GUTTELSON L A and KRETCHEMER H L. Classification and Management of Reactions to Local Anesthetic Agents. *JAMA* 149 17 22 1952
2. CULLEN S C. *Anesthesia in General Practice*. Chicago: The Year Book Publishers 1946
3. BONICA J J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger 1953
4. MOORE D C. *Regional Block*. Springfield: Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
5. CHAFF L H and RUBINO C DE C. Allergy to Procaine Hydrochloride with Three Fatalities. *JAMA* 151 1185 1187 1953
6. RYAN E A and SHOULDRICE F E. Allergy and Procaine Hydrochloride. *JAMA* 152 154 1953
7. DAVIS H S and BRUCE SMITH R. Allergy and Procaine Hydrochloride. *JAMA* 152 477 1953
8. ADRIANI J. Some Practical Aspects of the Chemistry and Pharmacology of Local Anesthetic Drugs. *South M J* 39 143 149 1946
9. VAUGHAN W T and BLACK J H. *Practice of Allergy*. St Louis: C V Mosby Co 1945
10. GOODMAN L and GILMAN A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 2nd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co 1955
11. DEBOLD F F and FOX L A. Sensitivity to Intravenous Procaine. Three Case Reports. *Ann Allergy* 11 778 779 1953
12. WYNGAARDEN J B and SEEVERS M H. The Toxic Effects of Antihistaminic Drugs. *JAMA* 145 277 282 1951
13. LILLY F AND COMPANY. *De Re Medica* 1951
14. WARRINGTON W R, PASQUESTI T J, KULA S, SAVAGE R J and McCRAWLEY F L. Bupivacaine Hydrochloride Given Intravenously to Control Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting. *Surgery* 34 837 842 1953
15. DWYER C S. Immediate Untoward Reactions to Spinal Anesthesia. *Am J Surg* 81 172-177 1951
16. PESQUIN M M. Pitfalls of the Skin Test in Allergy. *JAMA* 157 820 823 1955
17. NOWELL W K. Convulsions Following Pontocaine Spinal Anesthesia. Report of a Case. *Anesthesiology* 10 231 233 1949
18. STEPHEN C R. How Safe is Spinal Anesthesia in Present Day Practice? *Canad Anaesth Soc J* 67 74 1954
19. McCLENNAN W U. Fatal Poisoning with Dibucaine Hydrochloride (Nuporal) Lozenges. Report of a Case with Autopsy. *JAMA* 158 585 1955

PROPHYLAXIS

In order to avoid a systemic toxic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug, the following pertinent points must be considered and evaluated when adding such a drug to a local anesthetic solution.

Indications for Use—Unless vasoconstrictor drugs are employed for a specific purpose, i.e. prolongation of anesthesia and/or reduction of the rate of absorption of the local anesthetic solution and/or a bloodless field they should be omitted from the local anesthetic solution. Adrean¹ states "I avoid the use of Adrenalin in solutions of local anesthetic drugs because the stimulation caused by epinephrine is often confused with the prodromal signs of a toxic reaction."

At the Mason Clinic a large percentage of the patients who are to have diagnostic and therapeutic blocks are treated as outpatients and it has become routine to omit the vasoconstrictor drug in these cases because systemic toxic reactions from a high blood level of these drugs are frequent even when less than the optimal recommended dose is used.

Drug of Choice—Many vasoconstrictor drugs are available but from the time Braun⁸ advocated the use of Adrenalin to date only Adrenalin (epinephrine) and to a lesser extent Cobefrin (corbital) and Neosynephrine (phenylephrine) have been found useful. The powerful peripheral vasoconstrictor drugs, i.e. Levophed (levaterenol) etc. should not be used for infiltration analgesia until they have undergone more extensive experimental study (see Chapter 15 page 150).

Optimum Concentrations—Bieter⁹ and Lester¹⁰ have shown that for the best results Adrenalin should be used in a final concentration of 1:200,000 i.e. 0.1 cc. of 1:1000 Adrenalin per 20 cc. of a local anesthetic solution. The optimal concentration of Cobefrin is 1:40,000 while that for Neosynephrine is 1:20,000.

At the Mason Clinic Adrenalin is the vasoconstrictor of choice for use in local anesthetic blocking solutions. It has been our experience that exceeding the dose of 0.20 to

0.25 cc. of 1:1000 Adrenalin at any one time causes the incidence of reactions even in those surgical patients who have received adequate premedication. Therefore we never exceed a dosage of 0.25 cc. of a 1:1000 solution of Adrenalin even though a dose of 100 to 150 cc. of the local anesthetic solution is employed for the block. Consequently the vasoconstrictor concentration of many of our solutions is below the optimal. However Pontocaine is our drug of choice for regional block procedures and even with concentrations of Adrenalin below the optimum level analgesia lasts from 4 to 6 hours. Likewise it has been found that if more than 2 mg. of Neosynephrine are injected into the body toxic reactions occur more frequently. Therefore irrespective of the amount of local anesthetic solution used the amount of Neosynephrine mixed with it never exceeds 2 mg. These dosages apply only to infiltration and nerve block procedures as it has been found that higher dosages may be used in the subarachnoid space without causing a high blood level of the drug. This is true probably because the blood supply to the spinal cord is relatively poor and is limited to small blood vessels which are immediately constricted by the vasoconstrictor drug, thereby automatically delaying rapid absorption.

The author has had no experience with Cobefrin and cannot elaborate further on its usage. It should be noted however that it is an effective synthetic vasoconstrictor which is supposed to cause fewer untoward reactions than Adrenalin, i.e. less palpitation, tachycardia, pallor, tremors, etc. Bieter⁹ and Hellyns and Towell¹¹ recommend it highly in concentrations of 1:20,000 to 1:80,000 depending on whether 2.0 or 0.5% Novocain is employed. However Tunter and Thronsdon¹² after a careful investigation of Cobefrin came to the conclusion that it did not have much to recommend it over Adrenalin and that local anesthetic solutions containing Adrenalin would be less likely to cause a fatal systemic reaction.

Method of Measuring—The dose of vasoconstrictor drugs to be used should be measured

and elimination of that drug and these are influenced by the following factors (1) toxicity of the drug (2) total weight of the drug injected (3) concentration of the drug in the anesthetic solution (4) vascularity of the area injected (5) inadvertent intravenous injections, (6) rapidity of onset of the vasoconstriction effect (7) rate of injection (8) the use of spreading agents (9) physical status of the patient and (10) environmental temperature. It will be noted that these factors are applicable to vasoconstrictor drugs and local anesthetic agents alike and since they are adequately reviewed in a previous chapter their discussion here is superfluous (see Chapter 1 pages 9 to 16).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Allergy to Vasoconstrictor Drugs—While local tissue reactions from sensitization to Adrenalin have been reported (see Chapter 10 page 96) proven cases of generalized systemic allergic reaction to vasoconstrictor drugs characterized by dermatitis urticaria and pruritis must be infrequent. Little concerning them appears in the literature.

High Blood Level of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—Most reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs result from an overdosage with a high blood level of the drug. These reactions are usually characterized in the healthy adult by palpitation, hypertension, tachycardia, fainting, tachypnea, respiratory difficulty, fear, anxiety, restlessness, apprehension, headache, nausea, vomiting, tremor, weakness, pallor and coldness of the skin. Of these palpitation and/or severe intolerable headache are almost pathognomonic of a high blood level of a vasoconstrictor drug and are perhaps the most frequent subjective symptoms of this type of reaction. Occasionally such a systemic reaction may precipitate a cerebral hemorrhage, a cardiac irregularity, a coronary occlusion or may aggravate the pain of an existing angina. In the psychoneurotic individual existing symptoms may be aggravated.

The signs and symptoms of a reaction to

vasoconstrictor drugs often resemble the early stages of a toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug i.e. stimulation of the central nervous system. This has led many clinicians to misinterpret them and blame the local anesthetic agent for the reaction rather than the true factor—the vasoconstrictor drug. At the Mason Clinic many patients have been encountered who had been told that they were "allergic" to local anesthetic agents because they had exhibited such signs and symptoms following local infiltration in a dentist's or another physician's office. After careful investigation of the circumstances in which the reaction occurred it was concluded that most of these reactions thought to be caused by the local anesthetic drug were in reality due to the vasoconstrictor drugs. Our conclusions have been further substantiated because we have not hesitated to block these patients with local anesthetic solutions containing either small amounts (0.2 to 0.25 cc or less) or no Adrenalin at all without complications. These cases do not prove that vasoconstrictor drugs should be omitted from local anesthetic solutions but stress the necessity of using proper doses of the drugs—not overdoses.

In addition to these usual signs and symptoms of toxic reactions to a vasoconstrictor drug an isolated report by Seltzer⁶ has attributed convulsions to an overdosage of Adrenalin. He believes the convulsions in the reported case were due to hyperventilation tetany produced by the stimulation effect of the drug on the patient's central nervous system. The dose of Adrenalin administered was 5 minims of a 1:1000 solution. The reaction was characterized by a rise in pulse rate from 80 to 140, a rise in blood pressure from 120 to 150, a rise in respiratory rate from 18 to 45, palpitation, choking sensation, dyspnea, weeping, pruritus and intermittent generalized tonic and clonic convulsions lasting from 30 to 90 seconds which recurred every 2 to 4 minutes. No headache followed the episode and carpopedal spasm, involuntary defecation and urination did not occur during the convulsions.

PROPHYLAXIS

In order to avoid a systemic toxic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug, the following pertinent points must be considered and evaluated when adding such a drug to a local anesthetic solution.

Indications for Use—Unless vasoconstrictor drugs are employed for a specific purpose, i.e. prolongation of anesthesia and/or reduction of the rate of absorption of the local anesthetic solution and/or a bloodless field they should be omitted from the local anesthetic solution. Adremin states "I avoid the use of Adrenalin in solutions of local anesthetic drugs because the stimulation caused by epinephrine is often confused with the prodromal signs of a toxic reaction."

At the Mason Clinic a large percentage of the patients who are to have diagnostic and therapeutic blocks are treated as outpatients and it has become routine to omit the vasoconstrictor drug in these cases because systemic toxic reactions from a high blood level of these drugs are frequent even when less than the optimal recommended dose is used.

Drug of Choice—Many vasoconstrictor drugs are available but from the time Braun⁸ advocated the use of Adrenalin to date only Adrenalin (epinephrine) and to a lesser extent Cobefrin (corbital) and Neosynephrine (phenylephrine) have been found useful. The powerful peripheral vasoconstrictor drugs, i.e. Levophed (levaterenol) etc. should not be used for infiltration analgesia until they have undergone more extensive experimental study (see Chapter 15 page 150).

Optimum Concentrations—Bieler⁹ and Leser¹⁰ have shown that for the best results Adrenalin should be used in a final concentration of 1:200,000, i.e. 0.1 cc of 1:1000 Adrenalin per 20 cc of a local anesthetic solution. The optimal concentration of Cobefrin is 1:40,000 while that for Neosynephrine is 1:20,000.

At the Mason Clinic Adrenalin is the vasoconstrictor of choice for use in local anesthetic blocking solutions. It has been our experience that exceeding the dose of 0.20 to

0.25 cc of 1:1000 Adrenalin at any one time raises the incidence of reactions even in those surgical patients who have received adequate premedication. Therefore we never exceed a dosage of 0.25 cc of a 1:1000 solution of Adrenalin even though a dose of 100 to 150 cc of the local anesthetic solution is employed for the block. Consequently the vasoconstrictor concentration of many of our solutions is below the optimal. However Pon-tocaine is our drug of choice for regional block procedures and even with concentrations of Adrenalin below the optimum level analgesia lasts from 4 to 6 hours. Likewise, it has been found that if more than 2 mg of Neosynephrine are injected into the body toxic reactions occur more frequently. Therefore irrespective of the amount of local anesthetic solution used the amount of Neosynephrine mixed with it never exceeds 2 mg. These dosages apply only to infiltration and nerve block procedures as it has been found that higher dosages may be used in the subarachnoid space without causing a high blood level of the drug. This is true probably because the blood supply to the spinal cord is relatively poor and is limited to small blood vessels which are immediately constricted by the vasoconstrictor drug thereby automatically delaying rapid absorption.

The author has had no experience with Cobefrin and cannot elaborate further on its usage. It should be noted however that it is an effective synthetic vasoconstrictor which is supposed to cause fewer untoward reactions than Adrenalin, i.e. less palpitation, tachycardia, pallor, tremors, etc. Bieler⁹ and Hellyis and Tovell¹¹ recommend it highly in concentrations of 1:20,000 to 1:80,000 depending on whether 2.0 or 0.5% Novocain is employed. However Tunker and Thronsdon¹² after a careful investigation of Cobefrin, came to the conclusion that it did not have much to recommend it over Adrenalin and that local anesthetic solutions containing Adrenalin would be less likely to cause a fatal systemic reaction.

Method of Measuring—The dose of vasoconstrictor drugs to be used should be measured

and elimination of that drug, and these are influenced by the following factors (1) toxicity of the drug (2) total weight of the drug injected (3) concentration of the drug in the anesthetic solution (4) vascularity of the area injected (5) inadvertent intravenous injections (6) rapidity of onset of the vasoconstriction effect (7) rate of injection (8) the use of spreading agents (9) physical status of the patient and (10) environmental temperature. It will be noted that these factors are applicable to vasoconstrictor drugs and local anesthetic agents alike and since they are adequately reviewed in a previous chapter their discussion here is superfluous (see Chapter 1, pages 9 to 16).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Allergy to Vasoconstrictor Drugs—While local tissue reactions from sensitization to Adrenalin have been reported (see Chapter 10, page 96) proven cases of generalized systemic allergic reaction to vasoconstrictor drugs characterized by dermatitis, urticaria and pruritis must be infrequent. Little concerning them appears in the literature.

High Blood Level of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—Most reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs result from an overdosage with a high blood level of the drug. These reactions are usually characterized in the healthy adult by palpitation, hypertension, tachycardia, fainting, tachypnea, respiratory difficulty, fear, anxiety, restlessness, apprehension, headache, nausea, vomiting, tremor, weakness, pallor and coldness of the skin. Of these palpitation and/or severe intolerable headache are almost pathognomonic of a high blood level of a vasoconstrictor drug and are perhaps the most frequent subjective symptoms of this type of reaction. Occasionally such a systemic reaction may precipitate a cerebral hemorrhage, a cardiac irregularity, a coronary occlusion or may aggravate the pain of an existing angina. In the psychoneurotic individual existing symptoms may be aggravated.

The signs and symptoms of a reaction to

vasoconstrictor drugs often resemble the early stages of a toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug i.e., stimulation of the central nervous system. This has led many clinicians to misinterpret them and blame the local anesthetic agent for the reaction rather than the true factor—the vasoconstrictor drug. At the Mason Clinic many patients have been encountered who had been told that they were "allergic to local anesthetic agents because they had exhibited such signs and symptoms following local infiltration in a dentist's or another physician's office. After careful investigation of the circumstances in which the reaction occurred it was concluded that most of these reactions thought to be caused by the local anesthetic drug were in reality due to the vasoconstrictor drugs. Our conclusions have been further substantiated because we have not hesitated to block these patients with local anesthetic solutions containing either small amounts (0.2 to 0.25 cc. or less) or no Adrenalin at all without complications. These cases do not prove that vasoconstrictor drugs should be omitted from local anesthetic solutions but stress the necessity of using proper doses of the drugs—not overdoses.

In addition to these usual signs and symptoms of toxic reactions to a vasoconstrictor drug an isolated report by Seltzer⁶ has attributed convulsions to an overdosage of Adrenalin. He believes the convulsions in the reported case were due to hyperventilation tetany produced by the stimulation effect of the drug on the patient's central nervous system. The dose of Adrenalin administered was 5 minims of a 1:1000 solution. The reaction was characterized by a rise in pulse rate from 80 to 140, a rise in blood pressure from 120 to 150, a rise in respiratory rate from 18 to 45, palpitation, choking sensation, dyspnea, weeping, panting and intermittent generalized tonic and clonic convulsions lasting from 30 to 90 seconds which occurred every 2 to 4 minutes. No headache followed the episode and carpopedal spasm, involuntary defecation and urination did not occur during the convulsions.

nitrate should not be administered in a closed system since a methemoglobinemia may result.⁶

Adrenolytic Drug—Chlorpromazine (Thorazine, Largactil, etc.) has been shown to depress the pressor action of Lætophed (nor epinephrine) and reverse the action of Adrenalin.¹⁴ Therefore a small intravenous dosage (5 to 10 mg.) may be administered when the signs and symptoms of a systemic reaction from a high blood level of Adrenalin do not subside in response to other therapy. Certainly its use should be considered if a massive dose of Adrenalin which may be fatal is injected inadvertently. If the desired effects from the small initial injection are not obtained additional 5 mg. dosages may be given at intervals of 15 minutes. It should be warned that a larger initial dosage of chlorpromazine (20 to 50 mg.) should not be given intravenously as it normally causes a precipitous fall in blood pressure which may respond only to a rapid intravenous drip of Lætophed or Neo synephrine.

COMMENT

Cardiac Arrhythmias—It has been noted in Chapter I, page 17 that irregularities in cardiac rate and rhythm may occur following the administration of local anesthetic solutions and that they may be caused by the anesthetic drug. It must, therefore, be emphasized that when epinephrine or "epinephrine like" substances are incorporated in these solutions an irregularity may develop that may be due to the vasoconstrictor drug not to the local anesthetic agent. The type of irregularity usually seen in these cases is a coupling of premature auricular contractions with a normal sinus beat. This is not due to any action on the A-V node or the conductive system of the heart but is caused by an irrita-

bility of the auricle which discharges just after the refractory period of the S-A node.¹

REFERENCES

1. BOSICA, J. J. Personal Communications.
2. HALL, E. Idiosynkrasie gegen Nebennierenpräparate. *Ztschr. Laryng. Rhin.* 19:415-418, 1930.
3. GORDONOFF, T. and SEIFERT, P. Lokalanästhesie und ihre Gefahren. *Schweiz. Monatsschr. Zahn Heilkunde* 56:123, 1946.
4. NAUCHIAN, W. T. and BLACK, J. H. *Practice of Allergy*, 2nd Ed. St. Louis: C. V. Mosby Company, 1948.
5. GOODMAN, I. and GILMAN, A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 2nd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co., 1955.
6. SIEFFERT, A. Convulsions Following Epinephrine. Report of a Case. *Ann. Allergy* 6:151-153, 210, 1948.
7. ADRIANS, J. Some Practical Aspects of the Chemistry and Pharmacology of Local Anesthetic Drugs. *South. M. J.* 39:143-149, 1946.
8. BRAUN, H. *Local Anesthesia*, 3rd Ed. Translated by P. Shields. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1914.
9. BITTER, R. N. Applied Pharmacology of Local Anesthetics. *Am. J. Surg.* 34:500-510, 1936.
10. LESER, A. J. Duration of Local Anesthesia in Relation to Concentrations of Procaine and Epinephrine. *Anesthesiology* 1:205-207, 1940.
11. HELLIJAS, C. S. and TOVELL, R. M. Trends in Regional Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 9:400-417, 1948.
12. TAINTER, M. L. and THOMPSON, A. H. Influence of Vasoconstrictors on the Toxicity of Procaine Anesthetic Solutions. *J. Am. Dent. A.* 25:966-979, 1938.
13. Astra Pharmaceutical Product, Inc. Direction Brochure. Section entitled: Directions for Use, 1954.
14. FOSTER, C. A., O'MULLANE, E. J., GASKELL, P. and CHURCHILL DAVISON, H. C. Chlorpromazine: A Study of Its Action on the Circulation in Man. *Lancet* 2:614-617, 1954.
15. CLEVELAND, F. E. Cardiologist, Mason Clinic. Personal Communications.

ured accurately with either a 2 to 3 cc syringe or a tuberculin syringe. There is a wide difference in dropper shapes and outlets and the measuring of these solutions by the drop method is to be condemned unless the dropper is calibrated.

Use Small Ampules—Because of deterioration small ampules of vasoconstrictor drugs should be used rather than large rubber stoppered bottles, and they should be opened as needed. Adrenalin and Neosynephrine are particularly liable to decompose when exposed to air for a period of time. Solutions of Adrenalin and Neosynephrine are normally clear and colorless; if they are pink, brownish red and/or turbid they are deteriorating and should be discarded.

Avoid Prepared Local Anesthetic Solutions Containing Adrenalin—Solutions containing Adrenalin may be purchased directly from pharmaceutical houses and they usually contain relatively high concentrations of Adrenalin to prolong analgesia. This type of solution in addition to causing a high number of systemic toxic reactions from the vasoconstrictor drugs may actually be responsible for the tissue irritation which can follow the use of *Lidocaine* and *Novocain* and which is apparently due to metal ions that the blocking solution releases from regional block equipment (see Chapter 10, page 94 and Chapter 11, page 114).¹³

TREATMENT

It should be again stressed that generalized systemic allergic reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs seldom if ever occur. Therefore the treatment of systemic reactions outlined is follows, is limited to the treatment of *over dosage* of the drug.

Treatment of systemic toxic reactions to vasoconstrictor drugs should fit the severity of the signs and symptoms. In many instances the reaction is minor and justifies no therapy other than watchful waiting. Nevertheless the patient must be carefully watched because as noted previously the early signs and

symptoms of a systemic toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug may closely resemble those of a reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug. Should a severe systemic toxic reaction to either agent ensue in a patient not being carefully observed, death may result.

Usually a careful check of the blood pressure, pulse and respiration will give a good clue as to the type of reaction. If the blood pressure is elevated and remains so and the characteristic signs and symptoms of a reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug become prominent, the following therapy should be instituted.

Oxygen by Bag and Mask—If the patient is particularly apprehensive oxygen administered by bag and mask may relieve his dyspnea, restlessness, palpitation and other minor complaints. If on the other hand the reaction becomes severe administration of oxygen is a necessity to supply the increased oxygen demand of the body which results from over stimulation.

Intravenous Barbiturates—If the administration of oxygen alone does not calm the patient small intravenous doses of short acting barbiturates i.e. 50 mg of sodium Pentothal (thiopental) or Nembutal (pentobarbital) at 2 minute intervals may produce enough sedation without loss of consciousness to quiet the patient and keep him comfortable until the reaction has passed. Usually this type of barbiturate therapy will reduce the hypertension and thereby relieve the severe headache which is associated with high blood pressure. On rare occasions it may be necessary to give these drugs continuously over a period of 2 to 3 hours and keep the patient lightly asleep.

Vasodilator Drugs—Should the hypertension persist *amyl nitrite* by inhalation, *nitroglycerin* 0.5 mg sublingually or intravenous *Aminophylline* 225 mg (3/4 gr) may be necessary to lower the blood pressure to normal limits. This is important in those patients particularly the elderly ones in whom prolonged vasoconstriction may result in a coronary occlusion, cerebral vascular accident, cardiac dilatation or cardiac failure. *Amyl*

from overstimulation for primary oxygen want is correct.

Systemic Toxic Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs—Following local infiltration and peripheral nerve blocks where excessive amounts of vasoconstrictor drugs are employed in the local anesthetic solution an increase in the metabolic processes of the body cells may result in a demand hypoxia. An identical situation may be created by a prophylactic dose of a vasoconstrictor agent given before a spinal or epidural block.

Pneumothorax—Following inadvertent trauma to the parietal or pulmonary pleura and/or the lung parenchyma the lung or part of it, may collapse and oxygen want ensue. This would be classified as alveolar hypoxia.

Overflow of Solution onto Nerves Other Than Those To Be Blocked—When performing regional block procedures particularly those of the head and neck it is not uncommon to block nerves other than those to be anesthetized. In most instances when local anesthetic solutions are employed such an overflow creates no problem and requires no

treatment. However at times resuscitative measures such as artificial respiration and maintaining blood pressure must be instituted until the drug's action has worn off.

On the other hand if overflow occurs with the use of long acting blocking agents i.e. neurolytic agents a serious problem may be created which may necessitate prolonged hospitalization and additional medical care to prevent oxygen want and death. Few suits which may result from this are discussed in Chapter 12 page 119. Treatment in these cases is only symptomatic and must be carried out until the nerve regenerates which may take six months to one year. However occasionally the sequelae of the complication may be permanent—a fact which only time will reveal.

The nerve or nerves which may be commonly inadvertently blocked and the block of which may result in primary oxygen want from overflow of the anesthetic solution are

The Phrenic Nerve—The phrenic nerve is paralyzed in a relatively large number of patients receiving a brachial plexus block or

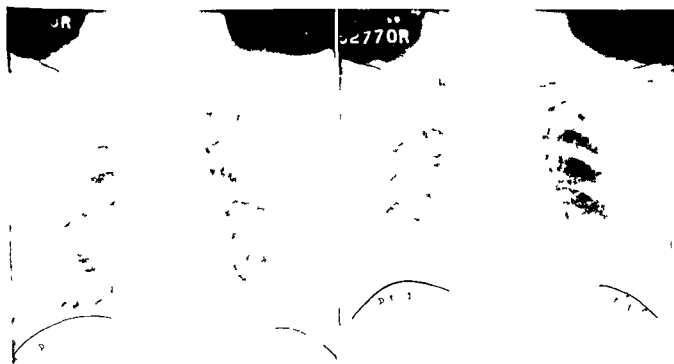


Figure 6. Bilateral phrenic block following a bilateral brachial block in this 75 year old patient presented the signs and symptoms of acute oxygen want because of the marked emphysema. His distress lasted six hours until the block dissipated itself. During this time an oxygen tent was necessary. Left Chest x-ray previous to surgery. Right Chest x-ray two hours postoperatively. Note the bilateral elevation of the diaphragm.

Primary Oxygen Want and Hypotension

Oxygen want and hypotension following local infiltration and peripheral nerve block are *seldom* encountered unless systemic toxic reactions to the local anesthetic drug or a systemic toxic reaction to the vasoconstrictor drug or a pneumothorax ensues. In such cases if the oxygen want goes untreated a hypotension results i.e. the oxygen want is

the principal cause of the hypotension. This sequence of events is opposite to that which usually follows an inadvertent or purposely administered spinal and epidural block where in the authors opinion the hypotension is usually primary and the oxygen want is secondary (see Table VI page 46)

TABLE V

CLASSIFICATION OF HYPONIA (OXYGEN WANT)
(After Saklad¹)

Types	Definition
ATMOSPHERIC HYPONIA	reduction in the availability of oxygen to the tissue because of a diminution in the partial pressure of oxygen in the inhaled atmosphere
TIDAL HYPONIA	decrease in oxygen uptake by tissue because of a decreased respiratory exchange
ALVEOLAR HYPONIA	decrease in the number or efficiency of functioning alveoli
HEMOGLOBIC HYPONIA	the total load of oxygen is reduced in proportion to the reduction in hemoglobin content as in hemorrhage or to a reduction in the amount of available hemoglobin as in carbon monoxide poisoning
STAGNANT HYPONIA	result of slowed circulation
HISTOTOXIC HYPONIA	utilization of oxygen by the cells is interfered with
DEMAND HYPONIA	metabolic conditions in which the bodily requirements for oxygen are elevated above normal

ETIOLOGY

The types of oxygen want which may occur are found in Table V page 42 and their definitions should be clearly in mind. The etiological factors of primary oxygen want following local infiltration and peripheral nerve block analgesia are

Systemic Toxic Reactions to the Local Anesthetic Drug—In this type of reaction from a pharmacological standpoint at least the reaction is primarily due to a depression of the respiratory center after overstimulation (see Chapter 1 page 16).² But the depressing action reported of most local anesthetic agents on the cardiovascular system proposes the question: Are not some of these reactions due to the direct depression of this system or perhaps to a combination of this and depression of the respiratory center in the medulla (see Chapter 1 page 16)?

The hypoxia following this type of reaction would be classified as either tidal (depression of the respiratory center) or stagnant (depression of the cardiovascular system) or a combination of the two. Although further research on this problem is needed it must be assumed for the time being that the current theory of depression of the respiratory center

the Accessory Nerves and Fibers of the Sympathetic Nervous System—Blocks of all these nerves may follow an attempt to block any one of them as they emerge from the cranium via the jugular foramen where they all lie in close approximation (see Figure 7, page 14). When a unilateral block of these nerves results at this site no problem occurs other than hoarseness and an occasional tickle in the throat from paralysis of the vagus nerve. The trapezius muscle and one half the tongue are also blocked at the same time but this will not entail serious consequences.

On the other hand bilateral block of all these nerves results in complete anesthesia of the pharynx larynx and the tongue. This may allow the tongue to fall into the pharynx and/or the vocal cords to adduct. Either or both of these may occlude the airway. This complication is classified as a tidal hypoxia.

Premedication—Excessive premedication with barbiturates or the opiates may result in tidal hypoxia from depressed respirations.

Contributing Factors—Often regional blocks are chosen for the patient with a poor physical status who has a chronic hypoxia from diseases such as tuberculosis (alveolar hypoxia), emphysema (tidal and alveolar hypoxia), anemia (hemoglobin hypoxia), and hyperthyroidism or hyperparathyroidism (demand hypoxia). It has also been the anesthesia of choice at high altitudes (atmospheric hypoxia) and in patients with drug poisoning (histotoxic hypoxia) because of the difficulties involved in administration of inhalation anesthetics under these circumstances. When administering a regional block to a patient in any of these circumstances it must be realized that any hypoxia caused by the anesthetic procedure itself will automatically accentuate the pre-existing chronic tissue hypoxia and may result in acute respiratory distress.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

When severe acute *primary* oxygen want develops from a systemic toxic reaction, an obstruction of the pharynx or larynx or damage to the pulmonary parenchyma of both

lungs the cortical and respiratory signs and symptoms are the same as those seen when hypoxia is secondary to hypotension due to paralysis of portions of the sympathetic nervous system following an inadvertent or purposely administered spinal or epidural block. However, the appearance of the patient and the cardiovascular signs and symptoms differ (see Table VI, page 16).

Cortical Manifestations—The cortical signs and symptoms of oxygen want are the same regardless of the etiology (see Chapter 17, page 160). Following local and peripheral nerve block they may progress from one to another more rapidly than following a purposely administered spinal or epidural block.

Respiratory Manifestations—Regardless of the cause, the manifestations of respiratory insufficiency are the same (see Chapter 17, page 161).

Cardiovascular Manifestations—When primary oxygen want develops a rise in the blood pressure and pulse rate may be noted immediately if a recording is taken. But such a check is usually not made since requisite help is not available or the physician is nonchalant about regional block procedures particularly local infiltration. Thus by the time a check is made the blood pressure may still be elevated but the pulse, slow, full and bounding. This kind of situation may fool the physician but the diagnosis should not be missed particularly where there appear other signs of *primary* oxygen want, i.e. respiratory distress and cyanosis. This type of oxygen want is the opposite of the type which develops following spinal or epidural block where the pulse is rapid the blood pressure low and no cyanosis develops.

Appearance of the Patient—Early in primary oxygen want the body is deprived of oxygen but circulation is not markedly altered therefore marked cyanosis appears and should serve as a warning to the physician that all is not well. The two exceptions to this in local infiltration and peripheral nerve block are the oxygen want which develops following the administration of a vasoconstrictor drug and that which occurs in the patient with a severe

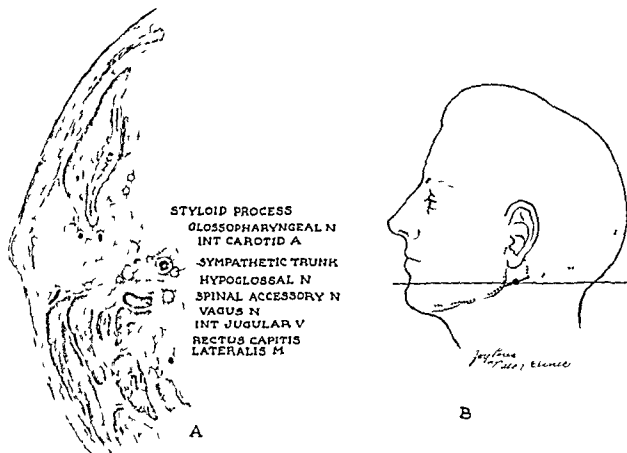


Figure 7 (A) Cross section showing anatomy of the glossopharyngeal nerve the hypoglossal nerve the vagus nerve the accessory nerve and the fibers of the cervical portion of the sympathetic nervous system. Their close proximity to each other is responsible for the block of all when an attempt to block any single one is made. (B) Level of cross section.

other regional blocks of the neck e.g. superficial or deep cervical blocks.^{4,8} Hartel and Keppler³ and Shaw⁴ found that a large number of patients (15 of 17 and 12 of 15 respectively) who had brachial plexus blocks developed a paralysis of the phrenic nerve which could be demonstrated by roentgen studies. This is of little significance provided the block is unilateral and the parenchyma of the lungs and/or the muscles of respiration are not markedly affected by other diseases. However if a bilateral block is performed in an emphysematous patient and both phrenic nerves are paralyzed by overflow of the solution, acute hypoxia (alveolar and/or tidal) may develop. One such case has been seen at the Mason Clinic in which the patient needed continuous oxygen administration by bag and mask in surgery and by tent on re-

turn to his room until the block dissipated itself (see Figure 6 page 43). This type of oxygen want would be classified as a tidal hypoxia.

Bilateral Paralysis of the Vagus or Recurrent Laryngeal Nerves—Block of the vagus or recurrent laryngeal nerves may occur during bilateral nerve blocks of the neck particularly superficial deep cervical blocks and stellate ganglion blocks. If these nerves are blocked unilaterally usually no respiratory difficulty other than hoarseness occurs. However if blocked bilaterally acute oxygen want from adduction of the vocal cords may develop necessitating intubation for the duration of the pharmacological action of the drug. This is a tidal hypoxia.

Bilateral Paralysis of the Glossopharyngeal Nerve Vagus Nerve the Hypoglossal Nerve

PROPHYLAXIS AND TREATMENT

Following an attempt to perform a bilateral block of the vagus nerves, the glossopharyngeal nerves or the hypoglossal nerves individually at or immediately distal to the foramen ovale paralysis of all three nerves usually ensues regardless of the care with which block of one of these nerves is performed. The proximity of these nerves to each other usually precludes prophylactic steps to avoid this overflow (see Figure 7 page 44). Treatment of the oxygen want which results from bilateral block of all three of these nerves requires the insertion of an oral airway or an endotracheal tube to avoid hypoxia. The prophylaxis and treatment of oxygen want from the other stated causes vary with the cause and are considered elsewhere in this book (see Chapters 1 and 2 pages 19 and 34 Chapter 3 page 39 and Chapter 6 page 62).

COMMENT

Asthmatic Attacks Following Block of the Cervicothoracic Portion of the Sympathetic Nervous System—Cases of asthmatic attacks following block of the cervicothoracic portion of the sympathetic nervous system (stellate ganglion block) have appeared in the literature and such attacks would probably cause primary oxygen want.

Etiology—The exact action of the autonomic nervous system on the bronchi and bronchioles has not been definitely established and it is possible that blocking the sympathetic system allows the parasympathetic fibers to become overactive thus precipitating an asthmatic attack.⁶ On the other hand stellate ganglion block has been effectively employed to stop status asthmaticus.⁷ Therefore it must be concluded that the etiology is unknown.

In some cases that develop this complication the history may reveal a hereditary allergic tendency. A true allergy to the blocking agent itself and the consequent liberation of histamine may also be responsible for such an asthmatic attack.

Signs and Symptoms—Orthopnea, cyanosis,

expiratory wheezing and hyperpnea occur. The veins of the neck and face may become engorged.

Treatment—In addition to oxygen by bag and mask, 1 cc of a 1:1000 Adrenalin solution diluted in 5 cc of normal saline and slowly given intravenously or 1/2 cc of a 1:1000 Adrenalin solution given intramuscularly may stop the attack. If Adrenalin does not halt the attack, Aminophylline 7 1/2 gr (450 mgm) to 15 gr (900 mg) given slowly intravenously usually will do so. Rapid intravenous administration of Aminophylline (theophylline with ethylenediamine) may lead to cardiovascular collapse. These amounts of Aminophylline may be placed in 1,000 cc of a 5% dextrose in distilled water solution and given by the intravenous drip method. Should the attack be caused by a true systemic allergic reaction to the local anesthetic drug then Benadryl may be of marked value (see Chapter 2, page 35 for specific dosage).

REFERENCES

1. SAKLAD M. *Inhalation Therapy and Resuscitation* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
2. GOODMAN L and GILMAN A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Co 1953
3. HARTEL F and KEFFLER W. Erfahrungen über die Kulenkampffsche Anasthesie des Plexus brachialis unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Neben- und Nacherscheinungen. *Arch. Klin. Chir.*, 103:1-43 1913
4. SHAW W M. Paralysis of the Phrenic Nerve During Brachial Plexus Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 10:627-628 1949
5. ORKIN L R, PAPPER E M and ROVENSTINE E A. The Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks. *Stellate Ganglion Block*. *J Thoracic Surg* 20:911-922 1950
6. WHITE J C, SMITHWICK R H and SIMEONE F A. *The Autonomic Nervous System* New York Macmillan Co 1953
7. MOORE D C. *Stellate Ganglion Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
8. DIJONER K, MOBERG E and ÖNNE L. Paresis of the Phrenic Nerve during Brachial Plexus Block. Analgesia and Its Importance. *Acta chirurgica Scandinavica* 109:53-57 1955

anemia. In the first situation the patient may appear pale because vasoconstriction produced by the vasoconstrictor drug prevents the reduced hemoglobin from reaching the skin capillaries. In the latter instance i.e. anemia there may not be enough circulating hemoglobin. Let us stress that 5 gms of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood must be present before cyanosis is apparent. If a patient has an advanced anemia or has hemorrhaged severely and as a result has only 5 gm

of hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood cyanosis cannot appear.

Cardiac Failure and Death—Should the physician not recognize the complication blood pressure will fall the pulse will become imperceptible and shock and cardiac failure may ensue. Severe hypotension is a late and poor prognostic sign of primary oxygen want and it usually occurs only if the complication goes unrecognized too long or is inadequately treated.

TABLE VI

COMPARISON OF OXYGEN WANT IN REGIONAL BLOCK

TYPE OF BLOCK RESPONSIBLE	PRIMARY OXYGEN WANT	SECONDARY OXYGEN WANT
	<i>Local infiltration Peripheral nerve block</i>	<i>Spinal block Epidural block</i>
ETIOLOGY	I Obstruction of the respiratory tract (tidal hypoxia) —It results from paralysis of nerves to pharynx larynx and tongue	I Hypotension (stagnant hypoxia) —This is the principal cause initially and results from dilatation of peripheral vascular system
	II Nonfunctioning alveoli (tidal hypoxia) —It results from pneumothorax and emphysema	II Paralysis of muscles of respiration (tidal hypoxia) —As the level of anesthesia rises paralysis of intercostal and phrenic nerves increases oxygen want
	III Depression of respiratory center (tidal hypoxia) —It results from systemic reaction to local anesthetic drug	
	IV Increased metabolism (demand hypoxia) —It results from systemic reaction to vasoconstrictor drug	
SIGNS and SYMPTOMS		
	<i>Cortical Manifestations</i>	Same
	<i>Respiratory Manifestations</i>	Same
	<i>Cardiovascular Manifestations*</i>	
	Blood Pressure	Low
	Pulse	Initially rapid Later very rapid almost imperceptible weak
	Appearance	Cadaveric

* As cardiac failure and death approach, blood pressure and pulse disappear in both types of oxygen want.

† For cyanosis to appear at least 5 gm of reduced hemoglobin must be present per 100 cc of blood. Two conditions which may prevent cyanosis are: (1) increased metabolism from anesthetic to drug (blood does not have time to pick up the reduced hemoglobin) and (2) an anemic patient (anemic patient has only 5 gms of red cell hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood).

TROPHYANIS AND TREATMENT

Following an attempt to perform a bilateral block of the vagus nerves, the glossopharyngeal nerves or the hypoglossal nerves individually at or immediately distal to the foramen ovale paralysis of all three nerves usually ensues regardless of the care with which block of one of these nerves is performed. The proximity of these nerves to each other usually precludes prophylactic steps to avoid this overflow (see Figure 7, page 44). Treatment of the oxygen want which results from bilateral block of all three of these nerves requires the insertion of an oral airway or an endotracheal tube to avoid hypoxia. The prophylaxis and treatment of oxygen want from the other stated causes vary with the cause and are considered elsewhere in this book (see Chapters 1 and 2, pages 19 and 34; Chapter 3, page 39; and Chapter 6, page 62).

COMMENT

Asthmatic Attacks Following Block of the Cervicothoracic Portion of the Sympathetic Nervous System.—Cases of asthmatic attacks following block of the cervicothoracic portion of the sympathetic nervous system (stellate ganglion block) have appeared in the literature and such attacks would probably cause primary oxygen want.

Pathology.—The exact action of the autonomic nervous system on the bronchi and bronchioles has not been definitely established and it is possible that blocking the sympathetic system allows the parasympathetic fibers to become overactive, thus precipitating an asthmatic attack.⁶ On the other hand stellate ganglion block has been effectively employed to stop status asthmaticus.⁷ Therefore it must be concluded that the etiology is unknown.

In some cases that develop this complication the history may reveal a hereditary allergic tendency. A true allergy to the blocking agent itself and the consequent liberation of histamine may also be responsible for such an asthmatic attack.

Signs and Symptoms.—Orthopnea, cyanosis,

expiratory wheezing, and hyperpnea occur. The veins of the neck and face may become engorged.

Treatment.—In addition to oxygen by bag and mask $\frac{1}{4}$ cc. of a 1:1000 Adrenalin solution diluted in 5 cc. of normal saline and slowly given intravenously or $\frac{1}{2}$ cc. of a 1:1000 Adrenalin solution given intramuscularly may stop the attack. If Adrenalin does not halt the attack Aminophylline 7½ gr. (450 mgm.) to 15 gr. (900 mg.) given slowly intravenously usually will do so. Rapid intravenous administration of Aminophylline (theophylline with ethylenediamine) may lead to cardiovascular collapse. These amounts of Aminophylline may be placed in 1000 cc. of a 5% dextrose in distilled water solution and given by the intravenous drip method. Should the attack be caused by a true systemic allergic reaction to the local anesthetic drug then Benadryl may be of marked value (see Chapter 2, page 35 for specific dosage).

REFERENCES

1. SAKLAD, M. *Inhalation Therapy and Resuscitation*. Springfield, Illinois: Charles C. Thomas Publisher, 1953.
2. GOODMAN, L. and GILMAN, A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 2nd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co., 1955.
3. HARTEL, I. and KFFELER, W. Erfahrungen über die Kulenkampffsche Anästhesie des Plexus brachialis unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Neben- und Nacherscheinungen. *Arch. klin. Chir.* 103:143, 1913.
4. SHAW, W. M. Paralysis of the Phrenic Nerve During Brachial Plexus Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 10:627-629, 1919.
5. ORLIN, L. R., PATTER, E. M. and ROVENSTINE, F. A. The Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks. *Stellate Ganglion Block*. *J. Thoracic Surg.* 20:911-922, 1950.
6. WHITE, J. C., SMITHWICK, R. H. and SIMEONE, F. A. *The Autonomic Nervous System*. New York: Macmillan Co., 1953.
7. MOORE, D. C. *Stellate Ganglion Block*. Springfield, Illinois: Charles C. Thomas Publisher, 1954.
8. DIRINGER, K., MOBERG, E. and ONNE, L. Paresis of the Phrenic Nerve during Brachial Plexus Block: Analgesia and Its Importance. *Acta chirurg. scandinav.* 109:53-57, 1955.

High and/or Total Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block Following Peripheral Nerve Block

HIGH or total spinal anesthesia may result as a sequel of the following peripheral nerve blocks (1) paravertebral sympathetic or somatic nerves in the cervical thoracic, lumbar or sacral area (2) the brachial plexus (3) the gasserian (semilunar) ganglion and (4) branches of the trigeminal nerve. In most of these instances a dosage of the local anesthetic agent is injected into the subarachnoid space which any physician would agree is massive i.e. too great a volume and concentration. The seriousness of this complication lies in the fact that it occurs when least expected and may go unrecognized. While this complication does not occur frequently it is by no means rare.

ETIOLOGY

The incidence of the high or total spinal from an inadvertent or accidental spinal injection while performing a peripheral nerve block is difficult to ascertain from the reports in the literature which with a few exceptions mention the problem and warn of its possibility but go no further (see Table VII page 49).

The reason for a high or total spinal following a gasserian ganglion block is no mystery the dura or the capsule of the gasserian ganglion has been punctured. On the other hand following a peripheral nerve block while the block itself is obviously the initial cause of this complication the question as to how the drug gained entrance to the subarachnoid space is not always easily answered i.e. did the drug get inside the dura via an incorrectly

directed needle a long cuff of dura or the perineural spaces?

Incorrectly Directed Needle—The possibility of the direct placement of a local anesthetic solution inside the dura by an inadvertent *lateral spinal puncture* while performing a paravertebral block must always be kept in mind. Although certain anatomical abnormalities may facilitate such placement it is usually caused by too acute a lateral slant of the needle so that the needle passes between the neural arches or through an intervertebral foramen and punctures the dura (see Figure 8 page 50).

Extension of Dural Cuffs Beyond the Intervertebral Foramina—In most instances, the dura and arachnoid fuse with the epineurium of the nerve at or proximal to the intervertebral foramina. However on occasion the dura may extend past the foramen before this fusion takes place.^{3, 6, 8} During myelography we have occasionally noted that the Pantopaque may rapidly pass down what appears to be a long cuff of dura, particularly in the lumbar and sacral areas (see Figure 9 page 50). If such a lateral prolongation of the dura accompanies a nerve being blocked paravertebrally and particularly if paresthesias are sought a subdural injection is possible. Bonica⁹ told the author of a case in which he was performing a brachial block using the supraclavicular approach after eliciting paresthesias and injecting some of the anesthetic solution spinal fluid was aspirated. Brittingham, Berlin and Wolff⁸ state that "An almost unavoidable hazard of paravertebral nerve

block is an inadvertent injection of the agent used into the subarachnoid space. This probably occurs because of an outward prolongation of the subarachnoid space or in other instances because of movement of the patient and tearing of the tissue after the needle is in place."

Spread to the Central Nervous System and the Spinal Fluid via the Perineural Space Following Intraneural Paravertebral Injections—A review of the anatomy of the spinal

cord particularly its coverings and their relationship to the coverings of peripheral nerves shows that the perineural spaces of the peripheral nerves distal to the intervertebral foramina are continuous with the perineural spaces of the nerve roots proximal to the intervertebral foramina. Therefore they are potential spaces by which fluids injected into them may spread central to the spinal cord and the spinal fluid (see Figure 10 page 51)^{9 10}

TABLE VII

REPORTED INCIDENCE OF HIGH OR TOTAL SPINAL ANESTHESIA FOLLOWING
INADVERTENT INJECTION OF LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENTS SUBARACHNOIDALLY

<i>Block</i>	<i>Author</i>	<i>Percentage</i>
Stellate Ganglion Block	Orkin, Papper and Roventine ¹	4 in 186 blocks = 2.2%
	Moore*	0 in 2,000 blocks (Recently 2 epidural blocks ensued)
	Bonica ²	1 in 2,300 blocks = 0.04%
Paravertebral Somatic or Sympathetic Block	Orkin, Papper and Roventine ¹	0 in 172 blocks (1 case spinal cord was traumatized by needle no solution was injected, see page 215)
	Mandl ³	0 in 2,000 blocks (In 5 cases spinal fluid was obtained no injection was made)
	Moore*	0 in 377 blocks
	White, Smithwick and Simeone ⁴	3 (Number of cases was not stated)
	Bonica ²	3 in 650 blocks = 0.46% (Spinal fluid was observed in 11 cases = 1.8% Needle was readjusted before injecting drug)
Brachial Block	Moore*	0 in 1,082 blocks
	Bonica ²	2 in 3,100 blocks = 0.06%
Cervical Block	Moore*	0 in 704 blocks
	Bonica ²	1 in 350 blocks = 0.3% (Death occurred within 5 minutes)
Cranial Nerve Block	Moore*	0 in 186 blocks
	Bonica ²	Cites 3 cases gives no percentage
Splanchnic (Celiac Plexus) Block	Moore*	0 in 1,535 blocks (In 6 cases spinal fluid was obtained Needle was readjusted before injecting drug)

* Author's series at Mason Clinic

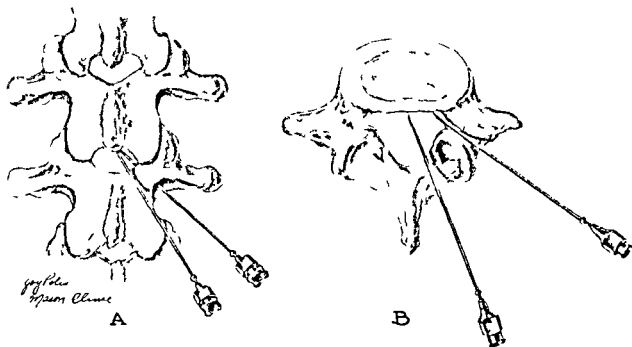


Figure 8 (A) Posterior view of needle entering subarachnoid space either via the space between neural arches or via the intervertebral foramen (B) Cross sectional view of same



Figure 9 Pantopaque in a long cuff of dura covering one of the nerves of the cauda equina. This movement of the Pantopaque occurred during myelography when the x ray table was tilted into the vertical position about 10 minutes after the subarachnoid injection of 3 cc of the radiopaque material

Research by Brierly and Field¹¹ and Key and Retzius¹ using radioactive phosphorus and India ink respectively showed that solutions injected into the peripheral nerves in the leg of an animal can later be detected in the spinal fluid and the parenchyma of the central nervous system. Other authors confirm this type of central spread.^{13, 14} Moore *et al*¹⁵ using solutions colored with methylene blue showed that when the lumbar and cervical nerves of monkeys were injected intraneurally 3 to 4 cm from the intervertebral foramen under direct vision the solution spread centrally immediately reaching the parenchyma of the spinal cord in 2 to 5 minutes (see Figure 11 page 52). We further observed that the spinal fluid did not immediately become tinged with the methylene blue. It required 10 to 15 minutes for the solution to pass through the pia mater and/or epineurium to stain the spinal fluid lightly but the spinal fluid did not become heavily stained for 35 to 40 minutes. Perhaps this latter observation throws light on the reason why the onset of a high spinal may be delayed following intraneural paravertebral injections.

Our studies we now believe, indicate that in a number of these cases the physician's placement of the needle was too accurate that is its point rested intraneurally, and that the solution actually spread centrally in the perineural spaces resulting in a high spinal.¹⁰ A case of Adams⁶ may represent such an injection.

"Case 2—A 35 year old white man had received stellate ganglion blocks three days in succession from a senior house officer. Procaine (1 percent) was injected by the anterior route for an injury of the upper arm involving the brachial artery. On the fourth day the block was assigned to a junior member of the house staff. After injecting 10 cc of procaine the operator left the patient to attend another patient. Several minutes later he was called back by the nurse because the patient was not "doing well."

The patient was cyanotic, pulseless and not breathing. Seven and one half grains of Sodium Amytal were administered intravenously on the premise that a procaine reaction had occurred. The patient did not respond. Manual artificial respiration was instituted by alternately compressing the thorax until a mechanical resuscitator was obtained. All attempts at resuscitation were futile. The operator recalled that while the procaine was being injected the patient complained of a headache. This is a significant observation which should have cast suspicion on the possibility of an intrathecal injection. Valuable time was wasted in administering Sodium Amytal before instituting artificial respiration. Furthermore the Sodium Amytal was not indicated in the absence of convulsive manifestations or excitement."

It is of interest to note that in discussing this case Adams *et al*⁶ stated "The fact that no spinal fluid is withdrawn on aspiration is

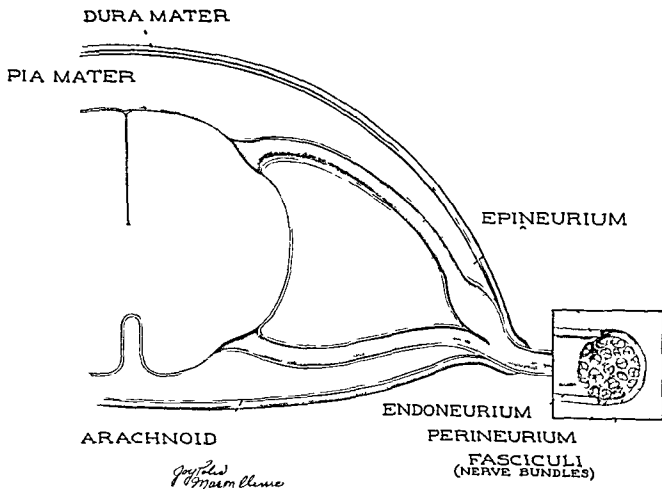


Figure 10 Cross section of the spinal cord. Note that the epineurium of the nerve is a continuation of the pia mater. This relationship essentially provides a pathway for fluid injected intraneurally to undergo centrad diffusion to reach the spinal cord. The interstices between nerve bundles (fasciculi) are filled with connective tissue called perineurium which are potential avenues for retrograde diffusion of materials injected intraneurally.

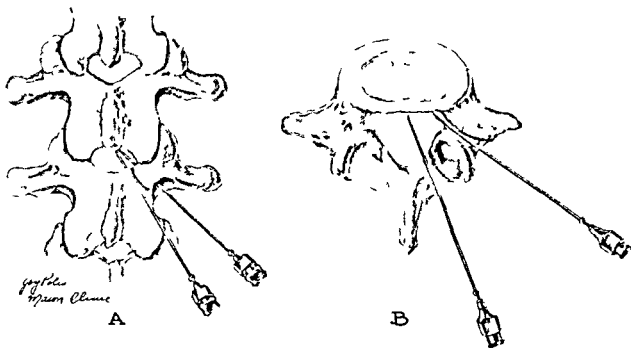


Figure 8 (A) Posterior view of needle entering subarachnoid space either via the space between neural arches or via the intervertebral foramen (B) Cross sectional view of same



Figure 9 Pantopaque in a long cuff of dura covering one of the nerves of the cauda equina. This movement of the Pantopaque occurred during myelography when the x ray table was tilted into the vertical position about 10 minutes after the subarachnoid injection of 3 cc of the radiopaque material

Research by Briery and Field¹¹ and Key and Retzius¹² using radioactive phosphorus and India ink respectively showed that solutions injected into the peripheral nerves in the leg of an animal can later be detected in the spinal fluid and the parenchyma of the central nervous system. Other authors confirm this type of centrad spread.^{13,14} Moore *et al*¹⁵ using solutions colored with methylene blue showed that when the lumbar and cervical nerves of monkeys were injected intraneurally 3 to 4 cm from the intervertebral foramen under direct vision the solution spread centrad immediately reaching the parenchyma of the spinal cord in 2 to 5 minutes (see Figure 11 page 52). We further observed that the spinal fluid did not immediately become tinged with the methylene blue. It required 10 to 15 minutes for the solution to pass through the pia mater and/or epineurium to stain the spinal fluid lightly, but the spinal fluid did not become heavily stained for 35 to 40 minutes. Perhaps this latter observation throws light on the reason why the onset of a high spinal may be delayed following intraneural paravertebral injections.

Our studies we now believe indicate that in a number of these cases the physician's placement of the needle was too accurate that its point rested intraneurally and that the solution actually spread centrally in the perineural spaces resulting in a high spinal.¹⁰ A case of Adriani¹¹ may represent such an injection.

"Case 2 — A 35 year-old white man had received stellate ganglion blocks three days in succession from a senior house officer. Procaine (1 percent) was injected by the anterior route for an injury of the upper arm involving the brachial artery. On the fourth day the block was assigned to a junior member of the house staff. After injecting 10 cc of procaine the operator left the patient to attend another patient. Several minutes later he was called back by the nurse because the patient was not "doing well."

The patient was cyanotic, pulseless and not breathing. Seven and one-half grams of Sodium Amytal were administered intravenously on the premise that a procaine reaction had occurred. The patient did not respond. Manual artificial respiration was instituted by alternately compressing the thorax until a mechanical resuscitator was obtained. All attempts at resuscitation were futile. The operator recalled that while the procaine was being injected the patient complained of a headache. This is a significant observation which should have cast suspicion on the possibility of an intrathecal injection. Valuable time was wasted in administering Sodium Amytal before instituting artificial respiration. Furthermore the Sodium Amytal was not indicated in the absence of convulsive manifestations or excitement."

It is of interest to note that in discussing this case Adriani *et al*¹¹ stated "The fact that no spinal fluid is withdrawn on aspiration is

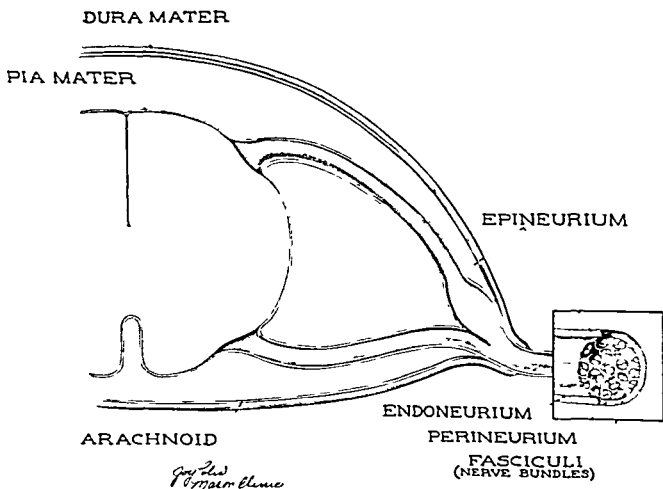


Figure 10 Cross section of the spinal cord. Note that the epineurium of the nerve is a continuation of the pia mater. This relationship essentially provides a pathway for fluid injected intraneurally to undergo centrad diffusion to reach the spinal cord. The interstices between nerve bundles (fasciculi) are filled with connective tissue called perineurium which are potential avenues for retrograde diffusion of materials injected intraneurally.



Figure 11 Dissection of the lumbar area of a monkey showing the centrad spread of an Elocaine methylene blue solution into the spinal cord following an intraneural injection of the solution into a peripheral nerve approximately 4.5 cm from the intervertebral foramen. The position of the needle in the nerve cephalad to the injected nerve indicates the point at which 1.5 cc of the colored solution was injected.

no assurance that the needle is not in the intrathecal space. Not only stellate ganglion blocks sometimes result in total spinals where spinal fluid is not aspirated. Similar cases have been reported following block of the brachial plexus, the cervical intercostal or the lumbar nerves. In all these instances the physicians attributed the complication to the faulty placement of the needle point inside the dura either in the vertebral canal or in a long cuff of dura which extends beyond the intervertebral foramina. Could not these injections in retrospect actually be judged perineural injections?

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Generalized severe systemic toxic reactions to local anesthetic drugs characterized by circulatory and respiratory depression without convulsions may be confused with a high or total spinal anesthesia. Even the experienced anesthesiologist may frequently find it difficult to differentiate promptly between the two particularly in a case where a large volume of the local anesthetic solution is used. Establishment of a definite diagnosis at the onset of such a situation is essential because the initial therapy is different regardless of its etiology.

The onset of a high or total spinal block following an inadvertent, unrecognized spinal varies depending on how the drug entered the subarachnoid space and where the block was performed. If the drug is injected directly into the subarachnoid space the onset is usually rapid but if it spreads centrad via the perineural spaces the onset may be delayed. In addition a more cephalad injection brings about a more rapid onset. For example if an injection of 10 cc of 2.0% Novocain is given inadvertently subarachnoidally while performing a stellate ganglion block a total spinal would rapidly occur. But if the same dosage were inadvertently given subarachnoidally during a transsacral block a low or moderately high spinal not a total spinal would in all probability develop depending on the patient's position during and immediately following the block. In the latter instance even if a high and/or total spinal anesthesia did develop its onset would in all probability be slower. Regardless of the cause of a high or total spinal i.e. whether it follows an inadvertent puncture of the dura or a purposely administered spinal anesthesia the signs and symptoms are the same (see Chapter 19 page 172).

PROPHYLAXIS

In order to prevent a high or total spinal following a peripheral nerve block the physician must adhere meticulously to proper technique for performing these procedures. In addition the following precautions may prevent a high or total spinal anesthesia or warn of the possibility of one developing:

Observe the Needle for Drops of Spinal Fluid Appearing at Its Hub—Once the needle is in position for a peripheral nerve block in the vicinity of the vertebral column and before the drug is injected the hub should be carefully watched 15 to 30 seconds for the appearance of spinal fluid.

Frequently Aspirate—During paravertebral block frequent attempts to aspirate at least in two planes and preferably four planes should be made while injecting the local anesthetic solutions to be sure the needle has not been advanced into the subarachnoid space.

Inject Carefully—During paravertebral blocking irrespective of whether or not the patient complains of paresthesias during the placement of the needle or during injection it is wise to move the needle slightly forward and backward so as not to deposit the entire volume of the solution intraneurally. This has been termed the "shaking hand technique".*

If the needle is not moved in this fashion then the drug may spread contralaterally either in the perineural spaces or a prolonged cuff of the dura which extends past the intervertebral foramen. This is particularly likely if the patient complains of painful paresthesias as the solution is discharged from the syringe.

Stop Injecting if Headache Occurs—If the needle has impaled a cervical nerve during paravertebral blocking in the cervical region headache may occur as the solution is injected. Here again if the injection is continued a high spinal may result (see Adams case page 51).

Inject a Test Dose—When performing

* Term coined by John S. Lundy, M.D. and Albert Faulcomer, M.D., Mayo Clinic, Rochester, Minnesota.

paravertebral nerve blocks it is always wise to inject a test dose of several cubic centimeters of the solution of the drug wait a few minutes and then test for unusual or extensive areas of anesthesia before injecting the balance of the contemplated dose. If an extensive area of analgesia occurs during diagnostic and therapeutic blocks the procedure should be postponed until another day. If such occurs during a regional block procedure for a surgical operation and the area of anesthesia is not adequate for surgery, a small additional amount of the solution may be given in an attempt to obtain the necessary height. Or, to be more conservative and safe the block should be discontinued and supplemented with a general anesthetic.

Carefully Observe Every Patient—Following all regional blocks the patient must be carefully and constantly observed for at least one hour. If this is not done and the block performed in a nonchalant manner, a high or total spinal anesthesia is more prone to go unnoticed and result in death.

TREATMENT

If a high or total spinal anesthesia follows a peripheral nerve block it is usually an unexpected occurrence and since it occurs when least expected it may result in brain damage and/or death. Even though a peripheral nerve block is the cause of this complication the treatment is the same as for a high or total spinal which has followed a purposely administered spinal block (see Chapter 19 page 174).

COMMENT

Inadvertent High Epidural Block—When performing paravertebral somatic or sympathetic blocks in the cervical, thoracic or lumbar regions a misplaced needle may result in epidural anesthesia. This has occurred recently in two cases at the Mason Clinic following a stellate ganglion block and Adriani *et al.*⁶ also report a similar occurrence. These three patients complained mainly of the inability to use their arms. There was no



Figure 11 Dissection of the lumbar area of a monkey showing the centrad spread of an Elocaine methylene blue solution into the spinal cord following an intraneural injection of the solution into a peripheral nerve approximately 4.5 cm from the intervertebral foramen. The position of the needle in the nerve cephalad to the injected nerve indicates the point at which 1.5 cc of the colored solution was injected.

no assurance that the needle is not in the intrathecal space." Not only stellate ganglion blocks sometimes result in total spinals where spinal fluid is not aspirated. Similar cases have been reported following block of the brachial plexus, the cervical, intercostal or the lumbar nerves. In all these instances, the physicians attributed the complication to the faulty placement of the needle point inside the dura, either in the vertebral canal or in a long cuff of dura which extends beyond the intervertebral foramina. Could not these injections in retrospect actually be judged perineural injections?

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Generalized severe systemic toxic reactions to local anesthetic drugs characterized by circulatory and respiratory depression without convulsions may be confused with a high or total spinal anesthesia. Even the experienced anesthesiologist may frequently find it difficult to differentiate promptly between the two, particularly in a case where a large volume of the local anesthetic solution is used. Establishment of a definite diagnosis at the onset of such a situation is not essential because the initial therapy is identical regardless of its etiology.

The onset of a high or total spinal block following an inadvertent, unrecognized spinal varies depending on how the drug entered the subarachnoid space and where the block was performed. If the drug is injected directly into the subarachnoid space, the onset is usually rapid, but if it spreads centrad via the perineural spaces, the onset may be delayed. In addition, a more cephalad injection brings about a more rapid onset. For example, if an injection of 10 cc of 2.0% Novocain is given inadvertently subarachnoidally while performing a stellate ganglion block, a total spinal would rapidly occur. But if the same dosage were inadvertently given subarachnoidally during a transsacral block, a low or moderately high spinal, not a total spinal, would in all probability develop, depending on the patient's position during and immediately following the block. In the latter instance, even if a high and/or total spinal anesthesia did develop, its onset would in all probability be slower. Regardless of the cause of a high or total spinal, i.e., whether it follows an inadvertent puncture of the dura or a purposely administered spinal anesthesia, the signs and symptoms are the same (see Chapter 19, page 172).

fall in blood pressure or any other untoward result. In our cases 10 cc of 0.25% Pontocaine with 0.1 cc of Adrenalin 1:1000 had been used and the patient's arms were paralyzed for approximately three hours.

Usually when an epidural block results from the above mentioned blocks the consequences are not serious because the volume of solution injected is seldom large enough to produce an extensive epidural block. Therefore treatment other than watchful waiting for the signs and symptoms to clear is not necessary. If hypotension and oxygen want develop they must be treated just as if a high spinal anesthesia had developed (see Chapter 19 page 174).

REFERENCES

1. ORKIN, L. R., PAPPER, E. M. and ROVENSTINE, E. A. The Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks. *J Thoracic Surg* 20:911-922, 1950
2. BONICA, J. J. Personal Communications
3. MANDEL, F. *Paravertebral Block in Diagnosis, Prognosis & Therapy*. Minor Sympathetic Surgery. New York, Grune and Stratton 1947
4. WHITE, J. C., SMITHWICK, R. H. and SIMEONE, F. A. *The Autonomic Nervous System* 3rd Ed. New York, Macmillan Co. 1952
5. BONICA, J. J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger 1953
6. ADRIANI, J., PARMLEY, J. and OCHSNER, A. Fatalities and Complications After Attempts at Stellate Ganglion Block. *Surgery* 36:615-619 1952
7. FEVERS, C. Eine vereinfachte Technik der paravertebralen Anästhesie und ihre Anwendung. *Zentralbl Chir* 27:2318-2326 1929
8. BRITTINGHAM, T. E., BERLIN, L. N. and WOLFF, H. G. Nervous System Damage Following Paravertebral Block with Elocaine. Report of three cases. *J A.M.A.* 154:329-330 1954
9. GRAY, H. *Anatomy of the Human Body* 25th Ed. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger 1948
10. JOHNSON, R. J. Assistant Professor, Dept of Anatomy, University of Washington Medical School. Personal Communications
11. BRIERLEY, J. B. and FIELD, E. J. The Fate of an Intraneural Injection as Demonstrated by the Use of Radio-Active Phosphorus. *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 12:86-99 1949
12. KEY, E. A. H. and RETZIUS, G. *Studien in der Anatomie des Nervensystems unter des Bindegewebes*. Stockholm, Samson & Wallin 1875-6
13. FRENCH, J. D., STRAIN, W. H. and JONES, G. E. Mode of Extension of Contrast Substances Injected into Peripheral Nerves. *J Neuropath & Exper Neurol*, 7:47-58 1948
14. SULLIVAN, W. E. and MORTENSEN, O. A. Visualization of the Movement of a Brominized Oil Along the Peripheral Nerves. *Anat Rec* 59:493-502 1934
15. TARLOV, I. M., PERLMUTTER, I. and BERMAN, A. J. Paralysis Caused by Penicillin Injection, Mechanism of Complication—A Warning. *J Neuropath & Exper Neurol* 10:158-176 1951
16. MOORE, D. C., HAIN, R., WARD, A. and BRIDEN, BAUGH, L. D. The Importance of the Perineural Spaces in Nerve Blocking. *J.A.M.A.* 156:1050-1053 1954

Pneumothorax

PNEUMOTHORAX may occur following any procedure in which a needle is placed in the vicinity of the thoracic cage i.e. block of the brachial plexus the stellate ganglion the intercostal cervical or phrenic nerves and of the paravertebral somatic or sympathetic nerves. The frequency of this complication varies greatly depending on the type of block being performed the approach being used and the skill of the physician executing the block. While numerous articles and books describe and advocate blocks even though they are followed by this complication only a few give factual material concerning the incidence of pneumothorax (see Table VIII page 56).¹⁰ This is unfortunate because "cloak room" discussion by those who have not used a specific regional technique enough times to become adept often creates an erroneous impression of the incidence of pneumothorax. It is the opinion and experience of the author and Bonica²¹ that most regional block procedures in the region of the thoracic cage do not result in pneumothorax often enough to preclude their *everyday routine use in surgery therapy and diagnosis*. The exception to this is paravertebral thoracic sympathetic block which even in the hands of the expert, is a singularly difficult block to perform without producing a pneumothorax since the lung and pleura lie in close contact with the bodies of the thoracic vertebrae (see Figure 12 page 55).

ETIOLOGY

Pneumothorax is the presence of air in the pleural cavity. During or following a regional

block procedure air may enter the pleural cavity in two ways either through the needle as it pierces the parietal pleura or via a rent in the lung caused by the needle point puncturing the lung tissue.

Piercing of the Parietal Pleura—The entrance of air into the pleural cavity via the needle is always a possibility although a highly unlikely one because (1) it has proven a difficult maneuver in tuberculosis sanatoria when therapeutic pneumothoraces are purposely performed (2) although needle bi-

SYMPATHETIC GANGLION

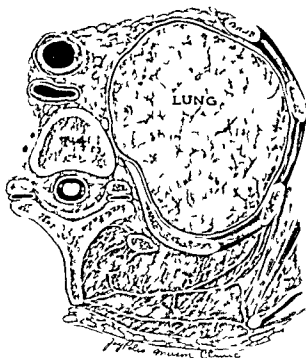


Figure 12 Cross section at the level of T₄ showing the relationship of the pleura to the body of the vertebra the transverse process and the ribs. This clearly illustrates why a pneumothorax can easily result during an attempt to block a thoracic sympathetic ganglion.

fall in blood pressure or any other untoward result. In our cases 10 cc of 0.25% Pontocaine with 0.1 cc of Adrenalin 1:1000 had been used and the patient's arms were paralyzed for approximately three hours.

Usually when an epidural block results from the above mentioned blocks the consequences are not serious because the volume of solution injected is seldom large enough to produce an extensive epidural block. Therefore treatment other than watchful waiting for the signs and symptoms to clear is not necessary. If hypotension and oxygen want develop they must be treated just as if a high spinal anesthesia had developed (see Chapter 19 page 174).

REFERENCES

1. ORKIN, L. R., PAPPER, E. M. and ROVENSTINE, E. A. The Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks. *J Thoracic Surg* 20:911-922 1950
2. BONICA, J. J. Personal Communications
3. MANDEL, F. *Paravertebral Block in Diagnosis, Prognosis & Therapy. Minor Sympathetic Surgery*. New York: Grune and Stratton 1947
4. WHITE, J. C., SMITHWICK, R. H. and SIMEONE, F. A. *The Autonomic Nervous System*. 3rd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co 1952
5. BONICA, J. J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1953
6. ADRIANI, J., PARNLEY, J. and OCHSNER, A. Fatalities and Complications After Attempts at Stellate Ganglion Block. *Surgery* 36:615-619 1952
7. FEVERS, C. Eine vereinfachte Technik der paravertebralen Anästhesie und ihre Anwendung. *Zentralbl Chir* 27:2318-2326 1929
8. BRITTINGHAM, T. E., BERLIN, L. N. and WOLFF, H. G. Nervous System Damage Following Paravertebral Block with Efocaine. Report of three cases. *JAMA* 154:329-330 1954
9. GRAY, H. *Anatomy of the Human Body*. 25th Ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1948
10. JOHNSON, R. J. Assistant Professor, Dept. of Anatomy, University of Washington Medical School. Personal Communications
11. BRIERLEY, J. B. and FIELD, E. J. The Fate of an Intraneural Injection as Demonstrated by the Use of Radio-Active Phosphorus. *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat.* 12:88-99 1949
12. KEY, E. A. H. and RETZIUS, G. *Studien in der Anatomie des Nervensystems unter des Bindegewebes*. Stockholm: Samson & Wallin 1875-6
13. FRECH, J. D., STRAIN, W. H. and JONES, G. E. Mode of Extension of Contrast Substances Injected into Peripheral Nerves. *J Neuropath & Exper Neurol* 7:47-58 1948
14. SULLIVAN, W. E. and MORTENSEN, O. A. Visualization of the Movement of a Brominized Oil Along the Peripheral Nerves. *Anat Rec* 59:493-502 1934
15. TARLOV, I. M., PERLMUTTER, I. and BERMAN, A. J. Paralysis Caused by Penicillin Injection: Mechanism of Complication—A Warning. *J Neuropath & Exper Neurol* 10:158-176 1951
16. MOORE, D. C., HAIN, R., WARD, A. and BRIDENBAUGH, L. D. The Importance of the Perineural Spaces in Nerve Blocking. *JAMA* 156:1050-1053 1954



Figure 13 This patient complained of pain in her chest at the time of the brachial block (A) (Top left) X ray taken 6 hours after the block had been performed and the surgery completed shows no evidence of pneumothorax The difference in density of the left chest in this x ray is caused by the shadow of the scapula not air in the chest (B) (Top right) X ray taken the following day shows an almost complete pneumothorax Following this film 1000 cc of air was withdrawn from the chest (C) (Bottom left) X ray taken 4 days following film B after repeated withdrawal of 1000 cc of air from the chest on successive days (D) (Bottom right) X ray taken 2 days after film C shows lung 80% expanded

opsies of the lung with 18 gauge needles have often been performed, the incidence of pneumothorax in these cases is extremely small.⁵⁻⁵³ (3) pneumothoraces following regional block procedures may not occur for two to six hours

after the completion of the block (see Figure 13, page 57),³⁴⁻³⁷ and (4) most physicians, when performing regional procedures where pneumothorax is possible do not use a needle with an open hub—a syringe is attached a

TABLE VIII

REPORTED INCIDENCE OF PNEUMOTHORAX FOLLOWING REGIONAL BLOCK
IN ARTICLES REVIEWED¹⁻⁶⁰

<i>Block</i>	<i>Author</i>	<i>Percentage of Pneumothorax</i>
Brachial Plexus	Griswold & Woodson ³⁴	2 in 100 blocks = 2%
	Dmurgian ³⁵	1 in 100 blocks = 1%
	Bonica, Moore & Orlov ³¹	9 in 1000 blocks = 0.9%
	Bonica & Moore ³²	10 in 1512 blocks = 0.66%
	Macintosh & Mushin ³⁶	3 in 400 blocks = 0.75%
	Moore & Brudenbaugh ³⁸	1 in 100 blocks = 1.0%
	Small ³³	0 in 151 blocks
Stellate Ganglion	Moore [*]	1 Anterior (paratracheal) approach 0 in 2000 blocks
	Orkin, Papper & Rovenstine ³⁷	2 Anterolateral approach 2 in 25 blocks = 8%
		1 Anterior (paratracheal) approach 0 in 27 blocks
		2 Anterolateral approach 3 in 151 blocks = 1.9%
	Bonica ⁴¹	3 Posterior approach 1 in 8 blocks = 13%
		1 Anterior (paratracheal) approach 5 in 2000 blocks = 0.25% (All 5 occurred with Arnulf's approach)
Intercostal	Chivers ³⁹	19% (estimated)
	Moore [*]	1 in over 2188 blocks = 0.05%
	Bonica ⁴¹	0 in 750 blocks
Paravertebral thoracic somatic	Moore [*]	0 in 50 blocks
	Bonica ⁴¹	17 in 370 blocks = 4.6%
Paravertebral sympathetic thoracic	Orkin, Papper & Rovenstine ³⁷	4 in 172 blocks = 2.33%
	Moore [*]	1 in 20 blocks = 5.0%
	Mandl ⁴⁶	5 in 340 blocks = 1.47%
	Kappis & Gerlach ⁴⁸	4 in 100 blocks = 4%
	White ⁵⁰	3 in 100 blocks = 3%
	Bonica ⁴¹	22 in 280 blocks = 7.85%
Cervical	Moore [*]	0 in 704 blocks
	Bonica ⁴¹	0 in 350 blocks
Phrenic	Moore [*]	0 in 35 blocks
	Bonica ⁴¹	0 in 63 blocks

* Author's service at Mason Clinic

tation and percussion may not reveal the cause (see Figure 13 page 57). Examination should be repeated in 6 hours if pain persists. Some patients have not complained of pain until 12 hours following the block. The pain is usually sharp and therefore, decreases the depth of respirations.

Anxiety—When pain develops most patients show anxiety and this may contribute to the signs of oxygen want by increasing oxygen demand.

Oxygen Want—Dyspnea may or may not occur depending on the degree of collapse. In our cases of unilateral pneumothorax most of the patients had dyspnea initially but this usually subsided unless the patient had some complicating disease such as anemia, emphysema, etc. Orthopnea and cyanosis (5 gm

of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood) seldom result.

On the other hand, if a bilateral pneumothorax develops, dyspnea, orthopnea and cyanosis are likely occurrences.

Hypotension—There may or may not be a change in the blood pressure indicating respiratory embarrassment or shift of the mediastinum. Should a complete *unilateral pneumothorax* result during a block procedure a temporary hypotension may ensue initially. This is presumably due to a shift of the mediastinum—not to the oxygen want alone—and in the *normal healthy adult* a compensatory reflex usually corrects the hypotension. In these cases whether or not hypotension is found depends to a great extent on the rapidity with which the pneumothorax develops.

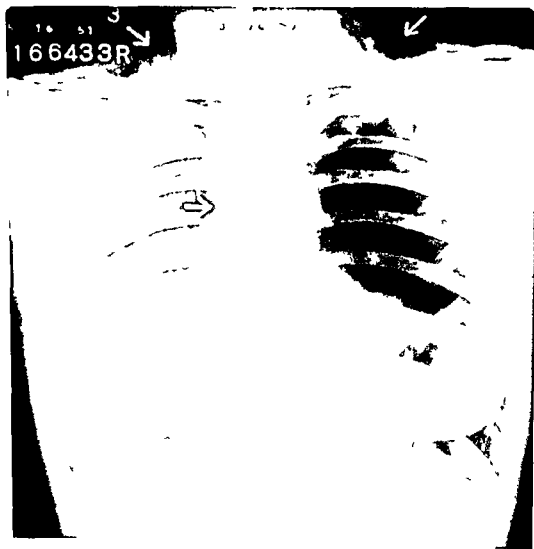


Figure 14. Pneumothorax with mediastinal and subcutaneous emphysema following a brachial block. Arrows mark areas of emphysema.

stylet is in place or a finger is held over the opening in the hub until the needle is correctly placed

Piercing of the Lung Tissue—Macintosh and Mushin³ Bonica⁴ Wishart⁴⁹ and the author³⁴ feel that most pneumothoraces are caused by the piercing of the lung substance proper by a misplaced needle. If this misplacement is not immediately rectified in inspiration and expiration move the lung surface and it is torn by the needle point. Either the initial hole or the rent in the lung allows subsequent air leakage.

While it is evident that the puncture of the pleura or lung tissue must take place for a pneumothorax to result from a regional block procedure, enlargement of the needle puncture, exertion in the immediate postblock period, etc., are often predisposing factors.

Predisposing Factors—The following have been mentioned as predisposing factors and must be given careful attention when performing blocks in the region of the thoracic cage.

Height the Pleura Extends into Neck—This is of particular importance during block of the brachial plexus, stellate ganglion, phrenic nerves and cervical nerves. In general the pleura extends higher into the neck in the tall thin person than in the average or short fat person³⁴. Also the right cupola of the pleura is normally higher by one to two centimeters than the left.

Chronic Emphysema—Wishart⁴⁹ points out that special care must be exercised in performing brachial plexus block on patients suffering from chronic emphysema because if a bulla is punctured it does not seal off as rapidly as would the normal lung and a severe tension pneumothorax with marked respiratory and cardiac embarrassment may ensue.

Motion of the Patient Straining and Increase in Respiratory Rate or Depth—During the block procedure if the patient is not correctly medicated prior to the block procedure or if the procedure is not carefully explained to him prior to and during its execution he may move suddenly and cause the needle to enter the lung. If the patient is excited and

increase in the rate or depth of respirations may result and if the needle enters the lung at this time there is a greater chance that a relatively large rent will result than if the respiratory movements are normal or retarded.

After the block has been completed and the operation accomplished, physical exercise resulting in an increase in the respiratory rate and depth may cause a pneumothorax when the lung has inadvertently been punctured. On the contrary, if a patient whose lung has been pierced inadvertently is placed at full bed rest and sedated to decrease the respiratory rate and depth a pneumothorax is less likely to develop (see page 63).

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

If the following occur while performing a block in the region of the thoracic cage one may assume that the lung has been punctured and a pneumothorax might result: (1) the needle inadvertently slips off the rib or is placed too deep in an attempt to find bony landmarks; (2) a sucking noise is heard; (3) air is aspirated; (4) the patient coughs or complains of chest pain; and (5) the solution injected is tasted by the patient. All of these have happened at the Mason Clinic yet only in a very few of these patients have the signs and symptoms of a pneumothorax developed. This definitely proves that the lung may be punctured without a pneumothorax of significant degree resulting. However the physician should not draw a sigh of relief if a pneumothorax does not develop immediately in these patients. Some of our patients have not developed the signs and symptoms of this complication until 6 to 12 hours after the completion of the block (see Figure 13, page 57).

The severity of a pneumothorax usually but not always depends upon the degree of collapse and one or more of the following signs and symptoms may result.

Pain—The first indication is pain in the chest accentuated by deep breathing. This may be the only sign that the pleura and lung have been invaded. Initial *very auscult*

tation and percussion may not reveal the cause (see Figure 13 page 57). Examination should be repeated in 6 hours if pain persists. Some patients have not complained of pain until 12 hours following the block. The pain is usually sharp and therefore decreases the depth of respirations.

Anxiety—When pain develops most patients show anxiety and this may contribute to the signs of oxygen want by increasing oxygen demand.

Oxygen Want—Dyspnea may or may not occur depending on the degree of collapse. In our cases of unilateral pneumothorax most of the patients had dyspnea initially but this usually subsided unless the patient had some complicating disease such as anemia, emphysema, etc. *Orthopnea* and *cyanosis* (5 gm

of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood) seldom result.

On the other hand if a bilateral pneumothorax develops dyspnea, orthopnea and cyanosis are likely occurrences.

Hypotension—There may or may not be a change in the blood pressure indicating respiratory embarrassment or shift of the mediastinum. Should a complete *unilateral pneumothorax* result during a block procedure a temporary hypotension may ensue initially. This is presumably due to a shift of the mediastinum—not to the oxygen want alone—and in the normal, healthy adult a compensatory reflex usually corrects the hypotension. In these cases whether or not hypotension is found depends to a great extent on the rapidity with which the pneumothorax develops.



Figure 14 Pneumothorax with mediastinal and subcutaneous emphysema following a brachial block. Arrows mark areas of emphysema.

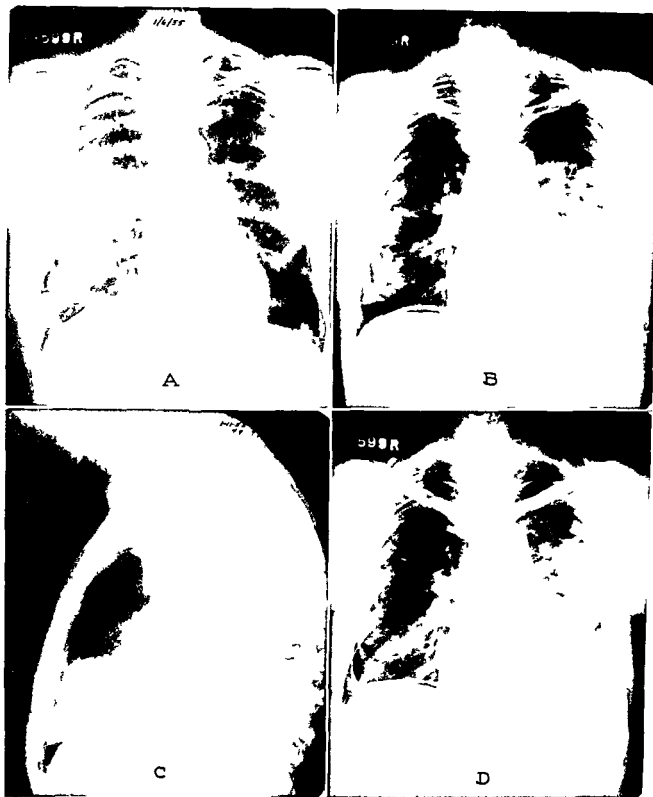


Figure 15 Pleural effusion and a pneumothorax (20% or less) following intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) nerve block for an enbloc resection of the transverse colon gastrojejunostomy site the stomach and the spleen for an adenocarcinoma of the stomach arising at an old gastrojejunostomy site in a 60 year old male (A) Preoperative chest film (B) Posterior anterior view of the pneumothorax and pleural effusion Dotted line indicates upper border of lung (C) Lateral view of pneumothorax and pleural effusion (D) Posterior anterior view of chest following withdrawal of 500 cc of serous sanguinous fluid and 2000 cc of air X ray department's report of this last film read "The left lung is now completely expanded The left lower lobe is slightly decreased in size Small amount of fluid in the left pleural space still obscures the diaphragm on that side posteriorly Picture is that of general improvement All films are taken at a distance of 6 feet

However, in the patient with a poor physical status, a hypotension as a result of the oxygen want may follow a unilateral pneumothorax.

When a bilateral pneumothorax occurs corrective therapy is essential whatever the patient's physical status, and adequate steps to correct the oxygen want are necessary, otherwise hypotension and death may result. A persistent hypotension in such a situation is usually a late sign of oxygen want.

Tachycardia—If oxygen want or hemo pneumothorax occurs they may be accompanied by an increased pulse rate.³

Auscultation, Percussion and Failure of the Chest to Rise on the Blocked Side During Inspiration—Auscultation and percussion usually are of little help in determining whether

or not a pneumothorax has occurred unless more than a 20% collapse has resulted. Then breath sounds may be absent, decreased or distant and percussion may reveal air in the pleural cavity on the affected side.

Failure of the chest to rise on the side blocked may or may not be of significance because the diaphragm will not move if the phrenic nerve is anesthetized following a cervical stellate ganglion or brachial block. Therefore on inspiration the chest on the blocked side may not rise as much as on the unblocked side although no pneumothorax has resulted. This is also true if the intercostal nerves, particularly the lower ones (T4-T12) have been anesthetized.

Hemoptysis—To date we have not seen

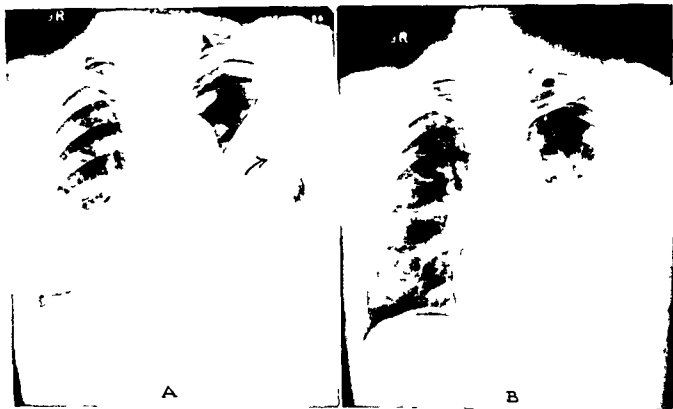


Figure 16 Comparison of film taken at the bedside (A) and one taken at a distance of 6 ft. in the x-ray department (B). The x-ray department's report of the bedside x-ray read: Comparison with film of 1-6-55 (see Figure 15 A page 60) demonstrates postoperative air under the right diaphragm and a collapse of the left lung with fluid in the lower pleural space. The collapse is due to pneumothorax. All of these changes have developed since 1-6-55. In addition there might be slight aspiration in the right middle lobe. That for the 6-foot film stated: This film better illustrates the pneumothorax and hydrothorax in the left chest. The fluid level lies just under the third rib anteriorly and the expanding upper lobe crosses the dependent portion of the 1st rib anteriorly. The impression is gained that there is slightly greater expansion than on the portable film. There is air under the right diaphragm. Heart is displaced somewhat to the right by fluid and possibly by positive pressure from the pneumothorax. Right lung is clear. By comparing the 2 films it will be noted that a more certain diagnosis can be made from the 6-foot film. Arrow on (A) shows fluid in one of the fissures of the lung. The dotted line indicates the upper border of the lung.

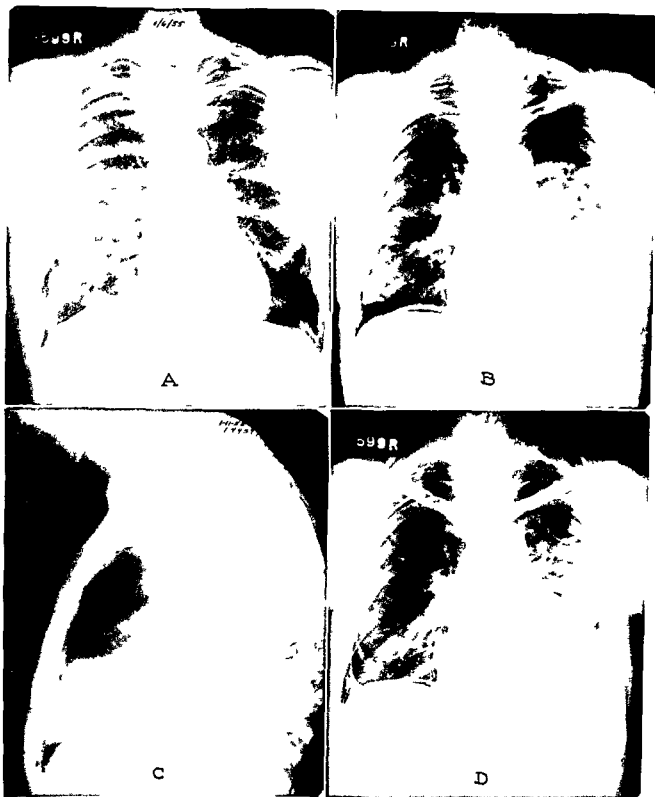


Figure 15 Pleural effusion and a pneumothorax (20% or less) following intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) nerve block for an en bloc resection of the transverse colon gastrojejunostomy site the stomach and the spleen for an adenocarcinoma of the stomach arising at an old gastrojejunostomy site in a 60 year old male (A) Preoperative chest film (B) Posterior anterior view of the pneumothorax and pleural effusion Dotted line indicates upper border of lung (C) Lateral view of pneumothorax and pleural effusion (D) Posterior anterior view of chest following withdrawal of 500 cc. of serous sanguinous fluid and 2000 cc of air X ray department's report of this last film read "The left lung is now completely expanded The left lower lobe is slightly decreased in size Small amount of fluid in the left pleural space still obscures the diaphragm on that side posteriorly Picture is that of general improvement All films are taken at a distance of 6 feet

the pleura out of the way as the needle is being advanced.⁴ We have not used this maneuver because it interferes with the anesthetist's tactile sense of what the needle point is striking.

Full Cooperation of the Patient During the Block Procedure—To assure full cooperation of a patient during a block procedure he should be seen prior to the block so that the procedure may be carefully explained to him and the correct premedication ordered. During the block he should be impressed with the necessity of not jumping, and should be warned beforehand of any painful procedure. This is particularly important when performing a block where paresthesias are essential and light premedication i.e. morphine sulfate gr. $\frac{1}{4}$ (10 mg.) and atropine gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ (0.4 mg.) but no barbiturate is used. Sudden motion by the patient as the needle is being advanced will often result in deep penetration and puncture of the parenchyma of the lung.

It has been our custom in performing intercostal deep sphincter (cehric) block for upper abdominal surgery to anesthetize the patient lightly with a rapid drip of 0.6% Pentothal (thiopental) to the point where the lid reflex is lost and maintain him in this state until the block is completed. This assures that the patient will not jump during the procedure and decreases the amplitude of respiration. We attribute the low incidence of pneumothorax (1 in 1445 = 0.07 per cent) in these particular cases to this type of sedation.

Rest Needle on Rib When Refilling Syringe—When refilling the syringe during intercostal nerve block and brachial plexus block the needle point should rest on the rib. This precaution prevents puncture of the lung should the patient move.

Bed Rest Following Blocks—If it is suspected that the lung has been punctured during a block procedure i.e. the needle inadvertently slips off rib the patient coughs during the block or air is aspirated etc. the patient should be put at bed rest for 10 to 24 hours and heavily sedated to give the puncture time to seal and stay sealed. Experience

has confirmed this recommendation. For example A patient from one of the outlying small towns came to Seattle to shop. When stepping from the bus she fell and sustained a Colles' fracture at 8:00 A.M. She received a brachial block at 9:00 A.M. During the procedure the needle slipped off the rib and the patient coughed. The block was completed the fracture set and the patient returned to the recovery room. She was seen by the Anesthesia Department at 12:00 Noon. There were no signs or symptoms of a pneumothorax and because she pleaded to be allowed to continue her shopping trip she was discharged. At 8:00 P.M. she called and said she had one hour before developed a severe pain in her chest on the side of her fractured arm. She gave us the story that after leaving the hospital she leisurely shopped not exerting herself but she had to run to catch her bus and stand up part of the way home. Shortly after catching her bus the severe pain developed. It seems fairly obvious from this story that the hole in the lung made at the time of the block had immediately sealed itself and remained sealed until excessive physical exertion occurred accompanied by a marked increase in the depth and rate of respiration. This broke the seal and a pneumothorax resulted. X-ray revealed a 60% collapse. It is our belief that had this patient remained relatively inactive preferably at total bed rest and had she been well sedated the pneumothorax would not have occurred. The use of bed rest and sedation can not be too strongly urged in the prophylaxis of pneumothorax.

TREATMENT

The treatment of pneumothorax is entirely symptomatic while the patient is in the operating or block room. Definitive treatment can not be decided upon until the degree of pneumothorax is determined.

Immediate Symptomatic Treatment—When a pneumothorax occurs the patient usually becomes very apprehensive about his condition and must be soothed, if at all possible by

this but one of Wisharts⁴⁰ cases exhibited it as the only sign of pneumothorax and Mandl⁴⁶ observed it for several days following puncture of the lung

Subcutaneous and Mediastinal Emphysema—At times air may be felt in the tissue at the site of the insertion of the needle and occasionally a marked subcutaneous and mediastinal emphysema may occur (see Figure 14 page 59) Usually this is of no consequence However Cipelle²⁷ reports a case of pneumothorax following brachial block in which a severe emphysema and death occurred

Pleural Effusion—Judging from the literature reviewed pleural effusion following a pneumothorax from a regional block procedure is evidently infrequent At the Mason Clinic we have seen only one such case and this followed an intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) block for an en bloc resection for carcinoma of the stomach (see Figure 15 page 60)

In this case the spleen was found to be adherent to the diaphragm and had to be removed intracapsularly It is possible that diaphragmatic irritation caused by this surgery may have been a contributing factor to the resulting effusion Nevertheless the pneumothorax which was caused by the block itself probably irritated the effusion It should also be noted that at the time of the block and during surgery there was no reason to suspect that the needle had entered the lung Therefore at the completion of surgery (3½ hours) the patient underwent a routine bronchoscopy and a reasonable amount of thick mucus was aspirated from the bronchi Being awake at the time of bronchoscopy he coughed vigorously and it is possible that this episode of coughing may have reopened a hole in the lung which had been made previously and had sealed

In this case 500 cc of a serous sanguinous fluid was aspirated along with an estimated 2000 cc of air and the patient had an uneventful recovery from the pneumothorax (see Figure 15D page 60) The pathologist estimated that the effusion fluid contained 5%

hemoglobin In this case the pneumothorax may well have expanded by itself but it is our opinion that effusion is a definite indication for aspiration If the fluid is not withdrawn it may organize form a pocket of fluid or adhesions and necessitate lung surgery in the future

X ray Evidence—Whether or not a patient has a pneumothorax can be established conclusively only by x ray If the patient shows the signs and symptoms of a pneumothorax a six foot x ray should be taken immediately if surgery is cancelled or after surgery is completed to ascertain the extent of the pneumothorax If no pneumothorax is found the x ray should be repeated in 6 to 12 hours (Figure 13 page 57) *Bedside x rays are misleading, uncertain cause improper treatment are a waste of the x ray department's time and the patient's money and should not be taken because they often lead to misdiagnosis* (see Figure 16 page 61)

PROPHYLAXIS

Close Adherence to the Techniques—This is perhaps the most important way of avoiding a pneumothorax Since the ribs and vertebrae are used as landmarks in most of the block techniques in the area of the thoracic cage the authors describing such procedures usually repeatedly emphasize the importance of keeping the needle point in contact with these structures and stress that it is only when the initial landmark is incorrect or the needle is allowed to wander away from the bone that the lung tissue is invaded^{34 4 4}

Forceful Expiration When Placing Needles—Bomer⁴⁷ advises in reference to paravertebral blocks in the area of the thoracic cage that The patient should also be instructed to make a forceful expiration and hold it for 10 to 15 seconds so as to remove the lung from the path of the needle while the latter is being advanced toward the lateral surface of the vertebral body

Injection of Saline as Needle Is Being Introduced—Some have used this technique occasionally in hopes of exerting sufficient pressure ahead of the needle point to push

lung shows progressive expansion the patient should have a chest x ray at least once a week until complete re expansion has taken place.

COMMENTS

Chest Pain Following Block in Region of Thoracic Cage Is Not Always an Indication of Pneumothorax—In a series of 100 consecutive brachial blocks in which x ray studies were made following the blocks and surgery Bradenbaugh and the author³⁰ found only one pneumothorax although five patients reported pain which resembled the pain of pneumothorax. We stated "It is our opinion that in these cases [the four without pneumothorax] the pain was due to stimulation of the long thoracic nerve during the performance of the block or the irritation of the pleura from either excessive spread of the anesthetic solution or trauma from the point of the needle. The first mentioned factor seems to be the more likely. Pain of this nature invariably disappeared not later than the third postoperative day while it is not uncommon for the pain from a pneumothorax to persist for a week." Mandl⁴⁶ substantiates the fact that pleural pain is not infrequent following block in the thoracic region in cases where a pneumothorax cannot be demonstrated.

In order to establish the diagnosis of pneumothorax with certainty an x ray must be taken and collapse of the lung demonstrated. The author has seen a patient with chronic emphysema exhibit the signs and symptoms of pneumothorax following a bilateral brachial block when in reality the paralysis of both phrenic nerves was responsible (see Figure 6 page 43).

Do Silent Pneumothoraces Occur Following Block Analgesia and if so What Is Their Significance?—The fact as to whether or not "silent pneumothoraces occur in any great number following block analgesia seems to us to be of only academic interest since the patient is in no way discommoded. It was probably proposed as a possible complication of block analgesia because many patients with

spontaneous or therapeutic pneumothoraces are asymptomatic. Nevertheless since the term has been mentioned we believe that our studies on this subject reveal the following: (1) air in the chest detectable by x ray after brachial block caused pain and was never silent and (2) "silent" pneumothorax following brachial plexus block makes air probably hypothetical in the healthy adult.

Bilateral Pneumothorax—This is a very serious complication and must be treated rapidly, or death will result. For this reason most authors advise against bilateral blocks in the area of the thoracic cage. The only death in the author's series of over 19,000 regional block procedures followed a bilateral thoracic sympathetic block. Although the autopsy in this case produced no findings it is the author's opinion that death was probably due to a bilateral pneumothorax.

Death from Pneumothorax—Deaths from pneumothorax following regional block for surgical procedures or manipulations are rare in the healthy adult. Most of the deaths reported from pneumothorax have occurred in patients receiving diagnostic or therapeutic blocks. In these instances the disease for which the block was being attempted such as angina pectoris may have contributed directly or indirectly to the fatalities.^{33, 37, 41} The exception to this is the case of Capelle²⁷ cited previously (see page 62).

Hemopneumothorax—This is very unusual and only one report (by Orkin *et al*³⁷) of this complication was found. In this case following a cervicothoracic sympathetic block for a Volkmann's contracture the patient complained of chest pain immediately following the block but no pneumothorax was detectable by x ray at that time. However the next day a fluid level to the eighth thoracic vertebra and a complete collapse of the lung were found by x ray. Aspiration of the chest yielded 1500 cc of blood. Even though attempts were made to completely reexpand the lung the left upper lobe remained collapsed until a decortication was performed. The authors explain this complication by stating: "It was believed that in the collapse of the

assuring him that everything will be all right

Oxygen Want—The patient's immediate dyspnea may be relieved by the administration of oxygen. The oxygen should not be given under pressure because this would reopen or prevent closing of the rent in the lung.

Pain should be alleviated with intravenous morphine sulfate gr $\frac{1}{8}$ to gr $\frac{1}{4}$ (10 to 15 mg) or Demerol 50 to 100 mg or any other opiate of the physician's own choice if the initial discomfort is marked.

Hypotension—If hypotension occurs it should be treated as indicated in Chapter 15 page 147.

Make Plans for Subsequent Therapy—As soon as the patient has been made comfortable by this symptomatic treatment and the operation for which the block was performed executed or cancelled a six foot x ray should be taken to determine the extent of the collapse. If no pneumothorax is present but it is known that the lung was punctured x ray should be repeated in 6 to 12 hours (see Figure 13 page 57). Remember that bedside films are of little value.

Treatment of a Pneumothorax of Twenty Per Cent or Less—*Re expansion of the lung*. This will take place by itself and catheter or needle drainage is not necessary.

Oxygen Want—Once the dyspnea has passed no treatment is necessary.

Pain—Codeine gr $\frac{1}{2}$ (30 mg) and aspirin gr 10 (600 mg) may be taken as necessary for relief of pain and discomfort. Usually this is necessary for only 1 to 3 days although mild pain may persist for 4 or 5 days.

Check of Patient—After 10 days have passed an x ray of the chest should be taken to be sure re expansion has occurred. To date we have not seen a single case with up to 20% collapse which has not expanded in this period of time. Nevertheless while most pneumothoraces complicating regional block clear quickly without sequelae the degree of collapse should be watched closely until expansion of the collapsed lung is complete.

Treatment of Pneumothorax of More Than Twenty Per Cent—These cases must not be

treated lightly. Conscientious and intensive therapy must be instituted to prevent secondary complications such as pneumonia or empyema.

Re expansion of Lung—If the collapse exceeds 20% but is not greater than 50% watchful waiting is permissible for 24 to 48 hours. If after that time no expansion has taken place needle drainage of the chest is indicated. All the cases we have seen that exceeded 20% collapse showed an almost complete collapse of the involved lung (see Figure 13 page 57) and required withdrawal of air from the pleural cavity to start lung expansion. Such needle aspiration should be established in the second intercostal space in the midclavicular line. Usually only 1000 cc of air are withdrawn at one time so as not to cause rapid shifts of the mediastinum. Once the lung has expanded to 50% it is usually unnecessary to withdraw any more air from the pleural cavity as the lung will continue to expand.

In the exceptional case which does not respond to intermittent needle withdrawal of the air it may be necessary to insert a small catheter and exert negative pressure with a Stedman pump.

Oxygen Want—Dyspnea may require administration of oxygen by mask or tent until it subsides.

Pain—In these cases pain may persist for a week but in most instances codeine gr $\frac{1}{2}$ (30 mg) and aspirin gr 10 (600 mg) by mouth will furnish relief. Other opiates are seldom needed or indicated once the initial severe pain has been controlled.

Antibiotic Treatment—As prophylaxis against pneumonia etc. 300 000 to 400 000 units of penicillin should be given daily until the lung is at least 50% expanded. Should pneumonia develop then the dosage of penicillin should be increased to 600 000 to 800 000 units daily and if the infection does not respond other broader spectrum antibiotics should be employed.

Check the Patient—X rays of the chest should be taken at one to three day intervals to be sure expansion is proceeding. After the

- 9 HANRAHAN I M Jr Brachial Plexus Nerve Block *JAMA* 90 529 530 1928 Brachial Plexus Block *Virginia M Monthly* 55 205 206 1929
- 10 KULENKAMPEFF D and LERSKY M A Brachial Plexus Anesthesia Its Indications Techniques and Dangers *Ann Surg* 87 883 891 1928
- 11 HAY I M Brachial Plexus Anesthesia *J Florida M A* 15 601 602 1929
- 12 STROUD J I Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia Its Advantages in the Treatment of Fractures of the Arm Report of Cases *California and Western Med* 31 17 20 1929
- 13 RHODES T B Brachial Plexus Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 101 1153 1170 1935
- 14 TROSBY I B Brachial Plexus Block *Am J Surg* 34 544 546 1936
- 15 TARRY J M and STEINBROCKER O Supraclavicular Brachial Plexus Block An Accessory Therapeutic Measure in Arthritis of the Shoulder Joint and Allied Conditions *N Y State J Med* 37 1273 1278 1937
- 16 HALLERIN P H Brachial Plexus Block *Westn Conn M J* 38 21 24 1939
- 17 MLYNER L J and CHIAO C L Brachial Block Anesthesia *J Iowa Med Soc* 29 91 95 1939
- 18 ARNOLD C H and GIBSON L A Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia *Southwest Med* 23 249 250 1939
- 19 MURPHY D R Jr Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia An Improved Technique *Ann Surg* 119 935 943 1944
- 20 PHILLIPS R B How to Obtain Good Results with Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia *Mil Surgeon* 95 197 199 1944
- 21 GREFF B A Brachial Plexus Anesthesia A Report of 150 Consecutive Cases *M Bull No African Theatre Op* 2 102 104 1944
- 22 ANSBORO F P A Method of Continuous Brachial Plexus Block *Am J Surg* 71 716 722 1946
- 23 HIRSCHL C Die Anesthesierung des Plexus Brachialis bei Operationen an der Oberen Extremität *Munchen med Wchnschr* 58 1555 1556 1911
- 24 KULENKAMPEFF D Die Anesthesierung des Plexus Brachialis *Zentralbl Chir* 38 1337 1340 1911
- 25 PATRICK J The Technique of Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia *Brit J Surg* 27 734 739 1940
- 26 MACINTOSH R R and MUSHIN W W *Local Anesthesia Brachial Plexus* Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publications Ltd 1944
- 27 CAULFIELD W Die Anästhesie des plexus Brachialis Ihre Verfahren und deren Vermeidung *Beitr klin chir* 101 122 139 1916
- 28 MOORE D C Pontocaine Hydrochloride for Brachial Block Analgesia—One Hundred and Fifty Cases *Anesthesiology* 9 281 284 1948
- 29 CRISWOLD R A and WOODSON W H Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia of the Upper Extremities *Am J Surg* 59 139 141 1943
- 30 DAMARJIAN F Brachial Plexus Block—One Hundred Consecutive Cases *Rhode Island M J* 29 271 1946
- 31 BONICA J J MOORE D C and ONTOW M Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia *Am J Surg* 78 65 70 1949
- 32 BONICA J J and MOORE D C Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 29 241 253 1950
- 33 ADRIANT J PARNELLE J and OCHSNER A Incidents and Complications After Attempts at Stellate Ganglion Block *Surgery* 32 615 619 1952
- 34 MOORE D C *Regional Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
- 35 SMALL C A Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia in Children *JAMA* 147 1648 1651 1951
- 36 MOORE D C and BRIDENBAUGH L D Pneumothorax—Its Incidence Following Brachial Plexus Block Analgesia *Anesthesiology* 15 475 479 1954
- 37 ORKIN L R PAPIER E M and ROSENSTEIN E A The Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks *J Thoracic Surg* 20 911 922 1950
- 38 CHIVERS E M Pulmonary Complications Following Regional Analgesia for Abdominal Operations *Brit J Anaesth* 20 53 59 1946
- 39 SAFAR P Intercostal Nerve Block and Minimal General Anesthesia for Major Abdominal Surgery *Anesth & Analg* 33 98 106 1954
- 40 BARTLETT R W Bilateral Intercostal Nerve Block for Upper Abdominal Surgery *Surg Gynec & Obst* 71 194 197 1940
- 41 EVANS E I Studies on Traumatic Shock III Anesthesia in Clinical Shock *JAMA* 124 473 478 1944
- 42 BELINKOFF S Intercostal Nerve Block *Surgery* 18 37 43 1945
- 43 BELINKOFF S Intercostal Nerve Block in Balanced Anesthesia *Am J Surg* 68 318 323 1945
- 44 BELINKOFF S Intercostal Block with Long Acting Anesthetic in Upper Abdominal Operations *Anesthesiology* 5 500 507 1944
- 45 MOORE D C *Stellate Ganglion Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954

lung small veins at the apex between the visceral and parietal pleura were torn resulting in hemorrhage. This case also confirms the need to observe patients with pneumothorax carefully until the lung has completely re-expanded.

Pleural Effusion from Stimulation of the Pleura Alone—Behnkoff reports four cases of pleural effusion following the use of Novest Oil (Monocaine base 0.02 gm benzyl alcohol 0.05 gm Benzocaine 0.3 gm and oil of sweet almond to 1.0 cc). He states

the four cases which developed pleural effusions deserve further consideration. All were females upon whom cholecystectomy had been performed three under spinal and one under general anesthesia by two different surgeons. In all instances there was only a unilateral intercostal block done on the right side which was successful for relief of post-operative pain and in all instances the pleural effusion occurred on the same right side. In three of the patients the fluid was absorbed without any interference but in the fourth thoracentesis was done on two occasions to remove a total of 1100 cc of fluid which was clear and from which no organisms could be cultured.

"The etiology of this sterile fluid seems to be some irritant stimulating the pleura. Probably when the block was being done some of the fluid was inadvertently injected into the pleural space with the resultant effusion. The proximity of the pleura to the intercostal nerve is thus stressed and great care must be taken at each injection to make sure that all is deposited in the tissues and none in the pleural space. It had been hoped that the agent used would not stimulate the pleura or be an irritant, but apparently in some cases it did. Most likely it was the oily solvent that proved to be the irritating factor."

Pleural Shock—The term "pleural shock" has been used loosely and an adequate definition is difficult to find. It probably refers to the development of the signs and symptoms of shock following a block in the region of the thoracic cage when the pleura and the

lung have been punctured and a true pneumothorax has been produced.

Concerning this problem following brachial block Macintosh and Mushin¹⁰ state, "Pleural shock appears in several older writings. In investigating these we find that the injection was made with the patient sitting up. Possibly this complication is the same as the fainting to which we have already referred." These authors in their monograph had previously noted that fainting during brachial block "occurred only when the injection was given while the patient was sitting up (see page 29).

Cerebral Air Embolism—Adelman⁶ reports a case in which this occurred following an attempted stellate ganglion block as a result of misplacing the needle in lung parenchyma. The episode was characterized by fresh hemoptysis, coma and transient hemiplegia which he feels leaves little doubt that the diagnosis of cerebral air embolism was correct. The intercostal approach was employed. No specific therapy was instituted and the patient recovered without any residua.

REFERENCES

1. MATAS, R. In Memoriam—William Stewart Halsted. An Appreciation. *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 36:2-27, 1925.
2. STRACHAUER, A. C. Brachial Plexus Anesthesia. A Complete Local Anesthesia of Upper Extremities Permitting of All Major Surgical Procedures. *Journal Lancet* 34:301-305, 1914.
3. NEUMIOF, H. Supraclavicular Anesthetization of the Brachial Plexus—A Case of Collapse Following Its Administration. *J. A. M. A.* 62:1629-1631, 1914.
4. SIMPSON, J. K. Supraclavicular Brachial Plexus Block. *J. Florida M. A.* 2:161-165, 1915.
5. LIVINGSTON, E. M. and WERTHEIN, H. Brachial Plexus Block. Its Clinical Application. *Anesth. & Analg.* 6:149-154, 1927.
6. LIVINGSTON, E. M. and WERTHEIN, H. Brachial Plexus Block. Its Clinical Application. *Brit. J. Anaesth.* 4:209-220, 1927.
7. LIVINGSTON, E. M. and WERTHEIN, H. Brachial Plexus Block. Its Clinical Application. *J. A. M. A.* 88:1465-1468, 1927.
8. LABAT, C. Brachial Plexus Block. Details of Technique with Lantern Slide Demonstration. *Brit. J. Anaesth.* 4:174-176, 1927.

Death and Cardiac Failure

DEATHS following regional anesthesia may be caused by respiratory or by cardiovascular failure or by a combination of these two. In many instances it is difficult to determine the primary cause but in the final analysis the patient may not be pronounced dead until the heart stops beating. Deaths during regional block procedures have been reported following (1) topical application and local infiltration (see Chapter 1 page 7) (2) stellate ganglion blocks^{1,2} (3) thoracic and lumbar paravertebral blocks^{3,4} (4) caudal block^{5,6} and (5) spinal blocks^{7,8}.

Many instances of death following regional block procedures other than those cited above could be added. But even then it is doubtful that a correct estimate of mortality following regional block could be determined because (1) regional block is often confined to poor risk patients for whom a general anesthetic is considered unsafe (2) a large number of such deaths are not reported in the literature (3) the incidence varies depending on how the author defines an anesthetic death as well as what the author is trying to prove and (4) the estimate would vary depending on whether literature on the pioneering of this type of anesthesia is reported.

The importance of this section on deaths and cardiac failure is not to try to establish their incidence but to warn that they do sometimes follow even the simplest of regional block procedures and to stress that when the circumstances which caused them are critically reviewed a number (including the one which occurred at the Mason Clinic and is cited in this chapter) might have been pre-

vented if (1) the complication initially responsible had been recognized immediately (2) equipment and materials for correcting all types of complications from regional blocks had been immediately available and the physician had used them and (3) when the complication progressed to cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation manual systole had been instituted immediately. Had manual systole been instituted in our case along with other resuscitative measures we did use resuscitation might have resulted. On the other hand it must be admitted that even if manual systole is tried time lost in instituting it the poor physical status of the patient or some other reason might preclude successful resuscitation. Nevertheless this type of rationalization is no excuse for not entering the chest and performing manual systole when cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation occurs.

SUDDEN CARDIAC FAILURE (Cardiac Arrest and Ventricular Fibrillation)

Cardiac failure may occur suddenly or may be heralded by slowly developing hypotension and oxygen want. In the latter instance the astute conscientious anesthesiologist who is carefully watching his patient will diagnose the problem and may have time to correct it before it has progressed to cardiac failure. Fortunately such warning is available in most regional block procedures particularly spinal and epidural block. On the other hand cardiac failure may occur suddenly without warning or be heralded by such very rapidly developing signs and symptoms that regard

- 46 MANDEL F *Paracervical Block in Diagnosis Prognosis and Therapy* New York Grune & Stratton 1947
- 47 BONICA J J *The Management of Pain* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 48 KAPPIS M and GERLACH F Untersuchungen zu einigen neueren Leukozytenfragen (Kutane Reizmultiplikation Widal's hamoklasische Reaktion) *Med Klin* 35 1031 1034 1921
- 49 WISHART H Y Pneumothorax Complicating Brachial Plexus Block Anaesthesia *Brit J Anaesth* 26 120 123 1954
- 50 WHITE J C and SMITHWICK R H *The Autonomic Nervous System* New York Macmillan Co 1952
- 51 BONICA J J Personal communication
- 52 DUTRA F R and GERACI C L Needle Biopsy of the Lung *JAMA* 155 21 24 1954
- 53 CRAVER L F and BINKLEY J S Aspiration Biopsy of Tumors of the Lung *J Thoracic Surg* 8 436-463 1939
- 54 PITKIN G P *Conduction Anesthesia—Clinical Studies* 2nd Ed Philadelphia Lippincott Co 1953
- 55 BELINKOFF S Prolonged Intercostal Nerve Block in Upper Abdominal Operations *Ann Surg* 127 136 143 1948
- 56 ADelman M H Cerebral Air Embolism Complicating Stellate Ganglion Block *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 15 28 30 1948

Irrespective of when cardiac arrest or fibrillation develops during a regional block, cardiac failure does occur and the physician must (1) understand the possible causes of this serious terrifying and sometimes catastrophic complication (2) be able to recognize when it occurs, and (3) be able to institute what at the present time is considered to be the most effective treatment

ETIOLOGY

The exact etiology of sudden cardiac failure following regional block usually is difficult to determine. Although the following possible or contributing factors other than the block itself or its complications have been proposed as possible causes, the exact etiology of cardiac failure under these conditions remains undetermined at this time. In all probability it is not the result of any one single factor but is caused by a combination of the block, one of its complications, and/or one or more of the factors enumerated below.

Reflex Phenomena—It has been shown that stimulation of the nerve endings of the autonomic nervous system may set up a reflex arc which may in turn cause changes in cardiac rate and rhythm. This mechanism may be effected either via the parasympathetic or sympathetic nerves or both.

Parasympathetic Nervous System i.e. the Vagovagal Reflex—It is the belief of Reid and his co-workers^{16, 18, 19} that the vagus nerve is responsible for mediating the reflexes that result in cardiac failure. According to them this reflex arc is composed of afferent and efferent fibers of the vagus, may be established in any one of three ways: first, over the vagal network to the vagal center and from there by an efferent path to the heart; second, by an axon reflex in the vagal system by passing from one branch to another without going centrally; and third, by irradiation of vagal impulses in which the stimulus originated at vagal nerve endings and passes to a ganglion where it transfers to a branch of the sympathetic system and to the heart.¹⁸ They emphasize that the degree to which the

vagus is stimulated and the area where it is stimulated are all important in determining the outcome of the stimulation, that is, whether only bradycardia or bronchial spasm results or cardiac failure ensues. They also write: "No healthy normal heart can ever stop from vagal stimulation in the sense that serious symptoms will arise. One will never see a carotid sinus syndrome in a healthy heart. If the heart has been the site of disease in which the specific tissue in the ventricles has widespread areas of destruction and if, under these conditions, vagal stimulation depresses stimulus formation in the auricles, the automaticity of the specific tissues* in the ventricles will have been abolished and a contraction does not occur or occurs with insufficient rapidity to provide an adequate circulation. Anesthetic agents** have precisely a similar action on the functional response of the specific tissue, and it behaves as though there were widespread areas of nonfunctioning tissue. In other words, a heart under anesthesia is as vulnerable to vagal stimulation as a heart with diffuse organic lesions would be without anesthesia."¹⁸

Sympathetic Nervous System i.e. Vago-sympathetic Reflex—This reflex involves the afferent fibers of the vagus and the sympathetic nervous system.²⁰ It is probably this reflex which is responsible for both ventricular tachycardia and fibrillation. Oxygen want encourages this type of reflex. Abnormal amounts of Adrenalin (epinephrine) in the circulation (either as a result of emotional distress prior to the block, pain during a blocking procedure, administration of this drug in local anesthetic solutions, or a combination of these) may also act as the stimulus which sets off the reflex or sensitizes the myocardium to it. The work of Burstein²⁰ helps confirm the existence of this reflex, and he cites cases where Adrenalin administered during inhalation

* See Footnote page 70

** Article specifically mentions chloroform, cyclopropane, ethylene, and nitrous oxide, but local anesthetic agents might also reasonably be included, since these may depress the myocardium.

less of the anesthesiologist's attentiveness and ability little time to treat the problem is available.

The term cardiac failure as used in this chapter includes both (1) cardiac arrest which is by far the commonest and (2) ventricular fibrillation which is comparatively rarer. According to Leeds¹⁰ ventricular fibrillation occurs in only 10% of cases of sudden cardiac failure. The recent interest in acute cardiac arrest and ventricular fibrillation is due to the increasing awareness that they do happen and that if recognized early and treated correctly a number of patients may be resuscitated with no clinical evidence of untoward effects from cardiac failure.¹⁻⁷

Studies on the incidence of cardiac arrest and ventricular fibrillation from or following regional block procedures exclusively were not found in medical literature since most articles deal with cases involving all types of anesthetics. Most sudden cardiac failures reported to date have occurred during inhalation or intravenous anesthesia and very rarely as a complication of regional block analgesia per se. The incidence of such complications is approximately 1 in 6 000 to 7 500 anesthetics regional and general combined.¹⁻³ While the incidence of cardiac failure is the primary cause of death following regional nerve block cannot be accurately determined it may be approximately indicated by the following. Bonica⁴ reports only two deaths attributable to the block procedure per se following 34 900 regional block cases over an eight year period and at the Mason Clinic two cardiac failures with one death have occurred in 19 000 regional block procedures in the past seven years. Neither Bonica's series nor the Mason Clinic's series include cases of topical application of local anesthetic drugs for cystoscopy, bronchoscopy, or esophagoscopy. At the Mason Clinic in the past seven years no deaths whatsoever have occurred during these procedures. Since only four cardiac failures occurred in 53 900 cases (Bonica plus author) i.e. 1 in 13 475 cases the incidence of cardiac failures follow-

ing regional block is probably less than the incidence of such failures following inhalation or intravenous anesthesia. This statement is further substantiated by the surveys of Beecher and Todd⁶⁶ Cole¹¹ and Drayps and Vandam.⁶⁷ The higher incidence of cardiac failure following inhalation and intravenous anesthesia is explainable since agents used in these methods usually have a greater depressing action on the specific tissues* of the heart than do local anesthetic agents provided these local agents are not applied directly to the heart or reach it in an extremely high concentration following an inadvertent intravenous injection.

Even though the instances of cardiac failure are few during regional block they may occur during the surgery or in the immediate post block period as well as during the block procedure itself. Their occurrence during or after therapeutic and diagnostic blocks should warn us that when they occur during surgery under regional anesthesia it is not necessarily the surgical procedure that is responsible. In none of the four cases of cardiac failure cited above had surgery been undertaken. The only patient who was to have surgery had been prepared for a cholecystectomy with an epidural block and was in the operating room when the arrest occurred. Treatment was immediately instituted but effective manual systole was not established for five minutes and although the patient was resuscitated she suffered some mental impairment. At the present time one and one half years later she shows steady progress but has not and probably will not regain complete mental competence. In the other three cases the cardiac failure developed secondarily to an unrecognized and inadequately treated pneumothorax which was associated with hypotension and oxygen want.

* The term "specific tissue" refers to those tissues of the myocardium which while difficult to distinguish from the other muscular tissues of the heart by appearance have the capacity to form stimuli independently and autonomously. This is the outstanding differentiating feature of the specific tissue.

the accompanying hypotension and hypoxia invite these more serious consequences.

Age—An analysis of 1 100 cases of cardiac failure revealed that 20% of all cases occurred in patients under 10 years of age.³¹ Incidence declined abruptly above this age and increased again at the age of 40 and above. The high incidence in children can probably be attributed to their highly sensitive reflexes.³⁴ And it seems that the incidence in the older age group is disproportionately high because changes in the vascular tree of the heart and/or lesions in the myocardium especially in the specific tissue render the heart increasingly vulnerable to vagal stimulation.³⁴

Position—Rapid positional changes the prone and decubitus positions raising the gall bladder rest and flexion of the table tend to cause hypotension and narrowing of the pulse pressure with some degree of hypoxia. The lowering of the blood pressure may be due to reflex stimuli or the rapid shunting of blood. Some of these positions also restrict respirations. Therefore if possible extremes of positions and rapid turning should be avoided. The latter is of particular importance in the patient with cardiovascular disease.

Vitamin B Complex Deficiency and Endocrine Imbalance—It has been pointed out that electrocardiographic changes from vitamin B deficiencies occur and that the clinician is often associated with symptoms related to the heart.¹⁶⁻¹⁹ Therefore since these deficiencies and hormone imbalances may contribute to the sensitizing of the heart it is wise to correct them prior to anesthetization.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

As noted previously cardiac failure may be the result of primary hypotension and secondary oxygen want or vice versa. In either instance ample warning of the impending cardiac failure is often available to the conscientious physician. For signs and symptoms which precede cardiac failure in such instances see Chapter 4 page 45 and Chapter 17 page 160.

On the other hand cardiac failure of the reflex type occurs suddenly without any such

warning signs and symptoms or with only momentary ones. The signs and symptoms of stoppage of the heart in these cases are as follows:

Cadaveric Appearance—A cadaveric appearance accompanies sudden reflex stoppage of the heart because the peripheral circulation is halted immediately.

Sudden Disappearance of Blood Pressure—A suspected absence of the blood pressure and the pulse in an extremity should be checked by direct palpation of the large arteries. In case of shock only a blood pressure and pulse are often unobtainable in an extremity but pulsations in the carotid artery and aorta are perceptible. In cardiac failure the sudden disappearance of the blood pressure and pulse in an extremity is also attended by the cessation of pulsations in the carotid artery and aorta.

Cessation of Respiration—When cardiac failure occurs apnea results. Often during manual systole a gasping type of respiration is seen which presumably represents an effort on the part of the respiratory center to re-establish respirations even though the heart beat has not been started. This phenomenon is not a signal for elation in the two cases under inhalation anesthesia in which this was observed by the author the heart beat could not be re-established even though the surgeon was working in the thorax at the time ventricular fibrillation began and he immediately instituted manual systole and other restorative therapy.

Dilatation of the Pupils—The pupils dilate rapidly upon failure of the heart. If effective manual systole is instituted and the patient kept oxygenated the pupils will contract. If in spite of this therapy the heart beat cannot be re-established the pupils will again start to dilate. This usually indicates that attempts to resuscitate the patient will fail.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prior to all surgery but particularly elective surgery a careful history and physical examination and essential laboratory work (i.e.

tion anesthesia has produced cardiac irregularities and sudden death.

Oxygen Want (hypoxia or anoxia)—Although oxygen want itself may cause cardiac failure it is difficult to assess the role it plays in this sudden reflex type. Reid *et al*¹⁰ summarize the role of oxygen want under these circumstances when they state "The precise role of anoxia appears to be that while it alone cannot cause a vagovagal reflex nevertheless it potentiates the action of the anesthetic agent so that the net result is further decrease in the capacity of the specific tissue to form stimuli.

Depression of the Myocardium by Local Anesthetic Drugs and/or Previous Myocardial Damage—Either individually or together these factors may act to depress conductivity and responsiveness of the specific tissue of the cardiac musculature and thus contribute to sudden cardiac failure (see Chapter I page 16). It is known that local anesthetic agents (with the exception of cocaine) have a depressing action on the myocardium and may therefore decrease the normal functional response of this organ. If in addition to the depression of the cardiac muscle hypoxia has resulted either from pre-existing disease i.e. arteriosclerosis etc. or from the complications of regional block procedures the stage is set for the appearance of cardiac failure (see Oxygen Want above). These factors alone may precipitate sudden cardiac failure but if in addition to these manipulations produce vagal stimulation the chances of sudden cardiac failure are enhanced. Nevertheless even though most local anesthetic drugs do have a depressing action on the heart the incidence of cardiac failure during regional block would indicate that the action of local anesthetic agents is not as likely to bring about cardiac failure as is the depressant effect of general anesthetics.

Surgical Manipulation—If surgery is begun after a regional block procedure but prior to the establishment of the analgesia or if the surgeon starts to work in an unanesthetized area undesirable reflexes of the autonomic nervous system may be initiated. Then too pain may cause apprehension and excitement

which increase the output of the adrenal gland and this alone or together with the Adrenalin (epinephrine) in the local anesthetic solution may markedly increase the total circulating adrenaline. This is particularly dangerous in a patient with cardiac disease since the combination of the disease excess adrenaline and depression of the myocardium by the local anesthetic agent may result in sudden cardiac failure. This may be the explanation of the deaths reported during thoracic sympathetic blocks for angina pectoris.¹¹⁻¹³ If pneumothorax with its attendant hypoxia is added to the above factors the situation becomes singularly precarious.

Some thoracic procedures are at the present time being performed under regional block and in these cases the surgeon should avoid traction torsion and pressure to the heart or large vessels. Such surgical trauma may trigger cardiac failure. Excessive stimulation which may result in the vagal reflex phenomenon of the autonomic nervous system may also originate in the respiratory or gastrointestinal tracts from mechanical contrivances such as endotracheal and Miller Abbott tubes as well as from the clamping or tying of structures containing vagal nerve endings.¹⁴

Diodrast—The use of Diodrast in therapeutic and diagnostic block procedures to assure correct placing of the needle is increasing in popularity. Nevertheless a risk is involved severe cardiovascular complications and deaths are reported following its use intravenously and it is always possible to make an inadvertent intravenous injection during a regional procedure.¹⁵

Analeptics—The use of analeptics during a systemic toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug is to be condemned because analeptics increase the oxygen demand of tissues already subjected to hypoxia.¹⁶ In this fashion they may help to precipitate cardiac failure.

Cerebral Vascular Accidents Coronary Occlusion Pulmonary Embolism, Acute Pulmonary Collapse—These sudden acute accidents may occur during regional block procedures and while they may not cause immediate cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation

first. While the specific treatment of the fibrillating heart differs from that of the heart in asystole, the steps of establishing a tentative diagnosis of ceasing the heart and of the artificial re-establishment of circulation and respirations—all of which precede such specific treatment—are the same regardless of whether arrest or fibrillation has occurred.

Determining Diagnosis and Establishing Artificial Circulation and Respiration—Alert the Surgeon and Operating Room Personnel—A conscientious alert physician who is carefully attending the patient, i.e. checking blood pressure, pulse, and respirations following a regional block will be in most instances the first to suspect a cardiac failure. Additional help must be summoned immediately, and if a surgical procedure is in process the surgeon should be immediately alerted. While the anesthesiologist checks for pulsations in the radial and carotid arteries, the surgeon should check the thorax or heart if the abdomen or chest is open. When the abdomen or chest is not open, the only method of conclusively determining whether cardiac stoppage or ventricular fibrillation exists is by means of the electrocardiograph. Unfortunately, this machine cannot be connected to every patient prior to every regional block procedure for obvious reasons of practicality, and since it would take longer than 3½ minutes to obtain an electrocardiogram without prior preparation, the instrument except in the occasional case is of little value in confirming a tentative diagnosis of cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation. Likewise placing a needle into the heart to see if the needle's hub fluctuates—indicating cardiac action—is not too practical since it consumes valuable time and may not give a conclusive diagnosis. Placement of a needle in the heart may be done while waiting for the instruments with which to perform a thoracotomy, but it is no substitute for direct visualization of the heart. *When cardiac failure is suspected a thoracotomy is required.*

Such a decision is not always an easy one in regional block procedures, particularly if surgery has not started or if the block was

performed for diagnostic or therapeutic reasons. In such instances, Sadove³⁶ advocates giving intravenously a mixture of 1½ to 1⅞ (0.9 to 1.2 mg.) gr. of atropine and 0.3 cc. of 1% solution (3 mg.) of Neosynephrine. If no response is then noted within 15 seconds, i.e., an obtainable blood pressure and pulsations in the arteries, he feels that the immediate institution of manual systole is mandatory. Primrose³⁷ suggested the use of amyl nitrite and states, "The ordinary faint recovers immediately with an artificial inhalation of a capsule of this drug, whereas the arrested heart cannot respond at all." Striking a sharp blow on the chest wall over the precordium or passing an electric current through the chest wall has been employed by Roberts *et al.*³⁸ and Zoll *et al.*^{39, 40} respectively, as methods to be used to start the heart beating in instances where thoracotomy is not feasible. Such a situation may exist during a therapeutic or diagnostic block in an office which lacks additional help and the equipment to perform a thoracotomy. However, if the block is performed in an anesthesia block room or the operating room of the hospital where facilities for manual systole should be available, these other therapeutic measures seem to be permissible only while preparations are being made for institution of manual systole; they should in no way delay thoracotomy once the tentative diagnosis of cardiac failure has been made. For thoracotomy is usually the only practical means to a definite diagnosis and effective therapy.

It must be recognized that the physician who realizes that time is the essence of treatment if lives are to be saved will occasionally perform a thoracotomy in a patient where the heart has not stopped beating and where manual systole is unnecessary. While this may be a bit embarrassing for the physician, it is something which, if it is later carefully and adequately explained to the patient, should be accepted without untoward repercussions.

Have One Physician Only Give the Orders—It should be obvious that one physician must assume control of the situation when

blood count hemoglobin determination etc.) should be performed. Nutritional deficiencies call for the administration of vitamin B complex and patients in the climacteric period exhibiting signs and symptoms of cardiac disease should be treated with the appropriate hormone.^{10, 9} Patients with organic cardiac disease should be well digitalized or quinidized as indicated. Fluid and electrolyte balance as well as blood volume should be within normal limits prior to surgery. Blood lost during surgery should be replaced as it is being lost.

Correct premedication is essential and should be carefully chosen for each individual to allay apprehension and depress vagal function. Reid *et al*^{10, 31} stress the usefulness of atropine in depressing the vagus and their strong belief in its usefulness in this regard is evident in their conclusion. In summary, one can say that cardiac arrest is a surgical emergency in which time is of the essence. Action is imperative. However regardless of how successful or spectacular the most ingenious and technically perfect surgical procedures have been or may be surely it must be a sobering thought to realize that *particular emergency was preventable and preventable by such an old safe and reliable therapeutic agent as atropine the very simplicity of which has contributed to its surprising and inexcusable neglect*.³⁴

The administration of Novocain (procaine hydrochloride) or Pronestyl (procaine amide) prior to and during the surgical procedure to decrease myocardial irritability when regional blocks are used is questionable. Johnson and Kirby³ think it is of little protection even during general anesthesia.

Perhaps the most important of all prophylactic measures to prevent cardiac failures is to assure maximum oxygenation of the myocardium. While hypoxia, per se will not cause or initiate a vagovagal reflex it does enormously potentiate the possibility of such a reaction. This is one of the important reasons why the administration of oxygen during regional procedures is strongly favored at the Mason Clinic particularly for patients with

a poor physical status and for those who receive a spinal block, an epidural block or intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) block—procedures known to cause hypotension and oxygen want.

All regional procedures even simple local infiltrations should be supervised by trained personnel preferably an anesthesiologist who constantly checks the patient's physical condition.

TREATMENT

If the treatment of cardiac arrest or fibrillation is to be successful a rapid diagnosis and institution of manual systole (cardiac massage) is essential otherwise any other type of therapy is no more than an exercise. Weinberger *et al*³² studying the survival time of the brain have shown experimentally that (1) the brain subjected to less than 3½ minutes of anoxia will show no change (2) if subjected to more than 3½ minutes but less than 8¼ minutes of anoxia, irreversible changes in the brain occur which are compatible with life but the patient will be mentally incompetent and (3) if more than 8¼ minutes elapse changes occur in the brain which are incompatible with life. In this last instance the heart beat may be re established only to stop two or more hours afterwards.

The exact treatment of cardiac failures may differ from institution to institution and from physician to physician particularly since its exact etiology has not been definitely determined. However most papers on cardiac failure strongly advise that every hospital maintain surgical instruments syringes endotracheal tubes laryngoscopes oxygen and drugs immediately available and suggest that this equipment be kept separate to be used only when this emergency arises.

The following treatment is an attempt to summarize the current therapy advocated for cardiac arrest and ventricular fibrillation. These therapeutic measures must be instituted simultaneously if possible and the order in which they are listed below is no particular indication as to which should be performed

by checking the blood pressure of the arm. Adequate manual systole should raise the systolic pressure to approximately 60 mm Hg. If it is difficult to obtain this amount of pressure the aorta distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery may be compressed by a clamp. This will increase the blood flow to the coronary and cerebral vessels as well as allow for a check of the adequacy of the systole by the blood pressure cuff on the upper extremity.^{11, 12, 13} Whether the manual systole is carried out by one hand or two hands depends on the size of the heart.¹⁴ If the heart is small one hand may be effective but if large both hands are needed. Whether one or both hands are used manual systole is tiring and the physician must be relieved at intervals by an assistant if effective systole is to be maintained.

The initial task is to prevent the heart muscle and the brain from dying not to restore the heart. The heart may usually be re-established unless the tissues which are responsible for initiating it are damaged by hypoxia or anoxia.

Whether the pericardium should or should not be opened is immaterial provided adequate systole is maintained. However there is little question that the thoracic approach to the heart is preferable to an abdominal approach because the thoracic approach permits (1) the heart to be seen (2) the defibrillator to be used (3) intracardiac administrations to be made and (4) it is difficult to grasp the heart via the abdomen.^{1, 2, 3, 4, 15} Nevertheless if the abdomen is open at the time of failure the subdiaphragmatic avenue for manual systole should be used while the chest is being opened.

The use of atropine to decrease vagal reflexes once cardiac failure is definitely established is debatable probably it does no harm.

Intravenous Fluids—Solutions such as 5% dextrose in distilled water plasma blood or other volume expanders should be administered intravenously.¹⁶ They support circulation and increase the return of venous blood to the heart. Sodium chloride solutions are best avoided as they may increase cerebral

edema should resuscitation of the heart be successful. Saklad¹⁷ suggests the use of intra-arterial transfusion if the blood pressure remains low because of the improved coronary and cerebral blood flow it provides.

Avoid Steep Trendelenburg Position—Seven to 10 degrees of Trendelenburg position may be advantageous to get the blood to the brain but a greater degree is of no value. It should be remembered that while the head down position may encourage flow to the brain it also retards return flow from the brain to the heart so that perhaps no tilt of the table is the best position for this type of emergency.⁴

Avoid Analeptic and Sympatholytic Drugs—In cardiac failure caffeine, Metrazol (pentylenetetrazol), Coramine (nikethamide), ephedrine, Neosynephrine (phenylephrine) etc., should not be used as they increase oxygen demand and thereby increase tissue anoxia and thus only aggravate the problem. Schmidt¹⁸ writes "Direct studies of the oxygen consumption of the brain *in situ* have shown that cerebral metabolic activity runs parallel to cerebral functional activity and that convulsants may lead to cerebral anoxia (with all its consequences) because they increase oxygen demand beyond the available supply."

Avoid Digitalis, Ouabain and Strophanthin—These drugs act on the atrioventricular conduction system to increase the refractory period and to slow the rate of conduction and are therefore not indicated in cardiac failure.

Specific Treatment of the Cardiac Arrest (Asystole)—Once the circulation and respirations are maintained artificially thought may be given to restoring the heart beat. Often these two actions i.e. establishment of circulation and oxygenation of the tissues will start the heart's beat. However if they do not there is no need for haste and careful consideration may be given to other methods.

Mechanical—Pricking of the heart or flicking it with the finger may cause the heart to start beating. If these simple methods fail then drugs are used.

Drugs—The usefulness of Adrenalin (epi

this complication occurs. He alone should direct the treatment. Orders by all physicians present will only cause confusion and delay the resuscitation of the heart.

Keep Time and Accurately Chart Proceedings—When cardiac failure is suspected the anesthesiologist or preferably some other person, a nurse or intern, should immediately be assigned the task of counting aloud the passing of time—30 seconds, 1 minute, 1½ minutes, etc. This keeps the physicians involved in the active treatment acutely aware that speed is essential. The time keeper should also accurately chart each step, i.e. intubation, manual systole, drugs administered, etc., as it is performed by the surgeon and anesthesiologist.

Remove Cause of Failure—If surgical instrumentation of the organs is under way or a block procedure is being performed, it must cease immediately so that additional stimulation is obviated.

Discontinue Anesthesia, Clear Airway, Correct any Possible Hypoxia—If inhalation or intravenous anesthesia is being used along with the regional procedure, it must be discontinued at once. An adequate airway using an oral airway or preferably a cuffed endotracheal tube should be established. A cuffed endotracheal tube is favored because it prevents (1) aspiration of vomitus and (2) when artificial respiration is given by bag and mask, it prevents the dilatation of the stomach which in itself may cause death. If only an oral airway is used, the physician must watch for distention of the stomach and if it occurs a Levin tube for its decompression must be passed.

Should vomiting occur, the pharynx, larynx, trachea, etc., must be cleared by suction (see Chapter 18, page 167). Bronchoscopy is the most satisfactory means of accomplishing this. When the airway is clear, artificial respiration at the rate of 20 per minute, preferably by bag and mask using 100% oxygen at 10 liters per minute, should be maintained. Artificial respiration may, by the very nature of the recoil and expansion of the lungs, compress the heart and send some blood to the coro-

naries and the brain, but it is never a substitute for manual systole.

If oxygen, bag and mask are not available immediately, manual types of artificial respiration and/or mouth to mouth breathing may be used until they are. Correction of oxygen want is essential.

Institute Manual Systole (cardiac massage)—This is by far the most important step in the treatment of cardiac failure and must be instituted within 3½ minutes after the interruption of circulation to the brain.

Preparation of the skin and sterile draping of the thorax is an unnecessary waste of time. In the unprepared skin over the left fourth or fifth interspace a slashing deep incision should be made and rapidly extended down to the pleura, avoiding the internal mammary artery if possible. The pleura is opened by the knife handle so as not to cut the lung and the lung depressed so that the pleura may be widely opened with scissors or a scalpel. If however the lung is cut, immediate repair must not be attempted—only a clamp should be placed across the rent. It can be sutured later. Once the pleura is opened, the right hand is forced between the ribs and the heart is palpated. *No more than 15 seconds should elapse between the time the scalpel is handed to the physician and the hand is on the heart.* If the heart is not beating effectively, irrespective of whether asystole or ventricular fibrillation is found, manual systole at a rate of 60 to 80 per minute is started. The thoracic cage is then opened wide by an assistant or by the surgeon using his left hand as the right continues the manual systole. To accomplish this, the costal cartilage of the ribs is usually cut and a self-retracting retractor inserted. This allows direct visualization of the heart and makes the manual systole easier as it relieves the pressure of the ribs on the wrist or forearm of the inserted hand.

The term "manual systole" is preferred to cardiac massage because rhythmical compression is of no value unless it is performed in a manner which forces blood from the heart and simulates an effective systole. The effectiveness of the systole should be ascertained

(procaine) should not be used intravenously or intracardially in cardiac arrest for they would further depress the myocardium.

Specific Treatment of Ventricular Fibrillation—This is a very serious problem since the heart must be converted to asystole (cardiac arrest) before the normal beat can be restored. When this complication occurs in a normal heart resuscitation is usually possible but when it occurs in an organically diseased one it is almost always fatal. No attempts to stop the fibrillation should be made before effective respirations and circulation have been established by artificial means as described previously to assure adequate oxygenation of the tissues particularly of the myocardium. Once these are established the following means to stop fibrillation and re-establish the heart beat may be undertaken.

Defibrillation of the Heart—If manual systole in itself has not brought about defibrillation then the heart may be defibrillated either by electrical methods or by drug therapy.

To effect defibrillation of the heart by electrical shock methods two electrodes are applied to the ventricle (one at the back and one at the front opposite each other if possible) and 125 to 130 volts at a standard 15 to 30 amperes are passed through it for 0.1 second. Stronger voltage and/or periods of application longer than 0.1 second may burn the heart.¹⁻³ If the fibrillation is not stopped, then another shock may be administered.⁴ A period of manual systole should be instituted between single shock trials to assure adequate oxygenation of the brain and heart muscle. The injection of 2 to 5 cc of 5% Novocain (procaine) into the right ventricle after the first unsuccessful shock may also make the heart respond more favorably to subsequent shock therapy.⁵⁴ The experimental work of Kay⁴⁹ does not substantiate the efficacy of using Novocain in ventricular fibrillation. He states "The experimental results here recorded tend to indicate that procaine should not be used unless serial defibrillation has failed after many attempts. Although the procaine appeared to be of slight assistance

in electrical defibrillation of the heart the ventricular standstill that may result following successful electrical defibrillation was more difficult to treat if 10 cubic centimeters of 1% procaine had been used, and in most experiments this disadvantage appeared to outweigh the advantage in the use of procaine."

Should single shock therapy be ineffective then a series of 5 to 10 shocks at 0.1 second intervals using the same voltage and time of application should be given as the electrodes are moved over the ventricles.⁴⁹⁻⁵² Moving the electrodes is necessary to avoid burning the heart as well as to cover all areas of the heart from which the stimulus causing the fibrillation may be originating. Many investigators feel that serial shocks are more effective than the individual shock technique in stopping fibrillation.

Defibrillation by drugs may at times be more effective than mechanical defibrillation. However this is debatable.⁴⁹ The physician may so to speak pay his money and take his choice. Often it is necessary to use both methods to bring about asystole. The following drugs are effective defibrillators and one or more may be tried by injection into the chamber of the auricle or ventricle (see Table XIV page 78).

- I Novocain (procaine hydrochloride) — 10 to 20 cc of a 1% solution
- II Pronestyl (procaine amide) — 100 to 200 mg
- III Potassium chloride — 0.5 to 2.5 milli equivalents (1 to 5 cc of a 37% solution)
- IV Xylocaine (lidocaine hydrochloride) — Recently this drug has been shown to correct ventricular fibrillation effectively in 21 out of 23 dogs.⁵³ These preliminary experiments showed that ventricular injection of Xylocaine was the most effective treatment for ventricular fibrillation in dogs. As yet studies concerning the use of this drug in man are not available. It can be as

TABLE XIV

DRUGS THAT ARE USEFUL IN CARDIAC RESUSCITATION

(After Leeds⁴⁶)

<i>Drug</i>	<i>Dosage</i>	<i>Indications</i>	<i>Contraindications</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Adrenalin (epinephrine)	0.5 to 2 cc 1:5000 solution in auricle	Regular rhythm weak contractions cautiously in asystole	Ventricular fibrillation	Stimulates heart by direct effect on myocardium and conduction system increases myocardial irritability
Calcium chloride	2 to 4 cc 10% solution in left ventricle	Regular rhythm weak contractions cautiously in asystole	Ventricular fibrillation	Will sometimes revive heart that does not respond to epinephrine
Novocain (procaine hydrochloride)	10 cc 1% solution in auricle or 50 to 100 cc 1% solution intravenously	Ventricular fibrillation that fails to respond to shocks	Asystole and flabby myocardium	Diminishes irritability of myocardium and conduction system
Pronestyl (procaine amide)	100 to 200 mg in auricle or intravenously	Ventricular fibrillation that fails to respond to shocks	Asystole and flabby myocardium	Diminishes irritability of myocardium and conduction system
Atropine and scopolamine	0.065 gm or 0.01 gr intravenously	Cardiac arrest due to vagovagal reflex	Tachycardia	Block vagal effects on sinoauricular pacemaker
Quinidine	0.2 gm 4 or 5 times daily orally	Presence of cardiac arrhythmia preoperatively	Intravenous or intra cardiac use	Decreases myocardial excitability and slows conduction of impulses
Barium chloride	1 to 2 cc 0.5% solution intracardially	Regular rhythm weak contractions cautiously in asystole	Ventricular fibrillation	Used less frequently than calcium chloride
Potassium chloride	0.5 to 5% solution intracardially	Ventricular fibrillation to produce its inhibition	Asystole or weak regular contraction	Not recommended electrical defibrillation is probably more efficient and less dangerous

nephine) has been discounted by Primrose⁴³ but supported by a number of other authors.^{1, 11, 46, 49} It may be given in small doses i.e. 0.5 to 2 cc of 1:5000 into the auricle or ventricle. Larger doses may cause ventricular fibrillation (see Table XIV page 78).⁴⁷ It should not be given before oxygenation of the heart muscle has occurred from at least one minute of effective manual systole lest ventricular fibrillation ensue.

Calcium chloride has proven to be very use

ful and 2 to 4 cc of a 10% solution injected cautiously into the chamber of the left ventricle is usually an adequate dose but if it is not the dosage may be repeated (see Table XIV page 78).^{49, 50} The chloride is important because only an ionizable calcium salt will prove effective. Calcium chloride must be used judiciously for if too much of this drug is injected into the left ventricle fibrillation may result.

Pronestyl (procaine amide) and Novocain

(procaine) should not be used intravenously or intracardially in cardiac arrest for they would further depress the myocardium.

Specific Treatment of Ventricular Fibrillation—This is a very serious problem since the heart must be converted to systole (cardiac arrest) before the normal beat can be restored. When this complication occurs in a normal heart resuscitation is usually possible but when it occurs in an organically diseased one it is almost always fatal. *No attempts to stop the fibrillation should be made before effective respirations and circulation have been established by artificial means* as described previously to assure adequate oxygenation of the tissues particularly of the myocardium. Once these are established the following means to stop fibrillation and re-establish the heart beat may be undertaken.

Defibrillation of the Heart—If manual systole in itself has not brought about defibrillation then the heart may be defibrillated either by electrical methods or by drug therapy.

To effect defibrillation of the heart by electrical shock methods two electrodes are applied to the ventricle (one at the back and one at the front opposite each other if possible) and 125 to 130 volts at a standard 15 to 30 amperes are passed through it for 0.1 second. Stronger voltage and/or periods of application longer than 0.1 second may burn the heart.¹⁻³ If the fibrillation is not stopped then another shock may be administered.⁵⁻⁷ A period of manual systole should be instituted between single shock trials to assure adequate oxygenation of the brain and heart muscle. The injection of 2 to 5 cc of 5% Novocain (procaine) into the right ventricle after the first unsuccessful shock may also make the heart respond more favorably to subsequent shock therapy.⁵⁴ The experimental work of Kay⁴⁹ does not substantiate the efficacy of using Novocain in ventricular fibrillation. He states: "The experimental results here recorded tend to indicate that procaine should not be used unless serial defibrillation has failed after many attempts. Although the procaine appeared to be of slight assistance

in electrical defibrillation of the heart, the ventricular standstill that may result following successful electrical defibrillation was more difficult to treat if 10 cubic centimeters of 1% procaine had been used and in most experiments this disadvantage appeared to outweigh the advantage in the use of procaine."

Should single shock therapy be ineffective then a series of 5 to 10 shocks at 0.1 second intervals using the same voltage and time of application should be given as the electrodes are moved over the ventricles.⁴⁹⁻⁵¹ Moving the electrodes is necessary to avoid burning the heart as well as to cover all areas of the heart from which the stimulus causing the fibrillation may be originating. Many investigators feel that serial shocks are more effective than the individual shock technique in stopping fibrillation.

Defibrillation by drugs may at times be more effective than mechanical defibrillation. However this is debatable.⁴⁹ The physician may so to speak pay his money and take his choice. Often it is necessary to use both methods to bring about systole. The following drugs are effective defibrillators and one or more may be tried by injection into the chamber of the auricle or ventricle (see Table XIV page 78).

- I Novocain (procaine hydrochloride) — 10 to 20 cc of a 1% solution
- II Pronestyl (procaine amide) — 100 to 200 mg
- III Potassium chloride — 0.5 to 2.5 milliequivalents (1 to 5 cc of a 3.7% solution)
- IV Nyllocaine (lidocaine hydrochloride) — Recently this drug has been shown to correct ventricular fibrillation effectively in 21 out of 23 dogs.⁶⁰ These preliminary experiments showed that ventricular injection of Nyllocaine was the most effective treatment for ventricular fibrillation in dogs. As yet studies concerning the use of this drug in man are not available. It can be as

sumed that it can be used in a dosage similar to that of 1% Novocain i.e., 10 to 20 cc of a 1% solution

Re establish heart beat—If defibrillation is effective then attempts to re establish heart beat as described under Cardiac Arrest page 77 to 79 must be undertaken

Precautions—Once the heart has started to beat normally the following precautions should be observed

Do Not Close the Chest Too Soon—The chest must not be closed prematurely for cardiac failure may recur *

Do Not Do Additional Surgery—When cardiac failure occurs and it is treated satisfactorily other surgery unless in itself life saving must be postponed to another time. It is better to stop surgery and let the patient live to be operated on another day than to have him die trying to overcome the insurmountable odds of cardiac failure plus a long surgical procedure

For he who fights and runs away
May live to fight another day
But he who is in battle slain
Can never rise and fight again "

—Oliver Goldsmith⁷¹

AFTER CARE OF THE PATIENT RESUSCITATED FROM CARDIAC ARREST OR VENTRICULAR FIBRILLATION

Once a patient with ventricular fibrillation or cardiac arrest has been resuscitated the physician may draw a small sigh of relief. But he should not be over optimistic for if postoperative treatment is not carefully planned and supervised the patient may die from the effects of cerebral edema caused by the anoxia which is a result of acute cardiac failure. Saklad⁴¹ states "After re establishment of the heart beat any one of three things may result. There may be complete recovery of the heart beat respiration and cerebral function. The heart may function properly respiration may be satisfactory but because of advance oxygen deprivation to the brain there may be altered cerebral function. On occasion the heart may recover but res-

piration will not be resumed with ultimate death of the patient. Often a patient may linger unconscious but breathing well with seemingly good heart action and die after a protracted period of 1 to 15 days. These patients exhibit the characteristic brain damage of cerebral hypoxia."

Seldon *et al*⁵⁶ stress the importance of the relationship of cerebral edema in the post operative period to cerebral anoxia during the surgical period and state "Permanent damage to the brain as a result of acute cerebral anoxia not only is a function of the duration of the anoxic episode but also in the case of sublethal periods of anoxia must be conditioned by the duration and severity of post anoxic cerebral edema. It is suggested that a considerable portion of the permanent cerebral damage reported in these unfortunate cases may be the result not of the initial insult but rather a period of untreated cerebral edema subsequent to the initial insult."

Courville⁵⁷ Saklad⁴¹ and Lucas⁵⁸ have found that the earliest change in the anoxic brain is edema. If this is rapidly absorbed the cells recover but if it persists then further oxygenation of the cell is impaired by purely mechanical means so that hypoxia of the cell is aggravated and a vicious cycle is established that eventually leads to the death of the cell. The signs and symptoms of brain edema are referable to the central nervous system i.e. coma restlessness screaming convulsions etc. When these are seen the outcome is questionable. Treatment to reduce cerebral edema must be immediately instituted with other generalized supportive therapy if these patients are to be saved from brain damage and death.

The physician should not wait until the above signs and symptoms develop. As soon as the patient is returned to the ward the physician must institute the following therapy which is aimed at lessening the cerebral edema oxygenating the brain cells and reversing the vicious cycle.

Administer Serum Albumin—Although serum albumin constitutes less than 60% of the total plasma proteins it is responsible for

about 50% of the total osmotic effect of plasma.⁶⁰ Fifty cc of albumin is osmotically equivalent to 250 cc of plasma and will usually withdraw 3 to 3½ times its own volume of fluid from the tissues in fifteen minutes.⁶¹ Cates and Crug⁶² Sheldon *et al.*⁶³ Sheldon *et al.*⁶⁴ and Moyer⁶⁵ believe that serum albumin is superior to most of the commonly used dehydrating agents, such as 50% dextrose or sucrose and other blood volume expanders. Coles⁶⁶ case of cardiac arrest which exhibited evidence of cerebral edema in the postoperative period and which was successfully treated with serum albumin would substantiate this preference. However if serum albumin is not available the other solutions may be used.

Dosage.—Cates and Crug⁶⁰ advocate that 60 to 80 cc of serum albumin solution (5 gm/20 cc) be administered intravenously in 6 to 10 minutes and that fluids be withheld from the patient for the next 8 hours. Doses as large as 300 cc to 500 cc (75 to 125 gm) of salt poor human serum albumin have been given over a one hour period without untoward effects to reduce cerebral edema associated with barbiturate poisoning.⁶⁷ Cases of cardiac failure at the Mason Clinic in which serum albumin was used demonstrate that 80 to 120 cc (20 to 30 gm) can be administered intravenously in 6 to 8 minutes every 4 to 6 hours without harm.

Complications of Administering Serum Albumin.—None have been observed at the Mason Clinic but Cutter mentions pulmonary edema, respiratory embarrassment and cardiac decompensation as possibilities.⁶¹

Restrict Intravenous Fluids.—During treatment of cerebral edema fluids should be withheld or limited to a minimum. Normal saline solutions should be avoided under most circumstances as they may cause death by accentuating the edema.

Administer Oxygen.—Oxygen should be administered in high concentration by mask or tent.

Use Antibiotics.—These patients may develop pneumonia. If the chest wall has been entered without using asepsis as is likely the

chest wall, the pleural cavity and/or the pericardial space may become infected. All precautions to avoid infection must be taken.

Supportive Therapy.—High vitamin intake, food and fluid by mouth, stir up regime (tracheal suction moving from side to side, coughing of the patient and early ambulation), good nursing care, and effective means to reduce hyperthermia if present i.e. alcohol rub, ice packs, etc. will all contribute greatly to the patient's recovery.

Cure for Chest Wound.—The usual routine care of a chest wound i.e. under water drainage, etc., will suffice.

COMMENT

The Intravenous Use of Novocain (procaine hydrochloride) in Cerebral Edema.—The use of intravenous Novocain to overcome the acute anoxic state following episodes of cerebral anoxia has been advocated by Courville.¹ He states "The encouraging experiences with the use of procaine hydrochloride (1 gm. in liter of 2% glucose in normal saline) in the treatment of cerebral anoxia of other causes (Olsen, Ames, and Marinacci, 1950) would suggest its value in these post-anesthetic cases. Its use is indicated in view of the secondary and often long standing vasomotor effects of anoxemia already discussed. Procaine is presumed to stabilize vasomotor control with consequent improvement in the patient's clinical state if the original insult has not been too profound. It should be given intravenously by slow drip once or twice a day until the patient has recovered or until further efforts are obviously useless."

It is our belief that serum albumin is preferable to intravenous Novocain. The use of intravenous Novocain as advocated above necessitates the administration of large volumes of solutions. One of the principles of treatment of acute cerebral edema is the restriction of fluid intake.

REFERENCES

1. WHITE, J. C., SMITHWICK, R. H. and SIMMONS, F. A. *The Autonomic Nervous System* 3rd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co. 1952.

- 2 LAUBRY CH et DE BALSAC HEIM Considerations sur un cas d'angine de poitrine mortel *Bull Soc Med Hop Paris* p 1248 1255 13 Juillet 1934
- 3 BISHOP H F Operating Room Deaths *Anesthesiology* 7 651 662 1946
- 4 FALLIN I M and DEUTSCH E V Death Following Stellate Ganglion Block *Ann Surg* 133 226 233 1951
- 5 ADRIANI J PARVLEY J and OCHSNER A Fatalities and Complications After Attempts at Stellate Ganglion Block *Surgery* 32 615 619 1952
- 6 BONICA JOHN *The Management of Pain Philadelphia Let & Febiger* 1953
- 7 MANDEL F *Paravertebral Block* New York Grune & Stratton 1947
- 8 ORKIN L R PAPPER E M and ROYENSTEIN E A Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks *J Thoracic Surg* 20 911 922 1950
- 9 VOLLMANN J Betrachtungen über Zwischenfälle bei fast 78 000 Grenzstrang Blockaden *Beitr Klin Chir* 185 285 301 1952
- 10 BONICA J J Personal Communications
- 11 COLE F A Defense of Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 13 407-415 1952
- 12 MAXSON L M *Spinal Anesthesia* Philadelphia and New York J B Lippincott Co 1938
- 13 GREENHILL J P Shall Spinal Anesthesia be Used in Obstetrics? *Anesthesiology* 11 283 288 1950
- 14 FALLIN I M and GOLDMAN M Fatal Massive Pulmonary Collapse During Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 10 325 342 1949
- 15 LEEDS S E Cardiac Resuscitation *JAMA* 152 1409 1413 1953
- 16 REID L C STEPHENSON H E JR and HINTON J W Cardiac Arrest *AMA Arch Surg* 64 409 420 1952
- 17 LAHEY F H and RUZICKA E R Experiences with Cardiac Arrest *Surg Gynec & Obst* 90 108 118 1950
- 18 Treatment of Cardiac Arrest *Veterans Admin Tech Bull* 4 TB 10 65 1950
- 19 MARGETTS L H and STONE C S Cardiac Resuscitation *Bull Mason Clin* 8 50 59 1952
- 20 HANES E C and PAPPER E M Cardiac Resuscitation *New York State J Med* 51 1801 1814 1951
- 21 CARTER M G Cardiac Arrest Complete Recovery after Twenty five Minutes *JAMA* 147 1347 1349 1951
- 22 BONICA J J Cardiac Arrest *Northwest Med* 52 719 723 1953
- 23 JOHNSON J and KIRBY C K Prevention and Treatment of Cardiac Arrest *JAMA* 154 291 294 1951
- 24 BAILEY H Cardiac Massage for Impending Death under Anesthesia *Brit M J* 284 85 1911
- 25 BAILEY H Impending Death Under Anesthesia *J Internat Coll Surgeons* 10 1 10 1947
- 26 DUNN R D KIRBY C K JOHNSON J and ERB W H Cardiac Resuscitation *Ann Surg* 127 592 601 1948
- 27 NICHOLSON J C Cardiac Massage *Brit M J* 1 385 386 1942
- 28 REID L C and BRACE D E Reflexes from the Mouth Trachea and Esophagus which Stimulate Respiration *Anesthesiology* 4 315 360 1943
- 29 REID L C Anesthesia in Relation to Cardiac Disease *Anesthesiology* 2 161 169 1941
- 30 BURSTEIN C L Misuse of Adrenalin and Coramine Altered Drug Effects During Anesthesia *Am J Surg* 73 102 103 1947
- 31 MOORE D C *Stellate Ganglion Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- 32 PENDECRASS E P CHAMBERLIN G W GODFREY E W and BURDICK E D A Survey of Deaths and Unfavorable Sequelae Following the Administration of Contrast Media *Am J Roentgenol* 48 741 762 1942
- 33 SCHMIDT C F Recent Developments in Respiratory Physiology Related to Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 6 113 123 1945
- 34 HINTON J W STEPHENSON H E and REID L C Prevention of Cardiac Arrest *Am Surgeon* 18 934 935 1952
- 35 WEINBERGER L M GIBSON M H and GIBSON J H In Temporary Arrest of the Circulation to the Central Nervous System I Physiologic Effects *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 43 615 634 1940
- 36 SADOVE M S Anesthetic Accidents and Cardiac Resuscitation Presented at 21st Annual Meeting of American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons 1954
- 37 PRIMROSE W B Cardiac Resuscitation *Brit M J* 2 540 541 1935
- 38 ROBERTS B SCHNABEL T G and RAUDIN J S Multiple Episodes of Cardiac Arrest Report of a Case *JAMA* 154 581 584 1954
- 39 ZOLL P M Resuscitation of the Heart in Ventricular Standstill by External Electric Stimulation *New England J Med* 247 768 771 1952
- 40 ZOLL P M LINENTHAL A J NORMAN L R and BELGARD A H Treatment of Stokes Adams Disease by External Electric Stimulation of the Heart *Circulation* 9 482 1954

- 41 BRCK C S Resuscitation for Cardiac Standstill and Ventricular Fibrillation Occurring During Operation *Am J Surg* 51 273 279 1941
- 42 BARNETT R I and MADDEN J L Resuscitation of the Heart *Am J Surg* 61 151 168 1941
- 43 JAMISON R S *et al* Acute Circulatory Arrest from Ventricular Fibrillation for Twenty seven Minutes with Complete Recovery *JAMA* 137 1575 1579 1948
- 44 SAKLAD M *Inhalation Therapy and Resuscitation* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
- 45 COLF F Head Lowering in Treatment of Hypertension *JAMA* 150 273 274 1952
- 46 BERTCHER H K and LINTON R R Epinephrine in Cardiac Resuscitation *JAMA* 135 90 1947
- 47 HERBERT C L IVEMSON R K and DAVIDSON L R Observations in Cardiac Arrest During Operation Ventricular Fibrillation with Recovery after Intracardiac Epinephrine Case Report *Anesth & Analg* 28 254 257 1949
- 48 FANTUS B The Technique of Medication A Series of Articles on the Methods of Prescribing and Preparing the Indications for and the Uses of Various Medicaments *JAMA* 87 563-564 1926
- 49 KAY J H The Treatment of Cardiac Arrest An Experimental Study *Surg Gynec & Obst* 93 682 690 1951
- 50 KAY J H and BLALOCK A The Use of Calcium Chloride in the Treatment of Cardiac Arrest in Patients *Surg Gynec & Obst* 93 97 102 1951
- 51 BARTLETT J *Familiar Quotations* (Edited by Morley C and Everett L D 11th Ed) Boston Little Brown & Co 1910
- 52 BECK C S and MAUTZ F R Control of the Heartbeat by the Surgeon with Special Reference to Ventricular Fibrillation Occurring During Operation *Ann Surg* 106 525 537 1937
- 53 BECK C S Resuscitation for Cardiac Standstill and Ventricular Fibrillation Occurring During Operation *Am J Surg* 54 273 279 1941
- 54 MAUTZ F R Resuscitation of the Heart from Ventricular Fibrillation with Drugs Combined with Electric Shock *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 36 634 636 1937
- 55 WIGGERS C J The Physiological Basis for Cardiac Resuscitation from Ventricular Fibrillation—Method for Serial Defibrillation *Am Heart J* 20 413 422 1940
- 56 SELDON T H FAULCONER A JR COURTIN R F and PINO D M Postanesthetic Encephalopathy The Postulation of Cerebral Edema as a Basis for Rational Treatment *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 21 370 374 1949
- 57 COURVILLE C B *Pathology of the Central Nervous System* 2nd Ed Mountain View Calif Pacific Press Publishing Assn 1945
- 58 LUCAS B C B Anoxia and the Central Nervous System An Experimental and Clinical Study *Thorax* 1 128 142 1946
- 59 LUCAS B C B Some Observations on Anoxia *Anesthesiology* 12 762 766 1951
- 60 CATES I M and CRAIG W McK The Use of Serum Albumin in Cases of Cerebral Edema Preliminary Report *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 23 89 93 1948
- 61 CUTLER Brochure on Serum Albumin
- 62 SHIELDS C H PUDENZ R H and CRAIG W McK The Management of the Head Injury Patient *S Clin North America* 21 1441 1459 1944
- 63 MOYER C A *Fluid Balance—A Clinical Manual* Chicago Yearbook Publishers 1952
- 64 COLE F Use of Human Serum Albumin in Cerebral Edema Following Cardiac Arrest Report of a case *JAMA* 147 1563 1564 1951
- 65 MOUSEL L H Cerebral Edema and Its Relation to Barbiturate Acid Poisoning *JAMA* 153 459 462 1953
- 66 BERTCHER H K and TODD D P *A Study of the Deaths Associated With Anesthesia and Surgery* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas 1954
- 67 DRIFTS R D and VANDAM L D Long Term Follow Up of Patients Who Received 10098 Spinal Anesthetics *JAMA* 156 1486-1491 1954
- 68 VETTEN K B WILSON V H CRANSHAW G R and NICHOLSON J C Experimental Studies in Cardiac Massage With Special Reference to Aortic Occlusion *Brit J Anaesth* 27 3 14 1955
- 69 GARDEN N L and STEINHAUS J E Use of Lidocaine in Cardiac Resuscitation Following Ventricular Fibrillation *Federation Proc* 14 324 1955
- 70 HOSLER R M *A Manual on Cardiac Resuscitation* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas 1954
- 71 COURVILLE C B Narcosis and Cerebral Anoxia *Anesth & Analg* 34 61 77 1955
- 72 OLSEN C W AMYES E W and MARINACCI A A Central Action of Procaine Hydrochloride *Lancet* 70 111 112 1950

Pain

THIS CHAPTER is a general survey of the causes of pain which may be associated with a regional block procedure. Pain accompanies many complications discussed in this text and in most instances it is of concern only in that it causes the patient discomfort. However it may be a signal of a serious complication e.g. pneumothorax, neuritis, spinal cord injury, etc. and chapters concerning these complications should be consulted.

ETIOLOGY

When pain alone occurs during the execution of a block procedure it is usually caused by minor trauma, but when it persists for more than a few days following a block causes other than the initial trauma should be sought: infection, tissue degeneration, etc. In general pain following a regional block procedure is due to:

Tissue Trauma—Trauma to tissues from needle punctures alone is of no serious consequence. The patient may complain (1) of burning caused by distention of the tissue when a skin wheel is made, (2) of electric like sensations when a nerve ganglion plexus of nerves or the spinal cord is impaled, and (3) of deep aching pain when the muscles and periosteum are pierced. In most of these cases the pain ceases immediately following the injection of the local anesthetic agent or the removal of the needle, and if it returns it persists for only a day or two and requires no analgesics for its control.

The exception to this is the development of (1) a hematoma under the periosteum, (2) an abscess or osteomyelitis, (3) neuritis

or (4) injury to the spinal cord. In these cases the pain may persist for a prolonged period of time, particularly if the nervous tissue is damaged. Pain from injuries to the spinal cord is usually permanent while that which results from injuries to the peripheral nerves or their roots often disappears as the nerve regenerates. However in some cases pain following peripheral nerve damage may persist even after the nerve heals because a pattern of pain is established which perpetuates itself.

Injection of Unphysiologic Solutions—Pain may occur following the injection of

Local Anesthetic Agents Dissolved in Distilled Water—Pain from the injection of distilled water usually disappears within a few minutes and does not recur.

Neurolytic Drugs—The initial pain which follows the use of neurolytic drugs i.e. alcohol, phenol, propylene and polyethylene glycol ether and excessive concentrations of local anesthetic drugs usually disappears as the drug used exerts its anesthetic effect but as this wears off the pain recurs if neuritis, sloughs or sterile abscesses develop (see Chapter 10 page 102 and Chapter 11 page 114).

Certain Local Anesthetic Solutions e.g. Cyclaine (hexylcaine)—Ruben and Anderson¹ report that Cyclaine burns on injection but that this response disappears when the drug exerts its anesthetic effect and usually does not reappear when the drug's action is dissipated. Only two exceptions to this have been called to the author's attention. In these a brachial neuritis followed the use of this drug to block the brachial plexus.

Solutions Contaminated by Metallic Ions Released from Metal Parts of Syringes and Receptacles—Solutions contaminated by metal ions seldom cause pain during the physiological effect of the local anesthetic drug but may do so if swelling of the tissues and/or neuritis develop (see Chapter 10 page 94 and Chapter 11, page 114)

Infection—Pain almost invariably accompanies infection and this is particularly true if osteomyelitis or an abscess results

Pneumothorax—(see Chapter 6 page 58)

Stellate Ganglion Block—It is not uncommon during the placing of the needle in the region of the stellate ganglion or during injection of the solution into it that the patient complains of pain in the shoulder in the chest, or in the jaw particularly if the needle is correctly placed. This type of pain resembles that which occurs in angina pectoris and in a patient with coronary artery disease may represent true angina. Pain in the shoulder scapular or chest usually indicates stimulation of the stellate ganglion while pain in the neck and jaw usually indicates stimulation of the cervical sympathetic chain above the region of the stellate ganglion. However the pain may also be caused by stimulation of the periosteum soft tissues or somatic nerves. In most cases the pain is due to stimulation of the ganglion itself or other sympathetic fibers when the needle is correctly placed. When the needle is incorrectly placed the pain is due in part to the stimulation of periosteum or bone and this type of pain may be referred to a somatic region.

Vascular Accidents—Pain (other than angina) accompanying vascular accidents may occur following regional block procedures as a result of the normal "borrowing lending" mechanism of the vascular system which may follow a block procedure (see Chapter 25 page 235)

Pain in the Legs During Administration of Epidural Blocks—When a large volume of solution is initially injected into the epidural space particularly in the caudal region the patient may complain of an aching cramping pain in the buttocks thighs and calves. This

occurs relatively frequently if the local anesthetic agent is injected rapidly when administering a caudal to a highly medicated obstetrical patient. It is no sign to discontinue the procedure, although the injection of the local anesthetic solution should be slowed or momentarily stopped. As a matter of fact this type of pain is one of the most reliable signs that the needle is correctly placed in the caudal canal.

Diodrast—(see Chapter 10 page 101)

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Pain obviously varies in intensity and may be dull throbbing burning sharp stabbing or a combination of these, depending on its cause. The pain may be more severe during motion or when the physician exerts pressure over the area. In general pain which accompanies pleural irritation, neuritis, abscess formation, spinal cord injuries and other serious complications is the most troublesome and its relief requires heavy sedation and, in some extreme cases other nerve blocks with local anesthetic agents.

PROPHYLAXIS

The avoidance of pain during and following regional block procedures requires (1) correct medication (2) explanation of the procedure so that the patient does not jump when the needle is placed and thereby cause its misplacement, (3) avoidance of multiple traumatizing placements of the needles (4) prevention of infection from breaks in technique, and (5) the avoidance of neurolytic drugs unless the patient is cognizant of their possible complications and the physician is willing to accept the risk of a neuritis of an abscess etc.

TREATMENT

In most instances pain is of a minor nature and its relief requires only (1) active use of the part involved (2) local heat (3) physiotherapy and/or (4) aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid) 10 to 25 grains. If the pain arises with

sudden severity or if it persists and becomes more severe, then the possibility of the development of a serious complication must be considered. The specific treatment of pneumonia, neuritis, slough, abscess, cellulitis, etc., may be found in the chapter specifically devoted to these problems.

If a inginal pain sets in during a stellate ganglion block and if the needle is thought to be correctly placed the best treatment is the injection of the blocking agent. The author feels as do Adriani *et al.*³ that if a patient complains of pain in the chest during needle placement the procedure should be carried to completion and the blocking agent injected. The pain caused by the placement of the needle or the stimulation of the stellate ganglion may result in constriction of the coronary vessels but paralyzing the ganglion

or the area from which the exciting stimulus originates by injecting the anesthetic solution will usually relieve the pain either by anesthetizing the sensory fibers in the area or by dilating the coronary vessels.⁴

REFERENCES

- 1 RUBEN, J. E. and ANDERSON, E. Netylcaine Hydrochloride—A Preliminary Report of Its Clinical Use in Comparison with Procaine. *Am J Surg* 78:813-816, 1949.
- 2 BOVICA, J. J. Personal Communication.
- 3 ADRIANI, J., PARVLEY, J. and OCHSNER, A. Fatalities and Complications After Attempts at Stellate Ganglion Block. *Surgery* 32:615-619, 1952.
- 4 LERICHE, R. *The Surgery of Pain*. Young, A. T. and ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1939.

Bleeding Following Puncture of Blood Vessels

THE PLACEMENT of needles during regional block procedures may cause bleeding into the tissues from trauma to a blood vessel. This may only result in ecchymosis or the formation of a hematoma but under specific circumstances either permanent tissue damage or death can follow.

ETIOLOGY

The primary cause for the bleeding is of course the puncturing or tearing of a vessel from either needle placement or removal. Whether or not the bleeding from a damaged vessel produces minor or serious consequences depends on (1) the anatomical structure of the area of the body being injected, i.e. whether the nerve lies in a space, a potential space or is surrounded by firm mesenchymal tissue; (2) the vascularity of the area being injected; (3) the coagulation time of the blood; and (4) the drug injected.

Anatomical Structure of the Area of the Body Being Injected—Bleeding into areas of the body other than the face will be confined to small areas of ecchymosis and is usually of no serious consequence in the patient with a normal clotting time. The fascia, muscles, ligaments, tendons and periosteum, as well as the hyaluronic acid in the subcutaneous tissue, act as barriers to limit the spread of blood and the clotting mechanisms seal the vessels. Therefore large hematomata seldom form.

However, if a block of the branches of the trigeminal nerve is undertaken and a blood vessel is punctured, a large hematoma may form in the eyelids, cheek or jaw within 10

to 30 seconds. The face is particularly vulnerable to this complication because its very pliable, easily stretched skin offers no obstruction to the spread of blood (see Figure 17, page 87). In these cases the bleeding goes unabated until either the blood vessel seals itself or the blood fills the space and the pressure outside the vessel equals the pressure from within. Other than temporary discoloration and distortion, this type of complication



Figure 17 Bleeding following block of the maxillary nerve at the foramen rotundum



Figure 18 Discoloration and proptosis of an eye following a maxillary alcohol block at the foramen rotundum for tic. Acute hemorrhage into the orbit followed the block with gradual loss of vision over a period of 5 minutes. Patient could not open his eye lid

causes no problem except in the orbit. Here the space is limited and even in the patient with a normal clotting mechanism the bleeding may be rapid enough to cause excessive intraorbital pressure and damage to the optic nerve before the vessels seal (see Figure 18 page 88 and Figure 19 page 89).

Vascularity of the Area Injected—The head and neck are highly vascular in comparison to other parts of the body and therefore the chances of inadvertent puncture of a vessel in these areas are many times greater than in the other body areas. In addition the face often reacts to trauma by "flushing" i.e. the vessels dilate and this in itself predisposes to bleeding. These factors in addition to those of the anatomical structure of the head mentioned previously account for the high incidence of hematomata following peripheral nerve block or even local infiltration in this part of the body.

Coagulation Time of the Blood—When a

patient has an extended clotting time due to a blood disorder (hemophilia etc.) or anticoagulant therapy and a blood vessel is traumatized a catastrophic hemorrhage may result.¹⁸ For example. In the normal healthy patient bleeding into the epidural subarachnoid or retroperitoneal spaces is not serious because the hole in the blood vessel is closed by the clotting mechanism of the blood before pressure can build up to a degree sufficient to damage a nerve or before a severe loss of blood endangers the patient's life. But if the patient's clotting time is longer than normal blocking of the nerves coursing through these spaces is singularly hazardous. In such a case if the hemorrhage goes unrecognized or proves to be uncontrollable a neurological complication or death may result.¹⁹

Drug Injected—Neurolytic drugs i.e. alcohol phenol Elocaine etc. not only cause degeneration of the nerve but also may damage other tissues resulting in ecchymosis even when injected in the patient with a normal clotting mechanism. In one case at the Mason Clinic the use of Elocaine in an intercostal block resulted in an ecchymotic area which measured 6 by 10 inches. It is debatable whether the Elocaine (Novocain in propylene glycol) caused damage to the blood vessel or whether the Novocain per se by its vasodilatory action prevented the normal physiologic retraction of the vessel and its rapid sealing. In any case with aqueous local anesthetic solutions we have not observed such a reaction in over 2000 patients receiving intercostal block.

Ecchymosis may also follow the subcutaneous injection of Diodrast. This has been observed by the author and one of his residents LeGrande Anderson following the subcutaneous injection of the drug into their forearms to investigate deleterious effects which might appear following the use of this drug in diagnostic or therapeutic block procedures.

If the above mentioned drugs are injected into a patient with an abnormal clotting mechanism the resulting hemorrhage will probably be more severe.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of bleeding depend on the amount of bleeding and the area or space into which the bleeding occurs. The onset may be recognized immediately by the swelling and other signs or it may be insidious with a neurological complication or a severe fall in blood pressure as the first evidence of hemorrhage.

Swelling, Ecchymosis and Pain—One or more of these is usually the first sign of bleeding into the mesenchymal tissues, the orbit and the retroperitoneal space. One may occur without the others, but in many instances all are present. None but pain is seen when bleeding into the epidural or subarachnoid space occurs.

Hematoma—If the swelling is marked a hematoma may have occurred. Hematomata the size of large grapefruit forming in the retroperitoneal space following lumbar sympathetic block in conjunction with anticoagulant therapy have been reported.^{2, 6} Graves⁶ reported five such cases in one of which the hematoma was not noted and the correct diagnosis was not established until five days had elapsed. This patient recovered.

We have seen a subperiosteal hemorrhage in the sacral area following transverse block in a female with a normal clotting time. It forced the patient to remain in bed for 10 days. In this case walking markedly accentuated the pain which radiated into the hip joint and down the leg. Cases of this severity are infrequent.

Only occasionally does a hematoma persist longer than a few weeks or become calcified. Even when hematomata calcify they do not usually cause pain. My associates and I have seen only one instance in which a hematoma did not absorb in less than two to three weeks. In this case a hematoma the size of a chicken egg formed from trauma to the subclavian artery after a brachial plexus block. It persisted without causing pain for six months before disappearing and during this time the man's only complaint was of swelling. X-ray studies revealed small areas of calcium in

the hematoma but this was eventually absorbed. This complication does not present a contraindication for brachial block procedures for the case here cited is the only one of its kind to appear in over 1000 brachial plexus blocks performed at the Mason Clinic.

Neurologic Signs and Symptoms—Neurologic signs and symptoms seldom occur from bleeding into the tissues but they may result from bleeding into the orbit and epidural or subarachnoid spaces. Such bleeding is a distinct possibility when the coagulation time is prolonged but also may happen when it is normal.

Bleeding into Orbit—Bleeding into the orbit is usually first discovered from a swelling or apparent swelling of the eyelids and a marked exophthalmus. As tension mounts pain in the eye develops, diplopia ensues and if the bleeding does not stop loss of vision follows within 5 minutes or so from pressure on the optic nerve and/or the ophthalmic blood vessels. In one such case seen at the Mason Clinic the blindness was permanent (see Figure 18 page 88 and Figure 19 page 89).

Bleeding into the Epidural and Subarachnoid Space—Usually the first signs and symptoms of this complication are motor and sen-



Figure 19 Patient shown in Figure 18 4 days later (Bottom) Shows decrease in swelling of eyelid and discoloration. (Top) Shows ability to open eyelid. Motion of the eyeball and action of the pupil are the same as of the normal eye. However the patient has not recovered any vision in this eye.



Figure 18 Discoloration and proptosis of an eye following a maxillary alcohol block at the foramen rotundum for tic. Acute hemorrhage into the orbit followed the block with gradual loss of vision over a period of 5 minutes. Patient could not open his eyelid.

causes no problem except in the orbit. Here the space is limited and even in the patient with a normal clotting mechanism the bleeding may be rapid enough to cause excessive intraorbital pressure and damage to the optic nerve before the vessels seal (see Figure 18 page 88 and Figure 19 page 89).

Vascularity of the Area Injected—The head and neck are highly vascular in comparison to other parts of the body and therefore the chances of inadvertent puncture of a vessel in these areas are many times greater than in the other body areas. In addition the face often reacts to trauma by flushing, i.e. the vessels dilate and this in itself predisposes to bleeding. These factors in addition to those of the anatomical structure of the head mentioned previously account for the high incidence of hematomata following peripheral nerve block or even local infiltration in this part of the body.

Coagulation Time of the Blood—When a

patient has an extended clotting time due to a blood dyscrasia (hemophilia etc.) or anti-coagulant therapy and a blood vessel is traumatized a catastrophic hemorrhage may result.^{1,8} For example: In the normal healthy patient bleeding into the epidural subarachnoid or retroperitoneal spaces is not serious because the hole in the blood vessel is closed by the clotting mechanism of the blood before pressure can build up to a degree sufficient to damage a nerve or before a severe loss of blood endangers the patient's life. But if the patient's clotting time is longer than normal blocking of the nerves coursing through these spaces is singularly hazardous. In such a case if the hemorrhage goes unrecognized or proves to be uncontrollable a neurological complication or death may result.^{2,6}

Drug Injected—Neurolytic drugs i.e. alcohol phenol Efothane etc. not only cause degeneration of the nerve but also may damage other tissues resulting in ecchymosis even when injected in the patient with a normal clotting mechanism. In one case at the Mason Clinic the use of Efothane in an intercostal block resulted in an ecchymotic area which measured 6 by 10 inches. It is debatable whether the Efothane (Novocain in propylene glycol) caused damage to the blood vessel or whether the Novocain per se by its vaso-dilatory action prevented the normal physiologic retraction of the vessel and its rapid sealing. In any case with aqueous local anesthetic solutions we have not observed such a reaction in over 2000 patients receiving intercostal block.

Ecchymosis may also follow the subcutaneous injection of Diodrast. This has been observed by the author and one of his residents LeGrande Anderson following the subcutaneous injection of the drug into their forearms to investigate deleterious effects which might appear following the use of this drug in diagnostic or therapeutic block procedures.

If the above mentioned drugs are injected into a patient with an abnormal clotting mechanism the resulting hemorrhage will probably be more severe.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of bleeding depend on the amount of bleeding and the area or space into which the bleeding occurs. The onset may be recognized immediately by the swelling and other signs or it may be insidious with a neurological complication or a severe fall in blood pressure as the first evidence of hemorrhage.

Swelling, Echinosis and Pain—One or more of these is usually the first sign of bleeding into the mesenchymal tissues, the orbit and the retroperitoneal space. One may occur without the others, but in many instances all are present. None but pain is seen when bleeding into the epidural or subarachnoid space occurs.

Hematoma—If the swelling is marked a hematoma may have occurred. Hematomata the size of large grapefruit forming in the retroperitoneal space following lumbar sympathectomy in conjunction with anticoagulant therapy have been reported.¹¹ Craves¹² reported five such cases, in one of which the hematoma was not noted and the correct diagnosis was not established until five days had elapsed. This patient recovered.

We have seen a subperiosteal hemorrhage in the sacral area following transsacral block in a female with a normal clotting time. It forced the patient to remain in bed for 10 days. In this case walking markedly accentuated the pain which radiated into the hip joint and down the leg. Cases of this severity are infrequent.

Only occasionally does a hematoma persist longer than a few weeks or become calcified. Even when hematomata calcify they do not usually cause pain. My associates and I have seen only one instance in which a hematoma did not absorb in less than two to three weeks. In this case a hematoma the size of a chicken egg formed from trauma to the subclavian artery after a brachial plexus block. It persisted without causing pain for six months before disappearing and during this time the man's only complaint was of swelling. X-ray studies revealed small areas of calcium in

the hematoma but this was eventually absorbed. This complication does not present a contraindication for brachial block procedures for the case here cited is the only one of its kind to appear in over 1,000 brachial plexus blocks performed at the Mason Clinic.

Neurologic Signs and Symptoms—Neurologic signs and symptoms seldom occur from bleeding into the tissues but they may result from bleeding into the orbit and epidural or subarachnoid spaces. Such bleeding is a distinct possibility when the coagulation time is prolonged but also may happen when it is normal.

Bleeding into Orbit—Bleeding into the orbit is usually first discovered from a swelling or apparent swelling of the eyelids and a marked exophthalmus. As tension mounts pain in the eye develops, diplopia ensues and if the bleeding does not stop, loss of vision follows within 5 minutes or so from pressure on the optic nerve and/or the ophthalmic blood vessels. In one such case seen at the Mason Clinic the blindness was permanent (see Figure 18 page 88 and Figure 19 page 89).

Bleeding into the Epidural and Subarachnoid Space—Usually the first signs and symptoms of this complication are motor and sen-



Figure 19 Patient shown in Figure 18 4 days later (Bottom) Shows decrease in swelling of eyelid and discoloration. (Top) Shows ability to open eyelid. Motion of the eyeball and action of the pupil are the same as of the normal eye. However the patient has not recovered any vision in this eye.

sory changes, and their onset is usually noted 4 to 24 hours following full recovery of sensory and motor function from the anesthetic procedure. A recap of the patient may disclose frank bleeding. Bleeding into the epidural space does not usually produce severe or permanent neurologic sequelae since the blood may escape via the intervertebral foramina and marked pressure on the nerves may not develop. Bonica⁵ reports an instance of bleeding into the subarachnoid space in a patient with a prolonged clotting time in which the first evidence of the complication was a cauda equina syndrome.

Blood Pressure, Pulse and Respiration—Normally there is little or no change in the blood pressure following small areas of ecchymosis. However hemorrhage into the epidural, subarachnoid or retroperitoneal spaces can be of sufficient magnitude for the blood pressure to fall and the pulse and respiratory rates to increase. If the cause of these signs and symptoms is not recognized and treated immediately, severe shock may rapidly develop and death may result. Of the five cases of severe hemorrhage into the retroperitoneal space following the use of lumbar sympathetic blocks in conjunction with Dicumarol therapy which were reported by Graves⁶ two of the patients died from the complication. O'Connor *et al.*⁷ also report a fatality from the same cause.

PROPHYLAXIS

Do a Careful History and Physical—Patients who are to have a regional block procedure whether for an operation or a diagnostic or therapeutic block are entitled to a complete history and physical examination before the block is executed. Otherwise blood dyscrasias etc., may not be noticed until it is too late.

Avoid Trauma—The needles used in block procedures should be sharp and the gauge should be small, i.e. 22 gauge or smaller. Multiple punctures should be avoided particularly in a therapeutic sympathetic block is used in conjunction with anticoagulant therapy.

Apply Pressure to Bleeding Area—If a blood vessel is punctured manual pressure should be immediately applied over the area so as to compress the soft tissue area into which the blood may flow, thereby avoiding or at least decreasing the size of the resultant ecchymotic area or the hematoma.

Avoid Regional Block for Surgical Procedures in Patients with a Prolonged Coagulation Time—The availability of medical anesthesia in most areas and progress in the development of new drugs and gases for general anesthesia have rendered it likely that a correctly administered inhalation or intravenous anesthetic will be tolerated by most patients without ill effect. Therefore it is perhaps best to avoid regional block procedures in patients whose clotting time is prolonged.

Avoid the Use of Sympathetic Block When Anticoagulant Therapy Has Been Instituted—A number of authors have cautioned against the use of these two types of therapy at the same time.^{8, 14} Pratt⁹ does not agree with them. He believes that the ideal treatment for vascular lesions is the concomitant use of anticoagulant drugs to prevent thrombus formation and emboli and sympathetic block to prevent vasospasm of the damaged vessels as well as reflex vasospasm of its collaterals. Furthermore he is convinced that if the physicians involved in the treatment of such a patient are skillful and carefully observe the patient who is receiving both types of therapy the action of the anticoagulant drug may be reversed without complications if hemorrhage should start. On this subject he states:

It is likely that serious and fatal hemorrhages have been blamed on anticoagulant drugs when lack of skill on the part of the person administering them was the true cause. We have been through the phase of dangerous and fatal anesthesia given by untrained interns and nurses. Thiopental (Pentothal) sodium or spinal anesthesia will kill in seconds if incorrectly administered. Patients have died from tension pneumothorax because someone did not know enough to aspirate the air from the pleura. Yet, we do not hesitate

to use these anesthetics or to open the chest. We do, however, demand that the administrator know the anesthetic and how to handle it. We also make certain that the postoperative period after thoracic surgery is correctly handled. As with other therapeutic modalities, the safety of anticoagulant drugs as well as sympathetic nerve blocks used singly or in combination depends largely on the ability and knowledge of the person who is administering them. If due precautions are exercised, these two complementary forms of therapy can be used together safely for the benefit of the patient."

To date at the Mason Clinic we have not hesitated to use sympathetic blocks in a patient receiving anticoagulant therapy. We insist on the use of a 22 or smaller gauge needle and avoid multiple traumatic punctures. No hemorrhage of a severe nature has been encountered up to the present.

Furthermore, it should be remembered that when bleeding occurs during the concomitant use of anticoagulant therapy and sympathetic block, the puncture of a blood vessel from the block procedure is not always responsible. The literature adequately establishes that hemorrhage may occur spontaneously during anticoagulant therapy (see Figure 20, page 91).^{4, 10, 11}

TREATMENT

Bleeding is treated according to its severity, its cause and the signs and symptoms which appear.

Swelling, Ecchymosis, and Hematomata—When swelling is first noted, the application of pressure and cold packs over the area may greatly reduce the degree of swelling and avoid the formation of a hematoma. If this treatment is unsuccessful and a large area of ecchymosis or a hematoma results, the injection of 10 to 20 cc of normal saline containing 150 to 300 TRU of hyaluronidase (Diffusin, Wydase, Alidase) into and around the hematoma or ecchymotic area followed by gentle massage of the area and a pressure dressing will greatly facilitate the absorption of the

blood. This therapy decreases the size of the hematoma and causes the ecchymotic area to disappear more rapidly.^{1, 12} Once the bleeding has stopped, warm moist dressings may hasten the reabsorption and also lessen pain should it be present. The pain seldom warrants sedation.

Orbital Swelling—Usually little can be done about bleeding into the orbit since it occurs so rapidly. Nevertheless, whenever this complication results irrespective of its severity, consultation with an ophthalmologist should be sought immediately.

Bleeding into the Retroperitoneal, Epidural or Subarachnoid Spaces—Treatment in these cases involves (1) the correction of hypo-



Figure 20 This patient was referred for a stellate ganglion block with possible embolism of the brachial artery. A review of her history revealed that she was on anticoagulant therapy following pelvic surgery. No block was performed when it was found that clotting time was greatly increased. The swelling of the arm was thought to be due to bleeding into the tissue. This proved to be the case for when the clotting time was returned to normal the arm stopped swelling and improved.

tension and shock when they occur (2) the reversal by the internist of the anticoagulant therapy if such is being used and (3) immediate consultation with a neurosurgeon if bleeding into the epidural or subarachnoid space is suspected and/or neurological signs and symptoms develop

Reverse the Effect of Anticoagulant Therapy—It should be noted that when heparin is used and bleeding results the action of the heparin may be cancelled by using whole blood transfusion protamine or both. If Dicumarol (bishydroxycoumarin) is used instead of heparin whole blood or vitamin K or both will cancel its action.

Correct Hypotension—If bleeding is brisk and a severe hypotension develops the blood pressure must be elevated. This is particularly important in the patient with cardiovascular diseases since the hypotension may precipitate other sequelae i.e. coronary occlusion thrombosis in other parts of the body etc.

If whole blood is not immediately available vasoconstrictor drugs or blood volume expanders may be used to raise the blood pressure. However these are no substitute for a blood transfusion when hypotension is the result of hemorrhage.

Ligate Bleeding Vessel—It is possible that in certain cases surgery and ligation of the bleeding vessel may be necessary. However the literature reviewed has not cited such a case.

REFERENCES

- 1 COLE F and KLEITSCH W I Incompatibility of Lumbar Block and Anticoagulant Therapy *JAMA* 147 1233 1234 1951
- 2 O'CONNOR W R, PRESTON F W and THEIS I V Retroperitoneal Hemorrhage Following Lumbar Sympathetic Block During Treatment with Dicumarol Report of Fatality *Ann Surg* 131 575 580 1950
- 3 VANDER VEER J B, PARKER A P and BOYER I R Emergency Appendectomy in Patient Receiving Anticoagulants for Myocardial Infarction *JAMA* 149 1307 1308 1952
- 4 LILLY G D and LEE R M Complications of Anticoagulant Therapy *Surgery* 26 957 969 1949
- 5 BONICA J J *The Management of Pain* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 6 GRAVES H P Personal Communication
- 7 HOFF R P, DYE W S and JULIAN O C Danger of Lumbar Sympathetic Blocks During Anticoagulant Therapy *JAMA* 152 399-400 1953
- 8 LEARNED L O and CAHOON R F Retroperitoneal Hemorrhage as a Complication of Lumbar Paravertebral Injections Report of Three Cases *Anesthesiology* 12 391-396 1951
- 9 PRATT C H Anticoagulants and Sympathetic Nerve Blocks in the Treatment of Vascular Lesions Effective Therapeutic Combination *JAMA* 152 903 905 1953
- 10 MACMILLAN R L and BROWN K W G Hemorrhage in Anticoagulant Therapy *Canad Med J* 69 279 281 1953
- 11 MILCH E, BERMAN L and EGAN R Use of Bishydroxycoumarin (Dicumarol) for Prevention of Postoperative Thromboembolism Study of 2700 Consecutive Surgical Patients *AMA Arch Surg* 67 142 152 1953
- 12 THALE H B Use of Lyophilized Hyaluronidase in Cosmetic Surgery About the Face *Plast & Reconstruct Surg* 10 260 263 1952
- 13 MOORE D C Correspondence to the Editor *Anesthesiology* 12 398 399 1951
- 14 DE TAKATS G The Management of Venous Thrombosis in the Lower Extremities *Surgery* 37 507 517 1955

Local Toxic Reactions to Drugs Used in Regional Block

(Swelling, Cellulitis, Abscess, Gangrene and Slough)

THE TERM "local toxicity" is defined as a reaction of the tissue at the site of the block. Swelling, cellulitis, abscess, gangrene, ulceration and slough may follow any infiltration or topical application of drug solutions used in regional block analgesia. Since all of these occur at the site of application they are true local tissue reactions.

This chapter deals specifically with those local toxic reactions involving primarily the skin and mesenchymal tissues. Local toxic reactions involving the peripheral and central nervous systems as well as the vertebral column and the epidural (peridural) spaces will be found in Chapters 11, 23 and 24 on pages 112, 212, and 226 respectively. Drugs used in regional block not only include the anesthetic agents but also include drugs used as solvents and preservatives. These as well as solutions used to sterilize ampules and instruments may also cause local tissue reactions and therefore will be included in the discussion.

ETIOLOGY

Local tissue reactions of the skin and mesenchymal tissues may be caused by (1) faulty technique, (2) local anesthetic drugs, (3) vasoconstrictor drugs, (4) drugs used in regional block other than the local anesthetic agents and vasoconstrictor drug, and (5) mechanical pressure from indwelling spinal or epidural catheters.

Faulty Technique—In this category are found those factors which depend upon the ability and conscientiousness of the physician performing the block as well as upon the per-

sonnel on whom he relies to clean, sterilize and prepare supplies necessary for the procedure.

Improper Sterilization and Cleaning of Instruments—Equipment used to produce regional block analgesia should be washed carefully with soap and water and rinsed adequately with water, alcohol and ether, a technique familiar to most nurses. Haemo-Sol and other special detergent preparations, i.e. Detergex, etc., should not be employed without particular care—if their use is not followed by thorough rinsing, damage to tissues may result.^{1, 2} Dry sterilization by autoclaving using a sterilizer indicator (Proper Sterilizer Control Diack, etc.) is perhaps the most satisfactory method of assuring proper sterilization (see Chapter 22, page 206 for specific sterilizing instructions). Cold sterilization of needle syringes and other instruments in phenol or formaldehyde solutions is dangerous unless the soaking is carefully controlled to assure adequate sterilizing and the equipment is conscientiously rinsed to remove all traces of the sterilizing solutions. Otherwise tissue damage may result either from infection or from reaction to the sterilizing solution.

Improper Preparation and Sterilization of the Drugs To Be Used—All drugs used in regional block procedures must be sterile; otherwise infection, abscess and other complications are to be expected. With the exception of *Allocone* 2% without Adrenalin (20 cc vial) which can be purchased from the pharmaceutical houses conveniently only in sterile solutions, other solutions used at the Mason Clinic for local infiltrations and peri-

pheral nerve block namely Pontocaine and Novocain are prepared from crystals which are received in sterile ampules. Sterile commercially prepared saline solution (Abbott 100 cc size) is used as the solvent. The author never uses hospital prepared solutions. The ampules of the crystals of the local anesthetic drugs, the solutions of Xlocaine, the solvent and the 1:1000 Adrenalin solutions are all heat sterilized along with the needles and syringes in the regional block trays. For the specific technique of autoclaving and a list of other drugs which may be autoclaved see Chapter 22 page 207 to page 208. At the present time cold sterilization of these drugs and equipment would probably not be considered as the best means of preventing contamination should a medico legal suit develop (see Chapter 23 page 221).

Wrong Solutions—Incorrectly identified solutions have been used with enough frequency even in the best of institutions that constant vigilance against such accidents can never be relaxed. Using the wrong concentration of the drug or a solution that was thought to be one agent but in reality was another has been the usual "faux pas." Ether or alcohol has been injected for Novocain and topical solutions which are usually of high concentration have been used for local infiltrations and for peripheral nerve blocks. The number of accounts of these incidences in the medical literature does not indicate the frequency of their occurrence since this type of accident is usually not reported.

Contamination of the Anesthetic Solution by Solutions Used to Prepare the Skin Prior to Block.—The medicine cup which is to contain the solution for preparing the skin prior to the block should be placed in front of the mixing graduate so that the solution used to prepare the skin will never pass over the anesthetic solution. If the anesthetic solution is inadvertently contaminated and then used a slough of the tissue or a neurological complication may ensue.

When the skin is aseptically prepared the solution used particularly if it is a tincture must either be allowed to dry or if there is

an excess wiped off. If this is not done then it is possible to introduce such a solution into the skin or subcutaneous tissue when making the injection. The result may be inflammation of the tissue or slough.

Incorrect Method of Administering the Agent—If solutions containing oil phenol alcohol propylene glycol or polyethylene glycol are placed too superficially or pooled (i.e. a large amount of the drug placed in one spot) necrosis of the tissue and sloughs are likely to occur. The instructions which accompany these products usually specify the fashion in which the drug may be administered and caution against superficial injection and pooling.^{2, 4, 5} However Hackmeier⁶ believes that pooling is only a matter of degree and states "it seemed, in spite of the suggested technique [use of small gauge needle etc] that the oil must pool on injection that with different operators or the same individual at different times for a given volume of oil injected in whatever manner the only variants possible were the size of the pools and their number. Pooling could be avoided relatively only."

Trauma—Excessively rough prodding of the tissues with needles by the physician performing a nerve block technique is to be condemned since hemorrhage and damage to the tissue may result.

Tissue Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs
—Swelling of the Tissues—In dentistry persistent swelling of the tissue following the use of Xlocaine and Novocain occasionally appears in which there is usually no evidence of cellulitis hemorrhage or excess trauma.⁷ The swelling is localized to the area of injection. Lundquist *et al*¹⁰ concluded from experimental work in animals that this swelling is due to the tissue irritation caused by copper, nickel and zinc ions released by these two drugs from metal equipment such as receptacles, syringes and needles. They found that tissue swelling is especially pronounced following the injection of solutions containing copper but is comparatively insignificant after the injection of solutions containing nickel and zinc.

Wiedling¹¹ contributed further to this investigation when he showed that this kind of tissue reaction did not occur unless Adrenalin is incorporated in the solution before the injection. He concluded that when the Adrenalin was omitted from the solution rapid absorption of these metallic ions occurred and they did not remain in contact with the tissue long enough to be irritating.

Several instances of this type of tissue swelling following the use of "carpuls" of Pontocaine have also been called to the authors' attention.¹² Winthrop Stearns¹³ attributed this complication to a tissue reaction to zinc oxide. In the manufacture of the synthetic rubber stoppers for these "carpuls" an excessive amount of zinc oxide was used and the rubber stopper on coming in contact with the Pontocaine solution released a large quantity of zinc ions.¹³

When this type of persistent swelling occurs the physician or dentist need not become alarmed since it usually resolves in four to five days with no evidence of tissue damage or much pain to the patient.¹⁴

Inflammation, Sloughs and Ulceration—Normal (isotonic) saline solutions of the common local anesthetic agents i.e. Novocain, Pontocaine, Metcaine, Nylcaine and Intracaine in the recommended concentrations do not usually per se cause tissue damage.^{14, 16} The minimal tissue changes i.e. vasodilatation, edema and dripredesis of red blood cells reported by Meeker¹⁷ and de Vincenzis¹⁸ after intramuscular and subcutaneous injections of 1% Novocain hydrochloride combined with Adrenalin are insignificant and do not cause the patient difficulty.

However if strong solutions of Novocain i.e., 2% or greater without Adrenalin are used to make a skin wheal which measures more than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (2 cm.) a slough may occur.¹⁵ Hypertonic or hypotonic solutions of these local anesthetic drugs may also result in distention or shrinkage of the cells by exerting an osmotic pressure greater or less than that of the cell. This may cause either transitory or permanent damage to the tissues.

The use of Nupercaine too has sometimes

caused local toxic tissue reactions.¹⁶ It has caused no trouble of this nature when employed to produce spinal analgesia nor when used as a topical anesthetic. Nevertheless in spite of its relatively common use in the above types of regional block techniques its use in local infiltration, field block and nerve block procedures has been limited by reports that tissue sloughs have occurred following local infiltration. Brandesky¹⁹ reports two such cases and Stohr²⁰ four.

On the other hand some authors believe that Nupercaine is a very satisfactory agent for local infiltration analgesia.^{21, 22} Kevcs and McEllan²¹ performed local infiltration anesthesia with a 1:1000 solution of Nupercaine for cystotomies, circumcisions, hydrocelectomies, excision of suprapubic fistulae, epidiidymectomies and incisions of abscesses with entire satisfaction.²¹ They have also used a 1:200 solution repeatedly²² for mentotomies and never encountered necrosis at the site of injection. Therefore they concluded that the drug is safe for infiltration and that the optimal concentration of Nupercaine for infiltration analgesia is a 1:1000 solution with a maximum of 100 cc. Bonier²³ also states that he is firmly convinced that Nupercaine properly used is an excellent local anesthetic affording prolonged analgesic blocks. These writers suggest that the skin necrosis following the use of Nupercaine would be more properly attributed to Adrenalin (epinephrine) or infection. The fact still remains that sloughs have occurred in conjunction with the use of this drug.^{16, 19, 20}

Review of the means whereby the various local anesthetic agents produce anesthesia suggests the possibility that Nupercaine per se may be responsible for the slough. Most of the common local anesthetic agents i.e. Novocain, Pontocaine, Intracaine and Metcaine produce anesthesia by a selective reversible action on the nerve fibers or cells. Reversible ultramicroscopic coagulation of protein occurs within the cell. This reversible effect involves a number of physiochemical phenomena the most important of which is a depolarizing of the nerve fibers or cells.²⁴



Figure 21 Allergy to self administered Adrenalin for relief of asthma (contributed by Rowe and Rowe³²)

Depolarization occurs in the following fashion (1) The salt of the local anesthetic drug i.e. the hydrochloride is injected into the body (2) The salt is hydrolyzed by the small amount of alkali in the body (3) In this manner the base which is more soluble in the lipid nerve structure than the salt is liberated (4) The ion of the anesthetic base carries a positive electric charge and this cation is readily attracted to the surface of negatively charged nerve structures. As a result of this physiochemical process the permeability of the cell membrane is decreased the phasic shifts necessary to conduction of impulses prevented and the transmission of these impulses ceases or is slowed. Thus we see that when Novocain, Pontocaine, Intracaine and Metycaine produce anesthesia they do so by a process which is reversible as the drug is detoxified.

On the other hand Nupercaine and other drugs of the quinine type do not produce anes-

thesia of the nerve fibers and cells by this selective reversible action but by "irritation and partial or total destruction of the tissue including the nerve cells."³⁰ Therefore it is possible that Nupercaine per se may cause tissue damage and may result in a slough if placed in the epidermis or dermis during local infiltration.

Cyclamine (hexylecaine hydrochloride) has been introduced recently as a safe local anesthetic agent. But Sadove³¹ reports four cases of slough following the use of 1% Cyclamine solutions intradermally to raise skin wheals. The Cyclamine solution contained either 1:200,000 or 1:100,000 Adrenalin. He believes that while Cyclamine seems to have a low systemic toxicity it has a high local toxicity when injected into the skin. Recent work in animals by Minnhamer *et al*³ showed that injection of Cyclamine into the cutaneous tissues and muscles resulted in infiltration of leukocytes and slough. They observed no change in nerve tissue. These animal experiments substantiate the clinical impression gained from injections in man that Cyclamine may on occasion cause a local tissue reaction.

Tissue Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs—The local tissue reactions considered under this heading are those which are believed due to prolonged anoxia of the tissues brought about by the vasoconstrictor action of the drug.

Acquired Allergy—A number of reports in the literature show that repeated small doses of Adrenalin (epinephrine) i.e. 0.2 cc to 0.5 cc of 1:1000 solution may sensitize a patient to subsequent use of the drug.³³ To date most cases reported have occurred in asthmatics who have had to resort to self administration of Adrenalin for relief (see Figure 21 page 96). The reaction in these cases is due to allergy but in all probability the resulting lesion is referable to the tissue anoxia caused by a prolonged localized vasoconstriction. This type of local toxic reaction is generally attributed to an Arthus phenomenon.³⁴ Arthus showed that if horse serum is repeatedly injected subcutaneously in rabbits an anaphylactic shock reaction does not

occur but edema appears at the site of the later injections and this reaction may progress to abscess formation and even gangrene.

Prolonged Anemia of the Tissues from Persistent Vasoconstriction and/or Mechanical Pressure of the Injected Solution—Persistent vasoconstriction which results in prolonged anemia of the tissues may be due to (1) too high a dosage of the vasoconstrictor drug for the patient's individual tolerance, (2) a lack of collateral blood supply to the area injected e.g. finger or toe, (3) mechanical pressure from injecting too large a volume of the anesthetic solution, (4) any combination of 1, 2, and 3, or (5) constant continuous infusion of a vasoconstrictor drug to correct a persistent hypotension.

Untoward local tissue reactions at the site of application from vasoconstrictor drugs used in local anesthetic solutions are infrequent. Adrenalin has been reported responsible for some.^{3, 4} Hull⁵ in relating his experiences with the use of Adrenalin over an 18 year period reported two cases of skin sloughs in the area of the nose and two cases of intra-nasal mucous membrane sloughs from the use of small amounts of the drug i.e. one drop

of a 0.1% solution mixed with 2 or 3 cc. of a 0.5% solution of Novocain (procaine). In these cases pallor of the skin and the mucous membrane preceded the slough.

In addition to these instances gangrene of the digits following the use of solutions containing Adrenalin for finger and toe blocks has been reported (see Figure 22 page 97 and Figure 23 page 98).^{16, 17} Most of these authors cite the use of a tourniquet at the base of the digit as a possible contributing factor and note that hot moist dressings are also probably contraindicated postoperatively, since these increase metabolism of the tissue at a time when the blood supply cannot compensate for such an increase. Patients with peripheral vascular diseases may be particularly susceptible to such a complication.

Instances of slough in the other regions of the body have occurred where local anesthetic solutions containing Adrenalin were used. Worgan⁴ cites a case of slough of the skin of the penis which followed a block using a Novocain-Adrenalin solution at the base of the penis. This case required skin grafting. Eckenhooff⁴⁰ reported skin sloughs as the result of intradermal injection of local anesthetic



Figure 22 Slough of the thumb following the use of Novocain (procaine)-Adrenalin (epinephrine) solution for a digital block (contributed by Kaufman²⁸)



Figure 21 Allergy to self administered Adrenalin for relief of asthma (contributed by Rowe and Rowe)

Depolarization occurs in the following fashion (1) The salt of the local anesthetic drug i.e. the hydrochloride is injected into the body (2) The salt is hydrolyzed by the small amount of alkali in the body (3) In this manner the base which is more soluble in the lipid nerve structure than the salt is liberated (4) The ion of the anesthetic base carries a positive electric charge and this cation is readily attracted to the surface of negatively charged nerve structures. As a result of this physiochemical process the permeability of the cell membrane is decreased the phasic shifts necessary to conduction of impulses prevented and the transmission of these impulses ceases or is slowed. Thus we see that when Novocain, Pontocaine, Intracaine and Metycaine produce anesthesia they do so by a process which is *reversible* as the drug is detoxified.

On the other hand Nupercaine and other drugs of the quinine type do not produce anes-

thesia of the nerve fibers and cells by this selective reversible action but by "irritation and partial or total destruction of the tissue including the nerve cells." Therefore it is possible that Nupercaine per se may cause tissue damage and may result in a slough if placed in the epidermis or dermis during local infiltration.

Cyclaine (hexylecaine hydrochloride) has been introduced recently as a safe local anesthetic agent. But Sadove⁸¹ reports four cases of slough following the use of 1% Cyclaine solutions intradermally to raise skin wheals. The Cyclaine solution contained either 1:200,000 or 1:100,000 Adrenalin. He believes that while Cyclaine seems to have a low systemic toxicity it has a high local toxicity when injected into the skin. Recent work in animals by Mannheim *et al*⁸² showed that injection of Cyclaine into the cutaneous tissues and muscles resulted in infiltration of leukocytes and slough. They observed no change in nerve tissue. These animal experiments substantiate the clinical impression gained from injections in man that Cyclaine may on occasion cause a local tissue reaction.

Tissue Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs—The local tissue reactions considered under this heading are those which are believed due to prolonged anemia of the tissues brought about by the vasoconstrictor action of the drug.

Acquired Allergy—A number of reports in the literature show that repeated small doses of Adrenalin (epinephrine) i.e. 0.2 cc to 0.5 cc of 1:1000 solution may sensitize a patient to subsequent use of the drug.⁸³ To date most cases reported have occurred in asthmatics who have had to resort to self administration of Adrenalin for relief (see Figure 21 page 96). The reaction in these cases is due to allergy but in all probability the resulting lesion is referable to the tissue anoxia caused by a prolonged localized vasoconstriction. This type of local toxic reaction is generally attributed to an Arthus phenomenon.⁸⁴ Arthus showed that if horse serum is repeatedly injected subcutaneously in rabbits an anaphylactic shock reaction does not

ex of fluid subcutaneous. After clinical observations and examinations of the tissue grossly and microscopically he concluded that Levopred produces marked constriction of the venules as well as the arterioles. This results in tissue anoxia and consequently in extravasation of tissue fluids into the area. This edema fluid is not absorbed because of the marked constriction of the venules and if circulation to the area cannot be re-established by therapeutic measures then gangrene and ulcerations result. This study would appear to preclude the use of this drug as a vasoconstrictor agent in local anesthetic solutions.

Drugs Used in Regional Block Procedures Other Than Local Anesthetic Agents and Vasoconstrictor Drugs.—Many agents deposited in the body tissues may cause swelling, abscesses and sloughs. The following are those which have been commonly employed in regional block procedures as a blocking drug per se, as the solvent for the blocking agent or as the preservative for the mixture and which have resulted in tissue damage.

Lytic Non-olytic Drugs.—Alcohol, phenol, polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol and Efoecaine are all neurolytic drugs and produce prolonged chemical blockade of the nerves by wallerian degeneration.^{14, 15, 16, 17} They are not only capable of neurolysis but they also cause destruction of the surrounding skin and mesenchymal tissues resulting in swelling, cellulitis, abscess and slough.^{14, 15, 17} After the injection of the above mentioned lytic drugs into the muscles of animals and histologic tissue studies of these muscles. Minnichimer *et al*¹⁸ and Nowill *et al*³ found the following: (1) within a half to one hour after the intramuscular injection the area injected becomes pallid and a pale coagulated appearance is revealed on gross histologic inspection. (2) in two days or so degeneration and necrosis of the muscle bundles is prominent with a marked infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages. (3) between the 7th and 10th days multi-nucleated regenerating muscle cells, newly formed capillaries and fibroblasts indicative of an active regenerative process are noted and

(4) by the 12th to 21st days the necrotic debris is removed and regeneration is almost complete. All of these drugs reveal the same pathological changes in the muscle although the length of time each stage persists varies slightly with the drug used.^{14, 15} While the muscle fibers may regenerate in this short a period of time (12 to 21 days) nerve fibers may take 6 to 9 months or longer to recover fully (see Chapter 11 page 116).

It should be emphasized that Efoecaine a buffered mixture of Novocain (procaine), polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol and preservatives was originally thought to be innocuous and to produce long lasting analgesia by the precipitation of Novocain crystals and their slow absorption.^{19, 20} This hypothesis was based on the fact that propylene glycol while hygroscopic does have a low systemic toxicity and investigators studying it and polyethylene glycol while noting some tissue damage following its injection into the mesenchymal tissues of animals, felt that it would be a safe vehicle for subcutaneous or intramuscular injection of drugs.^{21, 22, 23} Carpenter and Shaffer²⁴ stated "Intramuscular injection of 5 to 10 times the expected human dosage level of PEG 300 or propylene glycol produced ischemic necrosis of the muscle fibers where the dose infiltrated a muscle bundle. The tissue response may be characterized as a mild chemical inflammation. This reaction is a transient one as no evidence of injury was found 14 days after the injection. Weinberg⁴ concluded from experiments on rabbits. It is evident that Efoecaine does not provoke a foreign body reaction and does not remain in a demonstrable form in the tissues. The striking apparent resolution occurring in the injected muscles without a focal fibrous reaction remaining subsequent to the immediate necrosis, is further evidence of the lack of any permanent injurious action of the drug. The fibroblastic proliferation seen about the nerves during the early post-injectional stages was found to disappear completely confirming the impression that one is dealing with a benign process which is apparently reversible or which at least loses its char-

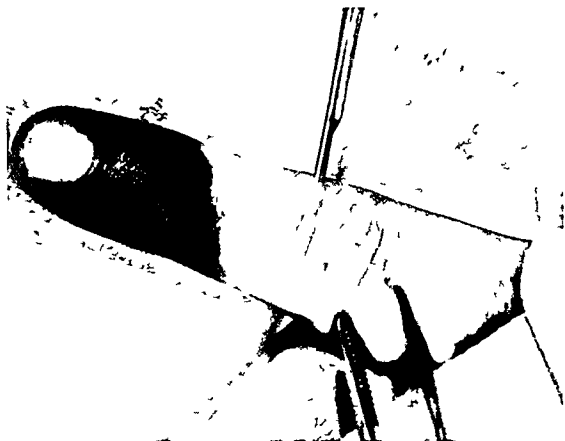


Figure 23 Gangrene of a finger following the use of a Novocain Adrenalin solution for a digital block (contributed by Adrian J.)

solutions containing Adrenalin and advised against the use of vasoconstrictor drugs in local anesthetic solutions when making a skin wheal. Serafin⁴¹ reports tissue sloughs from local anesthetic solutions containing 1:20,000 Adrenalin and Kaufman³⁸ cites cases of slough of the abdominal wall and scrotum following the use of Novocain Adrenalin solutions. It is debatable whether such local toxic reactions were caused by the vasoconstrictor drug or by the use of too large a volume of solution in areas where even small amounts of solution may create mechanical pressure adequate to embarrass the blood supply to that area, or by a combination of these two. However, since gangrene with the exception of that cited after skin whealing (page 95) has not been reported following blocks for which local anesthetic solutions without Adrenalin were used, the use of vasoconstrictors must be considered as contributory.

Untoward local tissue reactions following local infiltration of anesthetic solutions con-

taining Neosynephrine and Cobefrin have not been noted. Other new and powerful vasoconstrictor drugs, i.e. Levophed (levarter enol bitartrate), Vasoxyl (methoxamine hydrochloride), Wyamine (N-methylphenyltertiary butylamine sulfate), Oenethyl (2-methyl amino heptane hydrochloride) are being rapidly introduced on the market. As yet they have not been widely used as substitutes for Adrenalin, Cobefrin or Neosynephrine in local anesthetic solutions. This is wise because following extravasation of the new and powerful vasoconstrictor agent Levophed, tissue sloughs have been reported (see Figure 36, page 150; Figure 37, page 151; and Figure 38, page 152).^{43, 46} Therefore these drugs should not be incorporated in local anesthetic solutions until extensive animal research has been carried out to determine what if any is a safe concentration.

Nyhus⁴⁷ seeking the cause of these sloughs reproduced them in dogs by injecting solutions containing 4 mg. of Levophed per 1000

tion is always followed by re-injection (4) Oil as a vehicle is somewhat of a nuisance. It is difficult to handle and is slowly absorbed from the tissues. Pooling of the oil is of secondary importance. Pooled oil presents the problem of a foreign body in the presence of inflammation caused mostly by the benzyl alcohol. This predisposes to abscess formation. (5) Secondary infection plays a part in production of abscess following injection of the oil soluble anesthetics. Lymphatic drainage into the injected area is considered of major importance in the production of septic abscesses. The precept that superficial injection predisposes to abscess formation is modified to take into consideration this factor. The site of the injection is also important. Superficial injections are more prone to result in abscess the further away they are from the anal canal (except posterior midline) and in the path of lymphatic drainage.

The use of oil preparations entails various disadvantages. Care to avoid superficial placement and pooling must be taken or sloughing of the tissues, cysts and foreign body granulomas may result.^{1, 73, 74} Brown *et al*⁷⁵ showed that oils when injected intramuscularly caused inflammatory reactions and oil cyst formation varying from mild reactions with thin walled cysts and mild leukoecytic infiltration to marked reactions with fibrinous thick walled cysts, edema, heavy leukoecytic infiltration and muscle necrosis. Sesame oil caused the mild reaction and peanut oil the severe type. Furthermore Truman⁷ has reported that oil preparations injected into the operative site delay healing of tissue, increase inflammation and produce a larger area of scarring.

While Steinbrocker⁷³ Bettman⁷⁴ Wertheim and Roenstine⁷ and others have reported excellent results following the use of oil preparation Hackmeyer,⁶ Bonier,³ Kelly⁷⁶ and the author have not been impressed with the uniformity of action of these drugs particularly when injecting large nerves such as the intercostal nerves. Because of this and the tissue damage which may occur with these mixtures these preparations are seldom used at the Mason Clinic.

Drugs Used to Potentiate Action of Local Anesthetic Agents—Various agents have been used to potentiate the action of local anesthetic agents. These include organic bases e.g. quinine derivatives, organic acids e.g. lipoic acid, analgesic drugs e.g. 3-acetyl salicylic acid (aspirin), proteins e.g. egg albumin and cations e.g. potassium.¹⁶ Most of these will cause local tissue irritation and seem to be of little value.¹⁶ As a result they are not used by most physicians.

Ammonium Sulfate—Mannheimer *et al*¹⁴ have shown that concentrations of 5 to 7% ammonium sulfate do not cause degeneration or necrosis of the tissues. Recently Abbott has introduced for clinical experimental use a number of PAB solutions. These contain procaine, ammonium sulfate and benzyl alcohol and differ only in that the concentrations of these three drugs vary in the different solutions. To date tissue studies are not available. The maximum amounts of benzyl alcohol and ammonium sulfate used in them are 2.0 and 2.5% respectively. At the Mason Clinic the solutions have been employed in deep nerve blocks in cancer patients without noting either marked pain relief, improvement of the patient or significant pain at the site of injection. Nevertheless pain and swelling of tissues on superficial placement of these mixtures have been called to the authors' attention by Bonier.⁷

Hyaluronidase—Hyaluronidase does not cause degeneration or necrosis of the tissues. However local vascular phenomena i.e. blanching and erythema have been seen in the region infiltrated and a severe vaginitis of 24 hours duration following a suprascapular nerve block has been observed after its injection.⁷⁸

Diodrast (iodopyracet)—Diodrast has been used in regional block analgesia to visualize the spread of anesthetic solutions. To date sloughs and abscesses following its injection have not been noted. On the other hand the author and his residents have injected Diodrast subcutaneously in themselves and have found that it creates an ecchymotic area at the site of injection which remained painful for two to five days. And following deep place-

acteristics and is absorbed into the surrounding tissues. With full realization that injection of 0.5 cc of Elocaine into a nerve bundle as small as the brachial plexus in the rabbit is an enormous dose, it is not surprising to find the presence of focal degeneration of the myelin sheath. The mechanical effects of injecting 0.5 cc of any substance into such a small confined space are to be considered of paramount importance in interpreting the histologic features found. Apparently the fibroblastic proliferation and bland thrombus formation found in the sections of the lip are of the same benign character as those found in the other tissues since *no histopathology was evident in the sections of those animals followed for a long period of time*.

To rule out the possibility of tissue reactions being *mechanical* in origin isotonic sodium chloride solutions have been injected under identical conditions to serve as a control. No degeneration or necrosis of the muscle bundles was noted.¹⁴ Further studies contradicting Weinberg's conclusions have shown fairly conclusively that the long analgesia produced by Elocaine is a result of tissue destruction particularly of the nerves and the nerve end plates—not slow absorption of the Novocain crystals.^{14 15 16} The prolonged anesthetic action of Duracaine and Diothane hydrochloride was found by Maykut and Ryan¹⁷ to be similarly caused by tissue damage.

Oil Preparations With or Without Benzyl Alcohol as a Preservative—Oil bases have been used to slow the absorption of the anesthetic agent since Benacol (Novocain base dissolved in oil) was first introduced in 1927 by Yeomans, Gorsch and Mathesheimer.⁶⁶ These authors believed that the oil released the local anesthetic agent slowly producing prolonged analgesia. This hypothesis was accepted for a number of years until it was shown that when these solutions were used degeneration of the tissue occurred.^{67 68} It is interesting to note that there were three incidences of slough in the 25 cases reported by Yeomans *et al*.⁶⁶

Duncan⁶⁹ working with cats found that when oil solutions containing benzyl alcohol

were injected subcutaneously around the facial nerve degeneration of that nerve occurred in every case. Duncan and Jarvis⁷⁰ also point out that when the oil solutions contained benzyl alcohol in concentrations of 5% or greater the benzyl alcohol per se was responsible for most of the tissue destruction. They state: "It is concluded that the prolonged effects of the anesthetic mixtures in oil were caused almost entirely by the benzyl alcohol content and this substance in 10% concentration will destroy all of the fibers in small nerves and a considerable number of them when used in 5% concentration." However, weaker concentrations of benzyl alcohol (e.g. 0.75% or less used as a preservative in Dolamin, an ammonium sulfate solution) causes no degeneration or necrosis of the tissue.¹⁴ Therefore it is likely that whether or not benzyl alcohol exerts a deleterious effect on the tissue would depend on its concentration.

Since most oil preparations contain benzyl alcohol it may be concluded that the problems encountered with these mixtures are caused by both the benzyl alcohol and the oil, benzyl alcohol probably being the greater offender. The local anesthetic drug incorporated in these mixtures seems to play little part in either the prolonged analgesia or the tissue destruction. Hackmeyer⁶ in his summary makes the following pertinent points on this subject: (1) Benzyl alcohol is a tissue irritant that is capable of causing degeneration of human muscle of destroying nerves and of causing sufficient tissue reaction at times to produce an aseptic abscess. (2) Benzyl alcohol seems to play the major role in producing prolonged anesthesia or hypesthesia probably by chemical degeneration. Larger doses produce complete anesthesia, smaller doses hypesthesia. Other drugs are relatively unimportant for the production of these effects. (3) The effect of benzyl alcohol is controlled better in solutions of oil than in water, the oil allowing higher concentrations, slower diffusion and prolonged action with less resulting irritation and more effective denervation. It is noted that nerve degenera-

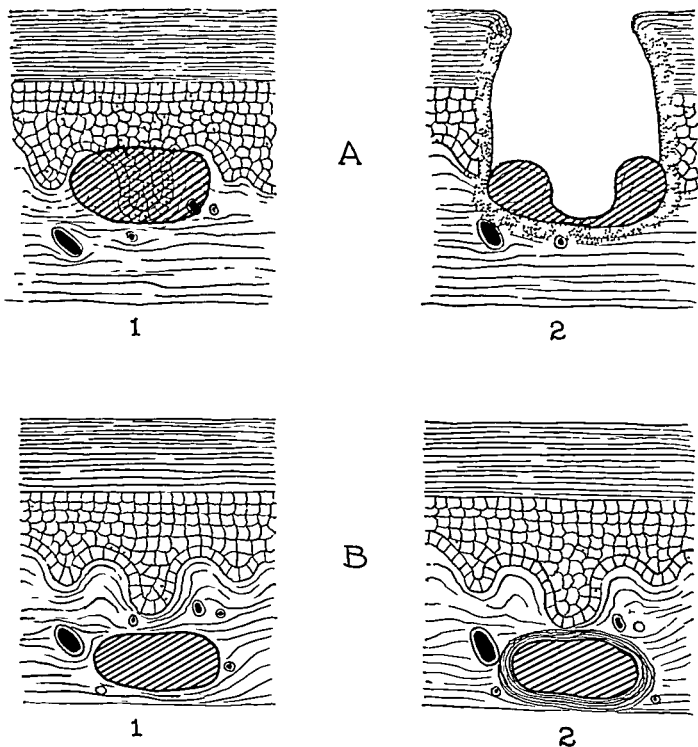


Figure 24 Mechanism of slough (A) Neurolytic solution placed immediately under the skin (1) damages tissues destroys the blood supply to the skin immediately above sterile abscess and results in slough (2) (B) Neurolytic solution placed deep in tissues (1) produces same damage but since the blood supply on none of the sides of the sterile abscess is damaged no slough results and the phagocytes in the tissues exert their scavenger effect The damaged tissues regenerate or the tissue scars (2)

ment of this drug as in stellate ganglion block pain which lasted two to five days has been reported to us by approximately 20% of the patients into whom it was injected.⁹

Pyribenzamine (trapeleannamine hydrochloride).—The anesthetic properties of this drug administered topically have been demonstrated.^{96, 104} Recently it has been used by Betcher *et al*¹⁰⁵ for peripheral nerve blocking in clinical experiments. They comment Pyribenzamine was used for local infiltration and regional nerve block for diagnostic therapeutic and surgical procedures in 459 cases. All injections resulted in a rapid onset of action longer duration of action a higher percentage of success in regional nerve blocking and a smaller number of systemic reactions [than Novocain]. There were indications of some burning occasional bleeding erythema at the site of injection and possibly increased oozing which may be owing to increased vascularity or spreading ability of the drug or both. Complete recovery was noted in all patients.⁹ They also state It is realized however that the effects of Pyribenzamine injected intraneurally and perineurally in experimental amounts should be studied histologically as was done with long acting local anesthetics by Minnhimer, Pizzolito and Adriani.¹⁴

Indwelling Spinal or Epidural Catheters.—Reports of catheters causing irritation and infection at the site of entrance into the body have appeared.⁹⁰ This type of reaction might reasonably be expected but it occurs very infrequently.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of a tissue reaction following a local toxic reaction to the drugs used in a regional block are primarily those of (1) burning (2) swelling (3) inflammation (4) ulceration and gangrene with damage to the peripheral nerves or their end plates and (5) a combination of one or more of these.

Burning.—This symptom may occur following the injection of local anesthetic solutions in which the solvent is distilled water. It has

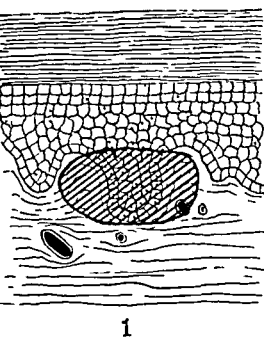
also followed the injection of Cyclaine (heylcaine), Elocaine and Alcohol. Burning on injection may signal a more serious complication.

Swelling of the Tissues.—This is usually expected during superficial infiltrations with local anesthetic solutions. It should cause no problem except perhaps in plastic surgery where it may be reduced by the use of hyaluronidase as will be noted later. In most instances it is due to the injection of such an excessive amount of the local anesthetic solution that the tissues cannot accommodate it but on occasion the inherent property of the area injected may be responsible. In the occasional case swelling may signify a reaction to metallic ions it may also signify an abscess slough and ulceration a serious hemorrhage (see Chapter 9 page 89) or a subcutaneous emphysema from a pneumothorax (see Chapter 6 page 62).

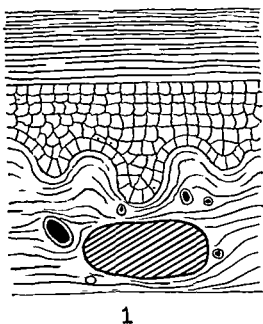
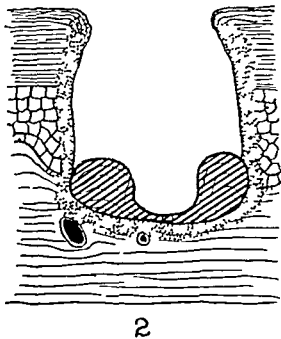
Inflammation.—The chief complaint of a patient developing an inflammation (sterile abscess or cellulitis) is pain in the area involved and the well known signs are present redness local heat swelling and tenderness of the tissue involved.

Ulceration and Gangrene.—These are in most instances a result of tissue destruction from (1) drugs which are known to have a lytic effect on the tissues (2) an allergy to the vasoconstrictor drug or (3) prolonged ischemia of the tissues from either a direct action of the vasoconstrictor drug on the blood vessels of the area or a combination of this and mechanical compression of the vessels from injecting too much solution. Infection is not necessarily a cause of ulceration and gangrene but secondary infection of a sloughed area may occur if proper therapy is not instituted.

Local Signs and Symptoms of Ulceration and Gangrene.—These vary depending on whether the lesion is superficial or deep. The local signs and symptoms of a superficial lesion progressing to gangrene occur because all the terminal blood supply to that area is temporarily destroyed (see Figure 24 page 103). The signs and symptoms of ulceration



A



B

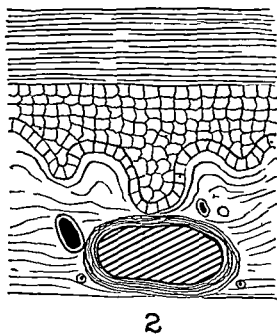


Figure 24 Mechanism of slough (A) Neurolytic solution placed immediately under the skin (1) damages tissues destroys the blood supply to the skin immediately above sterile abscess and results in slough (2) (B) Neurolytic solution placed deep in tissues (1) produces same damage but since the blood supply on none of the sides of the sterile abscess is damaged no slough results and the phagocytes in the tissues exert their scavenger effect The damaged tissues regenerate or the tissue scars (2)

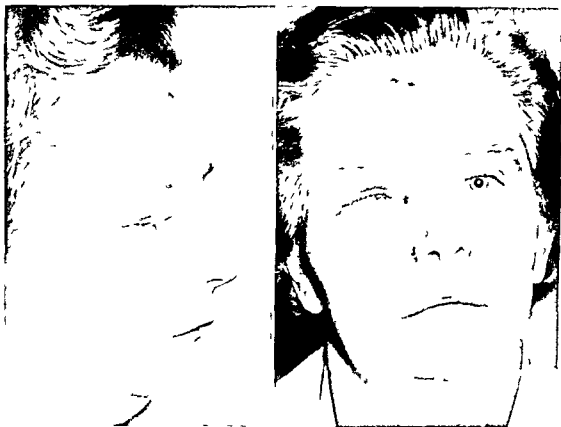


Figure 25 Swelling of the face following the injection of 1 cc of absolute alcohol into the infraorbital branch of the maxillary nerve both at the infraorbital foramina and in the infraorbital canal for trigeminal neuralgia. There is little doubt that the alcohol caused degeneration of the tissue but that deep placement precluded a slough. As is usual this swelling resolved in 7 days with no specific treatment.

and gangrene are well known and are as follows: (1) paleness and cadaveric appearance of the area injected are prominent initially; (2) tenderness and pain occur immediately following injection unless the anesthetic property of the drug is sufficient to mask them; (3) swelling may occur; (4) the skin becomes a dusky color; (5) a small purplish patch or patches with ill defined margins appear; (6) at the same time a large bulla or blister having a yellowish appearance may erupt over the dusky area or somewhere else on the red skin; and (7) the necrotic area may slough, leaving a raw denuded area. A foul smell usually accompanies wet gangrene depending on the size of slough. No odor accompanies dry gangrene such as that which occurs if the blood supply to a digit is compromised.

On the other hand when the lesion is deep in the tissues superficial skin and subcu-

taneous tissue sloughs seldom occur although necroses of the deep mesenchymal tissues and nerves in the region of the deposited solution do result (see Figure 25 page 104 and Figure 26 page 105^{14, 1}). The local signs and symptoms of deep tissue necrosis and degeneration are often confined to swelling and thus usually occurs within 1 to 2 hours after injection. Tenderness and pain may become noticeable as the anesthetic qualities of the injected drug are dissipated. The blood supply around the devitalized area is sufficient to combat this kind of problem and healing occurs either by tissue regeneration or scarring (see Figure 24 page 103). The mesenchymal tissue will usually heal in two weeks to a month but it may take a peripheral nerve nine months to a year to regenerate (see Chapter 11 page 116).

Systemic Signs and Symptoms of Ulceration and Gangrene—Since large superficial areas

of gangrene and ulceration seldom follow regional block systemic signs and symptoms i.e. increased body temperature, malaise etc. from absorption of toxic products occur infrequently. The tissue degeneration which occurs following the *deep* placement of long acting solutions seldom is complicated by infection. It is so to speak a "sterile abscess."

When systemic signs and symptoms do occur, they are usually due to secondary infection of a superficial sloughing area which has not been properly treated.

PROPHYLAXIS

Do Not Use Excessive Volumes of Solution

—The use of the minimum amounts of local anesthetic solutions necessary for the establishment of a successful block and strict adherence to the block techniques will usually prevent undue swelling initially and help to prevent pressure necrosis from developing later.

Avoid the Use of the Wrong Solutions—

To avoid using wrong solutions the physician should carefully check all stock solution. If there is any doubt about the solution it should be discarded.

Avoid Breach in Technique and Possible Infection—

Inflammation, abscess, cellulitis, sloughs and even gangrene may result from (1) the use of unsterile equipment, (2) contaminated drugs, (3) blocking of a patient with a septicemia or (4) introducing a needle through an infected area.

To avoid infection and its complications the instruments and drugs must be adequately sterilized (see Chapter 22, pages 206 and 207 for technique). In addition the physician must use an aseptic technique during the block procedure i.e. the same sterile precautions should be taken as for an operation. These include (1) sterile precautions when opening the block tray, (2) examining the sterilizer control, (3) wearing gloves and (4) correctly preparing the area to be injected.

The doctor should wear sterile gloves for at least two reasons. (1) they are no more hindrance to the doctor performing a block

than to a surgeon performing a delicate operation and they do offer an additional safeguard to the aseptic technique and (2) when a doctor executes a large number of regional procedures wearing gloves is advisable for his own protection as occupational sensitivities to local anesthetic agents are not uncommon (see Chapter 14, page 127).

The patient's skin should be prepared with one of the routine surgical preparations. If the patient is to leave the office or hospital following the block and cosmetic appearance is a consideration a 5% iodine solution washed off with alcohol or aqueous (colorless) merthiolate is satisfactory. The block field should be carefully wiped off with sterile towels to assure asepsis.

Trauma during the placement of the needles must be avoided as devitalized tissue and aggregates of blood are excellent culture media for bacteria.



Figure 26 Swelling of the face following a block with absolute alcohol of the maxillary nerve as it leaves the foramen rotundum to cross the pterygopalatine fossa. There is little doubt that the alcohol caused degeneration of the tissue but that deep placement precluded slough. The swelling receded within one week.

Avoid Lytic Drugs—Drugs known to cause severe tissue damage should be employed only to control intractable pain and in these cases the patient and his family should be made to understand the complications which may result. Signed permissions are a safe guard against legal action (see Chapter 12 page 119). Blocking with these drugs should be left to the expert.

Although Nupercaine solutions have been used for local infiltration and nerve blocks by a number of physicians and in many cases without causing local tissue reactions it must be remembered that necroses and sloughs following the injection of the drug in these techniques have been reported. Therefore it is the author's opinion that the use of Nupercaine should be restricted to spinal and topical administration and not used for infiltration because other agents particularly Pontocaine will produce analgesia of approximately the same duration by a selective reversible action on the nerve fibers and cells and will not damage the tissues.^{6 8 87}

Careful Selection and Use of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—While local tissue damage from vasoconstrictor agents at the site of administration is rare during regional block procedures it has been reported. This renders it obvious that before using a vasoconstrictor drug in a local anesthetic solution the physician should carefully evaluate the indications for its use, the patient's physical condition, the site to be injected and the vasoconstrictor drug to be employed. If the following precautions are carefully adhered to local tissue damage from vasoconstrictor drugs due to an acquired allergy, mechanical compression of the blood vessels and prolonged vasoconstriction with tissue anoxia will be minimized.

Use Standard Vasoconstrictor Agents—The time-tested vasoconstrictor drugs which have been in clinical use for many years are Adrenalin, Cobefrin and Neosynephrine. They seldom cause degeneration and necrosis of the tissues when used in local anesthetic solutions in the recommended dosages. The newer agents which exert a strong vasoconstrictor effect on the blood vessels but do not affect

the heart or cardiac output do not enjoy the reputation of having stood the test of time and one Levophed is known under certain circumstances to have caused slough (see Chapter 15 page 150). Therefore, before using these agents promiscuously in regional block solutions physicians should be aware that they may cause untoward reactions.

At the present time it is the author's opinion that the new powerful vasoconstrictor agents should not be used in local anesthetic solutions as a substitute for Adrenalin etc. in hopes of prolonging the duration of the block. Since Pontocaine Adrenalin solutions give a duration of action of four to six hours without causing tissue damage or a high incidence of systemic toxic reactions it would seem that the risk involved in substituting Levophed or one of the other new vasoconstrictor agents for Adrenalin is not justifiable until the safety of these drugs is proved experimentally in animals and humans.

Avoid Vasoconstrictor Drugs when Blocking the Digits, the Nose and the Penis—In these areas the volume of solution which may be accommodated without causing mechanical pressure on the blood vessels is small. If perchance an excess amount of the local anesthetic solution containing a vasoconstrictor drug is injected not only is there constriction of the vessels by mechanical pressure but also by drug action. Therefore the chance of completely occluding the blood supply to the area is enhanced as evidenced by reports of this in the literature.^{3 4}

The above cited physicians and a number of others have cautioned against the use of vasoconstrictor drugs when doing a digital block.^{3 4 88 90} However Pitkin⁹¹ who used Adrenalin and who had vast experience with local and regional blocking had not seen gangrene of the finger or toes from digital blocks and believed that the cases reported in the literature occurred because Adrenalin was employed in very high concentrations.

It is the author's opinion that if a vasoconstrictor agent is used in the local anesthetic solution when performing digital block, a block around the nose or a block of the nerves

to the penis 75 to 150 TRU (turbidity reducing units) of hyaluronidase should be incorporated in the solution to effect its wider spread and thus promote absorption of the solution and a consequent decrease of mechanical pressure (see Figure 2 page 15).⁸²

Careful Examination of Patient Prior to Blocking.—Inasmuch as it has been shown that the occasional asthmatic patient may be come sensitized to Adrenalin such patients must be carefully examined prior to injections of a large volume of local anesthetic solutions containing Adrenalin otherwise a large slough may occur. If such a patient is found to have areas of scarring where self administration of the Adrenalin has taken place then no Adrenalin should be used in the local anesthetic solutions or a general anesthetic should be administered. If it is imperative to use Adrenalin in these patients synthetic Adrenalin preparations should be used for it has been found that these are safe and do not result in the Arthus phenomenon i.e. necrosis and scarring.⁸³

Do Not Add Vasoconstrictor Agents to Local Anesthetic Solutions with Vasoconstrictor Action.—Solutions of cocaine are known to have a powerful vasoconstrictive action and if vasoconstrictor agents are added to these solutions this type of action on the blood vessels is greatly increased. The result may be a slough.

TREATMENT

The extent of treatment of local toxic tissue reactions depends on its type.

Swelling.—In the greater number of instances tissue swelling from the injection of excessive amounts of the local anesthetic solution may be expected and is of little significance because it is self limiting and will regress without specific treatment. However if the physician wishes to minimize tissue swelling he should incorporate 150 TRU (turbidity reducing units) of hyaluronidase (Diffusin Alidase or Wydase) in the local anesthetic solution and use gentle massage following the infiltration.⁸⁴⁻⁸⁵ Hyaluronidase added to a local anesthetic solution markedly

shortens the duration of anesthesia unless Adrenalin is also added.

In addition to the tissue swelling caused by mechanical pressure persistent swelling of the face following block of the mandibular and maxillary nerves or their terminal branches may apparently have other causes. Whether persistent swelling is due to a local allergy to the drug or the release of metallic ions and consequent direct tissue irritation is open to question. Although innocuous such swelling does present a problem cosmetically.⁸⁶ Since some dentists feel that it is a direct allergic phenomenon they advocate the use of the antihistaminic drugs prophylactically prior to injections and others use such drugs only as treatment after swelling has occurred.⁸⁷

It must be stressed that while tissue swelling at the site of injection is usually of little concern it may herald a serious complication i.e. infection, slough, hemorrhage because of an unexpectedly prolonged clotting time or a pneumothorax. Therefore swelling cannot be viewed lightly until a definite diagnosis is established. The problems entailed by pneumothorax and increased clotting time are considered elsewhere (see Chapter 6 page 63 and Chapter 9 page 90).

Inflammation.—The active treatment of inflammation (abscesses and cellulitis) is well known and needs little discussion. It includes hot wet packs and in some instances incision and drainage. If secondary infection occurs antibiotic drugs may be necessary. If the inflamed area ulcerates or sloughs and will not heal then debridement, grafting etc. as indicated below must be considered.

Blebs, Ulceration and Gangrene.—When a compromised blood supply threatens the viability of an area of the body the area involved becomes blanched and appears cyanotic. Immediate treatment to decrease the temperature of that portion of the body should be undertaken in order to lower the tissue metabolism. An attempt to increase the circulation to the part by sympathetic blocking and/or intravenous Novocain infusions should be made and the part must be guarded from trauma. Often if these steps are instituted

without delay progression to a more severe lesion may be stopped

When superficial blebs and vesicles appear the situation is more serious. However if in addition to the therapy suggested above mecholyl iontophoresis is instituted the lesion may regress rather than progress. This was true of one of the cases observed at the Mason Clinic (see Figure 39 page 152)

Small ulcerations and gangrene (0.5 to 1.0 cm) such as those produced by an acquired allergy i.e. the Arthus phenomenon or those occurring following the raising of an intradermal wheal require no treatment other than keeping the lesion clean. In most instances they heal in four to six weeks.

On the other hand when large areas of ulceration result such as those following the superficial placement of lytic drugs a digital block or the administration of powerful vasoconstrictors (Levophed) appropriate medical and surgical treatment including antibiotics, debridement and grafting must be instituted. Antibiotic therapy may be necessary to correct or prevent secondary infection of the sloughed area. In instances where ulcerated areas remain infected in spite of antibiotic treatment and cannot be prepared for grafting temporary sympathetic denervation by blocking the appropriate ganglion or ganglia may be indicated to increase the blood supply to the area.²⁰ We have used this therapy prior to grafting wounds with marked success in cases where infection of the wound with pyocyanous bacteria following surgery or trauma prevented the grafting of large areas. The block apparently through increased blood supply results in a reduction of the bacterial count of the wound and lessens the drainage making the area more fit for grafting.

McKenzie²¹ reports one case of slough of the corner of the nose after surgical section of the maxillary nerve for trigeminal neuralgia. The sloughed area could not be grafted until after the stellate ganglion was removed (see Chapter 12 page 122). This substantiates the efficacy of sympathetic block for preparing a graft site.

REFERENCES

1. WINKLEMAN N W Neurologic Symptoms Following Accidental Intraspinal Detergent Injection *Neurology* 2:284-291 1952
2. WINKLEMAN N W, GOTTLEY N and SCHUBERT D Localized Adhesive Spinal Arachnoiditis. A Study of Twenty-five Cases with Reference to Etiology *Tr Am Neurol A* Atlantic City June 1953
3. Abbott Laboratories Brochure on Zylcaine AP22/R6-10 0949
4. Ciba Pharmaceutical Products Inc Booklet on Nupercaine in Oil
5. E. Fougeret and Co Brochure on Efocaine
6. HACHMEYER R Oil Soluble Anesthetics—Review and Report on a Study for Their Improvement *J Missouri M A* 47:892-902 1950
7. CHIFFS J E and ZUCKER E Procaine Hydrochloride Allergy in Regional Anesthesia *U S Armed Forces Med J* 5:389-392 1954
8. RICKLES N H Procaine Allergy in Dental Patients: Diagnosis and Management Preliminary Report *J Oral Surg* 6:375-382 1953
9. SILVERMAN R E Use of Antihistamines in Oral Surgery Preliminary Report *J Oral Surg* 11:231-237 1953
10. LUNDQVIST B, LOFCHEN A, PERSSON H and SJOGREN B Metal Ions as a Cause of Swelling After Local Anesthesia in Dental Practice *Acta chir scandinav* 97:239-258 1948
11. WIEDLING S The Locally Irritating Effect of Metal Ions and Local Anesthetics *Acta Pharm Tox* 4:351-366 1948
12. OWEN J J Personal Communication
13. TAINTER M L (Director Sterling Winthrop Research Institute) Personal Communication
14. MANNHEIMER W, PEZZOLATO P and ADRIANI J Mode of Action and Effects on Tissues of Long Acting Local Anesthetics *JAMA* 154:29-32 1953
15. MARGOLIS G, HALL H E and NOWILL W L An Investigation of Efocaine as a Long Acting Local Anesthetic Agent I Animal Studies *AMA Arch Surg* 67:715-730 1953
16. ADRIANI J *The Chemistry of Anesthesia* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1946
17. MEERER W R Studies in Local Anesthesia IV The Pharmacology of Some Para amino benzoate Compounds Local Anesthetic Action upon the Mucous Membranes and Skin of Man *J Lab & Clin Med* 11:468-474 1926
18. de VINCENTIS A Azione degli anestetici locali sui tessuti *Riv di Chir* 5:300 1939
19. BRANDESKY W Perkins. *Zentralbl Chir* 57:132-134 1930

- 20 STORM R Zur Pericarditis Wien Klin Wchnschr 43 559 560 1930
- 21 KEYS E L and McLELLAN A M Preliminary Reports on a New Local Anesthetic (Nupercaine) Am J Surg 91 8 1930
- 22 KEYS E L and McLELLAN A M Further Experience with Nupercaine JAMA 96 2095 2091 1931
- 23 BONICA J J Management of Pain Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 24 PENFIELD W Combined Regional and General Anesthesia for Craniotomy and Cortical Considerations Neurosurgical Considerations Part I Anesth & Analg 33 145 155 1951
- 25 GRAY T C and GEDDES I C A Review of Local Anesthetics J Pharm & Pharmacol 6 89 114 1954
- 26 BONICA J J Regional Anesthesia with Tetracaine Anesthesiology 11 608-622 1950
- 27 LAMSON R W and CHAMBERS S O An Unusual Skin Reaction to Epinephrine JAMA 97 314-316 1931
- 28 COHEN A E and WATERSTONE B A Epinephrine Hypersensitivity Report of Two Cases J Allergy 11 393-397 1940
- 29 ROWE, ALBERT JR and ROWE A H Local Cutaneous Allergy (Arthus Phenomenon) from Epinephrine J Allergy 19 62 67 1948
- 30 URBACH, E Multiple Hautnekrosen infolge Spastisch traumatischer Schädigung, bei Selbstinjektion von Adrenalin Med Klin 32 769 770 1936
- 31 URBACH E Allergy New York Grune & Stratton 1943
- 32 DUMAS J F Reacción urticariana en un asmático por inyección de adrenalina natural Prensa med Argent 28 303 304 1941
- 33 SYMES THOMPSON H E Idiosyncrasy to Adrenalin with Reference to Its Employment with Local Anesthetics and in Goetsch's Test for Hyperthyroidism Lancet 1 743 745 1924
- 34 ARTHUR M Injections repetées de serum du cheval chez le lapin Compt rend Soc de biol 55 817 820 1903
- 35 HALLE Idiosynkrasie gegen Nebennierenpräparate Ztschr Laryng Rhin 19 445 448 1930
- 36 McLAUGHLIN C W Postoperative Gangrene of the Finger Following Digital Nerve Block Anesthesia Am J Surg 55 588 589 1942
- 37 PELNER L Gangrene of the Toe Following Local Anesthesia with Procaine Epinephrine Solution New York State J Med 42 544 546 1944
- 38 KAUFMAN P A Gangrene Following Digital Nerve Block Anesthesia Arch Surg 42 929 938 1941
- 39 GARLOCK J H Gangrene of the Finger Following Digital Nerve Block Anesthesia Ann Surg 91 1103 1107 1931
- 40 KRENSHOFF J I Anesthesia for Cesarean Sections Given at Fifth Annual Refresher Lecture Courses at the Meeting of the American Society of Anesthesiologists Cincinnati 1951
- 41 STRAIN I J A Precaution in the Use of Procaine Epinephrine for Regional Anesthesia JAMA 91 13 11 1928
- 42 WOLMAN D Personal Communication
- 43 UNICICHO J F CALLEDA D C and CURRY F B Ulceration of the Skin Following Intravenous Use of Arterenol JAMA 152 607 608 1953
- 44 CRYENWALD H P GOOTNIK A LUCER N M and KING J A Tissue Necrosis Following Subcutaneous Infiltration with Nor Epinephrine New England J Med 246 252 253 1952
- 45 KURLAND C S and MALACH M The Clinical Use of Nor Epinephrine in the Treatment of Shock Accompanying Myocardial Infarction and Other Conditions New England J Med 247 393-399 1952
- 46 KEFES E R HARMOVICI H and SIMON B Skin Necrosis Following Intravenous Use of Nor Epinephrine Surgery 36 822 825 1954
- 47 NYIRUS L M Nor Epinephrine Cutaneous Ulcer Experimental and Clinical Observations To be published
- 48 MERRICK R I Degeneration and Recovery of Autonomic Neurons Following Alcoholic Block Ann Surg 113 298 305 1941
- 49 MANDEL F Paracervical Block New York Grune & Stratton 1947
- 50 RABINOVICI N Anatomic Changes Produced by Novocain and Phenol Infiltration in Sympathetic Ganglia Surgery 31 877 884 1952
- 51 MOORE D C Efocaine Complications Following Its Use West J Surg 61 635 638 1953
- 52 MOORE D C Complications Following the Use of Efocaine Surgery 35 109 114 1954
- 53 NOWILL W K HALL H E and MARGOLIS G An Investigation of Efocaine A Long Acting Local Anesthetic Agent II Clinical Studies AMA Arch Surg 67 731 737 1953
- 54 WEINBERG T Study of Effects of Efocaine Upon Nerves Muscle Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue Fongera Scientific Research Bull No 2 1952
- 55 JASON A J and SHATTEL H E New Approach to Problem of Postoperative Pain Am J Surg 83 549 555 1952
- 56 ANSBRO F P JASON A H SHATTEL H E and HALPERN A IATTEI I S and BODELL B The Development of Efocaine A New Approach to Prolonged Local Anesthesia Anesthesiology 13 306-321 1952

- 57 RAICUS E Postoperative Anesthetic in Ano-rectal Surgery A Critical Study of the Anesthetics for Postoperative Pain Control in Ano-Rectal Surgery *Med Times* 80 156-164 1952
- 58 TUCKER C C The Control of Postoperative Pain in Ano-Rectal Surgery *J Kansas Med Soc* 52 230 235 1952
- 59 BARILETT R W and EASTWOOD D W Long Acting Bilateral Intercostal Nerve Block for Upper Abdominal Surgery *Surgery* 32 958-960 1952
- 60 SEIDENFELD M A and HANZLIK P J The General Properties Actions and Toxicity of Propylene Glycol *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 44 109 121 1932
- 61 HANZLIK P J NEWMAN H W VAN WYNAL W JR LEIDMAN A J and KENNEDY N K Toxicity Fats and Excretion of Propylene Glycol and Some Other Glycols *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 67 101 126 1939
- 62 MORRIS H J, NELSON A A and CALVERY H O Observations on the Chronic Toxicities of Propylene Glycol Ethylene Glycol Diethylene Glycol Ethylene Glycol Mono-Ethyl Ether and Diethylene Glycol Mono-Ethyl Ether *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 74 266-273 1942
- 63 MCGAVACK T H and VOGEL M Propylene Glycol as a Menstruum for the Administration of the Steroid Hormones *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 1256-1265 1944
- 64 CARPENTER C P and SHAFFER C B A Study of the Polyethylene Glycols as Vehicles for Intramuscular and Subcutaneous Injection *J Am Pharm A (Scient Ed)* 41 27 29 1952
- 65 MAYKUT M O and RYAN E A Toxicity Studies on Some Newer Long Acting Local Anesthetics *Canad M A J* 69 419-423 1953
- 66 YEOMANS F C GORSCH R U and MATHE SIEFMEIER J L Benzocaine in the Treatment of Pruritus *Am Med J & Rec* 127 19 20 1928
- 67 DUNCAN D and JARVIS W H A Comparison of the Actions on Nerve Fibers of Certain Anesthetic Mixtures and Substances in Oil *Anesthesiology* 4 465 474 1943
- 68 STEINBERG H Recent Advances in the Treatment of Rectal Diseases by Injection Methods in Ambulatory Patients II *Practis Am New England J Med* 215 1019 1021 1936
- 69 DUNCAN D Some Effects of Anesthetic Mixtures Dissolved in Oil on Motor Nerves in the Cat *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 42 405 407 1939
- 70 LUNDY J S Metycaine 2% in Oil Preliminary Report. *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 14 360 1939
- 71 BROWN W E WILDER V M and SCHWARTZ P A Study of Oils Used for Intramuscular Injection *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 259 264 1944
- 72 TRUMAN S R Oil Solutions in Local Anesthesia Experimental Appraisal *West J Surg* 53 364 365 1945
- 73 STEINBROCKER O *Anthraxis in Modern Practice* Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1941
- 74 BETTMAN E H The Prolonged Therapeutic Action of Intracaine in Painful Musculoskeletal Disorders *New York State J Med* 47 2193 2200 1947
- 75 WERTHEIM H M and ROSENSTINE E A Suprascapular Nerve Block *Anesthesiology* 2 541 545 1941
- 76 KELLY M (1) Experimental Observations Upon the Limitations of Oil as Vehicle for Anaesthetic Agents *Med J Australia* 1 274 275 1945
(b) Failure of Oil Soluble Anaesthetics to Give Prolonged Analgesia *Lancet* 1 710 711 1947
- 77 BONICA J J Personal Communications
- 78 MOORE D C The Use of Hyaluronidase in Local and Nerve Block Analgesia Other Than Spinal Block 1520 Cases *Anesthesiology* 12 611 626 1951
- 79 MOORE D C *Stellate Ganglion Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- 80 BETCHER A M BEAN G and CASTEN D F Continuous Procaine Block of Paravertebral Sympathetic Ganglions Observation of One Hundred Patients *JAMA* 251 288 292 1953
- 81 SADOVE M Personal Communication
- 82 MOORE D C The Use of Pontocaine Hydrochloride for Nerve Block and Infiltration Analgesia Therapeutic and Diagnostic Blocks 1004 Cases *Anesthesiology* 11 65 75 1950
- 83 MOORE D C Pontocaine Solutions for Regional Analgesia Other Than Spinal and Epidural Block an Analysis of 2500 Cases *JAMA* 146 803 808 1951
- 84 BONICA J J Regional Analgesia with Tetracaine *Anesthesiology* 11 716-729 1950
- 85 FUSSENGER R and SCHLAUMANN O Über ein Neues Lokalanästhetikum der Novokainreihe (Pantokain) *Arch Exper Path Pharmacol* 160 53 65 1931
- 86 SCHMIDT H Ein neues Lokalanästhetikum der Novokainreihe (Pontokain) *Chirurg* 3 97 104 1931
- 87 WIEDHOFF O Pantokain ein Neues Lokalanästhetikum *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 57 12 14 1931

- 88 ADRIANI JOHN *Techniques and Procedures of Anesthesia* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1947
- 89 MOORE D C *Regional Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
- 90 CULLER S C *Anesthesia in General Practice* Chicago Illinois Year Book Publishers Inc 1946
- 91 FITKIN G P *Conduction Anesthesia* 2nd Ed Edited by Southworth J L and Hingson R A Philadelphia Pennsylvania Lippincott Company 1953
- 92 MOORE D C Note to Editor Intravascular of Fluid *Anesthesiology* 12 398-399 1948
- 93 THAYER H B Use of Lyophilized Hyaluronic acid in Cosmetic Surgery about the Face *Plast & Reconstruct Surg* 10 260 263 1952
- 94 MCKENZIE K G Observations on the Results of Operative Treatment of Trigeminal Neuralgia *Canad M A J* 29 492-496 1933
- 95 MANNHEIMER W PIZZOLATO P and ADRIANI J Histologic Changes Caused by Local Anesthetic Agents To be published
- 96 ROSENTHAL S R and MINARD D Experiments on Histamine as the Chemical Mediator for Cutaneous Pain *J Exper Med* 70 415 425 1939
- 97 LANDAU S W NELSON W A and GAY L N Antihistaminic Properties of Local Anesthetics and Anesthetic Properties of Antihistaminic Compounds *J Allergy* 22 19 30 1951
- 98 KEATING J U and COPE C F The Anesthetic and Antihistaminic Action of a Series of Antihistaminic Drugs in Human Skin *J Lab & Clin Med* 33 1609 1949
- 99 YOSKAMIAN I F et al Local Anesthetic Properties of Antistine and Pyribenzamine Hydrochloride *Anesth & Analg* 28 170 173 1949
- 100 MOSLEY V Use of Hydrochloride (Pyribenzamine) as a Topical Anesthetic *Am J Digest Dis* 15 410 411, 1949
- 101 REYNOLDS J KAHN A G JR and LEVY J S Use of Anti histaminic Drugs for Local Anesthesia for Gastroscopy *Gastroenterology* 14 535 537 1950
- 102 KUTSCHER A H Local Anesthetic Properties of Pyribenzamine Hydrochloride *Oral Surg* 4 776-786 1951
- 103 FITZPATRICK R J ORR L M and STUBBART F J Antihistamines as Local Anesthetic Agents for Urethral Manipulation *JAMA* 150 1092 1094 1952
- 104 STUBBART J J Use of Antihistamines as Local Anesthetic Agents *J Florida M A* 39 505-508 1953
- 105 BETCHER A M and TANG Z T Pyribenzamine Evaluation of Effectiveness as an Analgesic Agent in Regional Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 16 214 223 1955

Lesions of the Peripheral Nerves

THE TERM "peripheral nerves" as used in this chapter refers to those portions of nerves which extend beyond their point of emergence from the foramina of either the vertebrae or the skull

ETIOLOGY

When a lesion of one or more peripheral nerves occurs following a regional block procedure all too frequently the nerve block itself is criticized for producing the resulting *neuritis paresis or paralysis*. Since the literature contains reports of neurological involvement of the nerves of the upper and lower extremities following both regional block and general anesthesia it does not seem justifiable to condemn a regional block technique automatically without a careful investigation of all the factors which might result in this type of complication.^{1,10,2} The following are factors which have been thought responsible for the peripheral nerve lesions which may occur after regional block procedures.

Faulty Positioning of the Patient—Faulty positioning of the patient may occur either during the time of the operation or in the immediate postanesthetic period while the regional block is still effective. Often patients receiving a regional block are heavily sedated either prior to the block or following its execution. Consequently superficially placed or deeply placed nerves in unanesthetized or anesthetized areas may tolerate abnormal amounts of pressure or stretching without complaint on the part of the patient during the surgical procedure or the immediate postoperative period. Paralysis of the ulnar nerve

at the elbow from faulty positioning of an arm while anesthetized by brachial plexus block has been seen by the author on four occasions.¹² Temporary paralysis of both lateral femoral cutaneous nerves has also been seen following spinal anesthesia and this case too was not due to the anesthetic but to pressure on these nerves while the patient was in the prone position undergoing a laminectomy for a ruptured nucleus pulposus. It is obvious that in both cases the paresis was not the result of the block. These paralyzes cleared within three months.

In addition to faulty positioning during surgery or the postoperative period trauma to a joint or a nerve of an anesthetized extremity may occur as a result of mishandling. If an extremity which is blocked should fall off the operating table or slip out of the surgeon's hand and drop over the edge of the table either a nerve injury may result or a dislocation of a joint occur. This is particularly true if the arm is not carefully protected after a brachial plexus block. After this particular block should the arm fall off the cart because of a movement of the patient or should the physician accidentally drop it dislocation of the shoulder is likely to occur.

Neurolytic Agents—Following the injection of these drugs overflow to adjacent nerves not intended to be involved may result in neuritis or paralysis. The possibility of such an occurrence should always be anticipated whenever a neurolytic drug is to be injected and it should not surprise the physician who is willing to undertake the use of these agents (see Chapter 12 page 119).

On the other hand all too frequently the

physician may not realize that the drug he is injecting is neurolytic. Therefore it is vital to keep in mind that alcohol, phenol, various oils (peanut, etc.), propylene and polyethylene glycol, excessive concentrations of local anesthetic agents, ether, formaldehyde and detergents are all neurolytic drugs.¹⁴ Often the trade name of a preparation does not reveal its contents, e.g., Bromsitolol which contains 4% mono bromhydroxy benzyl alcohol in peanut oil and which is a neurolytic preparation.¹⁶ And because this is true, a physician must know the contents of the preparation rather than trust the advertising literature which terms it "safe." Furthermore, if ampules of drugs are placed in sterilizing solutions containing neurolytic drugs or if neurolytic agents are used to cold sterilize equipment to be used in local infiltration and peripheral nerve block, these neurolytic agents may in an insidious way gain entrance into the body.

Surgical Trauma—During surgery, a cut nerve is misphoned retractor with pressure on a nerve, edema around the nerve from handling the tissue and/or a reflex vasospasm of the blood vessels supplying the nerve may all result in paralysis or paresis of peripheral nerves.

Improperly Applied Casts—Casts that are too tightly applied or not correctly padded may cause undue nerve pressure or compression of blood vessels with resulting neurological sequelae.

Improperly Applied Tourniquets—A tourniquet applied to the upper or lower extremity must be correctly applied. When a tourniquet is applied low on the thigh or arm or if it is applied below the knee or elbow where there is little tissue padding such as muscle or subcutaneous fat and where bones are superficial, not only are the blood vessels constricted but damaging pressure is transmitted directly to the nerves. Moldaver²³ reports seven such cases which he describes as "Tourniquet Paralysis Syndrome." He emphasizes the following facts concerning this syndrome: (1) the syndrome is due to mechanical pressure on the nerve and is not the result of ischemia; (2) there is hypotonia or

atrophy of the muscles but no appreciable atrophy; (3) touch, pressure, vibration and position senses are usually absent, but pain sensation is never lost and heat and cold sensations are usually not affected; (4) there is no sign of neuroma at the site of injury and no Tinel's sign* present; (5) sympathetic fibers are not affected; (6) there is a block of conduction as shown by electrical studies above the injury, but good reaction below the injury; and (7) the level of the lesion may be determined by electrical stimulation.

In addition to this type of paralysis from direct pressure on the nerves, tourniquets which are allowed to remain inflated for times exceeding 1½ to 2 hours may cause nerve damage as a result of ischemia.

Neurolytic Action of Local Anesthetic Agents—As noted previously, local anesthetic agents used in excessively concentrated solutions (usually 5 to 10 times that recommended) may have a neurolytic action. Lundy *et al*¹⁶ demonstrated a 17% concentration of Novocain to have such an effect. However, local anesthetics used in the usual recommended concentrations do not cause damage to the peripheral nerves when injected perineurally, i.e., around the nerve.

To date my associates and I have seen one case of prolonged numbness attributable to the anesthetic agent following a peripheral nerve block. It occurred following a sciatic and femoral block procedure in which 50 cc of 0.25% Pontocaine solution had been used. The anesthesia time with Pontocaine solutions is usually 6 to 7 hours but in this instance it lasted for 72 hours after which the numbness cleared and the patient had no further complaint.

Intraneural Injections—Intraneural injections have been condemned as causing nerve damage by pressure or by a combination of this and action of the drug on the nerve tissue. This is open to debate. My associates and I have made what we believed to be intraneural injections into the divisions of the

* Tingling sensation distally when percussing over site of a nerve.

brachial plexus as well as into the sciatic nerve using 10 cc of solution without causing nerve damage. Our criteria for intraneural injection are paresthesias and itching in the extremity during the injection of the anesthetic solution.

Damage from Direct Contact of the Needle Point with the Nerve—This again is a debatable cause and my associates and I believe that it is seldom if ever responsible for peripheral nerve lesions. In regional block procedures such as sciatic block, block of the brachial plexus or its branches, mandibular block, maxillary block, etc., our dictum at the Mason Clinic has always been "no paresthesias, no anesthesia."⁴ To elicit paresthesias it is obvious that the needle must come into direct contact with the nerves and at times pierce the epineurium and enter the fasciculi; yet to date we have seen no neuritis or other nerve lesions when aqueous solutions were used.

Contamination of Solutions or Equipment—If infection is introduced into the nervous tissue or in close proximity to it and an abscess develops, damage to the nerve may occur. Introducing a filterable virus into the body is another possibility. It has been noted that herpes zoster may follow a block of the gasserian ganglion.

Pre-existing Lesions—Organic diseases such as metastatic carcinoma, hemangioma, etc., may coincidentally exist in the region where a peripheral nerve block has been performed. Following the block, the normal course of the disease may be such as to exert pressure on a nerve. When this occurs the patient may blame the block procedure for the nerve involvement.

Likewise, injuries of the extremities for which surgery is being performed have often severed the nerves and blood vessels and these injuries should be noted in the patient's chart and pointed out to him prior to surgery, particularly when block procedures are to be used, so that temporary or permanent postoperative sensory and motor changes are not attributed to the block.

Metallic Ions Released from Receptacles

and Syringes—All of the published reports on the use of *Nylocaine* (lidocaine) hydrochloride have shown it to be a safe drug and one that does not cause irritation to the nerve. Nevertheless, in the past year 19 cases of neuritis following brachial plexus blocks in which 1 or 2% aqueous solution of *Nylocaine* was employed have been called to the authors' attention.⁶⁻⁷⁻⁸⁻⁹⁻³⁵ In reply to inquiry for a possible explanation the Astra Pharmaceutical Company cited the work of Lundquist *et al.*³⁶ and Wiedling.³⁷ Lundquist *et al.*³⁶ showed that (1) under certain circumstances solutions of *Nylocaine* and Novocain (procaine) may liberate small amounts of copper, nickel, and zinc from hypodermic syringes made entirely or partly of metal, and (2) that while any one of these metallic ions may cause tissue irritation and swelling, the copper ions are usually the greatest offenders. Wiedling³⁷ showed that if Adrenalin is not added to the solution, these metal ions are absorbed before a local toxic reaction has had time to develop, but that Adrenalin permits their contact with the tissue long enough to cause irritation.

Recently two cases of brachial neuritis following brachial plexus block with Cyclame (hexylamine) have been noted and they may perhaps have been caused by this type of reaction.³⁸

Repetition of a Specific Nerve Block Within Twenty-four Hours—It is not unusual for the question to be raised as to whether or not the repetition of a block procedure within 24 hours may result in nerve damage. On numerous occasions my associates and I have repeated nerve blocks within 24 hours in which paresthesias had to be elicited to assure a successful block; yet to date we have not seen one case in which neuritis resulted.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

When the anesthetic dissipates itself the patient immediately will complain of motor weakness or paralysis, pain, and impairment of sensation, i.e., tingling and numbness over the area of distribution of nerves involved. These signs and symptoms of nerve involve

ment may last for one to three days and then disappear completely or they may persist for three to six months or longer

PROPHYLAXIS

To prevent lesions of the peripheral nerves

Avoid Pressure on the Nerves—When placing the patient on the operating room table when applying a cast or when positioning the patient in bed after a regional block procedure every effort must be made to avoid pressure on the nerves, particularly those which are superficially placed and vulnerable to pressure. The nerves most vulnerable to pressure include (1) the brachial plexus (2) the ulnar nerve at the elbow (3) the radial nerve at the wrist (4) the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve at the anterior superior spine of the ilium and (5) the peroneal nerve just below the knee.

It follows that tourniquets as well as retractors must be carefully placed during surgery to avoid a damaging degree of pressure on the nerves and blood vessels. It must be remembered that if the blood vessels are traumatized, vasospasm may develop which may simulate a peripheral nerve lesion and which, if persistent may actually result in secondary damage to the nerves. Tourniquets should be deflated after 1½ hours. A few minutes should be allowed for the blood to perfuse the arm adequately and oxygenate its tissue before the blood is again drained from the arm and the tourniquet reinflated.

Avoid the Use of Neurolytic Drugs—

Neurolytic drugs should be reserved for therapeutic blocks in patients with intractable pain from an incurable disease and in whom root section or cordotomy is not possible. Even then they should be employed only if the patient is fully cognizant of the complications which may result from their use.

The physician should either mix his own drugs or take other precautionary means such as tasting the solution before injection to assure himself that he has the correct drug. All too frequently physicians have injected a drug prepared by the hospital pharmacy or

handed him by the scrub nurse only to find that it was either the wrong concentration of the local anesthetic drug or the wrong drug (i.e., alcohol or ether).

Extreme care should also be taken when handling solutions used to prepare the skin prior to insertion of the needle. Many of these solutions, particularly those containing alcohol are neurolytic. If they are inadvertently dropped into the local anesthetic solution or on the needles and go unnoticed they may come in contact with nerve tissue and cause trauma.

Avoid Intraneural Injections—Although it seems questionable that intraneural injections result in nerve lesions, it is perhaps best to avoid such injections since satisfactory anesthetics for surgery and diagnostic and therapeutic blocks may be obtained by injecting the anesthetic agent in close proximity to the nerve. This does not mean that paresthesias should not be sought in those blocks in which they are indicated but merely that the needle should be slightly withdrawn if the patient complains of paresthesia during the injection of the drug. It must also be remembered that if intraneural injections are made at or close to the foramina of the vertebrae or the skull that the drug may reach the spinal cord or brain via the perineural spaces (see Chapter 5 page 49).^{31 32 33}

Do Not Use Excessive Concentrations of the Local Anesthetic Agent—As pointed out previously the usual recommended dosage of a local anesthetic agent should not be exceeded and it is always best to use the weakest concentration of the drug which will accomplish the task at hand. Excessively high concentrations of these drugs have been experimentally shown to be neurolytic.^{34 35}

Use Sterile Precautions—All the drugs and equipment to be used must be adequately sterilized to avoid the introduction of pathogens with consequent inflammation. Although all solutions and drugs used in peripheral nerve blocking and local infiltration by the Anesthesia Department of the Mason Clinic are purchased as presumably sterile and ready for immediate use they are resterilized by

brachial plexus as well as into the sciatic nerve using 10 cc of solution without causing nerve damage. Our criteria for intraneural injection are paresthesias and itching in the extremity during the injection of the anesthetic solution.

Damage from Direct Contact of the Needle Point with the Nerve—This again is a debatable cause and my associates and I believe that it is seldom if ever responsible for peripheral nerve lesions. In regional block procedures such as sciatic block, block of the brachial plexus or its branches, mandibular block, maxillary block, etc., our dictum at the Mason Clinic has always been "no paresthesias, no anesthesia."²⁴ To elicit paresthesias it is obvious that the needle must come into direct contact with the nerves and at times pierce the epineurium and enter the fasciculi, yet to date we have seen no neuritis or other nerve lesions when aqueous solutions were used.

Contamination of Solutions or Equipment—If infection is introduced into the nervous tissue or in close proximity to it and an abscess develops, damage to the nerve may occur. Introducing a filterable virus into the body is another possibility. It has been noted that herpes zoster may follow a block of the gasserian ganglion.²⁵

Pre-existing Lesions—Organic diseases such as metastatic carcinoma, hemangioma, etc., may coincidentally exist in the region where a peripheral nerve block has been performed. Following the block, the normal course of the disease may be such as to exert pressure on a nerve. When this occurs the patient may blame the block procedure for the nerve involvement.

Likewise injuries of the extremities for which surgery is being performed have often severed the nerves and blood vessels and these injuries should be noted in the patient's chart and pointed out to him prior to surgery, particularly when block procedures are to be used so that temporary or permanent post-operative sensory and motor changes are not attributed to the block.

Metallic Ions Released from Receptacles

and Syringes—All of the published reports on the use of *Nylocaine* (lidocaine) hydrochloride have shown it to be a safe drug and one that does not cause irritation to the nerve. Nevertheless, in the past year 19 cases of neuritis following brachial plexus blocks in which 1 or 2½ aqueous solutions of *Nylocaine* was employed have been called to the authors' attention.^{26-29, 35} In reply to inquiry for a possible explanation, the Astra Pharmaceutical Company cited the work of Lundquist *et al*³⁰ and Wiedling.³⁰ Lundquist *et al*³⁰ showed that (1) under certain circumstances solutions of *Nylocaine* and *Novocain* (procaine) may liberate small amounts of copper, nickel and zinc from hypodermic syringes made entirely or partly of metal and (2) that while any one of these metallic ions may cause tissue irritation and swelling, the copper ions are usually the greatest offenders. Wiedling³⁰ showed that if Adrenalin is not added to the solution, these metal ions are absorbed before a local toxic reaction has had time to develop but that Adrenalin permits their contact with the tissue long enough to cause irritation.

Recently two cases of brachial neuritis following brachial plexus block with *Cyclone* (hexylcaine) have been noted and they may, perhaps, have been caused by this type of reaction.³¹

Repetition of a Specific Nerve Block Within Twenty-four Hours—It is not unusual for the question to be raised as to whether or not the repetition of a block procedure within 24 hours may result in nerve damage. On numerous occasions my associates and I have repeated nerve blocks within 24 hours in which paresthesias had to be elicited to assure a successful block, yet to date we have not seen one case in which neuritis resulted.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

When the anesthetic dissipates itself the patient immediately will complain of motor weakness or paralysis, pain and impairment of sensation, i.e., tingling and numbness over the area of distribution of nerves involved. These signs and symptoms of nerve involve-

ment may last for one to three days and then disappear completely or they may persist for three to six months or longer.

PROPHYLAXIS

To prevent lesions of the peripheral nerves

Avoid Pressure on the Nerves—When placing the patient on the operating room table when applying a cast or when positioning the patient in bed after a regional block procedure, every effort must be made to avoid pressure on the nerves particularly those which are superficially placed and vulnerable to pressure. The nerves most vulnerable to pressure include (1) the brachial plexus (2) the ulnar nerve at the elbow (3) the radial nerve at the wrist (4) the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve at the anterior superior spine of the ilium and (5) the peroneal nerve just below the knee.

It follows that tourniquets as well as retractors must be carefully placed during surgery to avoid a damaging degree of pressure on the nerves and blood vessels. It must be remembered that if the blood vessels are traumatized vasospasm may develop which may simulate a peripheral nerve lesion and which if persistent may actually result in secondary damage to the nerves. Tourniquets should be deflated after 1½ hours. A few minutes should be allowed for the blood to perfuse the arm adequately and oxygenate its tissue before the blood is again drained from the arm and the tourniquet reinflated.

Avoid the Use of Neurolytic Drugs—Neurolytic drugs should be reserved for therapeutic blocks in patients with intractable pain from an incurable disease and in whom root section or cordotomy is not possible. Even then they should be employed only if the patient is fully cognizant of the complications which may result from their use.

The physician should either mix his own drugs or take other precautionary means such as "tasting the solution before injection" to assure himself that he has the correct drug. All too frequently physicians have injected a drug prepared by the hospital pharmacy or

handed him by the scrub nurse only to find that it was either the wrong concentration of the local anesthetic drug or the wrong drug (i.e., alcohol or ether).

Extreme care should also be taken when handling solutions used to prepare the skin prior to insertion of the needle. Many of these solutions particularly those containing alcohol are neurolytic. If they are inadvertently dropped into the local anesthetic solution or on the needles and go unnoticed they may come in contact with nerve tissue and cause trauma.

Avoid Intraneural Injections—Although it seems questionable that intraneural injections result in nerve lesions it is perhaps best to avoid such injections since satisfactory anesthesia for surgery and diagnostic and therapeutic blocks may be obtained by injecting the anesthetic agent in close proximity to the nerve. This does not mean that paresthesias should not be sought in those blocks in which they are indicated but merely that the needle should be slightly withdrawn if the patient complains of paresthesia during the injection of the drug. It must also be remembered that if intraneural injections are made at or close to the foramina of the vertebrae or the skull that the drug may reach the spinal cord or brain via the perineural spaces (see Chapter 5 page 49).^{31 32 33}

Do Not Use Excessive Concentrations of the Local Anesthetic Agent—As pointed out previously the usual recommended dosage of a local anesthetic agent should not be exceeded and it is always best to use the weakest concentration of the drug which will accomplish the task at hand. Excessively high concentrations of these drugs have been experimentally shown to be neurolytic.^{35 36}

Use Sterile Precautions—All the drugs and equipment to be used must be adequately sterilized to avoid the introduction of pathogens with consequent inflammation. Although all solutions and drugs used in peripheral nerve blocking and local infiltration by the Anesthesia Department of the Mason Clinic are purchased as presumably sterile and ready for immediate use they are resterilized be

brachial plexus as well as into the sciatic nerve using 10 cc of solution without causing nerve damage. Our criteria for intraneural injection are paresthesias and itching in the extremity during the injection of the anesthetic solution.

Damage from Direct Contact of the Needle Point with the Nerve—This again is a debatable issue and my associates and I believe that it is seldom if ever, responsible for peripheral nerve lesions. In regional block procedures such as sciatic block, block of the brachial plexus or its branches, mandibular block, maxillary block, etc., our dictum at the Mason Clinic has always been "no paresthesias, no anesthesia."²⁴ To elicit paresthesias it is obvious that the needle must come into direct contact with the nerves and at times pierce the epineurium and enter the fasciculi. Yet to date we have seen no neuritis or other nerve lesions when aqueous solutions were used.

Contamination of Solutions or Equipment—If infection is introduced into the nervous tissue or in close proximity to it and an abscess develops, damage to the nerve may occur. Introducing a filterable virus into the body is another possibility. It has been noted that herpes zoster may follow a block of the gasserian ganglion.²⁵

Pre-existing Lesions—Organic diseases such as metastatic carcinoma, hemangioma, etc., may coincidentally exist in the region where a peripheral nerve block has been performed. Following the block, the normal course of the disease may be such as to exert pressure on a nerve. When this occurs, the patient may blame the block procedure for the nerve involvement.

Likewise, injuries of the extremities for which surgery is being performed have often severed the nerves and blood vessels and these injuries should be noted in the patient's chart and pointed out to him prior to surgery, particularly when block procedures are to be used so that temporary or permanent post-operative sensory and motor changes are not attributed to the block.

Metallic Ions Released from Receptacles

and Syringes—All of the published reports on the use of *Nylocaine* (*lidocaine*) hydrochloride have shown it to be a safe drug and one that does not cause irritation to the nerve. Nevertheless, in the past year 19 cases of neuritis following brachial plexus blocks in which 1 or 2% aqueous solution of *Nylocaine* was employed have been called to the author's attention.²⁶⁻²⁷⁻²⁸⁻²⁹ In reply to inquiry for a possible explanation, the Astra Pharmaceutical Company cited the work of Lundquist *et al.*³⁰ and Wiedling.³⁰ Lundquist *et al.*³⁰ showed that (1) under certain circumstances solutions of *Nylocaine* and *Novocain* (*procaine*) may liberate small amounts of copper, nickel, and zinc from hypodermic syringes made entirely or partly of metal, and (2) that while any one of these metallic ions may cause tissue irritation and swelling, the copper ions are usually the greatest offenders. Wiedling³⁰ showed that if *Adrenalin* is not added to the solution, these metal ions are absorbed before a local toxic reaction has had time to develop, but that *Adrenalin* permits their contact with the tissue long enough to cause irritation.

Recently two cases of brachial neuritis following brachial plexus block with *Cyclame* (*hexylcaine*) have been noted and they may perhaps have been caused by this type of reaction.³¹

Repetition of a Specific Nerve Block Within Twenty-four Hours—It is not unusual for the question to be raised as to whether or not the repetition of a block procedure within 24 hours may result in nerve damage. On numerous occasions my associates and I have repeated nerve blocks within 24 hours in which paresthesias had to be elicited to assure a successful block, yet to date we have not seen one case in which neuritis resulted.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

When the anesthetic dissipates itself, the patient immediately will complain of *motor weakness* or *paralysis*, pain and *impairment of sensation*, i.e., tingling and numbness over the area of distribution of nerves involved. These signs and symptoms of nerve involve-

COMMENT

When peripheral nerve lesions follow a regional block procedure the procedure itself must not be automatically and solely condemned until all other possible causes have been considered and eliminated. In the greater number of cases the paralysis is not a result of the block procedure or the local anesthetic drug.

REFERENCES

1. ANSTER O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir Scandinav* Suppl 167 1952
2. DHUNUBER K C. Nerve Injuries Following Operations. A Survey of Cases Occurring During a Six Year Period. *Anesthesiology* 11 289 293 1950
3. BROWN S. Fractional Segmental Spinal Anesthesia in Poor Risk Surgical Patients. Report of 600 Cases. *Anesthesiology* 13 416-428 1952
4. SHAW W M. Prevention of Brachial Plexus Paralysis. *Anesthesiology* 11 206-207 1953
5. NICHOLSON M J and LUTHEWOLF U H. Neurological Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. *JAMA* 132 679 685 1940
6. CLAUSON E C. Postoperative ("Anesthetic") Paralysis of the Brachial Plexus. A Review of the Literature and Report of New Cases. *Surgery* 12 933 942 1912
7. SCHWARTZ A L and ROSENBLUM E. The Management of the Anesthetized Patient. *Anesthesiology* 8 395-401 1947
8. BRITTAIN I and BRITTAIN J C. Unilateral Hypotony During Anaesthesia. *Brit M J* 1 442-444 1945
9. WRIGHT I S. The Neurovascular Syndrome Produced by Hyperabduction of the Arms. The immediate changes produced in 150 normal controls and the effects on some persons of prolonged hyperabduction of the arms as in sleeping and in certain occupations. *Am Heart J* 29 1 19 1945
10. COLLINS V J. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1952
11. SLOCUM H C et al. Neurovascular Complications from Malposition on Operating Table. *Surg Gynec & Obst* 86 729 734 1948
12. HALE D E. *Anesthesiology by Forty American Authors*. Philadelphia: F A Davis Company 1954
13. BONICA J J and MOORE D C. Brachial Plexus Block Anesthesia. *Anesth & Analg* 29 241 253 1950

14. WINKELMAN N W. Neurologic Symptoms Following Accidental Intraspinal Detergent Injection. *Neurology* 2 281 291 1952
15. DAVIS I, HAYES H, CHAPMAN J H and EMMETT J. Effects of Spinal Anesthetics on the Spinal Cord and Its Membranes. An Experimental Study. *JAMA* 97 1781 1785 1931
16. LUNDY J S, FISKE H I and KERNOWAN J W. Experiments with Anesthetics. IV. Lesions Produced in the Spinal Cord of Dogs by a Dose of Procaine Hydrochloride Sufficient to Cause Locomotor and Fatal Paralysis. *JAMA* 101 1516-1550 1933
17. MOLLICHAM M and WILSON G. Brown Sequard Paralysis Following a Paravertebral Alcohol Injection for Angina Pectoris. *JAMA* 92 247 1931
18. HACHMAYER R. Oil Soluble Anesthetics—Review and Report on a Study for Their Improvement. *J Missouri M A* 47 892 902 1950
19. MANNHEIMER W, PIZZOLATO P and ADRIANI J. Mode of Action and Effects on Tissue of Long Acting Local Anesthetics. *JAMA* 151 29-32 1953
20. MARGOLIS G, HALL H E, and NOWELL W K. An Investigation of Elocaine A Long Acting Local Anesthetic Agent. I. Animal Studies. *AMA Arch Surg* 67 715 730 1953
21. NOWELL W K, HALL H E and STEPHEN C R. Neurological Complications Following the Use of Elocaine. *AMA Arch Surg* 67 738 740 1953
22. NOWELL W K, HALL H E and MARGOLIS G. An Investigation of Elocaine A Long Acting Local Anesthetic Agent. II. Clinical Studies. *AMA Arch Surg* 67 731 737 1953
23. MOLDAVER J. Tourniquet Paralysis Syndrome. *AMA Arch Surg* 68 136-144 1954
24. MOORE D C. *Regional Block*. Springfield Ill: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
25. BONICA J J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1953
26. BONICA J J and BACKUS P. Personal Communications
27. PRATT H. Personal Communication
28. KOPECKY F. Personal Communication
29. LUNDQUIST B, LOFVEN N, PERSSON H and SJOGREN B. Metal Ions as a Cause of Swelling After Local Anesthesia in Dental Practice. *Acta chir Scandinav* 97 239 258 1949
30. WIEDLING S. The Locally Irritating Effect of Metal Ions and Local Anaesthetics. *Acta pharmacol et toxicol* 4 351 365 1948
31. MOORE D C, HAIN R F, WARD A and BRIDENBAUGH L D. Importance of the Perineural Spaces in Nerve Blocking. *JAMA* 156 1050 1053 1954

fore being injected. The vials of Xylocaine solutions, the ampules containing the crystals of Pontocaine and Novocain, the saline solutions for dissolving the crystals of these drugs, as well as Adrenalin 1:1000, are incorporated in the block tray prior to its sterilization. For autoclaving and cleaning technique, as well as other drugs which may be heat sterilized, see Chapter 22, page 206.

Use Nerve Block with Caution in Patients with Nerve Lesions or Pre-Existing Organic Disease.—In patients with residues of poliomyelitis, severed nerves, or pre-existing or impending pressure on nerves from carcinoma, etc., nerve block procedures should be used only if the patient accepts the procedure, realizing fully that the paralysis existing prior to surgery, or that which may occur from the surgery, will not be related to the block procedure. Whenever these above-mentioned conditions exist and block procedures are to be used, the disease and the extent to which the peripheral nerves are involved should be noted on the patient's chart by both the attending physician and a consultant.

Avoid Irritating Effect of Metal Ions on the Nervous Tissues.—Local anesthetic solutions of Xylocaine (lidocaine) and to a lesser extent of Novocain (procaine) have been shown to release copper ions if they come in contact with metal receptacles or metal parts of syringes prior to injection. Likewise the tissue damage which may ensue from these ions is evidently caused by the Adrenalin keeping the copper ions in contact with the body tissues for prolonged periods of time. Therefore the following precautions should be observed when using solutions of these drugs: (1) no Adrenalin should be added to the local anesthetic solution and (2) if Adrenalin is added then with the exception of the needle, the equipment used during the block should be glass or stainless steel and 150 T.R.U. (turbidity reducing units) of hyaluronidase should be added to the local anesthetic solution to promote diffusion of the local anesthetic solution (see Figure 2, page 15). Diffusion of the solution will tend to prevent accumulation of metal ions in any one position and probably hasten their absorption.

TREATMENT

Peripheral nerve lesions in contrast to lesions of the spinal cord and brain, usually repair themselves without treatment in two weeks to six or nine months depending on their severity. However, in some instances neuritis may persist indefinitely, especially if a neurolytic drug has been injected.

Immediate Treatment.—To relieve pain, speed regeneration and insure complete return of function, the following may be helpful.

Symptomatic Relief of Pain.—Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid), Empirin compound phenobarbital at night and occasional doses of codeine may be necessary to relieve the pain of a neuritis.

Thiamine Chloride and Nicotinic Acid Therapy.—High doses of thiamine chloride (B_1), i.e. 50 to 100 mg. together with high doses of nicotinic acid, 25 mg. taken orally three to four times a day, may facilitate regeneration of the nerve. The rationale of this treatment is that thiamine chloride is necessary for nerve function and regeneration while nicotinic acid causes vasodilatation, thereby increasing the blood supply to the nerve involved.

Sympathetic Block.—When the nerves of either the upper or lower extremity are involved, a series of stellate ganglion blocks or lumbar sympathetic blocks respectively will increase the blood supply to the involved nerve and has been reported to speed marked recovery of the peripheral nerves.³⁴

Physiotherapy.—Muscle atrophy during the period of regeneration should be prevented by physiotherapy. This therapy should include galvanic stimulation of the muscle supplied by the involved nerve as well as massage and exercises.

Late Treatment.—If the neuritis persists in spite of the above therapy, baking of the hypersensitive areas, intravenous Novocain or Pontocaine, and repeated blocking of somatic or sympathetic nerves with local anesthetic drugs are useful (see Chapter 12, page 120). In the unusual and occasional case of severe neuritis, a sympathectomy or a rhizotomy may be necessary. Although these two surgical procedures may seem drastic, they are preferable to opiate addiction.

Complications Following the Use of Neurolytic Drugs

WHEN NEUROLYTIC drugs i.e. alcohol phenol preparations containing propylene and polyethylene glycol oil solutions etc. are used the physician performing the regional block procedure automatically takes a known risk regardless of his skill. Overflow onto somatic nerves may result in a severe neuritis or in paralysis of an extremity of the diaphragm, or of a vocal cord etc.¹⁰ A needle misplaced while performing a paravertebral block a block of the branches of the trigeminal nerve gasserian ganglion block etc. with this type of agent may cause a transverse myelitis and/or death.¹¹ Even when small amounts of neurolytic drugs are purposely administered subarachnoidally to treat pain problems e.g. postherpetic pain and where only a block of the posterior nerve roots is desired unexpected neurological complications such as adhesive pachymeningitis muscular paralysis or paresis of the extremities bladder paralysis rectal incontinence and transverse myelitis and/or a cauda equina syndrome may ensue.¹²

Therefore it behooves the physician using neurolytic drugs to be adequately insured and observe the following precautions to avoid legal action in case of an untoward result (1) explain the procedure and its possible complications to the patient or a member of his family (2) have the patient or the responsible member of his family sign a permit for the execution of the block procedure (3) do not premedicate or anesthetize the patient for the block procedure and (4) if a complication occurs seek the consultation of the necessary specialists i.e. neurologists internists etc. The third precaution is extremely

important for if the patient is not medicated or anesthetized he is clearly consenting to the treatment and is not undergoing any type of therapy which might be objectionable to him. The one patient who was blinded at the Mason Clinic (see Figure 18 page 88 and Figure 19 page 89) is a typical example of the efficacy of this precaution—although the patient consulted a lawyer who contacted our insurance company no suit developed and no settlement was made. The lawyer for our insurance company was of the opinion the case could be successfully fought on the basis that the plaintiff had willingly submitted to the treatment knowing the possible complications. Certainly a block procedure particularly one in which neurolytic drugs are to be used should never be performed against the will of the patient for he may seek retribution on the basis of "technical assault".¹³

The situations most often responsible for difficulties with neurolytic drugs are (1) overflow onto nerves not intended to be blocked (2) corneal ulcers corneal keratitis and ulcerations from block of the gasserian ganglion without overflow (3) transverse myelitis from paravertebral injection and (4) oil embolism.

OVERFLOW

Nerves Most Frequently Involved—Nerve block with neurolytic agents is usually limited to block of the sympathetic ganglia the trigeminal (fifth) nerve its ganglia and branches and subarachnoid block of nerve roots as they emerge from the spinal cord. Block with neurolytic agents of the peripheral nerves other than the cranial nerves usually results in neuritis and therefore is seldom performed. The

- 32 MOORE D C Complications Following the Use of Elocaine *Surgery* 35 109 114 1954
- 33 MOORE D C Elocaine—Complications Following Its Use *West J Surg* 61 635 638 1953
- 34 MOORE D C *Stellate Ganglion Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- 35 PETRICK E C Paralysis of the Brachial Plexus Following Elective Surgical Procedures *Anesth & Analg* 34 119 120 1955
- 36 MANNHEIMER W PIZZOLATO I and ADRIANI J Histologic Changes Caused by Local Anesthetics To be published
- 37 ADRIANI J and EVANGELOU M Complications of Regional Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 34 96-101 1955
- 38 MOBERG E and DHUNER K Brachial Plexus Block Analgesia with Xylocaine *J Bone & Joint Surg* 33 A 884 888 1951

While surgical intervention may appear to be drastic therapy it is to be preferred to opiate addiction.

CORNEAL ULCERS, KERATITIS OF THE CORNEA AND ULCERATIONS OF THE SKIN FOLLOWING BLOCK OF THE GASSERIAN GANGLION OR ITS BRANCHES

Perhaps of all blocks of the nerves of the body which are successfully performed with neurolytic agents gasserian ganglion block or block of its branches most often gives satisfactory results. Nevertheless in addition to loss of sight and difficult swallowing which have been noted and occur from *misplaced needles* two other complications which may follow a *correctly executed* block of the gasserian ganglion or its branches (the trigeminal nerve) should be discussed.

Corneal Ulcers and Keratitis Following Block of the Gasserian (semilunar) Ganglion—Corneal ulcers and/or keratitis are prone to occur following block of the gasserian ganglion because the nerves to the cornea travel through the gasserian ganglion. The corneal reflex normally protects the cornea and the eye from trauma caused by drying and/or foreign bodies. Its abolishment predisposes the eye to trauma. Therefore following block of the ganglion even when a local anesthetic agent is used the eye must be protected for the duration of the block if these complications are to be avoided. However when alcohol is used it is mandatory that the patient be seen immediately by an ophthalmologist who can instruct him in the correct care of the eye over a period of time.

Ulceration, Slough and Gangrene of the Area Innervated by the Terminal Branches of the Maxillary Division of the Fifth Nerve—Following alcohol block or surgical section of the maxillary division of the fifth cranial nerve ulcerations and severe slough of areas supplied by its terminal branches have occurred. In most instances the area involved has been that innervated by the infraorbital nerve (see Figure 27 page 121).¹ How-

ever the one case seen at the Mason Clinic involved the posterior portion of the superior alveolar ridge of the maxillary bone and its surrounding tissues (see Figure 28 page 122).

The cause of this infrequent complication is difficult to determine.²¹⁻²² The maxillary nerve in the cases cited has been either blocked or sectioned at or central to the foramen rotundum. Faulty technique, direct vascular changes, reflex or direct involvement of the sympathetic nervous system and aberrant nerve fibers in or about the gasserian ganglion have all been considered as possible causes but none accepted as fact. Macomber²¹ and Philpott²² believe that the immediate cause of the ulceration is probably trauma but they do not try to explain why

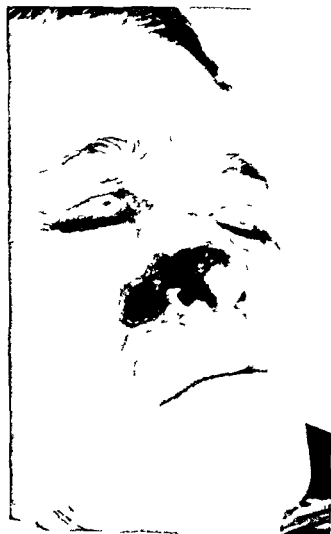


Figure 27 Necrosis of the nose and the cheek following the injection of the maxillary nerve with alcohol for trigeminal neuralgia (contributed by Macomber²¹)

nerves most frequently involved from overflow of blocking agents in the procedures listed above are

Branches of the Brachial Plexus—Overflow onto the brachial plexus occurs most frequently following stellate ganglion block phrenic nerve block and infiltration of the scalenus anticus muscle

This results in partial or complete sensory and/or motor loss of the upper extremity

Thoracic and Lumbar Somatic Nerves—Overflow onto these nerves occurs most frequently following block of the thoracic and lumbar sympathetic ganglia or the splanchnic (celiac) plexus

Sequelae of this are partial or complete sensory and/or motor loss of the area supplied by the involved nerve or a severe neuritis

Cervical Sympathetic Nerves or Ganglia—Overflow onto these structures of the sympathetic nervous system occurs most frequently following block of the brachial plexus cervical nerve block thoracic somatic nerve block phrenic nerve block glossopharyngeal nerve block at or slightly distal to the jugular foramen and infiltration of the scalenus anticus muscle A Horner's syndrome i.e. ptosis enophthalmus and miosis (constricted pupil) ensues

Facial Nerve—Overflow onto this nerve occurs most frequently following infiltration of the skin and subcutaneous tissue prior to performing a mandibular or maxillary block via the mandibular notch It may also follow a glossopharyngeal block distal to the jugular foramen¹⁹

In such a situation the eyelid cannot be closed and the muscles of the face on the side blocked are paralyzed When a neurolytic drug has been used the prolonged inability to close the eyelid may result in a corneal ulcer and/or a keratitis Here the etiology of the corneal ulcer and/or keratitis is different from that which follows gasserian ganglion block where the loss of the corneal reflex is the responsible factor

Optic Nerve and/or Oculomotor Nerve or Its Branches—Overflow onto these nerves occurs most frequently following gasserian gan-

glion block and maxillary block if the needle is misplaced If the optic nerve is involved blindness occurs and if the oculomotor nerve or its branches are paralyzed a squint results

Glossopharyngeal Nerve—Overflow onto the glossopharyngeal nerve may occur following an attempt to block the gasserian ganglion if the needle point rests outside the capsule of the ganglion When only the glossopharyngeal nerve is blocked either unilaterally or bilaterally dysphagia is usually the only sign or symptom This complication is the one most often seen following the placement of a neurolytic solution outside the capsule of the gasserian ganglion

Treatment of Overflow—When a neurolytic drug is injected time alone is the best treatment The complication usually corrects itself when the nerve involved completely regenerates The one outstanding exception to this is the optic nerve which may not regenerate once it has been destroyed by alcohol In this instance even if partial regeneration occurs sight often remains impaired

Symptomatic treatment to control pain and prevent atrophy from disuse must be instituted in all cases and the consultation of a neurologist and/or ophthalmologist is invaluable

The treatment of an alcohol or phenol neuritis is not simple Mild cases are treated symptomatically with acetylsalicylic acid Empirin compound phenobarbital or codeine¹ Moderately severe cases may respond to (1) blocking the hypersensitive area (2) slowly administered intravenous histamine (275 mg dissolved in 500 cc of 5% dextrose in water) twice daily (3) intravenous Novocain (1 gram in 1000 cc of 5% dextrose in water) or intravenous Pontocaine (250 mg in 500 cc of 5% dextrose in water) given slowly twice a day and (4) block of the appropriate portion of the sympathetic nervous system innervating the area of the neuritis for example in case of neuritis of the lumbar nerve lumbar sympathetic block caudal block or spinal epidural block may be used¹ In severe cases of neuritis of this type sympathectomies or rhizotomies may be required^{5, 20}

convulsions ensue, and these give way to drowsiness, stupor and subsequent coma. On the other hand when the heart and lungs are mainly affected, dyspnea, cough frothy sputum with occasional hemoptysis, cyanosis, precordial pain, dilatation of the heart, elevation of temperature and asthmatic or bronchopneumonic type rales result.

REFERENCES

- 1 WHITE, J. C. SMITH, R. H. and SIMMONS, F. A. *The Autonomic Nervous System: Anatomy, Physiology and Surgical Application*. New York: Macmillan Co. 1952.
- 2 PERLOW, S. Paravertebral Alcohol Injection for Relief of Cardiac Pain. *Illinois M. J.* 81: 35-41, 1942.
- 3 LEVY, R. L. and MOORE, R. L. Paravertebral Sympathetic Block with Alcohol for the Relief of Cardiac Pain. Report of Forty-five Cases. *JAMA* 116: 2563-2568, 1941.
- 4 MANDL, F. Paravertebral Block in Diagnosis, Prognosis and Therapy. Kallner, G. New York: Grune & Stratton, 1947.
- 5 BONICA, J. J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1953.
- 6 MOLTICH, M. and WILSON, G. Brown Sequard Paralysis Following a Paravertebral Alcohol Injection for Angina Pectoris. *JAMA* 97: 247, 1931.
- 7 WHITE, J. C. Technique of Paravertebral Alcohol Injection—Methods and Safeguards in Its Use in the Treatment of Angina Pectoris. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 71: 334-343, 1940.
- 8 GRANT, F. C. "Relief of Pain in Angina Pectoris." In *Diagnosis and Treatment of Cardiovascular Disease*. Edited by W. D. Stroud. 4th Ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis Co., 1950.
- 9 MANNHEIMER, W., PIZZOLATO, P. and ADRIANI, J. Mode of Action and Effects on Tissue of Long Acting Local Anesthetics. *JAMA* 154: 29-32, 1954.
- 10 NOWILL, W. K., HALL, H. and STEPHEN, C. R. Neurological Complications Following the Use of Elocaine. *Arch. Surg.* 67: 738-740, 1953.
- 11 MOORE, D. C. Complications Following the Use of Elocaine. *Surgery* 35: 109-114, 1954.
- 12 MOORE, D. C. Elocaine—Complications Following Its Use. *West. J. Surg.* 61: 635-638, 1953.
- 13 ASCHER, A. I., SU, H. H. and HEAD, J. R. Death Following the Use of Elocaine. *JAMA* 153: 550-551, 1953.
- 14 SHIMIZU, S. K. and NORMAN, D. D. Neurological Complications Following the Use of Elocaine. Report of Three Cases. *JAMA* 152: 609-609, 1952.
- 15 WILSON, G., RUFF, C. and WILSON, W. W. The Dangers of Intrathecal Medication. *JAMA* 110: 1076-1079, 1919.
- 16 TENC, P. Paraplegia Resulting from Lumbar Paravertebral Injection of Alcohol for Nerve Pain. Report of a Case. *West. J. Surg.* 56: 594-595, 1948.
- 17 HACKMEYER, R. Oil Soluble Anesthetics—A Review and Report on a Study for Their Improvement. *J. Missouri M. A.* 47: 892-902, 1950.
- 18 WOODSON, I. C. Personal Communication Regarding Judgment in Case of Woodson vs. Hucy. 2 CCH Neg. Case 2d 284—Oklahoma Supreme Court, June 23, 1953.
- 19 ROVENSTINE, E. A. and PAPPER, E. M. Glossopharyngeal Nerve Block. *Am. J. Surg.* 75: 713-715, 1948.
- 20 DE TAKATS, G. Discussion of Paper by Ruth, H. S. Diagnostic Prognostic and Therapeutic Nerve Blocks. *JAMA* 102: 419-425, 1934.
- 21 MACOMBER, D. W. Necrosis of Nose and Cheek Secondary to Treatment of Trigeminal Neuralgia. *Plast. & Reconstruct. Surg.* 11: 337-340, 1953.
- 22 PHILPOTT, O. S. Trophic Ulcer Complicating Operative Procedures for the Relief of Trigeminal Neuralgia. *Rocky Mountain M. J.* 38: 626-629, 1941.
- 23 ADSON, A. W. The Diagnosis and Surgical Treatment of Trigeminal Neuralgia. *Ann. Otol. Rhin. & Laryng.* 35: 601-625, 1926.
- 24 PEET, M. M. *Lewis Practice of Surgery*. Major Trigeminal Neuralgia Post-operative Complications. 12: 48-50, ch. 2, 1954.
- 25 MCKENZIE, K. C. Observation on the Results of the Operative Treatment of Trigeminal Neuralgia. *Canad. M. A. J.* 29: 492-496, 1933.
- 26 MOORE, D. C. Stellate Ganglion Block. Springfield, Illinois: Charles C. Thomas Publisher, 1954.
- 27 DENMAN, F. R. and GRAGG, L. Fat Embolism: A Diagnostic Enigma. *Arch. Surg.* 57: 325-332, 1948.



Figure 28 Slough of superior alveolar ridge following the injection of the maxillary nerve in the pterygoplatine fossa with 1 cc alcohol to relieve trigeminal neuralgia.

this area is basically susceptible to necrosis and slough. However they feel that the sectioning of the nerve renders the skin and mucous membrane in the region insensitive and that the patient is therefore not cognizant that trauma is destroying the tissue. Two of Philpotts' cases admitted they "picked" the nose.

This complication in relation to the number of times the branches of the fifth nerve are sectioned either surgically or chemically occurs too infrequently to condemn such treatment of trigeminal neuralgia on its account. However the seriousness of the complication should make the physician cognizant that he must explain its possible occurrence to the patient prior to the block and warn him that trauma to this area including picking of the nose is dangerous and should be avoided. The one patient whose alveolar ridge sloughed following an alcohol maxillary block per-

formed by us should perhaps have been advised to remove her dental bridge after arch meal since this bridge hooked onto a single molar in the region where slough occurred.

The treatment of these cases is often difficult but includes antibiotic drugs, hot wet packs, incision and drainage, debridement of the sloughed ulcer and gangrenous area and skin grafting. In instances where the ulcerated area remains infected in spite of the above treatment and/or cannot be prepared for grafting temporary sympathetic denervation by blocking the stellate ganglion may be indicated. McKenzie¹² cites one case of slough of the corner of the nose after section of the maxillary nerve for trigeminal neuralgia which could not be grafted until the stellate ganglion had been removed. This supports the efficacy of stellate ganglion blocks in these cases to improve circulation to the involved area.

TRANSVERSE MYELITIS

Cases of transverse myelitis from the use of neurolytic agents in paravertebral somatic nerve blocks, sympathetic ganglion blocks and intercostal nerve blocks have been reported.^{11,13} Whenever such agents are injected paravertebrally they may gain access to the spinal cord or subarachnoid space via (1) a misplaced needle, (2) a long cuff of dura or (3) the perineural spaces (see Chapter 5, page 48).

OIL EMBOLISM

When using neurolytic solutions containing both oil and local anesthetic drugs great care must be exercised to avoid an intravascular injection from which an oil embolism may result. While no cases of this were found in the literature it is assumed that the signs and symptoms would resemble those which occur following the entrance of globules of fat into the general circulation. Two general groups of signs and symptoms may occur depending on whether the brain or the cardio-respiratory systems are involved.¹⁴ If the brain is primarily involved loss of memory, disorientation, irritability and occasionally

of tasting this drug. No specific treatment was instituted and no abscess or pneumothorax ensued.

Pharynx—Puncture of the pharynx has been mentioned as a possible complication of blocking the carotid sinus nerve.¹ We have seen this complication following block of the mandibular nerve and the glossopharyngeal nerve. In these instances no problem arose other than that the patient complained of the bitter taste of the local anesthetic solution. Should an abscess develop in the neck as it did in Adams's case cited below, it should be treated by the appropriate antibiotic therapy and incision and drainage if necessary.

Esophagus—Adams *et al.*⁶ report two cases of puncture of the esophagus following the direct anterior approach to the stellate ganglion. One patient exhibited difficulty in swallowing had a fever of 100 F and exhibited fullness, swelling and distinct tenderness on pressure over the area of the puncture. Penicillin and streptomycin controlled the infection and the patient had an uneventful recovery. To date in over 2,000 blocks performed by the author and his associates using the anterior (paratracheal) approach the signs and symptoms of this complication have not occurred.

Kidney, Thyroid, Bladder, Eye, and Peritoneum—It is likely during blocks of the abdomen, neck or orbit that adjacent organs are occasionally inadvertently punctured. Nevertheless, reports of such needle misplacement were not found in the medical literature reviewed.

Thoracic Duct—Bonner³ reports a case of laceration of the thoracic duct while placing a 16 gauge needle prior to inserting a plastic catheter for a continuous stellate ganglion block on the left side. He states "Soon after the needle was inserted chyle was seen to exude around the needle and after removal continued to flow around the catheter for a period of several hours. The hazards of using large needles are quite obvious and have deterred us from using this technique in recent years."

After this block was discontinued a Horner's syndrome persisted showing that the

needle not only damaged the thoracic duct but also the stellate ganglion.

Head of the Fetus—Physicians discussing cranial anesthesia may mention as a possible complication the inadvertent placement of a cranial needle into the head of the fetus. One such case is known to have happened and it resulted in the death of the baby, probably from the injection of 40 cc of the local anesthetic agent but actual reports of it occurring were not found in the medical literature.⁴

Penile Fascia—Some urologists warn that impotency may follow the placement of local anesthetic solutions under the deep penile fascia (Buck's fascia).⁵ In our small series of 28 consecutive circumcision blocks using a technique of this type we have not had a single case of impotency.



Figure 29 Lateral view of needle in place for an alcohol block of the first thoracic sympathetic ganglion. The roentgenologist felt, considering the position of the patient that the needle was probably in place at the body of the vertebrae. Therefore alcohol was injected. However the patient coughed immediately and complained of tasting the alcohol. The needle was withdrawn and it was concluded that the needle had in reality rested in the trachea. No mediastinal abscess or pneumothorax developed.

Puncture of Organs and Large Blood Vessels During Block Procedures

THE PUNCTURING of vital organs and large blood vessels during block procedures is always a possibility but with the exception of a toxic reaction to a local anesthetic agent from its intravascular injection sequelae seldom follow. The following structures are those most frequently or most likely to be punctured.

Blood Vessels—The vertebral, femoral and subclavian arteries, the abdominal aorta and inferior vena cava are the large vessels most likely to be punctured inadvertently during regional block procedures (see Figure 1, page 14).

Signs and Symptoms—In the normal healthy adult none usually occur if the physician recognizes that he has punctured a vessel and readjusts the needle before injecting the drug. But if the drug is injected a generalized systemic toxic reaction may ensue (see Chapter 1, page 16).

On the other hand, if the patient has a prolonged clotting time or a blood dyscrasia the ensuing hemorrhage may produce large hematomata and neurologic sequelae even if the needle misplacement is detected and the needle is withdrawn prior to the injection (see Chapter 9, page 89).

Treatment—(See Chapter 1, page 23 and Chapter 9, page 92).

Large or Small Intestine—The rectum or bowel may be punctured while executing a pudendal, presacral or a caudal block, etc.

Signs and Symptoms—When the finger is not in the rectum during a pudendal or presacral block or if a rectal examination is not

performed following the insertion of the continuous caudal needle this complication may go unrecognized except that no anesthesia ensues—which could be due to a number of other causes. The one other sign that the needle is in the bowel which is most convincing is aspiration of brown semi liquid material—a substance which is peculiar to the contents of the bowel.

Treatment—Whether merely withdrawing the needle from the bowel and instituting no further therapy would suffice is difficult to establish. Certainly the needle has entered the bowel in some instances without the physician's knowledge and no sequelae have occurred. A comparable situation arises if an obstetrician inadvertently places a stitch in the rectum while repairing an episiotomy. In such cases although no other therapy except the removal of the stitch is instituted no infection results. Nevertheless when the physician performing a regional block knows that the needle has been in the rectum or bowel he is seldom willing to wait and see if infection will result but immediately places the patient on appropriate prophylactic antibiotic therapy. It has been our policy in these cases to give both penicillin and streptomycin.

Lung—See Chapter 6, PNEUMOTHORAX, page 55.

Trachea—During the posterior approach to the first thoracic sympathetic ganglion for an alcohol block of this ganglion the author has inadvertently punctured the trachea (see Figure 29, page 125). On injection of the alcohol the patient coughed and complained

Dermatitis

DERMATITIS *per se* is a complication which when it occurs by itself, is not catastrophic. On the other hand it may be one of the signs and symptoms heralding or accompanying a systemic allergic reaction to a local anesthetic drug and as such may present itself as part of the picture. While a skin reaction which most often accompanies a severe systemic allergic type reaction is urticarial in nature that not associated with such a reaction usually manifests itself as a contact dermatitis and usually occurs after numerous exposures to the drug. It is the latter type with which this chapter is predominantly concerned.

Theoretically dermatitis may result in either the physician or the patient from the administration of any of the drugs found in regional block solutions, i.e. local anesthetic drugs, phenol, alcohol, ammonium sulfate, hyaluronidase, propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, peanut oil, sesame oil, sweet almond oil, solution preservatives (sodium metabisulfate), etc. or combinations of these. However the type of dermatitis to be considered in detail in this book is that which follows the use of short acting local anesthetic drugs. Allergies to long acting drugs are infrequent; few reports of such responses could be found in the literature following their use in block analgesia. Then too, the frequency with which solutions with a long duration of action are employed in regional block analgesia, in comparison with local anesthetic drugs is insignificant.

Dermatitis following the parenteral or topical administration of local anesthetic drugs occurs more frequently than the number of reports in the present day medical literature

would indicate.^{1,31} Lane and Lunkart¹ state that dermatitis from local anesthetic agents "is now a matter of common knowledge among dentists and consequently comparatively few cases are reported in the literature at the present." They further point out "Often reports on relatively common diseases appear so seldom in journals that one may conclude from the literature that the condition is relatively unusual."

A review of the literature has revealed the fact that dermatitis frequently affects those who administer drugs used to produce local analgesia. A great number of cases reported in these articles occurred among dentists and physicians which would indicate that dermatitis may well be considered an occupational hazard of these professions. Gaskill³ is not convinced that the incidence of dermatitis from Novocain in dentists is as high as the reports indicated. Nevertheless the review by Lane and Lunkart¹ of 107 cases of dermatitis from local anesthetics indicates that it is a definite occupational hazard. They found that 83% of cases showing a dermatitis to local anesthetic drugs occurred in either dentists or physicians, dentists constituting the greater number evidently because of their more frequent exposures and because they seldom if ever wear gloves when performing a block.

ETIOLOGY

The physiological basis for dermatitis from a drug is unknown, but it is a reaction of protection (see Chapter 2, page 33).³⁰ It is relatively clear from the cases found in the literature as well as the two cases seen by the

REFERENCES

- 1 PICK J and WERTHEIM H A Technic for Blocking the Carotid Sinus Nerves *Ann Surg* 127 144 149 1948
- 2 ADRIANI J PARMLEY J and OCISNER A Fatalities and Complications After Attempts at Stellate Ganglion Block *Surgery* 32 615 619 1952
- 3 BONICA J J *The Management of Pain* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 4 HINGSON R A Personal Communication
- 5 MASON J T (Urologist Mason Clinic) Personal Communication
- 6 ADRIANI J and EVANGELOU M Complications of Regional Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 34 96-101 1955

ing. The lesion may become eczematous and vesiculated and may ooze. It may involve the whole hand or it may be limited to one or two fingers, particularly to the interdigital folds (see Figure 30, page 129). If the dermatitis persists and becomes chronic, drying, scaling and cracking of the skin usually result. Exfoliation of the skin occurs, leaving it red, hypersensitive and painful. The rhagades (fissures) which often become deep are extremely painful. Probably the most distressing symptoms of contact dermatitis are the pruritus, itching and tenderness.

Allergic Reaction of the Dermis—Dermatitis from this cause is infrequent when compared to contact dermatitis and usually follows injection, oral or mucous membrane application of the drug. In most instances it is a systemic reaction involving the body as a whole and shows itself in toxic erythema, urticaria, erythema multiforme, generalized morbilliform eruptions and other generalized forms of dermatitis (see Figure 31, page 130 and Figure

32, page 130). Fever, lymph node swelling, edema (particularly of the face), swelling of the joints and changes in blood morphology (increase in leukocyte and eosinophil count) often develop. Previous exposures to the drug may be difficult to establish definitely.

PROPHYLAXIS

Avoidance of the cause of the dermatitis, i.e., the local anesthetic drug, is the best therapy for a person who is allergic to local agents and who is interested in remaining comfortable. For as Sulzberger and Wise¹⁶ point out: "The characteristics of (1) dissemination to distant parts, (2) severe pruritus without much dermatitis, and (3) a protracted course seem to be encountered frequently in cases of dermatitis due to chemicals possessing local anesthetic properties."

The following precautions may prevent a dermatitis in those physicians who can not avoid the use of a local anesthetic agent to

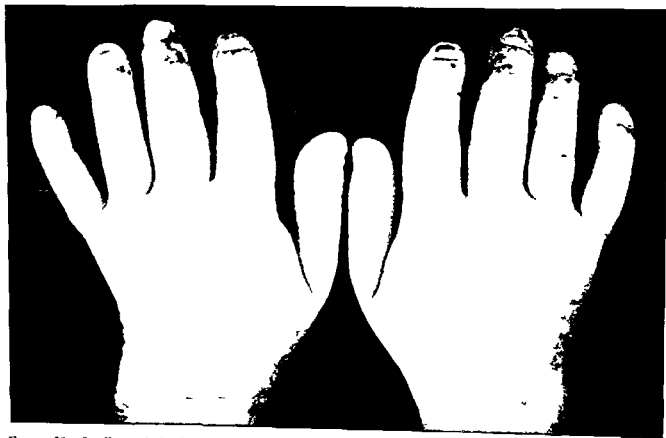


Figure 30 Swelling of the hands following the inadvertent administration of Novocain (procaine) to a doctor with a known allergy to cocaine and its derivatives.

author that a person requires many exposures to develop an epidermal allergic reaction to local anesthetic agents.^{1, 33} However once sensitized in this fashion the person will react to the local anesthetic drug in any form or manner of administration. For example if a person sensitized to Novocain received Novocain in penicillin preparations intramuscularly in an ointment intravenously orally or other wise he would probably suffer a reaction. As a matter of fact any other local anesthetic drug of the same chemical family as Novocain i.e. para amino benzoic acid esters (Benzocaine, Butesin, Butyn, Pontocaine, Larocaine and Tutocaine) may also cause a reaction in that person if administered parenterally or topically.^{29, 3, 37} Strauss³⁷ makes the following statements (1) "Sensitization to an entire group of structurally related compounds may occur as a result of exposure to one of the groups but this does not necessarily occur." (2) "The question of whether an individual sensitized to one of a group of related compounds is sensitive to all of these compounds must still be determined by patch testing or clinical trial in each individual."

Dermatitis related to the following drugs has been reported in the literature: Apothemin,^{1, 2} Butesin and Butyn,^{2, 9, 16, 17, 27} Pontocaine,^{10, 13, 18, 23, 27, 29} Nupercaine,^{14, 16, 20} Benzocaine,^{14, 27} Novol,² Metycaine,^{6, 34} and Novocain.^{15, 16, 25, 29, 31, 33} A survey conducted by the American Dental Association of their members showed 742 dentists (the number reporting was not given) to be sensitive to one or more items used in their practice. Five hundred sixty nine reported specific causes for their difficulties relating to local anesthetic drugs as follows: 358 to local anesthetics (no specific one noted), 28 to Butyracaine, 20 to Pontocaine, 13 to Benzocaine and 9 to phenol (these figures do not total 569 but the other causes listed do not directly pertain to anesthetic agents). Since most dentists use Novocain it may be reasonable to conclude that Novocain is the greatest offender in those cases in which no specific local anesthetic agent was noted.²⁷ In one dental clinic

it was found that 1 in every 12 who handled Novocain developed a dermatitis.¹

Allergic reactions to phenol are also listed perhaps this should serve as a warning to investigate thoroughly any dentists on whom a phenol block for a pain problem is being contemplated.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of a dermatitis from a local anesthetic drug depend on whether the epidermis or the dermis reflects the allergy.³³ Templeton³³ made the following important statements: (1) "When the epidermis alone is sensitized it has generally been brought into this state of sensitization by previous contact of its surface with some external agent capable of producing sensitization." The resulting picture is one of contact dermatitis. (2) "When the dermis alone is sensitized the offending substance the allergen has generally reached it from within the body by way of the blood vessels or lymphatics. The allergen will generally have entered the body by way of inhalation or ingestion." Presumably a subcutaneous or intramuscular injection could be responsible in sensitizing the dermis.

Allergic Reaction of the Epidermis (Contact Dermatitis)—Contact dermatitis i.e. an allergy of the epidermis is the type of dermatitis due to local anesthetic drugs more frequently seen.

Contact dermatitis usually has an incubation period and the symptoms often do not appear for days, weeks or even years. The affected area is usually limited to that part of the body which comes in contact with the drug. Therefore since many of the dermatides to local anesthetic drugs are occupational required the areas usually affected are found on the hands, forearms, face and neck i.e. the exposed areas.

The characteristics of a contact dermatitis may vary and one or all of the following may occur in the same patient. Usually the acute signs and symptoms are those of irritation i.e. reddening of the skin, swelling and itch.

block is completed even if he is not at that time allergic to the drug. Without this precautionary washing off of the drugs repeated exposure may eventually result in an allergy.

Use a Local Anesthetic Agent of a Different Chemical Structure—If a physician or dentist becomes allergic to one chemical group of local anesthetic drugs, other agents of a different chemical structure may be safely used (see Table VII page 20). For example, he may be allergic to the para amino benzoic acid esters (Novocain etc.) but might be able to come in contact with the benzoic acid esters (Metecaine etc.) without provoking a contact dermatitis.^{28, 32} Whether this is true or not should be determined by patch tests rather than clinical trial.

Patch Test—As pointed out in previous chapters, this test may be of little value in determining whether or not a patient will have a high blood level type or a clinical "anaphylactic shock" type of systemic reaction to a local anesthetic drug administered parenterally. However, most of the authors cited in the bibliography to this chapter agree that the patch test is reliable in determining whether a dermatitis is or is not caused by a local anesthetic drug. Liden and Wallace²⁸ when testing ten dentists with an allergy found by patch tests that nine of them showed an eczematous reaction to local anesthetics.

While patch tests usually become positive within 24 to 48 hours, if at all, negative results should be examined for several subsequent days up to a week or longer.³⁰

TREATMENT

The management of a dermatitis depends on the type of lesion. However, the one treatment which is the most effective and is applicable irrespective of the type of lesion is *removal of the offending drug*.^{40, 47} It has been the authors and his associates' custom not to treat dermatological lesions but to refer them to the Clinics dermatologist. The following treatment part or all of which is used at the Clinic is not original but obtained from the experience of many workers in this field.^{40, 48}

Eczematous and Eczematoid Dermatitis—The rules of therapy when treating an eczematous or an eczematoid dermatitis are: (1) a few well chosen remedies are preferable to the haphazard use of many; (2) shotgun prescriptions are to be avoided as they may contain drugs which may aggravate the allergy; (3) treatment must be conservative and not over aggressive, i.e. *Primum non nocere* ("above all do no harm") and (4) exact means of a drug's application must be described—the patient must not merely be told to "go home and use it."

Relief of itching—Itching is probably the most common complaint of a contact dermatitis. Treatment consists of

I **Antipruritics**—The effects of calcium gluconate, sodium thiosulfate or strontium bromide given intravenously have proven disappointing. The antihistamine drugs parenterally, i.e. Benadryl (diphenhydramine hydrochloride) 50 mg orally or intravenously or Pyribenzamine (tripelennamine hydrochloride) 100 mg orally every 3 to 4 hours will in most instances control the pruritis. If these drugs are unsuccessful then the other treatments listed below may be used. While intravenous and oral uses of these drugs are very effective, the external use of the antihistaminic compounds to date has not proven satisfactory.

II **Sedation**—Barbiturates, salicylates and chloralhydrate are preferable to the opiates which tend to aggravate itching, although in some cases they give excellent relief. Phenobarbital in $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ gr (15 to 30 mg) doses three times a day and at bedtime is usually satisfactory.

III **Split and wrap part**—This avoids subconscious scratching and may be extremely helpful.

IV **Avoid soap**—Since soap may aggravate dermatitis, starch, bran, oatmeal or potassium permanganate baths are to be preferred to cleanse the skin and soothe the irritation.

V **Dehydration**—In some instances this will markedly relieve itching and may be accomplished by limiting fluid intake and by the use of diuretics.



Figure 31 Erythematous reaction in a patient allergic to Novocain (procaine) 7 hours after raising 2 skin wheals on left forearm with 1% Novocain (contributed by Chipps*)



Figure 32 Circumorbital and right cheek edema in the same patient shown in Figure 31 following failure to take antihistamine 24 hours after raising the skin wheals on the left arm and 7 days after extraction of upper right first molar under Novocain anesthesia (contributed by Chipps*)

which they react in this fashion and may prevent this type of allergy in a physician who has not yet developed it

Care of Physician's Hands During Administration—Gloves should be worn when performing blocks to prevent contact with the local anesthetic agent being employed. This is singularly important if a large number of regional procedures are performed or if the physician has an allergy to the local anesthetic agent of his preference. If a physician has already developed an allergy from handling local anesthetic drugs and cannot avoid their use, protective creams such as Covicone (combination of Silicone Nitrocellulose and castor oil in a greaseless vanishing cream base) applied to the areas of the skin of the forearm not covered by the gloves may give added protection.

Should the local anesthetic drug come in contact with the physician's skin in areas that have not been protected by gloves or creams, the area should be washed as soon as the

ministration was used and lowest when the drug was given orally. This would indicate that repeated spillage of the drug onto the skin of the personnel administering it was responsible for the dermatitis.

Chlorpromazine has been used in regional anesthesia by the author and his associates for sedation following regional nerve blocks other than those which in themselves lower the blood pressure (spinal, epidural and celiac plexus block). Since the drug has been given intravenously in these cases it is possible that the solution could on occasion come in contact with the skin. This might result in allergy and indicates the necessity of washing the hands when spillage occurs.

REMEMBER, GLOVES ARE NOT USED WHEN INJECTING LOCAL ANESTHETIC SOLUTIONS ONLY TO ASSURE ASEPSIS, WHICH MAY BE OBTAINED BY CAREFUL SCRUBBING OF THE HANDS, BUT FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE PHYSICIAN OR DENTIST AGAINST THE OCCUPATIONAL HAZARD OF AN AC

QUIRED ALLERGY TO LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENTS USED IN THEIR DAILY PRACTICE

REFERENCES

1. LANE, C. G. and LUKART, R. Dermatitis from Local Anesthetics with a Review of One Hundred and Seven Cases from the Literature. *J. A. M. A.* 146:717-720, 1951.
2. MEEK, W. H. Skin Reactions to Apothecary and Quinine in Susceptible Persons. *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 1:651-655, 1920.
3. FOX, E. C. Exfoliative Dermatitis from Butesin Picric Ointment. *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 26:44-45, 1932.
4. PUSEY, W. A. and RATTNER, H. Dermatitis from Butesin Picric. *Arch. Dermat. & Syph.* 19:917, 1929.
5. PARKHURST, H. J. and LUKENS, J. A. Dermatitis Due to Butyn. *J. A. M. A.* 112:837, 1939.
6. LUNDY, J. S. The Use of Local Anesthetics. *J. A. M. A.* 107:1464-1469, 1936.
7. GREENWOOD, A. M. and QUEST, J. F. A Case of Butyn Dermatitis. *J. A. M. A.* 83:1077, 1924.
8. LEMOINE, A. N. Conjunctivitis and Dermatitis Due to Butyn. *Am. J. Ophth.* 10:125-126, 1927.

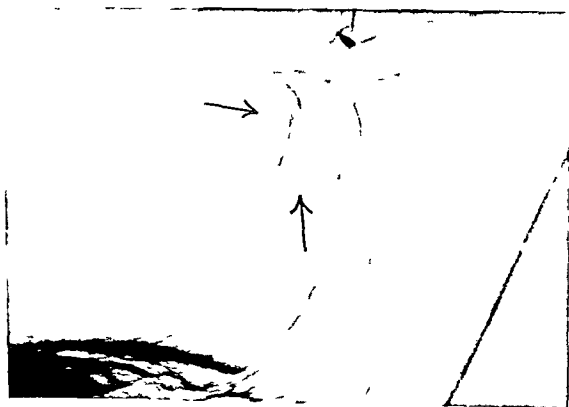


Figure 33. Dermatitis from tincture of mercuric iodine used to prepare the skin prior to a stellate ganglion block. During the past 12 years the author has used this solution to prepare the skin and this is the only time this type of complication has occurred.

Local therapy—Local therapy is indicated when the lesion progresses past the stage of simple itching. It consists of the following generalized treatment:

I In acute erythematous and vesicular stages wet dressings (solution of aluminum acetate etc.) are usually the treatment of choice. If wet dressings are not practical then lotions, pastes and emulsions may be used and powders are helpful in intertriginous areas such as the groin, under the breasts and between the toes.

II In subacute stages with dry, crusted, scaly areas lotions, salves and x-ray treatment are preferred.

III In chronic dry, thickened, lichenified, scratched, eczematoid dermatitis treatment is aimed at (1) relief of scratching by roentgen ray and antipruritics and (2) relief of the thickening of the skin by tars and other preparations.

Cortisone Therapy—Cortisone orally has its merits in treating contact dermatitis. It may stop the itching and also improve the lesion. Hydrocortisone ointment may be of help in treating localized contact dermatitis. It may also be given orally. After an initial dose of 100 mg is taken by mouth, 50 mg is taken every 4 to 6 hours for 6 to 8 doses and finally every 6 hours for 4 doses.⁴⁷ Cortisone taken over protracted periods can be dangerous (see Page 254).

ACTH (corticotropin) may have the same beneficial effects on dermatitis as cortisone.

Urticaria and Urticarial Dermatoses—This type of reaction seldom persists long enough when caused by a local anesthetic agent to warrant treatment such as autohemotherapy, ichthyol alkalis or dilute hydrochloric acid by mouth, large doses of reduced ferrous iron with ammonium citrate and oral peptones—therapy which proves useful in food allergies. However, when urticaria occurs following the use of a local anesthetic agent it should be treated immediately to prevent progression to generalized edema, particularly of the larynx where it may result in respiratory

obstruction. Treatment by the anesthesiologist to prevent this consists of the immediate use of one or more of the following. Ample time, i.e., 10 to 15 minutes should be allowed for one type of therapy to become effective before trying another.

Intramuscular Adrenalin (epinephrine) 1/4 cc of 1:1000 solution.

Intravenous antihistaminic drugs i.e., 50 mg of Benadryl etc. given slowly. These drugs usually produce satisfactory results and may be repeated every 3 hours if angioneurotic edema recurs. We have emphasized that larger intravenous doses of Benadryl are seldom more effective and in addition may result in untoward reactions (see Chapter 2, page 34). In the few cases of urticaria seen by the author this therapy was most effective.

Intravenous calcium gluconate (10 cc of a 10% solution) or **calcium chloride** (5 to 10 cc of a 5% solution) given slowly may achieve rapid cessation of the urticaria, but the results are not as consistent as with the antihistaminic drugs. If calcium chloride is used it is mandatory that it be given very slowly, i.e., not over 2 cc per minute or cardiac syncope may occur.

COMMENTS

Dermatitis from Solutions Used To Prepare the Skin—Dermatologists report it relatively frequently and state that mercurials rate as one of the most potent sensitizing agents (see Figure 33, page 133).^{14, 16} We include mention of it here to emphasize the point that the local anesthetic drug is not always responsible for a dermatitis. Whenever a dermatitis occurs a patch test to determine the offending drug should be made and the patient should be told the results so that he can warn another physician who might undertake another block procedure in the future.

Dermatitis from Chlorpromazine—Contact dermatitis following the use of chlorpromazine in personnel administering the drug has been reported.⁴⁹ The incidence of dermatitis was highest when the intramuscular route of ad-

ministration was used and lowest when the drug was given orally. This would indicate that repeated spillage of the drug onto the skin of the personnel administering it was responsible for the dermatitis.

Chlorpromazine has been used in regional anesthesia by the author and his associates for sedation following regional nerve blocks other than those which in themselves lower the blood pressure (spinal, epidural and celiac plexus block). Since the drug has been given intravenously in these cases it is possible that the solution could on occasion come in contact with the skin. This might result in allergy and indicates the necessity of washing the hands when spillage occurs.

REMEMBER, GLOVES ARE NOT USED WHEN INJECTING LOCAL ANESTHETIC SOLUTIONS ONLY TO ASSURE ASEPSIS, WHICH MAY BE OBTAINED BY CAREFUL SCRUBBING OF THE HANDS, BUT FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE PHYSICIAN OR DENTIST AGAINST THE OCCUPATIONAL HAZARD OF AN AC

QUIRLED ALLERGY TO LOCAL ANESTHETIC AGENTS USED IN THEIR DAILY PRACTICE

REFERENCES

1. LANE C C and LUKART R. Dermatitis from Local Anesthetics with a Review of One Hundred and Seven Cases from the Literature. *JAMA* 116:717-720, 1951.
2. MOORE W H. Skin Reactions to Apothemin and Quinlin in Susceptible Persons. *Arch Dermat & Syph* 1:651-655, 1920.
3. FOX I C. Exfoliative Dermatitis from Butesin Picrate Ointment. *Arch Dermat & Syph* 26:41-45, 1932.
4. PUSEY W A and RATTNER H. Dermatitis from Butesin Picrate. *Arch Dermat & Syph* 19:917, 1929.
5. PARKHURST H J and LUKENS J A. Dermatitis Due to Butyn. *JAMA* 112:837, 1939.
6. LUNDY J S. The Use of Local Anesthetics. *JAMA* 107:1464-1469, 1936.
7. GREENWOOD A M and QUEST J F. A Case of Butyn Dermatitis. *JAMA* 83:1077, 1924.
8. LENOIR A N. Conjunctivitis and Dermatitis Due to Butyn. *Am J Ophth* 10:125-126, 1927.

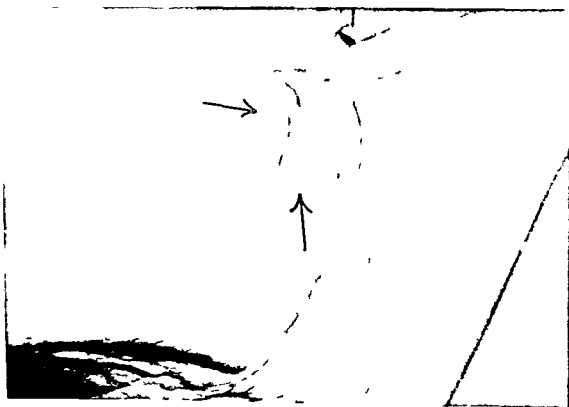


Figure 33. Dermatitis from tincture of mercuriolate used to prepare the skin prior to a stellate ganglion block. During the past 12 years the author has used this solution to prepare the skin and this is the only time this type of complication has occurred.

- 9 NEWTON F H Conjunctivitis and Dermatitis Due to Butyn *Am J Ophth* 10 432 433 1927
- 10 THOMAS J W and FENTON M M Fatalities and Constitutional Reactions Following the Use of Pontocaine *J Allergy* 14 145 159 1943
- 11 VIDEBECH H Eczema in Doctor Caused by Handling Pontocaine *Ugesk Laeger* 98 278 279 1936
- 12 CAMERON O J Skin Eruptions Due to Nupercain and Pantocain *Nebraska M J* 22 229 230 1937
- 13 HOLLANDER L Contact Dermatitis Due to Pontocaine Hydrochloride *Arch Dermat & Syph* 40 92 93 1939
- 14 HOWELL J B Contact Dermatitis An Analysis or Tabulation of All Cases Proved in Single Year *Arch Dermat & Syph* 53 265 277 1946
- 15 MORRIS R C Procaine Dermatitis Correspondence *JAMA* 77 1357 1921
- 16 SULZBERGER M B and Wise F Drug Eruptions II Dermatitis Eczematosa Due to Drugs *Arch Dermat & Syph* 28 461-474 1933
- 17 JACKSON N R Dermatitis from Picric Acid Solution and Butesin Picrate Ointment *Arch Dermat & Syph* 21 40-41 1930
- 18 GERB H Das Pantokain in der Augenheilkunde *Ztschr Augenh* 79 467 469 1933
- 19 MANNHEIMER M Pantokainuberempfindlichkeit *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 59 95 96 1933
- 20 MARX E Untersuchungen uber Pantokain *Klin Monatsbl Augenh* 89 209 214 1932
- 21 RAUH W Erfahrungen mit Pantocain *Ztschr Augenh* 82 134 138 1933
- 22 REITSCH W Pantokain als Ekzemerreger *Klin Monatsbl Augenh* 97 773 775 1936
- 23 SANDER LARSEN Pantocaineczem *Acta ophth* 16 647 649 1938
- 24 LANE C G Therapeutic Dermatitis *New England J Med* 246 77 81 1952
- 25 KESTEN B and LASZLO E Dermatitis Due to Sensitization to Contact Substances Dermatitis Venenata Occupational Dermatitis *Arch Dermat & Syph* 23 221 237 1931
- 26 KLAUDER J V Novocain Dermatitis *Dental Cosmos* 64 305-309 1922
- 27 Council Reports Progress in Study of Occupational Dermatitis Among Dentists *J Am Dent A* 38 148 149 1949
- 28 LADEN E L and WALLACE D A Contact Dermatitis Due to Procaine A Common Occupational Disease of Dentists *J Invest Dermat* 12 299 306 1949
- 29 McALPINE P T and BERENS C Allergic Dermatitis and Blepharoconjunctivitis Caused by Pontocaine *Am J Ophth* 25 206-208 1942
- 30 KULCHAR G V Late or Delayed Reactions to Patch Tests *Arch Dermat & Syph* 43 636-640 1941
- 31 GALEWSKY D Über Novokaindermatitiden bei der Anwendung von Novokain Augenwasser *Dermat Wchnschr* 85 1195 1196 1927
- 32 GOODMAN M H Cutaneous Hypersensitivity to the Procaine Anesthetics Correlation of Hypersensitivity with Chemical Structure *J Invest Dermat* 2 53 66 1939
- 33 LANE C G in discussion on James B M Procaine Dermatitis Report of Case and Attempt to Determine Chemical Groups Responsible for Hypersensitivity *JAMA* 97 440 442 1931
- 34 KERNER J A and KAMM M L A Case of Severe Dermatitis Venenata Due to Metycaine *Anesthesiology* 10 512 1949
- 35 GASKILL, H A Procaine Dermatitis Among Dentists *Arch Dermat & Syph* 6 576-583 1922
- 36 VAUGHAN W T and BLACK J H *Practice of Allergy* St Louis C V Mosby Co 1948
- 37 STRAUSS M J Group Sensitivity to Local Anesthetics *J Invest Dermat* 8 403-407 1947
- 38 TEMPLETON H J Epidermal and Dermal Sensitization (Coexisting in the Same Individual) *JAMA* 127 908 911 1945
- 39 CHIFFS J E and ZUCKER E Procaine Hydrochloride Allergy in Regional Anesthesia *US Armed Forces Med J* 5 389 392 1954
- 40 SULZBERGER M B *Dermatologic Allergy An Introduction in the Form of a Series of Lectures* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1940
- 41 PILLSBURY D M Physiologic Principles in the Management of Dermatitis *New England J Med* 244 423-429 1951
- 42 CHIFFS J E and ZUCKER E Procaine Hydrochloride Allergy in Regional Anesthesia *US Armed Forces Med J* 5 389 392 1954
- 43 RICKLES N H Procaine Allergy in Dental Patients Diagnosis and Management A Preliminary Report *Oral Surg* 6 375 382 1953
- 44 SILVERMAN R E Use of Antihistamines in Oral Surgery A Preliminary Report *J Oral Surg* 11 231 237 1953
- 45 POVMERENING R Personal communication
- 46 GOODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Co 1955
- 47 LEAKE C D Drug Allergies *Postgrad Med* 17 132 139 1955
- 48 GAUL L E Overtreatment Dermatitis *JAMA* 157 720 725 1955
- 49 DENBER H C B Appraisal of Drug Reactions *JAMA* 158 586-587 1955

PART II

COMPLICATIONS OF SPINAL (SUBARACHNOID) BLOCK AND EPIDURAL (PERIDURAL) BLOCK

- 9 NEWTON F H Conjunctivitis and Dermatitis Due to Butyn *Am J Ophth* 10 432 433 1927
- 10 THOMAS J W and FENTON M M Fatalities and Constitutional Reactions Following the Use of Pontocaine *J Allergy* 14 145 159 1943
- 11 VIEBECI H Eczema in Doctor Caused by Handling Pontocaine *Ugesk Laeger* 98 278 279 1936
- 12 CAMERON O J Skin Eruptions Due to Nupercain and Pantocain *Nebraska M J* 22 229 230 1937
- 13 HOLLANDER L Contact Dermatitis Due to Pontocaine Hydrochloride *Arch Dermat & Syph* 40 92 93 1939
- 14 HOWELL J B Contact Dermatitis An Analysis or Tabulation of All Cases Proved in Single Year *Arch Dermat & Syph* 53 265 277 1946
- 15 MORRIS R C Procaine Dermatitis Correspondence *JAMA* 77 1357 1921
- 16 SULZBERGER M B and WISE F Drug Eruptions II Dermatitis Eczematosa Due to Drugs *Arch Dermat & Syph* 28 461-474 1933
- 17 JACKSON N R Dermatitis from Picric Acid Solution and Butesin Iodate Ointment *Arch Dermat & Syph* 21 40-41 1930
- 18 GEBB H Das Pantokain in der Augenheilkunde *Ztschr Augenh* 79 467-469 1933
- 19 MANNHEIMER M Pantokainüberempfindlichkeit *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 59 95 96 1933
- 20 MARK E Untersuchungen über Pantokain *Klin Monatsbl Augenh* 89 209 214 1932
- 21 RAUH W Erfahrungen mit Pantocain *Ztschr Augenh* 82 134 138 1933
- 22 REITSCH W Pantokain als Ekzemerreger *Klin Monatsbl Augenh* 97 773 775 1936
- 23 SANDER LARSEN Pantocaineeczem *Acta ophth* 16 647 649 1938
- 24 LANE C G Therapeutic Dermatitis *New England J Med* 246 77 81 1952
- 25 KESTEN B and LASZLO E Dermatitis Due to Sensitization to Contact Substances Dermatitis Venenata Occupational Dermatitis *Arch Dermat & Syph* 23 221 237 1931
- 26 KLAUDER J V Novocain Dermatitis *Dental Cosmos* 64 305 309 1922
- 27 Council Reports Progress in Study of Occupational Dermatitis Among Dentists *J Am Dent A* 68 148 149 1949
- 28 LADEN E L and WALLACE D A Contact Dermatitis Due to Procaine A Common Occupational Disease of Dentists *J Invest Dermat* 12 299 306 1949
- 29 McALPINE P T and BERLINS C Allergic Dermatitis and Blepharoconjunctivitis Caused by Pontocaine *Am J Ophth*, 25 206 208 1942
- 30 KULCIAR G V Late or Delayed Reactions to Patch Tests *Arch Dermat & Syph* 43 636 640 1911
- 31 GALFWSKY D Über Novokaindermatiden bei der Anwendung von Novokain Augenwasser *Dermat Wchnschr* 85 1195 1196 1927
- 32 GOODMAN M H Cutaneous Hypersensitivity to the Procaine Anesthetics Correlation of Hypersensitivity with Chemical Structure *J Invest Dermat* 2 53 66 1939
- 33 LANE C G in discussion on James B M Procaine Dermatitis Report of Case and Attempt to Determine Chemical Groups Responsible for Hypersensitiveness *JAMA* 97 440 442 1931
- 34 KERNER J A and KAMM M L A Case of Severe Dermatitis Venenata Due to Metycaine *Anesthesiology* 10 512 1949
- 35 GASKILL, H K Procaine Dermatitis Among Dentists *Arch Dermat & Syph* 6 576-583 1922
- 36 VAUGHAN W T and BLACK J H *Practice of Allergy* St Louis C V Mosby Co 1948
- 37 STRAUSS M J Group Sensitivity to Local Anesthetics *J Invest Dermat* 8 403 407 1947
- 38 TEMPLETON H J Epidermal and Dermal Sensitization (Coexisting in the Same Individual) *JAMA* 127 908 911 1945
- 39 CHIFFS J E and ZUCKER E Procaine Hydrochloride Allergy in Regional Anesthesia *US Armed Forces Med J* 5 389 392 1954
- 40 SULZBERGER M B *Dermatologic Allergy An Introduction in the Form of a Series of Lectures* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1940
- 41 PILLSBURY D M Physiologic Principles in the Management of Dermatitis *New England J Med* 244 423 429 1951
- 42 CHIFFS J E and ZUCKER E Procaine Hydrochloride Allergy in Regional Anesthesia *US Armed Forces Med J* 5 389 392 1954
- 43 RICKLES N H Procaine Allergy in Dental Patients Diagnosis and Management A Preliminary Report *Oral Surg* 6 375 382 1953
- 44 SILVERMAN R E Use of Antihistamines in Oral Surgery A Preliminary Report. *J Oral Surg* 11 231 237 1953
- 45 POMMERENING R Personal communication
- 46 COODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Co 1955
- 47 LEAKE C D Drug Allergies *Postgrad Med* 17 132 139 1955
- 48 GAUL L E Overtreatment Dermatitis *JAMA* 157 720 725 1955
- 49 DENBER H C B Appraisal of Drug Reactions *JAMA* 158 588-587 1955

Introduction to Part II

THE COMPLICATIONS discussed in this part of the book are those which are primarily encountered following spinal (subarachnoid) or epidural (peridural) blocks. The term "spinal (subarachnoid) block" is clear to all physicians. However the term "epidural (peridural) block" perhaps should be clarified as it is used herein. Epidural analgesia is produced by placing the local anesthetic solution in the triangular or rounded space which is situated between the dura mater on one side and the lining of the vertebral canal (the ligamenta flava, the lamina and pedicles of the vertebrae and the posterior longitudinal ligament) on the other side. Spinal epidural block refers to the placement of the local anesthetic solution into the epidural space via the thoracic or lumbar region. On the other hand, caudal block refers to the placement of the solution into the sacral portion of this space via the caudal canal.

It must be remembered that any of the complications found in Part I may develop since local infiltration is often performed as a preliminary step to tapping these two spaces and that those complications which are incidental to regional block procedures and found in Part III may likewise occur.

Introduction to Part II

THE COMPLICATIONS discussed in this part of the book are those which are primarily encountered following spinal (subarachnoid) or epidural (peridural) blocks. The term "spinal (subarachnoid) block" is clear to all physicians. However, the term "epidural (peridural) block" perhaps should be clarified as it is used herein. Epidural analgesia is produced by placing the local anesthetic solution in the triangular or rounded space which is situated between the dura mater on one side and the lining of the vertebral canal (the ligamenta flava, the lamina and pedicles of the vertebrae and the posterior longitudinal ligament) on the other side. Spinal epidural block refers to the placement of the local anesthetic solution into the epidural space via the thoracic or lumbar region. On the other hand, caudal block refers to the placement of the solution into the sacral portion of this space via the caudal canal.

It must be remembered that any of the complications found in Part I may develop since local infiltration is often performed as a preliminary step to tapping these two spaces, and that those complications which are incidental to regional block procedures and found in Part III may likewise occur.

Hypotension from Spinal or Epidural Block During the Induction of Anesthesia or During the Operative Period

VASCULAR HYPOTENSION may occur following any method of producing regional analgesia. It is frequently seen following purposely administered spinal and epidural procedures but seldom accompanies peripheral nerve blocks or local infiltration unless a systemic toxic reaction to the local anesthetic agent ensues or a misplaced needle results in a spinal block. An epidural block, severe hemorrhage, or a severe pneumothorax.

Hypotension *per se* when purposely induced to effect hypotensive anesthesia may not be detrimental.¹¹ However, if unexpected hypotension goes unrecognized or is inadequately treated, it may lead to severe hypoxia and rapid deterioration of the patient's condition with one or more of the following: thrombosis, cerebral hypoxia, renal failure, convulsions, cardiac failure, and death. Therefore, when an unexpected hypotension occurs during regional block procedures, it demands immediate attention.

Hypotension and oxygen want during spinal and epidural block go hand in hand and to treat one the physician must be cognizant of the cause and treatment of the other. Therefore, this chapter and the next two should be considered together.

ETIOLOGY

The arterial pressure depends on (1) the pumping action of the heart, (2) peripheral resistance, (3) quantity of blood in the arterial system, (4) viscosity of the blood, and (5) elasticity of the arterial walls.¹² Therefore, any alterations of these by a regional

anesthesia may cause hypotension unless the body rapidly adjusts to the change. Of the regional block techniques used daily, spinal and epidural blocks are the ones most likely to alter the cardiovascular system.

The hypotension which occurs during spinal and epidural analgesia results primarily from paralysis of the nerves to the regions anesthetized. Not only are the sympathetic and somatic nerve fibers paralyzed, resulting in peripheral vascular dilatation with pooling of the blood and decreased respiration respectively, but the nerves to those organs which normally maintain the blood pressure, as well as those which normally compensate for hypotension, are also paralyzed. In addition to these causes of hypotension after spinal and epidural block, other causes of hypotension not directly dependent on the paralysis of the nerves to the dermatomes are: (1) systemic toxic reaction, (2) surgical manipulation, (3) positional changes, (4) certain diseases, (5) hemorrhage, (6) pregnancy, and (7) premedication, particularly chlorpromazine.

Alterations in the Cardiovascular System from Paralysis of the Nerves to the Dermatomes, i.e., Neurogenic Circulatory Depression.—This is the principal cause of a hypotension which follows a spinal, epidural, or splanchnic (celiac plexus) block. The circulatory changes which occur are due to changes in the venous as well as the arterial side of the vascular system.^{14,16} Paralysis of the sympathetic vasoconstrictor fibers to the arterioles results in dilatation of the arterioles and a

decrease in the peripheral resistance. Likewise there is an actual dilatation of the peripheral veins with a pooling of blood in the venules. Paralysis of the sympathetic fibers of the splanchnic (celiac) plexus alone is not singly responsible for the fall in blood pressure seen with spinal and epidural block but may be a contributing factor. It has been shown in dogs that bilateral splanchnicectomy alone does not produce the characteristic blood pressure fall of spinal anesthesia.¹⁴

As a result of the paralysis of the sympathetic fibers a normal circulatory system is suddenly changed by vasodilatation into one which is too large for the circulating volume of blood. To compensate the vascular bed in the unanesthetized area constricts usually resulting in a shift of the blood away from the heart and lungs to the splanchnic area and the lower extremities. The height of the anesthetic following spinal or epidural block directly governs the degree of this shift and in general when the level rises above the umbilicus (T_{10}) there is a progressive loss of the capacity for reflex vascular compensation.¹⁴ In other words as the paralyzed area increases in size the area in which the blood vessels can constrict to decrease the size of the total circulatory system is reduced. Consequently the blood volume becomes insufficient in relation to the size of the vascular system to maintain an adequate blood pressure.

The loss of function of portions of the sympathetic nervous system is probably the primary reason for alterations in the cardiovascular system but lowered blood volume paralysis of the skeletal muscles and paralysis of the nerves to the kidneys and adrenal glands have been mentioned as factors which may contribute significantly to the hypotension when the nervous system is chemically sectioned by a local anesthetic agent.

Lowered Blood Volume—When a fall in blood pressure from spinal block or epidural block occurs in a patient whose blood volume is low the hypotension may be quite difficult to correct. Nicholson¹⁵ states "The most alarming blood pressure falls associated with operations in the upper abdomen under spinal

anesthesia have been experienced in those patients suffering from diseases of the gastrointestinal tract associated with a large loss of body weight over a short period of time. Investigations of our own as well as of others have shown this group of patients to be suffering from marked reductions of their total blood volume."¹ Unfortunately these reductions in blood volume are not brought to light by the use of the routine concentration tests such as the hemoglobin, red blood cell count and hematocrit. When the Evans blue dye method of blood volume determination has been employed and the deficit corrected these patients will tolerate spinal anesthesia for operations in the upper portion of the abdomen.¹⁶

Paralysis of the Skeletal Muscles—Normally the skeletal muscles act as a support for the vascular system and perform a muscular milking action aiding blood return to the heart. In addition the muscles of respiration play an important part in the return of the blood to the heart because the decrease in the intrapleural pressure during inspiration acts as a suction pump to bring blood into the great veins. Therefore when the skeletal musculature is paralyzed by spinal or epidural block the venous return is decreased resulting in decreased venous pressure, increased venous circulation time, increase in right auricular pressure, reduced cardiac output and a decline in blood pressure.^{14, 16}

SeEVERS and WATERS²³ state "In view of experimental and clinical observations we believe that too little stress has been placed on the role of respiration in the maintenance of cardiovascular integrity during spinal anesthesia. Our conception of the train of events occurring during untreated high spinal block is as follows: initial decrease in peripheral resistance to blood flow by vasomotor nerve and skeletal muscle paralysis; decrease in minute volume respiration accompanying intercostal nerve paralysis; inadequate oxygenation of blood; diminished minute volume blood flow; progressive loss of vascular tone over the whole body and acute cardiac incompetence, both the result of oxygen deprivation

failure of the medullary respiratory mechanism as the nutrient flow of blood becomes inadequate the latter occurring while the heart is still capable of being revived by oxygenation."

Paralysis of Nerves to Adrenal Glands and Kidneys—Paralysis of the nerves to the adrenal glands and kidneys has been mentioned as a cause for hypotension following spinal or epidural block.^{14 18 24} While perhaps contributory, it is doubtful that this mechanism is the inciting factor.

Systemic Toxic Reactions to the Local Anesthetic Drug—Hypotension is seldom caused in spinal analgesia by a systemic reaction to the local anesthetic drug itself because the quantity of the drug used is relatively small. However, in epidural analgesia where larger quantities of local anesthetic solutions are injected, it is possible although not likely that an ensuing hypotension is the result of a systemic toxic reaction (see Chapter 1 page 6 and Chapter 2 page 33).

In over 10 000 epidural blocks and spinal blocks performed at the Mason Clinic there have been 9 convulsions following epidural blocks (1 in lumbar area 8 in caudal area) and none following spinal blocks. These convulsions were treated immediately with oxygen by bag and mask and no drop in blood pressure was registered. However if treatment is not instituted in such cases cardiovascular collapse with a fall in blood pressure may follow.

Surgical Manipulation or Other Forms of Trauma, i.e., Injuries, Hemorrhage etc.—In over 10 000 spinal and epidural blocks, we have observed that when the height of anesthesia rises to T₄ and blocks the major portion of the nerve supply to the dermatomes the blood pressure often does not fall until intra abdominal manipulation starts. Collins⁴ states "In human experiments 200 mg. of procaine were injected and high spinal anesthesia obtained to the level of C₇ (7th cervical segment). No hypotension or complications of significance developed. Hypotension did develop when surgical manipulation began and when the manipulation was maximal the hypo-

tension was maximal. The patients were unable to bring their pressures back to normal levels. It is worth noting that patients who have no disease other than the immediate problem for which they are being treated and who have hypotension immediately following spinal or epidural block will often compensate with no therapy other than oxygen provided surgical manipulation does not occur prior to re establishment of a normal pressure. However if surgery is started prematurely, it may be difficult or in rare instances impossible to raise the blood pressure even by means of vasoconstrictor drugs or fluid replacement therapy.

Positional Changes—It is common knowledge among anesthesiologists that in the anesthetized patient a change in position particularly a rapid one may result in hypotension and in the occasional instance death.¹⁴ Such a result may take place under any type of anesthesia but is more prone to occur under spinal or epidural block.

Soffer and Sweet²⁵ summarize their experience as follows: "Significant gravitational movement of blood in the legs occurs following minor position shift during the state of vasomotor paralysis produced by certain autonomic blocking drugs high or low spinal anesthesia, and to a lesser extent during thiopental sodium anesthesia. Depression or elevation of the lower extremities may therefore be utilized to lower or raise the subject's blood pressure as the situation demands. One must however be constantly aware of the drastic circulatory changes that may rapidly ensue if these position shifts are produced or resolved suddenly and without continuous observation. Three cases are described that illustrate the blood pressure changes that may occur during spinal anesthesia as a result of the assumption or resolution of the lithotomy position. The fatal outcome of case 3 was directly related to such a postural shift of the lower extremities."

Miscellaneous Causes of Hypotension—During spinal and epidural block the following may cause hypotension. While they may

occur during the block procedure they are not necessarily directly associated with the drug used paralysis of the nerves to the dermatomes surgical manipulations, or postural changes

Coronary Occlusion Pulmonary Embolus, Cerebral Vascular Accident Pulmonary Collapse or Cardiac Failure—These events may occur during regional block procedures and one usual sign of them is a severe hypotension. In some instances these accidents may be directly attributed to hypoxia hypotension surgical manipulation position previous disease etc but they may sometimes occur without discernible cause

Hemorrhage—If hemorrhage occurs prior to or during surgery then hypotension results from surgical shock—of course this may happen under regional anesthesia just as well as under general anesthesia. Often when hemorrhage occurs spontaneously as in ruptured ectopic pregnancy, incomplete abortion, etc the patient will have an immediate hypotension but will usually compensate for it and over the next few hours the blood pressure may return to normal with the help of replacement therapy. When a normal or near normal blood pressure is obtained the patient may tolerate a spinal or epidural block well. If however, a surgical procedure is decided upon before this return to normal and a spinal or epidural anesthesia performed the lowered blood volume plus the block procedure may result in a hypotension that is difficult or impossible to correct

A blood pressure fall from hemorrhage is a more serious problem than that from a spinal or epidural block. Burch and Harrison¹⁶ state "From the data it appears that in spinal anesthesia the initial change is as would be expected in arterial pressure and that venous return and output of the heart are affected secondarily. This sequence of events is just the opposite of that in hemorrhage. In this condition Blalock has shown that the cardiac output decreases first and is already reduced by from one third to one half before a significant decline in mean arterial pressure occurs. These observations probably explain the

well recognized clinical fact that a low blood pressure due to hemorrhage is a much more serious sign than a similar blood pressure fall in a patient under spinal anesthesia." However if a blood pressure fall occurs from both hemorrhage and the effects of the anesthetic the problem is singularly precarious and this is probably the outstanding reason why spinal and epidural blocks are usually contraindicated in a patient who has suffered a severe hemorrhage prior to surgery and whose blood pressure is still low

Pregnancy—Not uncommonly when giving a pregnant patient at term an anesthetic the blood pressure falls regardless of the method used. According to Eckenhoff¹⁷ and Wilkenson *et al*¹⁸ this is due to the fact that when the patient is placed supine a position most pregnant patients avoid the gravid uterus falls back occluding the venae cavae—this decreases the return of blood to the heart which in turn reduces the cardiac output and a fall in blood pressure results

It must be cautioned that whenever the systolic blood pressure of a pregnant woman drops below 80 mm steps to raise the blood pressure should be instituted otherwise the baby may suffer chronic hypoxia or anoxia probably because a systolic pressure of over 80 mm is usually necessary to assure circulation of blood through the uterus during its contraction

Chlorpromazine (Thorazine Largactil) as Premedication—At the present time the clinical use of chlorpromazine is still in its experimental stages and further evaluation of the drug is necessary before conclusive statements about it can be made. It has been our observation at the Mason Clinic that when the drug is used for its sedative effect prior to or immediately following a peripheral nerve block, some degree of hypotension may ensue. Such a hypotension is seldom a problem. But if this drug is given before or during a spinal block an epidural block or a splanchnic block a severe hypotension may develop. In this case the low blood pressure is of such a nature that it seldom adequately responds to the usual dosage of the common vasoconstrictor

for drugs e.g. ephedrine sulfate Neosynephrine Vasovall or Levophed. While Levophed or Neosynephrine if run rapidly may somewhat elevate the pressure stopping them before either the regional block or the dosage of chlorpromazine has been dissipated may again lower the blood pressure to a precarious level. Foster *et al*²⁷ after studying the effects of Levophed and epinephrine on the blood flow in the hands of patients who had previously received intravenous doses of chlorpromazine concluded that chlorpromazine decreases the pressor effect of Levophed and reverses the vasoconstrictor effect of epinephrine. These controlled experiments seem to substantiate our clinical observations. Foster *et al*²⁸ also concluded that the fall in blood pressure from chlorpromazine is due to its powerful vasodilatory action which is a result of both the central and the local effects of the drug.

Therefore at the Mason Clinic chlorpromazine has not been used with regional block procedures for sedation in (1) patients who are to receive nerve blocks which in themselves lower blood pressure such as celiac plexus block spinal block and epidural block (2) patients who have hypertension (3) the elderly and (4) patients who have had coronary occlusions. Furthermore because most of our block patients receive an opiate i.e. morphine sulfate $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ gr (10 to 15 mg) combined with a belladonna drug i.e. atropine or scopolamine $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{1000}$ gr (0.4 to 0.6 mg) 30 to 40 minutes before coming to surgery we have not exceeded an initial dose of 20 mg of chlorpromazine intravenously in any patient and our usual dose is 10 to 15 mg. Only in the occasional patient has it been necessary to add 5 or 10 mg to this usual dosage to obtain the desired results. At least 15 to 30 minutes should elapse before the initial dose of chlorpromazine is supplemented. By observing these precautions we have been able to obtain satisfactory sedation with chlorpromazine yet avoid one of its serious effects—excessive hypotension.

When chlorpromazine is employed for preoperative sedation by the Anesthesia Depart-

ment at the Mason Clinic, it is given intravenously by one of the physicians in that Department. In those patients receiving regional block procedures which do not require *paresthesias* for a successful block e.g., local infiltration and certain peripheral nerve blocks (cervical block etc.) the chlorpromazine is usually administered in the above noted fashion one half an hour prior to the block. In those patients receiving blocks which require that *paresthesias* be elicited for a successful block e.g. brachial plexus block sciatic nerve block etc. it is administered immediately upon completion of the block. It is interesting to note that the drug has a retrograde amnesic effect. Often when it has been given following the elicitation of *paresthesias* the patient, when seen on postoperative rounds does not remember the "electric shock like" sensation caused by stimulating a nerve.

It must be remembered that (1) there is no effective antidote to chlorpromazine at the present time (2) the drug is excreted slowly and (3) the depressing effects on the cardiovascular and respiratory systems may remain for considerable periods after the operation. Therefore the drug must be administered with care. Furthermore every patient who is to be operated on under spinal block epidural block or intercostal deep splanchnic (celiac plexus) block or in whom one of these blocks is to be used in therapy or diagnosis must be asked if he has been on chlorpromazine therapy. The order sheet and nurse's notes must be checked immediately before performing the block. These warnings are emphasized by one death and two near fatalities which have occurred recently because these precautions were not exercised.

In one case of Bonica's²⁹ the surgeon had seen the patient at home and placed her on chlorpromazine because of nausea associated with an intestinal obstruction. The surgeon did not mention this nor did the nursing notes have any record of it. The patient was given an epidural block for surgery and a severe hypotension developed which was difficult to correct and although the patient survived the surgical procedure she succumbed in the im-

mediate postoperative period probably from the prolonged period of hypoxia during surgery.

The second case was one of Owens'. He saw the patient on preoperative rounds at four o'clock in the afternoon. Later the surgeon visited the patient and found him quite disturbed concerning the operation and therefore he ordered 25 mg of chlorpromazine immediately and another 25 mg at midnight. At seven o'clock the next morning without a review of the chart a spinal anesthetic was administered with light Nupercaine to T. The patient would not respond to questioning and the blood pressure had fallen from a preoperative level of 90/60 to one which was unobtainable. Four mg of Vasoxyl was given intravenously and no response was noted. This was followed by 3 mg of Neosynephrine and the blood pressure slowly crept back to 70/40. The patient's blood pressure was sustained for the rest of the operation and in the immediate postoperative period by an unusually concentrated Neosynephrine drip (40 mg of Neosynephrine in 1000 cc of 5% dextrose in distilled water). The patient's convalescence was uneventful and there was no untoward result from the period of hypotension and the associated hypoxia.

In the third case a patient of the author had carcinoma of the common bile duct and was having severe intractable pain. The internist called and made an appointment for the patient to have a splanchnic (celiac plexus) block. She had been placed on chlorpromazine 25 mg tid to help control pain. However this was not called to my attention and was not recorded on the chart when I first visited her. Three hours later when she was brought to the block room the chart was not reviewed. In the meantime the fact that the patient was receiving chlorpromazine had been recorded on the order sheet and the nurse's notes. As is our custom in these cases a block is performed with a local anesthetic agent so that the degree of pain relief obtained may be evaluated prior to the use of the alcohol. Immediately after the block the patient's blood pressure dropped from a pre-

operative level of 150/80 to 45/0. In this instance 5 mg of Vasoxyl intravenously raised the blood pressure to 70/40 but it fell again to 45/0 within 10 minutes. It was then again raised and maintained at 90/60 with a Neosynephrine drip (10 mg in 1000 cc of 5% dextrose in distilled water). The heart rate was grossly irregular. The patient was rapidly digitalized and made an uneventful recovery. Immediately after the treatment of the hypotension I remarked to my resident that the patient looked as if she had been receiving chlorpromazine. The chart was checked and I was quite chagrined to find that this had been the case.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of hypotension in spinal and epidural block are related to changes in the cardiovascular system resulting from decreased circulation of blood (systemic hypoxia) and to respiratory embarrassment (tidal hypoxia).

Fall in Blood Pressure.—Properly speaking hypotension is a fall in arterial pressure below a patient's recognized normal. Therefore a specific arterial level of 70 or 80 cannot be chosen as a standard for all patients. An "on the spot" analysis by the physician who takes into consideration the physical status of the patient and other factors, must determine whether hypotension exists. For example a healthy but obviously nervous patient with a preoperative pressure of 180 mm systolic and 100 mm diastolic may after a quiet night of bed rest have a pressure of 130 mm systolic and 90 mm diastolic. During a spinal or epidural block procedure his pressure may drop to 90 mm systolic and 60 mm diastolic but if he responds rationally to questioning and states that all is well if his skin is warm and dry his respirations are adequate and he has no change in his heart rate and rhythm then his hypotension should not cause alarm. Correction of it other than continual close observation for further drop is unnecessary.

On the other hand a diabetic with associated arteriosclerotic heart disease whose

tor drugs e.g. ephedrine sulfate Neosynephrine Vasoxyl or Levophed. While Levophed or Neosynephrine if run rapidly may somewhat elevate the pressure stopping them before either the regional block or the dosage of chlorpromazine has been dissipated may again lower the blood pressure to a precarious level. Foster *et al.*²⁷ after studying the effects of Levophed and epinephrine on the blood flow in the hands of patients who had previously received intravenous doses of chlorpromazine concluded that chlorpromazine decreases the pressor effect of Levophed and reverses the vasoconstrictor effect of epinephrine. These controlled experiments seem to substantiate our clinical observations. Foster *et al.*²⁷ also concluded that the fall in blood pressure from chlorpromazine is due to its powerful vasodilatory action which is a result of both the central and the local effects of the drug.

Therefore at the Mason Clinic chlorpromazine has not been used with regional block procedures for sedation in (1) patients who are to receive nerve blocks which in themselves lower blood pressure such as celiac plexus block spinal block and epidural block (2) patients who have hypertension (3) the elderly and (4) patients who have had coronary occlusions. Furthermore because most of our block patients receive an opiate i.e. morphine sulfate $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$ gr (10 to 15 mg) combined with a belladonna drug i.e. atropine or scopolamine $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{100}$ gr (0.4 to 0.6 mg) 30 to 40 minutes before coming to surgery we have not exceeded an initial dose of 20 mg of chlorpromazine intravenously in any patient and our usual dose is 10 to 15 mg. Only in the occasional patient has it been necessary to add 5 or 10 mg to this usual dosage to obtain the desired results. At least 15 to 30 minutes should elapse before the initial dose of chlorpromazine is supplemented. By observing these precautions we have been able to obtain satisfactory sedation with chlorpromazine yet avoid one of its serious effects—excessive hypotension.

When chlorpromazine is employed for preoperative sedation by the Anesthesia Depart-

ment at the Mason Clinic, it is given intravenously by one of the physicians in that Department. In those patients receiving regional block procedures which do not require paresthesias for a successful block e.g. local infiltration and certain peripheral nerve blocks (cervical block etc.) the chlorpromazine is usually administered in the above noted fashion one half an hour prior to the block. In those patients receiving blocks which require that paresthesias be elicited for a successful block e.g. brachial plexus block sciatic nerve block etc. it is administered immediately upon completion of the block. It is interesting to note that the drug has a retrograde amnesic effect. Often when it has been given following the elicitation of paresthesias the patient when seen on postoperative rounds does not remember the "electric shock like" sensation caused by stimulating a nerve.

It must be remembered that (1) there is no effective antidote to chlorpromazine at the present time (2) the drug is excreted slowly and (3) the depressing effects on the cardiovascular and respiratory systems may remain for considerable periods after the operation. Therefore the drug must be administered with care. Furthermore every patient who is to be operated on under spinal block, epidural block or intercostal deep splanchnic (celiac plexus) block or in whom one of these blocks is to be used in therapy or diagnosis must be asked if he has been on chlorpromazine therapy. The order sheet and nurse's notes must be checked immediately before performing the block. These warnings are emphasized by one death and two near fatalities which have occurred recently because these precautions were not exercised.

In one case of Bonicas²⁸ the surgeon had seen the patient at home and placed her on chlorpromazine because of nausea associated with an intestinal obstruction. The surgeon did not mention this nor did the nursing notes have any record of it. The patient was given an epidural block for surgery and a severe hypotension developed which was difficult to correct and although the patient survived the surgical procedure she succumbed in the im-

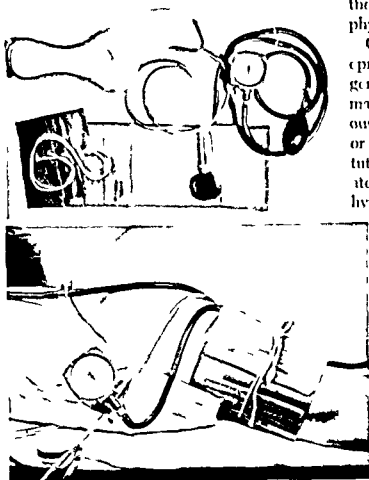


Figure 34 (A) Blood pressure cuff with the chest piece of the stethoscope sewn in place so that it will not move. Hernia cord has been stitched to the cuff so that when the cuff has been placed on the arm the hernia cord may secure it in place. (B) Cuff applied to arm. Note that the hernia cord functions to prevent slipping of the cuff during motion.

constrictor drug prior to a block has been voiced on two bases—that in a large number of patients particularly if the spinal or epidural block remains below the umbilicus (T_{10}) no fall in blood pressure occurs—and that if the patient is hypertensive the use of a vasoconstrictor prior to a blood pressure fall may elevate the pressure and cause blood vessel rupture. However in over 10 000 spinal and epidural block procedures performed at the Mason Clinic in the past eight years no difficulty has been encountered from use of vasoconstrictor drugs prior to spinal and epidural blocks and in many instances severe rapidly developing hypotension which might have been difficult to treat was probably avoided by a prophylactic dose of one of

these drugs. In the elderly patient such prophylaxis is probably of particular value.

Oxygen Administration—During spinal or epidural block procedures particularly in geriatrics even if there is no evidence of a marked hypotension intermittent or continuous oxygen administration by bag and mask or nasal pharyngeal catheter should be instituted during the operation and in the immediate postoperative period. Although a marked hypotension may not be evident some degree of stagnant hypoxia probably accompanies most spinal and epidural anesthetics.

If such an insidious hypoxia occurs in an elderly patient who has a chronic hypoxia from arteriosclerosis noticeable cerebral damage may result. In these instances it is usually a member of the patient's family who one to four weeks following an operation notices that "father or mother" is acting somewhat peculiarly. Often when such cerebral damage develops it is not called to the attention of the surgeon or anesthesiologist and even if it is these physicians may not realize that cerebral damage has occurred or what produced the damage.

Starting Intravenous Fluids—The starting of intravenous fluids prior to block procedures likely to produce hypotension is a good prophylactic policy. Often additional help is not available to assist the anesthesiologist when the patient develops hypotension. A plastic needle is best for such a procedure because it has less tendency to be dislodged from the vein during the positioning of the patient for the anesthetic or the surgical procedure (see Figure 35 page 146).

Avoid the Use of High Spinal and Epidural Blocks in the Patient with a Poor Physical Status—Regional block procedures such as local infiltration field block or peripheral nerve blocking may be the anesthesia of choice in patients of poor physical status—for example those having (1) diabetes with or without arteriosclerotic heart disease (2) hypertension (3) coronary artery disease (4) cerebrovascular diseases and (5) decom-

preanesthetic blood pressure was 200 mm systolic and 130 mm diastolic, should cause the physician great concern if the pressure falls to 110 mm systolic and 80 mm diastolic after a spinal or epidural block procedure. Such a blood pressure for that individual might be at shock level and might invite coronary occlusion etc. Every effort to raise the pressure and assure tissue oxygenation of such a patient must be made.

Pulse Rate—The pulse rate becomes rapid and as hypotension becomes more pronounced the rate may be too high to be determinable. If corrective therapy is not instituted the pulse becomes imperceptible and cardiac failure and death may ensue.

Oxygen Want—When hypotension without marked paralysis of the muscles of respiration is present (a situation which is often seen when spinal or epidural block does not rise above T_6), the oxygen want is caused by stagnant hypoxia. Slowed circulation of the blood due to vasodilatation is responsible for this hypoxia. In the author's opinion hypoxia is not the cause but a result of hypotension in this situation. As the anesthesia progresses above the level of T_6 a substantial number of the intercostal nerves are paralyzed and whether or not diaphragmatic action is weakened or ceases tidal hypoxia now coexists with stagnant hypoxia.

Early signs and symptoms of oxygen want are yawning, nausea, vomiting, apprehension, fear, restlessness, dizziness, tinnitus and headache. They are referable to tissue hypoxia of the central nervous system due to the diminished blood pressure. The late signs and symptoms of oxygen want are those of depression of the central nervous system as well as of the heart and peripheral vascular system. The depression is reflected by drowsiness, disorientation, coma, respiratory arrest, shock and death (see Chapter 17, page 160).

Appearance of the Patient—Cyanosis is usually not seen when severe hypotension develops during a spinal or epidural block because as shock develops marked capillary constriction in the unanesthetized area usually occurs to compensate for the vasodilata-

tion in the paralyzed area. Even though the amount of circulating reduced hemoglobin is markedly increased (5 gm or more per 100 cc of blood) it does not enter the skin capillaries of the upper part of the body and therefore cyanosis is usually not apparent.

Shock and Death—If therapy to combat the hypotension is not instituted immediately and hypotension with associated hypoxia is allowed to progress the blood pressure becomes unobtainable, the pulse is weak, slow or unobtainable, the skin becomes cold, may or may not sweat, and a cardiac appearance, cardiac failure and death ensue.

PROPHYLAXIS

The prophylaxis of hypotension consists of

Taking the Blood Pressure—Prior to a regional block procedure, particularly a spinal, epidural or celiac plexus block, a blood pressure cuff should be placed securely on the patient's arm (see Figure 34, page 145). Correct placement of the cuff is essential so that on completion of these blocks time will not be lost in reapplying it.

The blood pressure must be checked before doing the block while executing the block (if help for this purpose is available) immediately following the block, and thereafter at frequent intervals.

Preblock Administration of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—It has been the policy of the author to give 20 to 50 mg of ephedrine sulfate or 7.5 to 10 mg of Vasoxyl intramuscularly 15 to 20 minutes prior to regional block procedures such as spinal block, epidural block and splanchnic (celiac plexus) block which are often accompanied by falls in blood pressure. Doses of other vasoconstrictor drugs such as 2 to 5 mg of Neosynephrine, 15 to 20 mg of Methedrine, 50 to 100 mg of Oenethyl or 15 to 30 mg of Wyamine may be equally effective when given intramuscularly as a prophylactic dose. Such doses usually do not alarmingly increase the blood pressure of the hypertensive patient about to receive a spinal or epidural block.

Nevertheless, objection to the use of a vaso-

administration of oxygen is started first depends on the circumstances but if possible they should be instituted concomitantly.

Administration of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—If the blood pressure has not stopped its decline and started to rise toward its preoperative level by the time the above therapy has been instituted, it is mandatory that vasoconstrictor drugs be given *intravenously* in an attempt to raise the blood pressure. When used prophylactically the vasoconstrictor drugs may be given intramuscularly, but when hypotension is present peripheral circulation is slowed and drugs given subcutaneously or intramuscularly are slowly absorbed. Therefore *intravenous* administration is the only rational method of giving a vasoconstrictor drug to correct a severe hypotension rapidly. The author agrees with Collins¹ that a vasoconstrictor drug is the "keystone" to therapy and it behooves the physician to choose one or two of these drugs and become thoroughly familiar with their mechanism of action as well as their usual effect.

All vasoconstrictor drugs do not act in the same way. The vasoconstrictor action may depend on (1) direct action on the arterioles, (2) myocardial stimulation with increased cardiac output, (3) stimulation of the vasomotor center, and/or (4) constriction of the veins. The appropriate vasoconstrictor agent must be chosen and the one selected depends to some degree on whether a fast or slow pulse is noted after a local anesthetic procedure. A slow pulse in the presence of hypotension reflects depression of the myocardium as well as peripheral vasodilatation and therefore would indicate the use of a drug like ephedrine sulfate which in addition to a peripheral vasoconstrictor action stimulates the heart directly. A fast pulse in the presence of a low blood pressure on the other hand would probably indicate increased activity of the heart along with peripheral vasodilatation and suggest the use of a drug which slows the heart rate while producing peripheral constriction of the blood vessels, e.g. Neosynephrine. The more commonly used vasoconstrictors, their dosages and the fashion in which they act are listed below.

EPHEDRINE SULFATE

Dosage—15 to 25 mg. *intravenously* repeated at 2 to 5 minute intervals until the preblock blood level is approximated then the dosage is reduced to 10 mg. and given at intervals necessary to maintain the pressure until it is stabilized.

Action—It constricts the arterioles stimulates the cerebral cortex and increases the cardiac output.^{2,29} The pulse rate increases.^{29,30} Ephedrine (and also Arterenal and methamphetamine) according to Cottenet *et al.*³ produce an actual increase in heart force and do not act on the same basis as Neosynephrine or Vasoxyl (see below).

NEOSYNEPHRINE (phenylephrine Neophryn)

Dosage—1 to 2 mg. *intravenously* when given intermittently. However it is a powerful drug and in the author's opinion is best given by the drip method. The drip solution is prepared by adding 1 cc. of a 1% (10 mg./cc.) Neosynephrine solution to 1000 cc. of intravenous fluid usually 5% dextrose in distilled water. Initially this mixture is dripped rapidly (100 to 180 drops per minute) until the blood pressure approaches the preblock level and then it is slowed to a maintenance drip (40 or fewer drops per minute) until the pressure stabilizes. This method of correcting hypotension is the choice of the author because it gives minute to minute control and may be continued in the postoperative period with marked safety until the regional block has dissipated itself.

Action—It raises the blood pressure by peripheral vasoconstriction and cardiac stimulation.^{29,31} In addition a bradycardia from compensatory reflexes or depression of the sinoatrial node, an increase in the heart size and increased stroke volume result.³² Untoward reactions such as apprehension, excitement and headache are negligible.

VASOXYL (methoxamine hydrochloride)

Dosage—2 to 3 mg. *intravenously* recommended by 7.5 to 10 mg. *intramuscularly* to provide for a prolonged action.

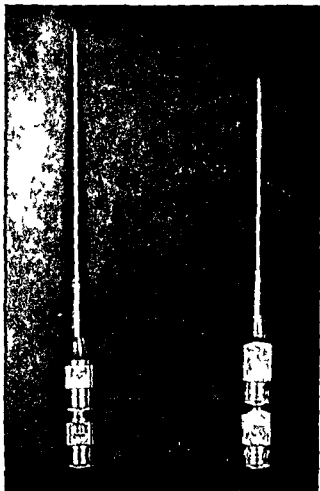


Figure 35 Plastic needles used for intravenous therapy

pensated heart disease. Low spinal block or low segmental epidural block i.e. analgesia below the umbilicus (T_{10}) may be used with relative safety in these patients provided equipment to treat minor degrees of hypotension and oxygen want is present. However in patients with any of these problems it may be wise to avoid a high spinal block a high segmental epidural block or splanchnic (celiac plexus) block.

TREATMENT

Some of the early signs and symptoms of hypotension may resemble a systemic toxic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug or a psychomotor reaction. Therefore a definite diagnosis must be established before instituting routine therapy on the basis of a patient's prodromal signs and symptoms. Usually a

check of the blood pressure, pulse respirations and the level of analgesia when a spinal or epidural block has been given will give a good clue to the type of reaction which has occurred. When hypotension exists early treatment is essential to avoid progression to possible irreversible shock cardiac failure and death. In general the treatment is aimed at increasing the oxygen tension of the partially unsaturated venous and arterial blood and increasing the venous return to the heart to maintain cardiac output.

Administer Oxygen—One hundred per cent oxygen should be administered immediately, preferably by bag and mask after a clear airway has been established (see Chapter 17 page 163). If respirations are decreased they should be supplemented by manual pressure on the breathing bag or, if such equipment is not available by other forms of artificial respiration. Oxygen administration helps to combat both tidal and stagnant hypoxia.

Often when the level of anesthesia remains below T_4 the administration of oxygen alone will temporarily fulfill the oxygen needs relieve nausea and vomiting and allow time for the body's compensatory mechanism to correct the hypotension. However an intravenous drip should be started simultaneously with the oxygen administration and if the hypotension has not reversed by the time the intravenous fluids are started then vasoconstrictor agents should be given through the intravenous tubing.

Give Intravenous Fluids—Before or immediately following most regional block procedures particularly spinal and epidural blocks an intravenous drip of 5% dextrose in distilled water or some other suitable fluid should be started so that if hypotension occurs with peripheral vascular collapse time will not be wasted in trying to cannulize a collapsed vein or doing a cutdown. However if severe hypotension develops before the prophylactic intravenous drip has been started oxygen should be administered either by an assistant or by having the patient hold the mask while the intravenous drip is being started. Whether the intravenous drip or the

administration of oxygen is started first depends on the circumstances but if possible, they should be instituted concomitantly.

Administration of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—If the blood pressure has not stopped its decline and started to rise toward its preoperative level by the time the above therapy has been instituted it is mandatory that vasoconstrictor drugs be given *intravenously* in an attempt to raise the blood pressure. When used prophylactically the vasoconstrictor drugs may be given intramuscularly but when hypotension is present peripheral circulation is slowed and drugs given subcutaneously or intramuscularly are slowly absorbed. Therefore *intravenous administration* is the only rational method of giving a vasoconstrictor drug to correct a severe hypotension rapidly. The author agrees with Collins²⁴ that a vasoconstrictor drug is the "keystone" to therapy and it behooves the physician to choose one or two of these drugs and become thoroughly familiar with their mechanism of action as well as their usual effect.

All vasoconstrictor drugs do not act in the same way. The vasoconstrictor action may depend on (1) direct action on the arterioles (2) myocardial stimulation with increased cardiac output (3) stimulation of the vasomotor center and/or (4) constriction of the veins. The appropriate vasoconstrictor agent must be chosen and the one selected depends to some degree on whether a fast or slow pulse is noted after a local anesthetic procedure. A slow pulse in the presence of hypotension reflects depression of the myocardium as well as peripheral vasodilatation and therefore would indicate the use of a drug like ephedrine sulfate which in addition to a peripheral vasoconstrictor action stimulates the heart directly. A fast pulse in the presence of a low blood pressure on the other hand would probably indicate increased activity of the heart along with peripheral vasodilatation and suggest the use of a drug which slows the heart rate while producing peripheral constriction of the blood vessels e.g. Neosynephrine. The more commonly used vasoconstrictors their dosages and the fashion in which they act are listed below.

EPHEDRINE SULFATE

Dosage—15 to 25 mg *intravenously* repeated at 2 to 5 minute intervals until the preblock blood level is approximated then the dosage is reduced to 10 mg and given at intervals necessary to maintain the pressure until it is stabilized.

Action—It constricts the arterioles stimulates the cerebral cortex and increases the cardiac output^{25, 26}. The pulse rate increases^{27, 28}. Ephedrine (and also 1-arterenol and methamphetamine) according to Cotten *et al*²⁹ produce an actual increase in heart force and do not act on the same basis as Neosynephrine or Vasoxyl (see below).

NEOSYNEPHRINE (phenylephrine, Neo-phryn)

Dosage—1 to 2 mg *intravenously* when given intermittently. However it is a powerful drug and in the author's opinion is best given by the drip method. The drip solution is prepared by adding 1 cc of a 1% (10 mg/cc) Neosynephrine solution to 1000 cc of intravenous fluid usually 5% dextrose in distilled water. Initially this mixture is dripped rapidly (100 to 180 drops per minute) until the blood pressure approaches the preblock level and then it is slowed to a maintenance drip (40 or fewer drops per minute) until the pressure stabilizes. This method of correcting hypotension is the choice of the author because it gives minute to minute control and may be continued in the postoperative period with marked safety until the regional block has dissipated itself.

Action—It raises the blood pressure by peripheral vasoconstriction and cardiac stimulation^{29, 31}. In addition a bradycardia from compensatory reflexes or depression of the sinoatrial node an increase in the heart size and increased stroke volume result³². Untoward reactions such as apprehension excitement and headache are negligible.

VASOXYL (methoxamine hydrochloride)

Dosage—2 to 3 mg *intravenously* accompanied by 75 to 10 mg *intramuscularly* to provide for a prolonged action.

Action—Given intramuscularly, the action of this drug lasts two hours or more³³ It raises the blood pressure by direct peripheral vascular constriction Bradycardia iscribed to reflex inhibition arising from pressure receptors of the carotid sinus and aortic arch occurs^{31 3} Atropine blocks this action which suggests that it is mediated over the vagus It is free of central stimulation effects such as nausea tremor nervousness headache etc^{31 36 37} However it increases the central venous pressure³⁸ The small increases in heart force produced by Neosynephrine and Vasoxyl are considered by some to be the result of cardiac dilatation secondary to hypertension and not a result of direct action of these drugs on the myocardium³⁹

Vasoxyl in our experience has proven to be a valuable drug both for preventing and for correcting the hypotension following spinal and epidural block

METHEDRINF (*d* desoxyephedrine, Desoryn Pervitin Norodin, methamphetamine)

Dosage—5 to 10 mg intravenously followed by 15 to 20 mg intramuscularly

Action—It stimulates the central nervous system constricts peripheral blood vessels and increases cardiac output^{38 40} The duration of action following intramuscular injection is about two hours³⁸

OENETHYL (2 methyl amino heptane)

Dosage—5 to 10 mg intravenously repeated at one half minute intervals The pressure is usually elevated to the preblock level in 1 to 2 minutes and this effect lasts 1 to 2 hours^{41 43}

Action—The pressor action is due to arteriolar constriction and perhaps to some action on the veins since this drug also restores venous pressure^{41 43} Tachycardia or bradycardia has not been noted Dizziness occurs in 10 percent of the patients and nausea in 5 percent⁴⁴

WYAMINE (*mephentermine sulfate*)

Dosage—15 to 20 mg is slowly given intra-

venously over a one to two minute period The response is prompt lasts 15 to 45 minutes and the injection may be repeated as often as necessary without undesirable side reactions⁴⁴

Action—It has no direct effect on the myocardium^{4 46} The cardiac output remains relatively constant as the blood pressure rises^{46 4} This would indicate that the blood pressure response is due to constriction of the peripheral vessels

LEVOPHILD (*norepinephrine noradrenalin arterenol*)

Dosage—4 to 8 mg in 1000 cc of 5% dextrose in distilled water administered by the intravenous drip technique

Action—It is the most powerful of all the peripheral vasoconstrictor drugs and has little or no action on the myocardium It causes general vasoconstriction of the arterial capillary and venous blood vessels with a resultant increase in total peripheral resistance⁴⁵ It should be used in hypotension following regional block only when other vasoconstrictor agents fail and if it is administered an arm vein of the cubital fossa should be used This is advisable because serious tissue sloughs following the prolonged use of the drug have been reported (see page 150)

ADRENALIN (*epinephrine*) and **PITRESSIN**

In general Adrenalin (*epinephrine*) is not commonly employed because it produces tachycardia anxiety or cardiac irregularities and if tissue hypoxia particularly of the myocardium is present ventricular fibrillation may result If it is used in an emergency when other vasopressor drugs are not available the intravenous Adrenalin drip technique (1:250,000) as popularized by Evans⁵⁰ is the preferable method of administration

The untoward side effects of Pitressin too pose a barrier to its use

Head Lowering—Arner⁵³ believes that the head down position is one of the most effective measures to combat circulatory insufficiency during spinal anesthesia He states

"The mechanism is as follows: the altered position causes a displacement of the blood mass from the dilated peripheral vascular areas to the heart and chiefly to the lungs; the normal blood volume in the lungs being restored. The increase of the pulmonary blood volume results in higher stroke volume and cardiac output and rising blood pressure in the peripheral circulation. Clinically the favorable effect of the head down position is clearly perceptible in the form of a rise in the blood pressure and this alteration of the patient's position is often the only measure necessary in slight falls of the blood pressure."

After studying 11 cases with spinal and general anesthesia who were placed in a head down position of 12 degrees Cole⁴ concludes: "It may not be unreasonable to draw the following conclusions from this study: (1) Tilting a supine patient so as to place him in the head down position causes a rise in the arterial pressure in the arm and a fall in the pressure in the leg; these are probably indicative of an increased blood pressure in the upper half of the body and a decreased pressure in the lower half of the body. (2) When the table is tilted the term 'blood pressure' loses its meaning and requires a new significance; it is an expression of conditions only in the area being tested. (3) The restorative action of head lowering is due in part at least to an actual, significant rapid demonstrable and consistent increase in the blood pressure in the upper extremity and undoubtedly in the brain." He also points out that while the position favors an increased cerebral blood flow because the brain is lower than the heart it is also more difficult for the blood to return "uphill" to the heart.

An evaluation of the above statements of Arner⁶³ and Cole⁴ in the light of our own experience would seem to indicate that while head lowering may increase the apparent blood pressure and result in an increased blood flow to the brain it is not a real substitute for other therapy detailed above. As a temporary restorative method without other treatment it may result in a precarious situation when the head down position is resolved

at the end of surgery particularly if 500 cc or more of blood is lost. Should the head down position (Fowler's position) be maintained in the postoperative period to prevent hypotension by draining the blood from the lower part of the body particularly the legs the collapsed blood vessels in these areas predispose to thrombosis and its subsequent complications.

Correcting Complications of the Oxygen Want Which Are Secondary to the Hypotension—Convulsions—When convulsions occur from oxygen want they are usually easily corrected by oxygen administration. Short acting intravenous barbiturates are in most instances not indicated and if given may actually be detrimental. They should be given only if the convulsions are not brought under control after three to five minutes of effective oxygen administration. If such a situation develops then small doses of intravenous pentothal (50 to 75 mg) may be administered at two to five minute intervals until the convulsions cease.

Cardiac Failure—If cardiac failure occurs during a bout of oxygen want resuscitation of the heart, as described in Chapter 7 page 74 must be instituted.

Posthypoxia Cerebral Edema—Following periods of oxygen want, cerebral edema may persist and this should not be ignored. Its signs and symptoms should be recognized and treatment instituted as described in Chapter 7 page 80.

Availability of Additional Help—When severe hypotension occurs one physician should assume charge of the situation and give directions in an orderly fashion to avoid confusion. In most cases he should remain at the head of the table maintaining the airway and preventing oxygen want. The starting of intravenous fluids, the preparation of vasoconstrictor drugs and their administration should be under his direction but should be performed by his assistants. However if they are unable to start the intravenous fluid quickly and with dexterity, he must then do the venipuncture himself.

If cardiac failure occurs it may be neces-

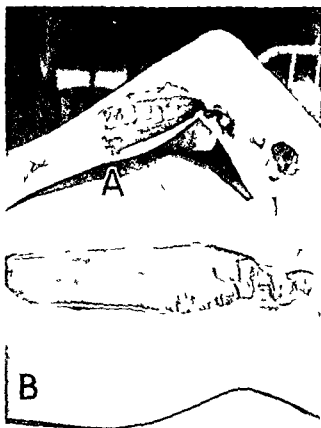


Figure 36 Right lower extremity showing ulceration and necrosis of tissue following intravenous infusion of arterenol (Levophed) into an ankle vein (A) Lies along course of the long saphenous vein and (B) a more detailed view of area of ulceration about the knee (contributed by Urceluo *et al*)

sary for him to delegate the artificial respiration to someone else and perform the manual systole. However, if this last mentioned complication occurs when both an anesthesiologist and surgeon are present each should remain at his position the anesthesiologist making an attempt to raise the blood pressure and maintain respirations and the surgeon doing the manual systole (see Chapter 7 page 75)

COMMENTS

Use of Vasoconstrictor Drugs in Patients with Cardiovascular Diseases—While vasoconstrictor agents are generally contraindicated by cardiovascular disease particularly in severe hypertension it is to be noted that the hypertensive patient may suffer a greater and more serious fall in blood pressure than the one with a normal pressure when under

spinal anesthesia. Hence, a pressor drug properly used may be especially valuable prophylactically as well as for corrective therapy.

If vasoconstrictor drugs are not used to correct hypotension particularly in patients with myocardial damage coronary disease arteriosclerosis etc a complication due to low blood pressure, such as thrombosis may occur.

Vasoconstrictor Drugs Not Indicated in Hypotension from Hemorrhage—When hypotension occurs during a surgical procedure in which regional block is being used the amount of blood loss should always be determined. If blood loss is great vasoconstrictor drugs may be used to support the pressure for a short interval but they are no substitute for replacement therapy with blood plasma or volume expanders. In this type of circumstance the administration of blood solves the problem most satisfactorily.

Carefully Select Drug and Site for Prolonged Intravenous Infusions of Vasoconstrictor Drugs—When it is necessary to use a continuous intravenous infusion of a vasoconstrictor drug to raise and maintain the blood pressure drugs and sites of injection must not be chosen at random because of the danger of necrosis.

Neosynephrine is the author's choice for raising the blood pressure when a continuous intravenous technique is indicated because it raises the blood pressure by peripheral vasoconstriction as well as cardiac stimulation.²³ Cardiac stimulation is often indicated in these cases because most local anesthetic agents are known to depress the myocardium. In addition Neosynephrine infusions containing 10 mg of Neosynephrine per 1000 cc of fluid may be started in either the leg or arm veins in the average patient even if a moderate degree of arteriosclerosis and intermittent claudication is present without danger of necrosis and slough at the site of injection.

On the other hand if the patient's pressure does not respond to Neosynephrine or the cardiac status precludes the use of a vasoconstrictor drug that stimulates the heart a more powerful peripheral vasoconstrictor with little

or no cardiac action such as Levophed (lev-arterenol norpinephrine) may be indicated. If so the site of infusion must be carefully selected and extravasation into the tissues guarded against. Patients who have diabetes arteriosclerosis with or without intermittent claudication, cardiac decompensation, a recent coronary occlusion or a low blood pressure may develop a slough at the site of infusion or along the course of the infused vein should the Levophed solution be started in the leg.^{54, 55} Uriceho, Calenda and Cutts⁵ report a case with severe intermittent claudication who was given 1000 cc of Levophed (4 mg in 1000 cc) at the rate of 20 drops per minute and who developed such severe gangrene of the superficial and subcutaneous tissue that a right mid thigh amputation was necessary (see Figure 36 page 150). As a result they advise that "in the presence of occlusive vascular diseases this drug should be used with extreme caution if at all and should be given in one of the arms." Kurland and Malach⁵⁶ report one case of slough following the use of continuous Levophed drip in vein of the ankle and Greenwald *et al*⁵⁷ report two. The author has seen one case of gangrene of the finger, one slough of the skin of the ankle and one near slough of the skin of the ankle following the use of Levophed (see Figure 37 page 151, Figure 38 page 152 and Figure 39 page 152).

From experience at the Mason Clinic with Levophed as well as study of the cases cited above the author recommends that regardless of the patient's physical status the veins in the cubital fossa be used when powerful vasoconstrictor solutions such as Levophed are being infused because the collateral circulation is greater in the arm than in the leg.⁵⁸ Nevertheless even if the arm is used an occasional case may develop an area of gangrene in the hand or other part of the upper extremity if the patient has arteriosclerosis (Figure 37 page 150). It is also interesting to note that deAlvarez⁶⁰ has seen a case in which Levophed was started in one of the upper extremities and an area of gangrene

developed in the palm of the other. These two cases would indicate that any area of the body where there is decreased circulation may be susceptible to the effects of Levophed regardless of where the infusion is started.

Should extravasation of Levophed solutions occur at the site of the infusion or should any area of the body particularly all or part of the extremity in which the infusion is running show evidence of impaired circulation treatment as described in Chapter 10 page 107 must be instituted immediately.

Degree of Hypotension from Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block and from Spinal Epidural Block—Some authors feel that spinal epidural block alters the blood pressure very little even in the presence of a high sensory

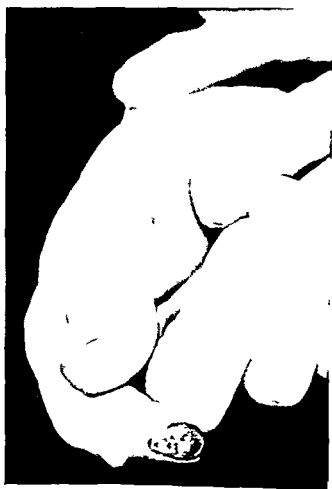


Figure 37 Gangrene of the tip of the index finger of a 50 year old diabetic patient following the intravenous drip administration of Levophed in the cubital fossa during diabetic coma and shock. Note—Most diabetics past the age of 40 have associated arteriosclerosis.



Figure 36 Right lower extremity showing ulceration and necrosis of tissue following intravenous infusion of arterenol (Levophed) into an ankle vein (A) Lies along course of the long saphenous vein and (B) a more detailed view of area of ulceration about the knee (contributed by Urechio et al¹⁴)

sary for him to delegate the artificial respiration to someone else and perform the manual systole. However, if this last mentioned complication occurs when both an anesthesiologist and surgeon are present, each should remain at his position, the anesthesiologist making an attempt to raise the blood pressure and maintain respirations and the surgeon doing the manual systole (see Chapter 7, page 73).

COMMENTS

Use of Vasoconstrictor Drugs in Patients with Cardiovascular Distress.—While vasoconstrictor agents are generally contraindicated by cardiovascular disease, particularly in severe hypertension, it is to be noted that the hypertensive patient may suffer a greater and more serious fall in blood pressure than the one with a normal pressure when under

spinal anesthesia. Hence a pressor drug properly used may be especially valuable prophylactically as well as for corrective therapy.

If vasoconstrictor drugs are not used to correct hypotension, particularly in patients with myocardial damage, coronary disease, arteriosclerosis, etc., a complication due to low blood pressure, such as thrombosis, may occur.

Vasoconstrictor Drugs Not Indicated in Hypotension from Hemorrhage.—When hypotension occurs during a surgical procedure in which regional block is being used, the amount of blood loss should always be determined. If blood loss is great, vasoconstrictor drugs may be used to support the pressure for a short interval, but they are no substitute for replacement therapy with blood plasma or volume expanders. In this type of circumstance, the administration of blood solves the problem most satisfactorily.

Carefully Select Drug and Site for Prolonged Intravenous Infusions of Vasoconstrictor Drugs.—When it is necessary to use a continuous intravenous infusion of a vasoconstrictor drug to raise and maintain the blood pressure, drugs and sites of injection must not be chosen at random because of the danger of necrosis.

Neosynephrine is the author's choice for raising the blood pressure when a continuous intravenous technique is indicated, because it raises the blood pressure by peripheral vasoconstriction as well as cardiac stimulation.¹⁵ Cardiac stimulation is often indicated in these cases because most local anesthetic agents are known to depress the myocardium. In addition, Neosynephrine infusions containing 10 mg of Neosynephrine per 1000 cc of fluid may be started in either the leg or arm veins in the average patient, even if a moderate degree of arteriosclerosis and intermittent claudication is present, without danger of necrosis and slough at the site of injection.

On the other hand, if the patient's pressure does not respond to Neosynephrine or the cardiac status precludes the use of a vasoconstrictor drug that stimulates the heart, a more powerful peripheral vasoconstrictor with little

respiration as well as any intra-abdominal manipulation may further predispose to hypotension. Therefore while this block is by definition a peripheral nerve block and its discussion should perhaps be included in Part I it is included in this chapter because the etiology and treatment of the hypotension is similar to that of spinal and epidural block. As noted hypotension from this block usually does not result unless positional changes or surgical manipulations occur.

Positional Changes—Usually when splanchnic block is performed for diseases of the pancreas (pancreatitis etc.) the blood pressure will not change if the patient remains in the supine position. However if he sits up or attempts to get out of bed he will feel faint or actually faint because a rapid hypotension will develop. This may be avoided following a block with a local anesthetic agent by restricting the patient to bed for the physiologic duration of the drug or by the use of a tight abdominal binder and elastic stockings. The use of the latter is essential when an alcohol or phenol splanchnic block for the relief of intractable cancer pain is performed if the patient is to be ambulatory within a few hours after the block. In most instances these devices must be applied for one or two weeks until the patient's compensatory mechanisms adjust. Even if the above noted precautions are taken someone should be in attendance when the patient first attempts to assume the vertical position otherwise he may faint fall and sustain an injury.

Surgical Manipulations—When the block is combined with an intercostal block for upper abdominal surgery in the adult often a drop in blood pressure does not occur until surgery is started. In over 1450 patients anesthetized by the author and his associates with intercostal deep splanchnic (celiac plexus) block for upper abdominal surgery it was noted that 80% did not show a fall in blood pressure until the abdomen was opened or manipulation of the abdominal viscera began. When the abdomen was closed in these patients it was not uncommon for the pressure to resume its presurgical level. We have ob-

served that such a fall in blood pressure can be adequately controlled during and after surgery by either prophylactic intramuscular dosages of the vasoconstrictor drugs or a Neo-synephrine drip.

REFERENCES

1. CARRISER W. J. The Control of Bleeding During Operation by Induced Hypotension. *J. A. M. A.* 132:572-571 1918.
2. HALL D. I. Controlled Hypotension by Arterial Bleeding During Operation and Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 9:499-505 1948.
3. MONTAGUE I. I. I. A New Apparatus for Induction of Controlled Hypotension by Arteriotomy. *Anaesthesia* 6:128-137 1951.
4. BIRLAND W. L. Controlled Hypotension by Arteriotomy of Intracranial Surgery. *Anaesthesia* 6:20-25 1951.
5. GRIFFITHS H. W. C. and GILLIES J. Thoraco-Lumbar Splanchnicectomy and Sympathectomy. Anaesthetic Procedure. *Anaesthesia* 3:134-140 1948.
6. ORGANE G. S. W. Hypotension in Anaesthesia. *Anesth. & Analg.* 32:19-22 1953.
7. GILLIES J. Anaesthetic Factors in the Causation and Prevention of Excessive Bleeding During Surgical Operations. Joseph Clover Lecture Delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons on March 29 1950. *Ann. Roy. Coll. Surgeons of England* 7:204-221 1951.
8. CULLEN S. C. *Anesthesia in General Practice* 4th Ed. Chicago Year Book Publishers Inc 1954.
9. GREENE N. M. Hypotensive Spinal Anesthesia. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 95:331-335 1952.
10. BOYAN C. P. and BRUNSCHWIG A. Hypotensive Anesthesia in Radical Pelvic and Abdominal Surgery. *Surgery* 31:829-838 1952.
11. ROLLASON W. N. Anesthesia and the Bloodless Field. *Anesth. & Analg.* 32:289-304 1953.
12. ENDERBY G. E. H. Postural Ischaemia and the Use of the Methonium Compounds. *Anesth. & Analg.* 32:1-6 1953.
13. BEST C. H. and TAYLOR N. B. *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* 4th Ed. Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Co 1945.
14. PAPPER E. M. BRADLEY S. E. and ROVENSTINE E. A. Circulatory Adjustments During High Spinal Anesthesia. *J. A. M. A.* 121:27-32 1943.
15. ADRIANI J. and ROVENSTINE E. A. Effects of Spinal Anesthesia Upon Venous Pressure in Man. *Proc. Soc. Biol. & Med.* 45:415-417 1940.



Figure 38 Slough of the skin of the ankle at the site of administration of Levophed to an elderly patient who suffered shock following a cerebrovascular accident. No extravasation of Levophed had occurred during the infusion.



block.⁶¹⁻⁶ Others have found that blood pressure descents during epidural anesthesia are comparable to those found following spinal anesthesia and our observation of over 1700 cases in which spinal epidural blocks have been executed would substantiate the findings of this second group of physicians.⁷¹⁻⁷ Abajian⁷² states "There is sometimes a fall in arterial pressure with pendural segmental anesthesia even sometimes to the same degree as in subarachnoid block and not merely 20 to 30 mm. of mercury as proclaimed by previous publications on epidural anesthesia."

Hypotension Following Splanchnic (Celiac Plexus) Block—When splanchnic block is used alone for a diagnostic or therapeutic block hypotension usually does not occur unless the patient is moved from a horizontal to a vertical position. If it is used together with a bilateral block of the lower seven or eight intercostal nerves for upper abdominal surgery paralysis of some of the muscles of



Figure 39 Blistering following the use of Levophed in an ankle infusion. No extravasation of Levophed had occurred during the infusion.

respiration as well as any intra-abdominal manipulation may further predispose to hypotension. Therefore while this block is by definition a peripheral nerve block and its discussion should perhaps be included in Part I it is included in this chapter because the etiology and treatment of the hypotension is similar to that of spinal and epidural block. As noted hypotension from this block usually does not result unless positional changes or surgical manipulations occur.

Positional Changes.—Usually when splanchnic block is performed for diseases of the pancreas (pancreatitis, etc.) the blood pressure will not change if the patient remains in the supine position. However if he sits up or attempts to get out of bed he will feel faint or actually faint because a rapid hypotension will develop. This may be avoided following a block with a local anesthetic agent by restricting the patient to bed for the physiologic duration of the drug or by the use of a tight abdominal binder and elastic stockings. The use of the latter is essential when an alcohol or phenol splanchnic block for the relief of intractable cancer pain is performed if the patient is to be ambulatory within a few hours after the block. In most instances these devices must be applied for one or two weeks until the patient's compensatory mechanisms adjust. Even if the above noted precautions are taken someone should be in attendance when the patient first attempts to assume the vertical position otherwise he may faint fall and sustain an injury.

Surgical Manipulations.—When the block is combined with an intercostal block for upper abdominal surgery in the adult often a drop in blood pressure does not occur until surgery is started. In over 1450 patients anesthetized by the author and his associates with intercostal deep splanchnic (celiac plexus) block for upper abdominal surgery, it was noted that 80% did not show a fall in blood pressure until the abdomen was opened or manipulation of the abdominal viscera began. When the abdomen was closed in these patients it was not uncommon for the pressure to resume its presurgical level. We have ob-

served that such a fall in blood pressure can be adequately controlled during and after surgery by either prophylactic intramuscular dosages of the vasoconstrictor drugs or a Neo-synephrine drip.

REFERENCES

- CARPENTER W J The Control of Bleeding During Operation by Induced Hypotension *JAMA* 132 572 574 1946
- HALL D I Controlled Hypotension by Arterial Bleeding During Operation and Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 9 499 503 1918
- MORTIMER P I I A New Apparatus for Production of Controlled Hypotension by Arteriotomy *Anaesthesia* 6 128 137, 1951
- BIRSLAND W L Controlled Hypotension by Arteriotomy of Intracranial Surgery *Anaesthesia* 6 20 25 1951
- GRIFFITHS H W C and GILLIES J Thoraco-Lumbar Splanchnicectomy and Sympathectomy Anesthetic Procedure *Anaesthesia* 3 134 146 1948
- ORGANE C S W Hypotension in Anaesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 32 19 22 1953
- GILLIES J Anaesthetic Factors in the Causation and Prevention of Excessive Bleeding During Surgical Operations Joseph Clover Lecture Delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons on March 29 1950 *Ann Roy Coll Surgeons of England* 7 204 221, 1951
- CULLEN S C *Anesthesia in General Practice* 4th Ed Chicago Year Book Publishers Inc 1954
- GREENE N M Hypotensive Spinal Anesthesia *Surg Gynec & Obst* 95 331-335 1952
- BOYAN C P and BRUNSWIG A Hypotensive Anesthesia in Radical Pelvic and Abdominal Surgery *Surgery* 31 829 838 1952
- ROLLASON W N Anesthesia and the Bloodless Field *Anesth & Analg* 32 289 304 1953
- ENDERBY G E H Postural Ischaemia and the Use of the Methonium Compounds *Anesth & Analg* 32 1 6 1953
- BEST C H and TAYLOR N B *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* 4th Ed Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Co 1945
- PAPPER E M BRADLEY S E and ROVENSTINE E A Circulatory Adjustments During High Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 121 27 32 1943
- ADRIANI J and ROVENSTINE E A Effects of Spinal Anesthesia Upon Venous Pressure in Man *Proc Soc Biol & Med* 45 415 417 1940

- 16 BURCH J C and HARRISON T R The Effects of Spinal Anesthesia on the Cardiac Output *Arch Surg* 21 330-332 1930
- 17 HEYMANS C, BOUGLAERT, J J and BERT P Mechanisme du Collapsus Circulatoire Influence des Traumatismes et de la Rachianes these sur les Reflexes Circulatoires Sino-carotidiens *Compt rend Soc de biol* 112 714 716 1933
- 18 SMITH H W ROVENSTINE E A GOLDRING W CHASIS H and RANGES H A The Effects of Spinal Anesthesia on the Circulation in Normal Unoperated Man with Reference to the Autonomy of the Arterioles and Especially Those of the Renal Circulation *J Clin Investigation* 18 319 341 1939
- 19 NICHOLSON M J Complications of Spinal Anesthesia and Their Treatment Third Biennial Western Conference on Anesthesiology 92 106 Hollywood Convention Reporting Company 1953
- 20 NICHOLSON M J and JENSEN F G Importance of Blood Volume Studies in Management of Surgical Patients *Anesth & Analg* 31 27-35 1952
- 21 CLARK J H NELSON W LYONS C MAYERSON H S and DeCamp P Chronic Shock the Problem of Reduced Blood Volume in the Chronically Ill Patient Part I—Concept of Chronic Shock *Ann Surg* 125 618 646 1947
- 22 GREGERSON M J A Practical Method for the Determination of Blood Volume with the Dye T 1824 A Survey of the Present Basis of the Dye-Method and Its Clinical Applications *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 1266-1286 1944
- 23 SEEVERS M H and WATERS R M Respiratory and Circulatory Changes During Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 99 961 968 1932
- 24 COLLINS V J *Principles and Practices of Anesthesiology* Philadelphia, Lea and Febiger 1952
- 25 SOFFER A and SWEET R B Effect of Position Changes of the Lower Extremities During Vasomotor Block *JAMA* 151 1191 1194 1952
- 26 ECKENHOFF J E Anesthesia for Cesarean Section Presented at Fifth Refresher Course Lectures of the American Society of Anesthesiologists Annual Meeting 1954
- 27 FOSTER C A O MULLANE, E J GASKELL P and CHURCHILL DAVIDSON H C Chlorpromazine A Study of Its Action on the Circulation in Man *Lancet* 2 614 617 1954
- 28 COTTEN M DEV BROWN J M and KROVETZ P S Heart Force Responses to Pressor Amines During Hypotension Produced by Hexamethonium *Anesthesiology* 15 126 133 1951
- 29 GOODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Company 1953
- 30 STARR I GAMBLE C J MARGOLIES A DONAL J S JR JOSEPH, N and EAGLE E A Clinical Study of the Action of Ten Commonly Used Drugs on Cardiac Output Work and Size on Respiration on Metabolic Rate and on Electrocardiogram *J Clin Investigation* 16 799 823 1937
- 31 KREUL W and ORTH O S Treatment of Hypotensive States of Spinal Analgesia with Diluted Neosynephrin Solution *Anesthesiology* 12 455-464 1951
- 32 LAYES A and VIOLANTE, A The Cardio-circulatory Effects in Man of Neo-synephrine *J Clin Investigation* 21 118 1942
- 33 PRESCOTT F (1 a hydroxy B methylamine-3 hydroxy ethyl benzene hydrochloride) Cited in Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 34 DEBEER E J and DEWS P B The Pharmacology of B (2 5 dimethoxyphenyl) B hydroxyisopropylamine hydrochloride *J Pharm Exper Ther* (To be published) Cited in Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 35 KING B D and DRUFFS R D The Use of Methoxamine for Maintenance of the Circulation During Spinal Anesthesia *Surg Gynec & Obst* 90 659 665 1950
- 36 FASSETT D W and TAUBE, H Unpublished data cited by Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 37 KISTLER E M and RUBEN J E Unpublished work cited by Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 38 DODD H and PRESCOTT F The Use of Methedrine in Surgical Operations Clinical Study on an Effective Pressor Drug *Surg Gynec & Obst* 77 645 656 1943
- 39 ANDERSON B M The Use of Methedrine as a Vasoconstrictor with Spinal Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 7 19 1946
- 40 DRUFFS R D and DENING M V N An Evaluation of Certain Drugs Used to Maintain Blood Pressure During Spinal Anesthesia Comparison of Ephedrine Paredrine Pitresin—Ephedrine and Methedrine in 2500 Cases *Surg Gynec & Obst* 83 312 322 1946
- 41 ROMAN VEGA D A and ADRIANI J Clinical Experiences with 2 Methyl Amino-Heptane as a Vasopressor for Spinal Anesthesia A Preliminary Study *Anesth & Analg* 23 248 254 1944
- 42 JACKSON D E The Pharmacologic Action of 2 Methylaminoheptane (EA 1) *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 150 167 1944

13. LECOMTE C R. Some Clinical Experiences with (Oncotol) 2 Methyl Amino Hexamine as a Vasoconstrictor Substance. *Anesth & Analg.* 25:168-171 1946
14. HINSON R A, DAVIS H S, JAMES C I and LILLYBE R I. A Clinical Evaluation of Mephentermine as a Vasoconstrictor in Surgery and Obstetrics. *Am Pract & Digest Treat.* 6:1004-1014 1955
15. SHURTLE J, JACKSON D K and AMES I I. Pharmacology of N-methylphenyl tertiary butylamine. Abstracts of Division of Medical Chemistry. American Chemical Society. September 1949
16. BROTHMAN B I, HILFERTSTEIN H K and CASKEY W H. Mephentermine in Effective Pressor Agent. I. Clinical and Laboratory Observations. *Am Heart J.* 44:396-406 1952
17. BROTHMAN B I, HILFERTSTEIN H K and CASKEY W H. Treatment of Hypotension Accompanying Myocardial Infarction. Use of a Pressor Substance. *J Lab & Clin Med.* 36:602 1950
18. MILLER A J, SHURTLE A, KALLAN B M, GOLD H, BILLINGS A and KATZ L N. Arterenal in Treatment of Shock. *JAMA.* 152:1194-1201 1953
19. ECKENHOFF J E and DRIFFS R D. The Use of Norepinephrine in Various Stages of Shock. *Anesthesiology.* 15:681-688 1954
20. CALIFF B E and LALLIN I M. Treatment of Massive Hemorrhage in Obstetric Cases by Transfusion and Norepinephrine. *Anesthesiology.* 12:728-732 1951
21. STEPHEN C R, NOWELL W K and MARTIN R. Diagnosis and Treatment of Hypotension During Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology.* 14:180-194 1953
22. GOLDBERG M, ALGAR A, DETERLING R and LINES K L. Norepinephrine (Arterenal® Sympathin N) as a Pressor Drug. *JAMA.* 140:776-778 1949
23. ARNER O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence. *Acta Chir Scand.* 167:196-207 1952
24. COLI F. Head Lowering in Treatment of Hypotension. *JAMA.* 150:273-274 1952
25. UCCICINO J F, CALEDA D G and CUTTS F B. Ulceration of the Skin Following Intravenous Use of Arterenal. *JAMA.* 152:607-609 1953
26. KURLAND G S and MALACH M. The Clinical Use of Nor-Epinephrine in the Treatment of Shock Accompanying Myocardial Infarction and Other Conditions. *New England J Med.* 247:383-389 1952
27. GREENWALD H I, GOOTNICK A, LUCEN N M and KING J A. Tissue Necrosis Following Subcutaneous Infiltration with Norepinephrine. Report of Two Cases. *New England J Med.* 246:252-253 1952
28. KILLES I R, HAINSWORTH H and SIMON B. Skin Necrosis Following Intravenous Use of Norepinephrine. *Surgery.* 36:822-825 1954
29. ALLEN I V, BARKER N W and HINES I A. *Peripheral Vascular Diseases.* Philadelphia: Saunders 1948
30. DE ALVARO R. Personal Communications
31. PAGES I. Metumetic Anesthesia. *Rev. van mil. Lima.* 11:351-355 1921
32. CUTHBERT A. Anesthesia. *Pendural. Dia med.* 10:1204-1207 1938
33. DOGLIOTTI A M. A New Method of Block Anesthesia. Segmental Epidural Spinal Anesthesia. *Am J Surg.* 20:107-118 1933
34. ODOM C B. Epidural Anesthesia. *Am J Surg.* 34:547-558 1930
35. HARGEN J R. Epidural Anesthesia in Abdominal Surgery. *Illinois M J.* 65:317-319 1934
36. RUTZ A. Pages. Epidural Anesthesia. *Minnesota Med.* 22:363-368 1939
37. DOGLIOTTI A M. *Anesthesia. Narcosis. Local. Regional. Spinal.* Chicago: S B D. hour 1939
38. HARGEN J R, CHRISTOFFERSON E A and STOKES A J. Epidural Anesthesia. A Consideration of 1000 Cases. *Am J Surg.* 52:24-31 1941
39. HEISSIG I. Epidural Anesthesia. *California & West Med.* 45:316-319 1937
40. DAWKINS C J, MASSEY. Discussion on Epidural Spinal Block. *Proc Roy Soc Med.* 35:299-306 1945
41. SHAW C E. Epidural Anesthesia for Perineal Prostatectomy. An Experimental and Clinical Study With Report of 100 Consecutive Cases. *J Urol.* 15:219-265 1926
42. ABADIAN J. Epidural Segmental Anesthesia with Intracaine. *Anesthesiology.* 4:372-384 1943
43. DENCKE K. Die Epiduralanästhesie in der Chirurgie. *Zentralbl. Chir.* 64:130-132 1937
44. DUTTMANN G. Die epidurale segmentäre Anästhesie. *Zentralbl. Chir.* 68:1530-1535 1941
45. GOEPFEL H. Die Epiduralanästhesie in der Chirurgie. *Chirurg.* 15:134-144 1943
46. BROMAGE P R. *Spinal Epidural Analgesia.* Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins Co. 1954
47. WILKINSON R L, KNAUER J and LARSON R K. Postural Shock in Pregnancy. *California Med.* 82:159-162 1955
48. BONICA J J. Personal communication
49. OWEN J J. Personal communication
50. EVANS F T. Continuous Intravenous Adrenalin in Spinal Anesthesia. *Lancet.* 1:15-17 1944
51. HALL B. Recovery of a Patient in Prolonged Shock After Arterenal Therapy. *JAMA.* 157:653-654 1955

- 16 BUNCH J C and HARRISON T R The Effects of Spinal Anesthesia on the Cardiac Output *Arch Surg* 21 330 332 1930
- 17 HEYMANS C BOUCLAERT J J and BERT P Mécanisme du Collapsus Circulatoire. Influences des Traumatismes et de la Rachianesthésie sur les Réflexes Circulatoires Sino-carotidiens *Compt rend Soc de biol* 112 714 716 1933
- 18 SMITH H W ROSENSTINE E A GOLDRING W CHASIS H and RANGES H A The Effects of Spinal Anesthesia on the Circulation in Normal Unoperated Man with Reference to the Autonomy of the Arterioles and Especially Those of the Renal Circulation *J Clin Investigation* 18 319 341 1939
- 19 NICHOLSON M J Complications of Spinal Anesthesia and Their Treatment Third Biennial Western Conference on Anesthesiology 92 106 Hollywood Convention Reporting Company 1953
- 20 NICHOLSON M J and JENSEN F C Importance of Blood Volume Studies in Management of Surgical Patients *Anesth & Analg* 31 27-35 1952
- 21 CLARK J H NELSON W LYONS C MAYERSON H S and DECAVIS I Chronic Shock the Problem of Reduced Blood Volume in the Chronically Ill Patient Part I—Concept of Chronic Shock *Ann Surg* 125 618 646 1947
- 22 GREGERSON M I A Practical Method for the Determination of Blood Volume with the Dye T 1824 A Survey of the Present Basis of the Dye Method and Its Clinical Applications *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 1266 1286 1914
- 23 SEEVEHS M H and WATERS R M Respiratory and Circulatory Changes During Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 99 961 968 1932
- 24 COLLINS V J *Principles and Practices of Anesthesiology* Philadelphia, Lea and Febiger 1952
- 25 SOFFER A and SWEET R B Effect of Position Changes of the Lower Extremities During Vasomotor Block *JAMA* 151 1191 1194 1952
- 26 ECKENHOFF J C Anesthesia for Caesarean Section Presented at Fifth Refresher Course Lectures of the American Society of Anesthesiologists Annual Meeting 1954
- 27 FOSTER C A O'MULLANE E J CASKELL I and CIRURCHILL DAVIDSON H C Chlorproazine A Study of Its Action on the Circulation in Man *Lancet* 2 614 617 1954
- 28 COTTEN M DE V BROWN J M and KRONEN P S Heart Force Responses to Pressor Amines During Hypotension Produced by Hexamethonium *Anesthesiology* 15 128-133 1951
- 29 GOODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Company 1955
- 30 STARR I GAMBLE C J MARCOLIES A DONAL J S JR JOSEPH N and EAGLE E A Clinical Study of the Action of Ten Commonly Used Drugs on Cardiac Output Work and Size on Respiration on Metabolic Rate and on Electrocardiogram *J Clin Investigation* 16 789 823 1937
- 31 KREUL W and OUTH O S Treatment of Hypotensive States of Spinal Analgesia with Diluted Neosynephrin Solution *Anesthesiology* 12 455-464 1951
- 32 KAYES A and VOLANTE A The Cardio-circulatory Effects in Man of Neo-synephrine *J Clin Investigation* 21 118 1942
- 33 INESCOTT F (1 a hydroxy B methylamino-3 hydroxy ethyl benzene hydrochloride) Cited in Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 34 DEBELLE E J and DEUS P B The Pharmacology of B (2 5 dimethoxyphenyl) B hydroxyisopropylamine hydrochloride *J Pharm Exper Ther* (To be published) Cited in Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A 4 r
- 35 KING B D and DUFFRS R D The Use of Methoxamine for Maintenance of the Circulation During Spinal Anesthesia *Surg Gynec & Obst* 90 659 665 1950
- 36 FASSETT D W and TAUBE H Unpublished data cited by Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 37 HESTLER E M and RUBEN J E Unpublished work cited by Burroughs Wellcome & Co Brochure A-4 r
- 38 DODD H and PRESCOTT F The Use of Methedrine in Surgical Operations Clinical Study on an Effective Pressor Drug *Surg Gynec & Obst* 77 645 656 1943
- 39 ANDERSON B M The Use of Methedrine as a Vasoconstrictor with Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 7 19 1946
- 40 DUFFRS R D and DENING M V N An Evaluation of Certain Drugs Used to Maintain Blood Pressure During Spinal Anesthesia—Comparison of Ephedrine Laredone Pitressin—Ephedrine and Methedrine in 2500 Cases *Surg Gynec & Obst* 83 312 322 1946
- 41 ROMAN VEGA D A and ADRIANI J Clinical Experiences with 2 Methyl Amino-Heptane as a Vasopressor for Spinal Anesthesia A Preliminary Study *Anesth & Analg* 23 248 254 1944
- 42 JACKSON D E The Pharmacologic Action of 2 Methylaminoheptane (EA 1) *J Lab & Clin Med* 29 150 167 1944

and the physiological effects of these drugs may be dissipated soon after the patient returns to his room. The removal of these supports of the peripheral vascular system prior to the dissipation of the effects of the local anesthetic drug may result in severe hypotension.

Discontinuation of Intravenous Administration of Fluids—Usually prior to or during major surgical procedures intravenous fluids are started which may temporarily compensate for a relative decrease in blood volume caused by vasodilatation from a regional block or an actual decrease in blood volume caused by hemorrhage. When the patient is returned to his room the intravenous infusion may be purposely discontinued or the intravenous needle may come out of the vein and may not be replaced either because the physician feels that ample fluid has been given or because no one is available to restart it. If the body excretes or metabolizes the previously administered fluids before the physiological effects of the local anesthetic drug have disappeared, hypotension may result.

Rapid Changes in Position—When vasodilatation following the paralysis of portions of the sympathetic nervous system occurs and the patient is placed on the operating table in the desired position the body may compensate adequately and maintain the blood pressure. If however after surgery the patient is moved rapidly and roughly from the operating table to the stretcher or from the stretcher to the bed a severe hypotension which may or may not respond to treatment may result.² In some instances rapid changing of position has resulted in death.³ Hypotension from rapid changes in position has been noted with general as well as regional anesthesia but it seems to occur more readily after regional block procedures which paralyze a large portion of the nervous system.

Soffer and Sweet³ state in their summary, "Significant gravitational movement of blood in the legs occurs following minor position shifts during the state of vasomotor paralysis produced by certain autonomic blocking drugs high or low spinal anesthesia, and to

a lesser extent during thiopental sodium [Pentothal] anesthesia. Depression or elevation of the lower extremities may therefore be utilized to lower or raise the subject's blood pressure as the situation demands. One must however, be constantly aware of the drastic circulatory changes that may rapidly ensue if these position shifts are produced or resolved suddenly and without continuous observation. Three cases are described that illustrate the blood pressure changes that may occur during spinal anesthesia as a result of the assumption or resolution of the lithotomy position. The fatal outcome of case 3 was directly related to such a postural shift of the lower extremities."

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of hypotension from a spinal block or an epidural block are the same regardless of when they occur (see Chapter 15 page 143).

PROPHYLAXIS

To prevent hypotension from developing in the immediate postoperative period the following precautions should be observed.

Discontinue Oxygen Administration via the Anesthetic Machine During the Operation—One half to three fourths of an hour before the end of surgery the patient should be allowed to breathe room air and should be carefully observed to see if his blood pressure drops. The purpose of disconnecting the anesthetic machine from the patient is to evaluate the extent to which carbon dioxide accumulation may have helped maintain the blood pressure. If hypotension develops after such a test appropriate steps to correct it and maintain adequate blood pressure in the postoperative period may be formulated.

Watch Patient Carefully When Vasoconstrictor Drug Therapy Is Suspended—If a patient has been receiving a vasoconstrictor drug intravenously or intramuscularly to maintain his pressure during surgery this type of therapy should not be suddenly withdrawn

Hypotension from Spinal and Epidural Block in the Immediate Postoperative Period

IF PROPHYLACTIC measures are not taken prior to returning the patient to his room hypotension in the immediate postoperative period may occur following high spinal epidural blocks and intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) blocks but it occurs infrequently following other types of regional block.

ETIOLOGY

The main reason for postoperative hypotension following such blocks as spinal etc is paralysis of the nerves in the blocked area with consequent vasodilatation and pooling of blood in this anesthetized area. During surgery this hypotension may be compensated for by administering oxygen vasoconstrictor drugs minimizing changes in position of the patient and replacement therapy i.e. intravenous infusions and blood transfusions. However at the completion of surgery the following often take place (1) the oxygen via the anesthetic machine is stopped (2) the intravenous administration of the vasoconstrictor drug is discontinued or a previous intramuscular dose of this type of drug has dissipated itself (3) the intravenous fluid therapy is discontinued and (4) sudden changes in position occur such as moving the patient from the operating table. Any one of these factors or a combination of more than one may result in hypotension in the immediate postoperative period.

Discontinuation of Oxygen via an Anesthetic Machine—When the intercostal nerves and a large part of the sympathetic nervous

system are paralyzed by a regional block tidal hypoxia from the decreased respiratory function and stagnant hypoxia from the pooling of blood result. To compensate for this the patient is often given oxygen via the anesthetic machine. And, in many instances even though the regional anesthesia is satisfactory Pentothal (thiopentobarbiturate) anesthesia may be given when the procedure is prolonged or the patient becomes restless. Both the administration of oxygen via the machine and the Pentothal narcosis unless carefully managed tend to result in accumulation of carbon dioxide in the alveoli and thus an abnormally high blood level of carbon dioxide although the oxygen saturation of the blood may be within normal limits. This carbon dioxide accumulation may partially maintain or raise the blood pressure. At the end of surgery when the machine is disconnected from the patient this excess of CO_2 may be eliminated and with the supporting effect of the carbon dioxide removed hypotension may result. The mechanism of this type of low blood pressure is probably the same as that responsible for cyclopropane shock.¹

Discontinuation of Vasoconstrictor Drug Therapy—Often a Neosynephrine (phenylephrine) or Levophed (norepinephrine) drip which has been running during the surgical procedure to maintain the blood pressure will be discontinued at the end of surgery for fear that it may run too fast in the immediate postoperative period. Vasoconstrictor drugs are also often given intramuscularly during the operation to prevent falls in blood pressure.

and the physiological effects of these drugs may be dissipated soon after the patient returns to his room. The removal of these supports of the peripheral vascular system prior to the dissipation of the effects of the local anesthetic drug may result in severe hypotension.

Discontinuation of Intravenous Administration of Fluids—Usually prior to or during major surgical procedures intravenous fluids are started which may temporarily compensate for a relative decrease in blood volume caused by vasodilatation from a regional block or an actual decrease in blood volume caused by hemorrhage. When the patient is returned to his room the intravenous infusion may be purposely discontinued or the intravenous needle may come out of the vein and may not be replaced either because the physician feels that ample fluid has been given or because no one is available to restart it. If the body excretes or metabolizes the previously administered fluids before the physiological effects of the local anesthetic drug have disappeared hypotension may result.

Rapid Changes in Position—When vasodilatation following the paralysis of portions of the sympathetic nervous system occurs and the patient is placed on the operating table in the desired position the body may compensate adequately and maintain the blood pressure. If however after surgery the patient is moved rapidly and roughly from the operating table to the stretcher or from the stretcher to the bed a severe hypotension which may or may not respond to treatment may result.³ In some instances rapid changing of position has resulted in death.³ Hypotension from rapid changes in position has been noted with general as well as regional anesthesia but it seems to occur more readily after regional block procedures which paralyze a large portion of the nervous system.

Soffer and Sweet³ state in their summary "Significant gravitational movement of blood in the legs occurs following minor position shifts during the state of visomotor paralysis produced by certain autonomic blocking drugs: high or low spinal anesthesia and to

a lesser extent during thiopental sodium [Pentothal] anesthesia. Depression or elevation of the lower extremities may therefore be utilized to lower or raise the subject's blood pressure as the situation demands. One must, however, be constantly aware of the drastic circulatory changes that may rapidly ensue if these position shifts are produced or resolved suddenly and without continuous observation. Three cases are described that illustrate the blood pressure changes that may occur during spinal anesthesia as a result of the assumption or resolution of the lithotomy position. The fatal outcome of case 3 was directly related to such a postural shift of the lower extremities."

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of hypotension from a spinal block or an epidural block are the same regardless of when they occur (see Chapter 15 page 143).

PROPHYLAXIS

To prevent hypotension from developing in the immediate postoperative period the following precautions should be observed.

Discontinue Oxygen Administration via the Anesthetic Machine During the Operation—One half to three fourths of an hour before the end of surgery the patient should be allowed to breathe room air and should be carefully observed to see if his blood pressure drops. The purpose of disconnecting the anesthetic machine from the patient is to evaluate the extent to which carbon dioxide accumulation may have helped maintain the blood pressure. If hypotension develops after such a test appropriate steps to correct it and maintain adequate blood pressure in the postoperative period may be formulated.

Watch Patient Carefully When Vasoconstrictor Drug Therapy Is Suspended—If a patient has been receiving a vasoconstrictor drug intravenously or intramuscularly to maintain his pressure during surgery this type of therapy should not be suddenly withdrawn

Hypotension from Spinal and Epidural Block in the Immediate Postoperative Period

IF PROPHYLACTIC measures are not taken prior to returning the patient to his room hypotension in the immediate postoperative period may occur following high spinal epidural blocks and intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) blocks but it occurs infrequently following other types of regional block.

ETIOLOGY

The main reason for postoperative hypotension following such blocks is spinal, etc. is paralysis of the nerves in the blocked area with consequent vasodilatation and pooling of blood in this anesthetized area. During surgery this hypotension may be compensated for by administering oxygen, vasoconstrictor drugs minimizing changes in position of the patient and replacement therapy i.e. intravenous infusions and blood transfusions. However at the completion of surgery the following often take place (1) the oxygen via the anesthetic machine is stopped (2) the intravenous administration of the vasoconstrictor drug is discontinued or a previous intramuscular dose of this type of drug has dissipated itself (3) the intravenous fluid therapy is discontinued and (4) sudden changes in position occur such as moving the patient from the operating table. Any one of these factors or a combination of more than one may result in hypotension in the immediate postoperative period.

Discontinuation of Oxygen via an Anesthetic Machine—When the intercostal nerves and a large part of the sympathetic nervous

system are paralyzed by a regional block tidal hypoxia from the decreased respiratory function and stagnant hypoxia from the pooling of blood result. To compensate for this the patient is often given oxygen via the anesthetic machine. And in many instances even though the regional anesthesia is satisfactory Pentothal (thiobarbiturate) anesthesia may be given when the procedure is prolonged or the patient becomes restless. Both the administration of oxygen via the machine and the Pentothal narcosis unless carefully managed tend to result in accumulation of carbon dioxide in the alveoli and thus an abnormally high blood level of carbon dioxide although the oxygen saturation of the blood may be within normal limits. This carbon dioxide accumulation may partially maintain or raise the blood pressure. At the end of surgery when the machine is disconnected from the patient this excess of CO_2 may be eliminated and with the supporting effect of the carbon dioxide removed hypotension may result. The mechanism of this type of low blood pressure is probably the same as that responsible for cyclopropane shock.¹

Discontinuation of Vasoconstrictor Drug Therapy—Often a Neosynephrine (phenylephrine) or Levophed (norepinephrine) drip which has been running during the surgical procedure to maintain the blood pressure will be discontinued at the end of surgery for fear that it may run too fast in the immediate postoperative period. Vasoconstrictor drugs are also often given intramuscularly during the operation to prevent falls in blood pressure.

Oxygen Want Secondary to the Hypotension Following Spinal or Epidural Block

NOT INFREQUENTLY respiratory embarrassment (hypoxia) and occasionally respiratory arrest (anoxia) occur when a purposely administered spinal or epidural block procedure is executed but seldom occur during local infiltration or peripheral nerve block.

In the author's opinion oxygen want during spinal and epidural block procedures is secondary to hypotension. It must be emphasized that the hypotension precedes the oxygen want although as the anesthesia rises and paralyzes the intercostal and phrenic nerves the resultant decrease in tidal exchange exerts an additive effect. Since hypotension and oxygen want may coexist the physician must be cognizant of the cause and treatment of both so that they may be treated simultaneously therefore this chapter and the preceding two should be considered together.

Before examining oxygen want from spinal and epidural nerve blocks the seven types of hypoxia as defined in Table V page 42 and the difference between the types of oxygen want which may occur in regional block procedures as shown in Table VI page 46 must be clearly understood (see Chapter 4, page 42).

ETIOLOGY

In general hypoxia or anoxia following a spinal or epidural block is primarily the result of hypotension with or without paralysis of the nerves controlling the muscles of respiration. Other factors which may occasion

all result in a hypoxia during these block procedures are (1) a systemic toxic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug administered prophylactically, (2) a systemic toxic reaction to the local anesthetic drug (3) injudicious premedication or (4) a combination of these. It must also be remembered that these regional blocks are often selected for patients with a poor physical status i.e. those suffering from cardiac disease pulmonary disease thyroid diseases etc. and that such a disease may have produced chronic hypoxia prior to the induction of the anesthetic. Therefore preexisting diseases which produce oxygen want may be termed "contributing factors" in that they accentuate the hypoxia which may result from a regional nerve block procedure.

Hypotension With or Without Paralysis of the Nerves Controlling the Muscles of Respiration Following Spinal or Epidural Blocks—Hypoxia from a spinal or epidural block may be due to hypotension from vascular dilatation and pooling of blood (straggant hypoxia) to a paralysis of the intercostal muscles and diaphragm (tidal hypoxia) or to a combination of these. While hypotension is the initial and principal cause in the author's opinion the statement of Seever and Waters on page 139 must be evaluated. The direct depressing effect on the respiratory and cardiovascular centers in the medulla must also be considered when a high or total spinal anesthesia follows the inadvertent subarachnoid injection of too massive a volume or too high a concentration of a local anesthetic

when he is returned to his room. Whenever vasoconstrictor drug therapy is withdrawn and particularly if the effects of the local anesthetic drug have not worn off, the patient must be carefully observed. Here again when a drip of a vasoconstrictor drug is being given during surgery, it is best to discontinue the drip a half to three quarters of an hour prior to the end of surgery as a test. Then if blood pressure falls, measures to support it in the postoperative period may be undertaken.

Do Not Discontinue Intravenous Fluid Therapy Without Careful Observation of the Patient—Normal saline solutions, 5% dextrose in distilled water and other physiological solutions may temporarily increase the blood volume and sustain blood pressure if run rapidly. When fluids are suddenly discontinued, the patient's pressure may drop, especially while the anesthetic remains effective. Therefore, when fluid therapy is discontinued, the patient must be carefully observed for at least one to two hours.

Move Patient Carefully—Under no circumstances should patients who have had anesthesia be moved rapidly. Those patients who are in serious condition following surgery should be moved directly from the operating

table to the bed in order to reduce the number of times they must be moved. Jerking and pushing a patient is not to be tolerated and adequate help should be available when positioning and transporting a patient.

TREATMENT

The treatment of hypotension is the same regardless of why it occurs (see Chapter 15, page 146). *However, when hypotension develops in the postoperative period, the possibility that hemorrhage is causing it must be particularly kept in mind.*

REFERENCES

1. BUCKLEY J. J., VAN BERGEN F. H., DOBKIN A. B., BROWN E. B., JR., MILLER F. A. and VARCO R. L. Postanesthetic Hypotension Following Cyclopropane: Its Relationship to Hypoxemia. *Anesthesiology* 14:226-237, 1953.
2. DRIFTS R. D. The Immediate Decrease in Blood Pressure Seen at the Conclusion of Cyclopropane Anesthesia: Cyclopropane Shock. *Anesthesiology* 8:15-35, 1947.
3. SOFFER A. and SWEET R. B. Effects of Position Changes of the Lower Extremities During Vasomotor Block. *JAMA* 151:1191-1194, 1953.

weakness, delirium and coma. The vomiting center is stimulated by the hypoxia, vomiting is an early symptom followed later by retching and vomiting. Muscular incoordination and twitching are relatively early signs of hypoxia which progress to convulsions as severe hypoxia develops, but muscular relaxation usually occurs prior to death, probably because of central nervous system depression.

It must be remembered that heavy premedication will often hide or mask these signs and symptoms, and thus in addition to the fact that cyanosis may not occur to indicate oxygen want (see page 162) accounts for the fact that if a patient is not carefully attended during regional block anesthesia—particularly a spinal block or an epidural block—death may occur from hypotension and hypoxia without any warning signs or symptoms. Instances have occurred where the surgeon or obstetrician acting as his own anesthesiologist has given what he thought was a "low" spinal left the patient unattended, went to scrub, returned gowned and gloved, himself draped the patient only to find when making the incision that the patient did not bleed and was dead.

Respiratory Manifestations—There is usually no change in the respiratory rate or depth when hypoxia starts to develop from hypotension but as it becomes more severe trichypnea occurs. If oxygen want is allowed to progress the tachypnea is usually followed by a depression in rate and depth of respiration and thence by cessation. Dyspnea a subjective sensation may or may not develop. Corroe and Driggs¹¹ point out that the degree of dyspnea varies with the individual and they state "The respiratory minute volume at which dyspnea appears is about a third to a half of the total volume of air that an individual can breathe at the time by maximal voluntary effort."

On the contrary if oxygen want develops from overstimulation following the administration of a prophylactic dose of a vasoconstrictor drug the patient's respirations usually increase in response to the drug.

Cardiovascular Manifestations—In most instances when a mild degree of oxygen want

is produced following spinal and epidural block in a normal and healthy individual the blood pressure and pulse rate show little or no change. Low blood pressures usually return to normal in a short period of time as the compensatory mechanisms of the body come into play or the drug is detoxified. This mild type of oxygen want often goes unnoticed unless a careful check for it is made. In patients with coronary heart disease anginal pain may be a symptom of moderate degrees of oxygen insufficiency.

Following a spinal or epidural block, the marked changes in blood pressure and pulse rate response depend on the cause of the oxygen want.

Hypotension from Spinal or Epidural Block—When severe oxygen want develops following the onset of a high spinal or epidural anesthetic there is no momentary initial rise in blood pressure and pulse—the blood pressure falls precipitously at first and the pulse rate increases. If at this time adequate corrective measures are not taken and if the patient's compensatory mechanism does not function cardiac failure and death may ensue.

Note that in spinal and epidural block procedures where moderate or severe hypotension is most often the principal cause of oxygen want the slow, full and bounding pulse which so often accompanies moderate to severe primary oxygen want is seldom present (see Table VI, page 46).

Systemic Toxic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs—Normally this type of reaction is not associated with spinal anesthesia because only small amounts of the local anesthetic drugs are employed. It may occur during an epidural block where a large amount of the local anesthetic drug is injected. When a systemic toxic reaction results and its onset is slow blood pressure and pulse may rise initially reflecting the stimulatory phase of the reaction and then fall as the reaction progresses to the depression phase. This initial rise is the opposite of that seen following hypotension from spinal or epidural block. However if the systemic toxic reaction has a rapid onset or is not recognized until the stimulatory phase of the reaction has passed the

agent since in this situation a high concentration of the drug reaches the cranial cerebrospinal fluid

Systemic Toxic Reactions to Vasoconstrictor Drugs Administered Prophylactically—In these cases the hypoxia is caused by overstimulation of the central nervous system and by an increased metabolic rate of the body both of which are caused by the vasoconstrictor drug. It is a demand type of hypoxia and is primarily the result of oxygen want and is not associated with hypotension.

Systemic Toxic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs—The hypoxia which results from this type of reaction is usually attributed to the depression of the respiratory center in the medulla which follows overstimulation.^{1, 2} However in light of recently published articles the question arises as to whether or not in some of these cases the hypoxia may not be secondary to myocardial depression and/or peripheral vascular collapse (see Chapter 1 page 16).^{3, 9} The hypoxia following this type of reaction could then be classified tidal as well as stagnant or a combination of these.

It should be noted that this type of reaction may occasionally follow an epidural block where large volumes of local anesthetic solutions are employed but seldom accompanies spinal anesthesia where relatively small doses of the local anesthetic agents are injected.

Premedication—Excessive doses of barbiturates or opiates drugs which depress respiratory depth and rate respectively may result in tidal hypoxia. Even if they do usually no problem develops unless further hypoxia is produced by a high spinal etc.

Contributing Factors—Often regional blocks are given as the anesthesia of choice to the patient with a poor physical status who has a chronic hypoxia from diseases such as tuberculosis (alveolar hypoxia) emphysema (tidal and alveolar hypoxia) anemia (hemoglobin hypoxia) hyperthyroidism (demand hypoxia) or hyperpyrexia (demand hypoxia). It has also been the anesthesia of choice in high altitudes (atmospheric hypoxia) and in patients with drug poisoning (histotoxic hypoxia) because of the difficulties involved in

administering inhalation anesthetics under these conditions. When administering a regional block in a situation where any one of these problems exists it must be realized that hypoxia from hypotension or paralysis of the muscles of respiration caused by the anesthetic procedure will automatically accentuate tissue hypoxia and may result in obvious respiratory distress. If the physician is not cognizant of this possibility and does not take steps to alleviate the hypoxia an occasional patient—especially the geriatric case with advanced arteriosclerosis—may suffer irreversible tissue damage—particularly of the brain. Roventine¹⁰ has repeatedly emphasized this possibility. Brain damage of this type may also occur from hypoxia during general anesthesia and is not peculiar to regional block.¹¹

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of oxygen want in regional anesthesia depend on the speed with which the oxygen want develops and the physical status of the patient. If the oxygen want develops rapidly the early signs may be absent and those of advanced severity appear immediately. The physical status of the patient also influences the time of appearance as well as the degree of hypoxia to a considerable extent. The patient with diminished cardiovascular and/or respiratory reserve who is given a spinal or epidural block a procedure which in a healthy normal individual would cause no problem may show the signs of severe hypoxia very early.

In general the following signs and symptoms of oxygen want are listed in the order of their usual appearance. They may progress from one to the next either slowly or rapidly.

Cortical Manifestations—Early in the course of oxygen want the patient may yawn, feel overconfident and show impaired judgment and poor mental concentration. Pugnacity develops, vision is impaired, the patient may complain of a severe headache and anxiety, vertigo and a sense of "air hunger" may follow. If the cause is not corrected the hypoxia progresses to severe oxygen want with

weakness, delirium and coma. The vomiting center is stimulated by the hypoxia; cyanosis is an early symptom followed later by retching and vomiting. Muscular incoordination and twitching are relatively early signs of hypoxia which progress to convulsions as severe hypoxia develops, but muscular relaxation usually occurs prior to death, probably because of central nervous system depression.

It must be remembered that heavy premedication will often hide or mask these signs and symptoms and thus in addition to the fact that cyanosis may not occur to indicate oxygen want (see page 162) accounts for the fact that if a patient is not carefully attended during regional block analgesia—particularly a spinal block or an epidural block—death may occur from hypotension and hypoxia without any warning signs or symptoms. Instances have occurred where the surgeon or obstetrician acting as his own anesthesiologist has given what he thought was a "low" spinal left the patient unattended went to scrub, returned gowned and gloved himself, draped the patient only to find when making the incision that the patient did not bleed and was dead.

Respiratory Manifestations—There is usually no change in the respiratory rate or depth when hypoxia starts to develop from hypotension but as it becomes more severe tachypnea occurs. If oxygen want is allowed to progress the tachypnea is usually followed by a depression in rate and depth of respiration and thence by cessation. Dyspnea, a subjective sensation may or may not develop. Comroe and Dripps¹¹ point out that the degree of dyspnea varies with the individual and the state. "The respiratory minute volume at which dyspnea appears is about a third to a half of the total volume of air that an individual can breathe at the time by maximal voluntary effort."

On the contrary, if oxygen want develops from overstimulation following the administration of a prophylactic dose of a vasoconstrictor drug the patient's respirations usually increase in response to the drug.

Cardiovascular Manifestations—In most instances when a mild degree of oxygen want

is produced following a spinal and epidural block in a normal and healthy individual the blood pressure and pulse rate show little or no change. The blood pressures usually return to normal in a short period of time as the compensatory mechanisms of the body come into play or the drug is detoxified. This mild type of oxygen want often goes unnoticed unless a careful check for it is made. In patients with coronary heart disease, anginal pain may be a symptom of moderate degrees of oxygen insufficiency.

Following a spinal or epidural block the marked changes in blood pressure and pulse rate response depend on the cause of the oxygen want.

Hypotension from Spinal or Epidural Block—When severe oxygen want develops following the onset of a high spinal or epidural anesthetic there is no momentary initial rise in blood pressure and pulse—the blood pressure falls precipitously at first and the pulse rate increases. If at this time adequate corrective measures are not taken and if the patient's compensatory mechanism does not function cardiac failure and death may ensue.

Note that in spinal and epidural block procedures where moderate or severe hypotension is most often the principal cause of oxygen want the slow, full and bounding pulse which so often accompanies moderate to severe primary oxygen want is seldom present (see Table VI, page 46).

Systemic Toxic Reactions to Local Anesthetic Drugs—Normally this type of reaction is not associated with spinal anesthesia because only small amounts of the local anesthetic drugs are employed. It may occur during an epidural block where a large amount of the local anesthetic drug is injected. When a systemic toxic reaction results and its onset is slow, blood pressure and pulse may rise initially reflecting the stimulatory phase of the reaction and then fall as the reaction progresses to the depression phase. This initial rise is the opposite of that seen following hypotension from spinal or epidural block. However, if the systemic toxic reaction has a rapid onset or is not recognized until the stimulatory phase of the reaction has passed the

blood pressure and pulse response may be the same as that seen following hypotension. For blood pressure and pulse response comparisons in these different situations see Table XI page 46.

Systemic Reaction from the Vasoconstrictor Drug—When vasoconstrictor drugs are administered prophylactically the patient may show signs and symptoms resembling oxygen want from hypotension. However in these cases the blood pressure is elevated the pulse rapid full and strong.

Appearance of the Patient—Following a spinal block or an epidural block, the appearance of the patient varies with the cause of the oxygen want.

Oxygen Want Secondary to Hypotension—In most instances patients with severe oxygen want secondary to hypotension following spinal and epidural block are evidencing cyanosis which is often a reliable sign during general anesthesia. Local infiltration and peripheral nerve block is usually not present in these instances. The reason for this is easily understood. The appearance of cyanosis is due to the amount of reduced hemoglobin in the capillary blood of the skin. At least 5 grams of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood must be present before cyanosis of the skin is observable. If there is marked peripheral constriction in the unanesthetized area to compensate for the vasodilatation in the blocked area a usual occurrence during hypotension following spinal anesthesia or in epidural block cyanosis of the upper part of the body will not be seen because there is little or no superficial circulation although there may be over 5 grams of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood.

Oxygen Want Secondary to Hypertension—When a systemic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug ensues the blood pressure is raised metabolism increased and this in turn produces signs of oxygen want. Nevertheless the constriction of the peripheral vessels prevents blood from reaching the skin and consequently the patient may appear pale.

Primary Oxygen Want from a Systemic Toxic Reaction to a Local Anesthetic Drug—

Following a systemic toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug after an epidural block cyanosis may develop (see Chapter 4, page 45).

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis of oxygen want following a spinal block or an epidural block is essentially the same as that listed for avoidance of hypotension and consists of prevention of systemic toxic reactions preblock administration of vasoconstrictor drugs, oxygen administration starting of intravenous fluids and the avoidance of high spinal and high epidural blocks in the patient with a poor physical status (see Chapter 15 page 144). One should not overlook the fact that when vasoconstrictor drugs are given prophylactically before block oxygen want may develop from a systemic reaction to that drug (see Chapter 3 page 37).

TREATMENT

When severe oxygen want occurs additional personnel is most helpful. One physician should assume charge of the situation and give directions in an orderly fashion to avoid confusion. In most cases, he should remain at the head of the table maintaining the airway and giving artificial respiration. The starting of intravenous fluids the preparation of vasoconstrictor drugs and their administration should be under his direction but should be performed by his assistants. If cardiac failure occurs it may be necessary for him to delegate the artificial respiration to someone else and perform the manual systole. However if this complication occurs when both anesthesiologist and surgeon are present each should remain at his position—the anesthesiologist to maintain respirations and the surgeon to perform the manual systole.

The treatment of oxygen want following spinal and epidural block depends on the etiology.

Oxygen want following spinal and epidural block is most often associated with hypotension but since it may be caused by a sys-

toxic reaction to either the local anesthetic or a vasoconstrictor drug a definite diagnosis of its cause must be established before automatically instituting therapy. That the patient has had a spinal or epidural anesthetic does not mean that he necessarily suffers from a resulting hypotension. Usually a check of the blood pressure, pulse, respirations, degree of aeration of the lungs and the level of analgesia will give a good clue as to the type of reaction.

Oxygen Want Following Hypotension—When oxygen want is caused by hypotension the hypotension must be immediately corrected as indicated in Chapter 15, page 146. As emphasized in Chapter 15 the starting of an intravenous drip either prophylactically or as soon as the block is completed is imperative to assure a means of introducing drugs intravenously should peripheral vascular collapse ensue. At the same time that these therapeutic necessities are being accomplished any respiratory embarrassment must be corrected.

Clear the Airway—If the patient does not lose consciousness he will in most instances maintain a patent unobstructed airway. However, if the patient becomes unconscious either an oral airway or preferably an endotracheal tube with an inflatable cuff should be inserted. The endotracheal tube with a cuff is emphasized because following correct placement the cuff may be inflated; then if vomiting occurs aspiration with contamination of the respiratory tract will not result. The cuffed endotracheal tube also prevents air from passing down the esophagus and dilating the stomach. Dilatation of the stomach is not an uncommon occurrence if artificial respiration with bag and mask equipment is performed with only an oral airway in place. If this is not observed and treated by the insertion of a Levin tube acute dilatation of the stomach can itself result in death.

If a semi-conscious patient vomits prior to the insertion of a cuffed tracheal tube it is likely that aspiration will occur. This necessitates either the placement of an endotracheal tube and blind tracheal suction or bronchoscopy with removal of fluid and food particles

from the tracheobronchial tree by direct vision. The latter is preferable because large particles of food can be removed and an adequate tracheobronchial toilet can be performed. The bronchoscope should have a side arm for the insufflation of oxygen during the bronchoscopy. It behooves the physician performing regional block procedures to have a laryngoscope and bronchoscope available and to know how to use them (see Chapter 18, page 168).

Immediately following bronchoscopy an endotracheal tube with a cuff should be placed and the cuff inflated. This will prevent further aspiration should vomiting recur. It should also be remembered that the patient who has aspirated is likely to develop a chemical pneumonitis from the acid stomach content. Intensive antibiotic therapy should be given to prevent secondary infection of the damaged lung parenchyma.

Administer Oxygen—If the patient has not lost consciousness and can maintain his own anatomical airway but has a decreased respiratory rate or an altered rhythm, he should be made to breathe 100% oxygen if this is available. If the respirations are extremely shallow and rapid it may be advisable to aid them by rhythmically squeezing the reservoir bag of the oxygen equipment during the inspiratory phase.

If the patient has lost consciousness and has an obstructed airway this should be corrected as described above and in Chapter 18, page 167. Then if respirations are decreased or cease because of paralysis of the intercostal nerves, the phrenic nerves and/or depression of the respiratory center artificial respiration must be instituted immediately and maintained until spontaneous respiration is reestablished. If a machine and/or oxygen are not immediately available (although they should be) artificial respiration may be accomplished by either one of the manual methods, i.e. Sylvester method etc. or mouth to mouth breathing. However, in any case the most satisfactory method of administering artificial respiration is by bag and mask. This may consist of simple pieces of apparatus, i.e.

blood pressure and pulse response may be the same as that seen following hypotension. For blood pressure and pulse response comparisons in these different situations see Table VI, page 46.

Systemic Reaction from the Vasoconstrictor Drug—When vasoconstrictor drugs are administered prophylactically the patient may show signs and symptoms resembling oxygen want from hypotension. However in these cases the blood pressure is elevated, the pulse rapid, full and strong.

Appearance of the Patient—Following a spinal block or an epidural block the appearance of the patient varies with the cause of the oxygen want.

Oxygen Want Secondary to Hypotension—In most instances patients with severe oxygen want secondary to hypotension following spinal and epidural block are evidencing in appearance cyanosis which is often a reliable sign during general anesthesia. Local infiltration and peripheral nerve block is usually not present in these instances. The reason for this is easily understood. The appearance of cyanosis is due to the amount of reduced hemoglobin in the capillary blood of the skin. At least 5 grams of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood must be present before cyanosis of the skin is observable. If there is marked peripheral constriction in the unanesthetized area to compensate for the vasodilatation in the blocked area, a usual occurrence during hypotension following spinal anesthesia or an epidural block, cyanosis of the upper part of the body will not be seen because there is little or no superficial circulation although there may be over 5 grams of reduced hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood.

Oxygen Want Secondary to Hypertension—When a systemic reaction to a vasoconstrictor drug ensues the blood pressure is raised, metabolism increased and this in turn produces signs of oxygen want. Nevertheless the constriction of the peripheral vessels prevents blood from reaching the skin and consequently the patient may appear pale.

Primary Oxygen Want from a Systemic Toxic Reaction to a Local Anesthetic Drug—

Following a systemic toxic reaction to a local anesthetic drug after an epidural block, cyanosis may develop (see Chapter 4, page 45).

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis of oxygen want following a spinal block or an epidural block is essentially the same as that listed for avoidance of hypotension and consists of prevention of systemic toxic reactions, preblock administration of vasoconstrictor drugs, oxygen administration, starting of intravenous fluids and the avoidance of high spinal and high epidural blocks in the patient with a poor physical status (see Chapter 15, page 144). One should not overlook the fact that when vasoconstrictor drugs are given prophylactically before block oxygen want may develop from a systemic reaction to that drug (see Chapter 3, page 37).

TREATMENT

When severe oxygen want occurs additional personnel is most helpful. One physician should assume charge of the situation and give directions in an orderly fashion to avoid confusion. In most cases he should remain at the head of the table maintaining the airway and giving artificial respiration. The starting of intravenous fluids, the preparation of vasoconstrictor drugs and their administration should be under his direction but should be performed by his assistants. If cardiac failure occurs it may be necessary for him to delegate the artificial respiration to someone else and perform the manual systole. However if this complication occurs when both an anesthesiologist and surgeon are present each should remain at his position—the anesthesiologist to maintain respirations and the surgeon to perform the manual systole.

The treatment of oxygen want following spinal and epidural block depends on the etiology.

Oxygen want following spinal and epidural block is most often associated with hypotension but since it may be caused by a sys-

Nausea and Vomiting

NAUSEA or vomiting often accompanies spinal and epidural block but seldom accompanies peripheral nerve block or local infiltration unless a systemic toxic reaction to the local anesthetic drug ensues. When vomiting occurs the outcome may be catastrophic unless the physician has the equipment immediately available to treat the patient and knows how to use it.

ETIOLOGY

Nausea is believed to be caused by stretching of the stomach wall, esophagus or duodenum with tension upon the nerve endings in these structures. Thus it would seem that the stimuli which induce nausea are the same as those which cause visceral pain except that they are lower in intensity.¹

Vomiting is usually the result of stimulation of the vomiting center in the medulla. Nausea may if of sufficient magnitude result in vomiting but there is more than one type of stimulus responsible for vomiting. Best and Taylor¹ state "The mechanism of vomiting involves the coordinated actions of the muscles of the stomach, esophagus and abdominal wall. The act may also be associated with antiperistaltic movements in the intestine. The muscular mechanisms are governed by a center in the medulla which discharges impulses along numerous efferent nerves and may be influenced by afferent impulses arising in the stomach in other viscera or in practically any region of the body. Or the center may be excited by substances conveyed in the blood stream."

While these are the immediate basic physiological causes of nausea and vomiting the

specific stimuli which incite them during regional block procedures are one or a combination of the following:

Hypoxia Following Hypotension—(see Chapters 15, 16 and 17, pages 135, 156 and 159) Since hypotension occurs most frequently following spinal and epidural blocks, nausea and/or vomiting due to hypoxia are most often seen after these regional block procedures.

The Local Anesthetic Agent—When systemic toxic reactions to these drugs occur, nausea and vomiting are frequent (see Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, pages 6 and 33).

The Vasoconstrictor Drug—When these drugs are used prophylactically to avoid the hypotension so often associated with spinal block and epidural block or if a systemic toxic reaction ensues from the vasoconstrictor drug which was incorporated in solutions to prolong the anesthesia, nausea and vomiting occasionally occur (see Chapter 3, page 37).

Traction During the Operation—Traction on the viscera, particularly the esophagus, stomach, gall bladder or duodenum results in stretching of these structures. This stretching causes stimulation of the vagus nerve and the patient may complain of nausea and may vomit.

Premedication—Drugs used preoperatively, particularly the opiates, may cause increased tone of the antral part of the stomach, the pyloric sphincter and the small and large intestine and thus may produce stimuli which cause nausea or vomiting.²

Motion and the Odor of the Operating Room—These may effect the patient before

oxygen tank reducing valve mask and a reservoir bag (see Figure 4 page 25) or involve a complicated piece of machinery such as an anesthetic gas machine or resuscitator. Artificial respiration is maintained at the rate of 16 to 20 respirations a minute. The expired carbon dioxide is eliminated either by interposing a cannister containing soda lime into the system or by frequently emptying the reservoir bag. Saklad¹ states: "In states of Tidal Hypoxia the therapeutic effort is two fold: to increase the partial pressure of oxygen in the inhaled atmosphere and to increase ventilation. Inhalation of high oxygen concentrations alone may not be satisfactory. An increase in ventilation will not only aid in the availability of oxygen but will encourage the elimination of carbon dioxide. It should be emphasized that caution must be exerted so as to eliminate only the excess CO₂ which may result from eliminating it completely."

Stop Convulsions—When convulsions occur from oxygen want only they are usually easily corrected by oxygen administration. *Short acting intravenous barbiturates are in most instances not indicated and may actually be detrimental.* They should be given only if the convulsions are not brought under control after 3 to 5 minutes of effective oxygen administration. If such a situation develops then small doses of intravenous Pentothal (50 to 75 mg) may be administered at 2 to 5 minute intervals until the convulsions cease.

Institute Manual Systole—If cardiac arrest or ventricular fibrillation occurs during a bout of oxygen want resuscitation of the heart as described in Chapter 7 page 74 must be instituted.

Correct Posthypoxia Cerebral Edema—Often following bouts of oxygen want cerebral edema may persist and this should not be ignored. Its signs and symptoms should be recognized and treatment as described in Chapter 7 page 80 instituted.

Oxygen Want Following Hypertension—These cases result from prophylactic administration of vasoconstrictor drugs and are sys-

temic toxic reactions to these drugs. For treatment, see Chapter 3 page 40.

Oxygen Want Following a Systemic Toxic Reaction to the Local Anesthetic Drug—See Chapter 1, page 23 and Chapter 2 page 34 for treatment of such a reaction.

REFERENCES

1. SADOVE M S, WYANT G M, GITTELSON L A and KRETCHMER H E. Classification and Management of Reactions to Local Anesthetic Agents. *JAMA* 143 17 22 1952.
2. GOODMAN L and GILMAN A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed. New York: Macmillan Co. 1955.
3. BECK C S and MAURZ F R. The Control of the Heart Beat by the Surgeon with Special Reference to Ventricular Fibrillation Occurring During Operation. *Ann Surg* 106 525 537 1937.
4. BURSTEIN C. Treatment of Acute Arrhythmias During Anesthesia by Intravenous Procaine. *Anesthesiology* 7 113 121 1946.
5. BURSTEIN C L and ROVENSTINE E A. Aids in Thoracic Surgery. *New York State J Med* 46 2142 2146 1946.
6. CRAUBARD D J and PETERSON M C. *Clinical Uses of Intravenous Procaine*. Publication 73 American Lecture Series. A Monograph in American Lectures in Anesthesiology. Springfield Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1950.
7. STEINHAUS J E. A Comparative Study of the Experimental Toxicity of Local Anesthetic Agents. *Anesthesiology* 13 577 586 1952.
8. BEUTNER R. Vasodilating Action of Some Local Anesthetics. *Anesth & Analg* 27 197 203 1948.
9. ADRIANI J. *The Pharmacology of Anesthetic Drugs* 3rd ed. Springfield Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1952.
10. ROVENSTINE E A. Monday night anesthesia seminars conducted at New York University—Bellevue Medical Center 1947.
11. COMBIE J H JR and DRIPPS R D. *The Physiological Basis for Oxygen Therapy*. Springfield Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1950.
12. SAKLAD M. *Inhalation Therapy and Resuscitation*. Springfield Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953.
13. BARACH A L and ROVENSTINE E A. The Hazards of Anoxia During Nitrous Oxide Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 6 498 504 1945.

quence and may be treated with oxygen and vasoconstrictor drugs instructing the surgeon to stop visceral traction. Dramamine and/or light general anesthesia. On the other hand if vomiting accompanies the nausea a cataplectic situation may develop. The treatment of vomiting depends on whether or not the patient can expel the vomitus. Regardless of which situation exists the patient should be placed in "head-down" position (Trendelenburg) as soon as there is any evidence of nausea and/or vomiting. In this position gravity tends to prevent aspiration of the emesis.

Treatment of the Patient Who Can Expel Vomitus—When nausea, retching and/or vomiting occur in the patient who has the ability to expel the vomitus the treatment of the reason for the vomiting i.e. oxygen want, hypotension, hypertension etc. usually suffices (for specific therapy of these complications see the chapters devoted to these problems).

Often rapid movement of the patient or the administration of intravenous drugs like ergotrate are followed by nausea and vomiting. In these cases there is no marked fall or rise in the blood pressure and the patient's condition is satisfactory except for the nausea and vomiting. Under these circumstances the administration of oxygen and/or the intravenous use of 50 mg (1 cc) of Dramamine will usually prove effective. The use of Dramamine in such cases has been extremely satisfactory at the Mason Clinic.

If the patient has had adequate preanesthetic treatment so that the stomach is empty, small doses (100 to 200 mg) of Pentothal (thiobarbiturate) may be administered to anesthetize the patient lightly and eliminate the retching. However if the patient has not been adequately prepared this is a singularly precarious use of Pentothal for this drug sensitizes the larynx to external stimuli and should the patient regurgitate a severe laryngospasm may develop.

Treatment of Patient Who Cannot Expel Vomitus—On the other hand if the patient cannot expel the vomitus aspiration of stom-

ach contents into the tracheobronchial tree may take place. Rapid and correct therapy is necessary to avoid aspiration or to clear the tracheobronchial tree if aspiration occurs. Otherwise death may result.

Opening the Mouth—If the patient is cooperative this may require nothing more than asking him to do so. On the other hand an instrument may have to be used to accomplish this before the vomitus can be suctioned adequately from the mouth, pharynx, larynx and tracheobronchial tree (Figure 40 page 167).

Clearing the Mouth and Pharynx of Vomitus—This must be accomplished by adequate suction with a large bore instrument. If the patient has not aspirated no effort to visualize the larynx is essential. If aspiration has occurred then the larynx must be visualized and the tracheobronchial tree cleared of vomitus. It may often be difficult to tell whether or not aspiration has occurred.^{18, 19} Therefore it has been our custom to expose the larynx and to suck out the trachea.

Visualizing the Larynx and Clearing the Tracheobronchial Tree of Vomitus—Once the vomitus is cleared from the mouth and

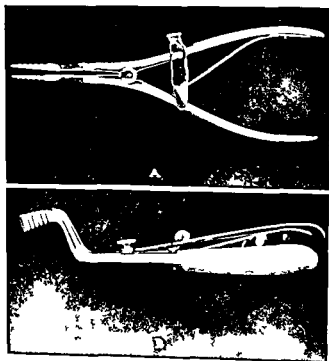


Figure 40 Roser Mouth Gag. This instrument is useful in opening a patient's mouth when the patient will not do so in the light stages of anesthesia. (A) Anterior view. (B) Lateral view.

or during the transportation to surgery or on arrival in the operating room. Motion particularly that which results during changes in speed of an elevator causes tension upon the esophagus and gastric walls and these result in the feeling of nausea.¹ It should be noted that rapid rough moving e.g. lowering the patient from the gurney to the operating table may simulate this elevator like motion.

Nauseous odors such as ether and the so called hospital smell may relax the abdominal wall suddenly which will cause the lower border of the stomach to descend 1 or 2 inches and result in nausea and/or vomiting.¹

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

While nausea usually precedes vomiting either may occur separately. The patient under regional block analgesia may not complain of nausea until retching ensues. This is singularly true in the heavily medicated patient. Therefore careful observation and questioning of the patient is essential throughout the block procedure if the physician is to have warning that the patient is on the verge of vomiting.

PROPHYLAXIS

Of course the most satisfactory way to prevent nausea and vomiting during regional block procedures is to avoid the stimuli which cause it and restrict the oral intake prior to surgery. But this is not always possible regardless of the care exerted by the physician. Therefore the following precautions which apply to any anesthetic procedure regional or general should be observed.

Empty Intestinal Tract Prior to Anesthesia—The stomach at least should be emptied prior to all surgical procedures particularly those in which spinal, epidural or intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) blocks are to be employed. Not to do so is asking for trouble. When the patient is being operated on for intestinal obstruction then an attempt to empty the intestine should also be made.

Administer Drugs Known to Prevent

Nausea and Vomiting—It has been our finding as well as that of others that if Dramamine (β dimethylaminoethyl benzohydroxy ether 8 chlorothecopyllinate) is used pre and postoperatively the incidence of nausea and vomiting during anesthesia and the postoperative period is markedly reduced.^{3,16} Our dosage orders for Dramamine are known at the Mason Clinic as the Dramamine Routine and consist of 50 mg of Dramamine intramuscularly on call to surgery 50 mg intramuscularly on return from surgery and then 50 mg intramuscularly every four hours for four doses.⁴

Pyridoxine hydrochloride (B₆) 100 mg Phenergan hydrochloride (promethazine hydrochloride) 12.5 mg and d desoxyephedrine hydrochloride (Dronal-Desoxyn) 5 mg used in the same fashion as Dramamine did not approximate the reduction of vomiting seen with Dramamine. Mareazine was found to be effective in reducing vomiting by Dent *et al*.¹⁷ However the solution of Mareazine (cyclizine hydrochloride) which was sent us and which was administered in 50 mg doses intramuscularly was so painful on injection that after a few days trial its use had to be suspended. Chlorpromazine (Thorazine Largactil) is not used orally or by injection pre and postoperatively to control nausea and vomiting in our institution because of its unpredictable effect of producing severe hypotensions even in small doses (see page 141).

Have Equipment Available for Aspiration of the Mouth, Pharynx and Tracheobronchial Tree—This includes (1) a means of suction (2) means of opening and keeping the mouth open i.e. teeth separator bite block etc. (3) laryngoscopes (4) suction catheters and tubes (5) bronchoscopes with sidearms for the administration of oxygen and (6) endotracheal tubes (see Figure 3 page 23 and Figure 5 page 26). These instruments should not only be available—knowledge of their use is equally essential.

TREATMENT

Nausea without vomiting is of little conse-

quence and may be treated with oxygen and/or constrictor drugs, instructing the surgeon to stop visceral traction. Dramamine and/or light general anesthesia. On the other hand, if vomiting accompanies the nausea, a cataplectic situation may develop. The treatment of vomiting depends on whether or not the patient can expel the vomitus. Regardless of which situation exists, the patient should be placed in "head-down" position (Trendelenburg) as soon as there is any evidence of nausea and/or vomiting. In this position, gravity tends to prevent aspiration of the emesis.

Treatment of the Patient Who Can Expel Vomitus—When nausea, retching and/or vomiting occur in the patient who has the ability to expel the vomitus, the treatment of the reason for the vomiting (i.e., oxygen want, hypotension, hypertension, etc.) usually suffices (for specific therapy of these complications, see the chapters devoted to these problems).

Often rapid movement of the patient or the administration of intravenous drugs like ergostrate are followed by nausea and vomiting. In these cases, there is no marked fall or rise in the blood pressure and the patient's condition is satisfactory except for the nausea and vomiting. Under these circumstances, the administration of oxygen and/or the intravenous use of 50 mg (1 cc) of Dramamine will usually prove effective. The use of Dramamine in such cases has been extremely satisfactory at the Mason Clinic.

If the patient has had adequate premedication so that the stomach is empty, small doses (100 to 200 mg) of Pentothal (thiopental) may be administered to anesthetize the patient lightly and eliminate the retching. However, if the patient has not been adequately prepared, this is a singularly precarious use of Pentothal for this drug sensitizes the larynx to external stimuli and should the patient regurgitate, a severe laryngospasm may develop.

Treatment of Patient Who Cannot Expel Vomitus—On the other hand, if the patient cannot expel the vomitus, aspiration of stom-

ach contents into the tracheobronchial tree may take place. Rapid and correct therapy is necessary to avoid aspiration or to clear the tracheobronchial tree if aspiration occurs. Otherwise, death may result.

Opening the Mouth—If the patient is cooperative, this may require nothing more than asking him to do so. On the other hand, an instrument may have to be used to accomplish this before the vomitus can be suctioned adequately from the mouth, pharynx, larynx and tracheobronchial tree (Figure 40, page 167).

Clearing the Mouth and Pharynx of Vomitus—This must be accomplished by adequate suction with a large bore instrument. If the patient has not aspirated, no effort to visualize the larynx is essential. If aspiration has occurred, then the larynx must be visualized and the tracheobronchial tree cleared of vomitus. It may often be difficult to tell whether or not aspiration has occurred.^{18, 19} Therefore, it has been our custom to expose the larynx and to suck out the trachea.

Visualizing the Larynx and Clearing the Tracheobronchial Tree of Vomitus—Once the vomitus is cleared from the mouth and

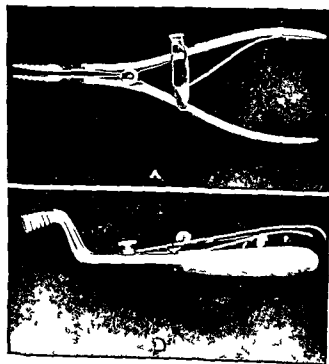


Figure 40 Roser Mouth Gag. This instrument is useful in opening a patient's mouth when the patient will not do so in the light stages of anesthesia. (A) Anterior view. (B) Lateral view.

or during the transportation to surgery or on arrival in the operating room. Motion particularly that which results during changes in speed of an elevator causes tension upon the esophagus and gastric walls and these result in the feeling of nausea.¹ It should be noted that rapid, rough moving e.g. lowering the patient from the gurney to the operating table may simulate this elevator like motion.

Nauseous odors such as ether and the so called hospital smell may relax the abdominal wall suddenly which will cause the lower border of the stomach to descend 1 or 2 inches and result in nausea and/or vomiting.¹

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

While nausea usually precedes vomiting either may occur separately. The patient under regional block analgesia may not complain of nausea until retching ensues. This is singularly true in the heavily medicated patient. Therefore careful observation and questioning of the patient is essential throughout the block procedure if the physician is to have warning that the patient is on the verge of vomiting.

PROPHYLAXIS

Of course the most satisfactory way to prevent nausea and vomiting during regional block procedures is to avoid the stimuli which cause it and restrict the oral intake prior to surgery. But this is not always possible regardless of the care exerted by the physician. Therefore the following precautions which apply to any anesthetic procedure regional or general should be observed.

Empty Intestinal Tract Prior to Anesthesia—The stomach at least should be emptied prior to all surgical procedures particularly those in which spinal, epidural or intercostal splanchnic (celiac plexus) blocks are to be employed. Not to do so is asking for trouble. When the patient is being operated on for intestinal obstruction then an attempt to empty the intestine should also be made.

Administer Drugs Known to Prevent

Nausea and Vomiting—It has been our finding as well as that of others that if Dramamine (B dimethylaminocetyl benzohydryl ether 8 chlorothecopyllinate) is used pre and postoperatively, the incidence of nausea and vomiting during anesthesia and the postoperative period is markedly reduced.^{3,16} Our dosage orders for Dramamine are known at the Mason Clinic as the "Dramamine Routine" and consist of 50 mg of Dramamine intramuscularly on call to surgery, 50 mg intramuscularly on return from surgery and then 50 mg intramuscularly every four hours for four doses.^{4,7}

Pyridoxine hydrochloride (B₆) 100 mg Phenergan hydrochloride (promethazine hydrochloride) 12.5 mg and d desoxyephedrine hydrochloride (Dinalfa Desoxyn) 5 mg used in the same fashion as Dramamine did not approximate the reduction of vomiting seen with Dramamine. Mareazine was found to be effective in reducing vomiting by Dent *et al*.¹⁷ However the solution of Mareazine (cyclizine lactate) which was sent us and which was administered in 50 mg doses intramuscularly was so painful on injection that after a few days trial its use had to be suspended. Chlorpromazine (Thorazine Largactil) is not used orally or by injection pre and postoperatively to control nausea and vomiting in our institution because of its unpredictable effect of producing severe hypotensions even in small doses (see page 141).

Have Equipment Available for Aspiration of the Mouth, Pharynx and Tracheobronchial Tree—This includes (1) a means of suction (2) means of opening and keeping the mouth open i.e. teeth separator bite block etc. (3) laryngoscopes (4) suction catheters and tubes (5) bronchoscopes with side arms for the administration of oxygen and (6) endotracheal tubes (see Figure 3 page 23 and Figure 5 page 26). These instruments should not only be available—knowledge of their use is equally essential.

TREATMENT

Nausea without vomiting is of little conse-

does stress the need of having resuscitation equipment available and more important it points out that in these emergency cases the stomach and if possible, the intestine should be emptied prior to anesthesia with a Levin Ewald or a Miller Abbott tube

REFERENCES

- 1 BEST C H and TAYLOR N B *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* 4th ed Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins Co 1915
- 2 GOODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York, The Macmillan Company 1955
- 3 RUBIN A and METZ RUBIN H The Effect of Dramamine Upon Post Operative Nausea and Vomiting A Controlled Study of 250 Consecutive Surgical Patients *Surg Gynec & Obst* 92 415-418 1951
- 4 MOORE, D C ANDERSON L WHEELER G and SCHEIDT J The Use of Parenteral Dramamine to Control Postoperative Vomiting A Report of 1192 Cases *Anesthesiology* 13 354-360 1952
- 5 HUME R H and WILNER W K JR The Use of Dramamine in Control of Postoperative Nausea and Vomiting *Anesthesiology* 13 302 305 1952
- 6 MILLETT D K and HENRY M O Prevention of Postanesthetic Nausea with Dimenhydrinate (Dramamine R) *Minnesota Med* 34 1090-1097 1951
- 7 MOORE, D C BRIDENBAUGH, L D OWEN C K MACDOUGALL, M P CARRUTHERS H C GREEN J C PICCIONI V F ADAMS P A and LINDBSTROM C A The Intramuscular Use of Dramamine to Control Postoperative Vomiting A Report of 8849 Cases Plus a Double Blind Study of 391 Cases To be published
- 8 ARNORTH H K Prevention and Treatment of Postoperative Vomiting *M Pract* 227 278 279 1952
- 9 ELAINS R F Pre- and Postoperative Care in Proctology *South M J* 46 182 184 1953
- 10 HIFER J H Postanesthetic Nausea and Vomiting *Oral Surg* 5 1213-1222 1952
- 11 JACKSON B R Elective Proctologic Surgery in the Aged *South M J* 46 112-116 1953
- 12 KOONTZ A R Modern Management of Inguinal Hernia *GP* 7 13-55 1953
- 13 WOLFE W B The Use of "Dramamine" in the Prevention of Post operative Nausea and Vomiting *Ann Surg* 136 261 266 1952
- 14 RUDOLPH C J and KULLGER J E Dramamine for Toxic Labyrinthitis Induced by Anesthetic Agent *J Indiana M A* 45 1242-1243 1952
- 15 ARNER A L Control of Postoperative Nausea with the Use of Dimenhydrinate *J Oral Surg* 10 225 226 1952
- 16 BAYUK A J Dramamine in Nausea and Vomiting A Preliminary Report *Bull Mahoning County M Soc* 22 161 1952
- 17 DENT S J RAMACHANDRA V and STEPHEN C R Postoperative Vomiting Incidence Analysis and Therapeutic Measures in 3000 Patients To be published
- 18 STOVE C S and MOORE D C Anesthesia in the Poor Risk Patient *Surg Clin N America* 34 1249 1263 1954
- 19 BERSON W and ADRIANI J Silent Regurgitation and Aspiration During Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 15 644 649 1954
- 20 GRAHAM R R and BROWN W E Spinal Anesthesia in Abdominal Surgery *Ann Surg* 110 863 871 1939

pharynx the larynx can be visualized and either an endotracheal tube or bronchoscope inserted. Then suction by means of a catheter or suction tube may be used in an attempt to remove the aspirated material. My associates and I believe that a peek is worth two finesses and believe that bronchoscopy is the more desirable of the two methods. The bronchoscope should have an arm on it for the continuous administration of oxygen during the bronchoscopy. The use of the bronchoscope in contrast to the endotracheal tube technique allows direct visualization of the tracheobronchial tree and assures removal of large food particles which might obstruct the trachea or bronchi.

Giving Oxygen—As soon as the vomitus is aspirated give oxygen by bag and mask. If the patient has stopped breathing use a positive pressure method of giving oxygen via a closed system. Administering oxygen prior to the removal of vomitus only pushes the material more deeply into the tracheobronchial tree. It should be remembered that once the airway is cleared oxygen may be given through the sidearm of the bronchoscope or the bronchoscope may be removed and an oral airway or an endotracheal tube inserted in its place. If the bronchoscope is removed a cuffed endotracheal tube is preferable to an oral airway because once the cuff is inflated one avoids further contamination of the tracheobronchial tree should vomiting recur. The cuffed endotracheal tube also prevents pumping oxygen into the esophagus and stomach. Acute gastric dilatation alone has been known to cause death.

Administering Antibiotics—Following aspiration of stomach contents the membrane lining the alveoli is usually damaged by the hydrochloric acid in the gastric juices. For this reason antibiotic therapy should be instituted immediately to combat secondary bacterial invasion of the lung parenchyma.

Associated Therapy—If hypotension cardiac failure etc. occur concomitantly with this complication they must be treated as indicated in the chapters of this book dealing specifically with these problems.

COMMENT

General vs Spinal Anesthesia for Intestinal Obstruction—It should be noted that spinal anesthesia has been advocated as the anesthesia of choice in intestinal obstruction probably because the patient retains his laryngeal and tracheal reflexes and therefore theoretically should be able to prevent aspiration if he regurgitates. Graham and Brown¹⁰ even go so far as to state "A surgeon who operates upon a patient suffering with acute intestinal obstruction using inhalation anesthesia if adequate facilities for spinal anesthesia are available is guilty of malpractice." This may or may not be true and it is not the purpose of this section to argue whether spinal or general anesthesia is the procedure of choice in an intestinal obstruction. However when a patient who has a high spinal anesthesia (a level of T₄ or higher) and who is acutely ill (most intestinal obstruction cases are) vomits HE MAY NOT BE ABLE TO EXPEL THE VOMITUS FROM THE PHARYNX. In these cases even though the vocal cords (which form the "watchdog" of the larynx) close the abdominal musculature against which the diaphragm pushes to effect a forceful expiration and cough is paralyzed by the spinal and the pharyngeal musculature and tongue may not be able to expel the amount of vomitus rapidly merely by a spitting action. Therefore as the patient becomes more hypoxic he eventually takes a deep inhalation and although awake may drown in his own vomitus if it is not aspirated by suction. When a conscious patient finds himself in this situation he may become completely uncooperative and as he becomes more irrational from the hypoxia and as the CO₂ accumulates he may resist any attempt either verbal or mechanical to open his mouth so that the suction can be used. This makes the job of reestablishing a patent airway very difficult and if the vomitus cannot be removed the patient may die.

The foregoing does not preclude the use of regional block in intestinal obstruction. The author often employs it. Nevertheless it

(2) decrease in the subarachnoid space (intra-abdominal pressure causes pressure on the vena cava which in turn results in distention of the veins in the epidural space, and thus at least theoretically, decreases the amount of spinal fluid the lumbar part of the subarachnoid space may contain), or (3) unknown factors

Relative Overdosage—Occasionally the dosage the number of milligrams and dilution as well as the site of the lumbar tap may be accurate but other factors, some known and others unknown may result in a high and/or total spinal

Among the known factors are these (1) positioning of the patient (2) failure of the local anesthetic agent to "fix" in 20 minutes (3) speed of injection (4) barbotaging* and (5) the increase in spinal fluid pressures and presumably in its circulation caused by straining coughing deep breathing and labor pains. For example if a steep Trendelenburg position is used immediately following the injection of a hyperbaric solution (a solution heavier than spinal fluid) the anesthetic level may rise to a high level rapidly while with the same dosage without tilt of the table it would in all probability not rise above the desired level. If the solution is injected rapidly or barbotaged—two methods of increasing the circulation of the spinal fluid—the level may also rise to an unexpected height.

It has also been mentioned that in cases where the spinal fluid is diminished because of severe dehydration a normal or small dosage of the local anesthetic solution may result in a high or total spinal. Kamsler *et al*⁶ report several incidences of massive spinal anesthesia in severely dehydrated patients following 15 mg of Metycaine given by the continuous technique of Tuohy. Since dehydration was the only common factor in all

these cases they concluded that (1) the agent injected was not sufficiently diluted by the diminished spinal fluid (2) neural tissue is more susceptible when dehydrated or (3) other indeterminate factors associated with dehydration may have produced the results. However, it is doubtful that diminished spinal fluid will result in massive spinal anesthesia for at the Mason Clinic, the day prior to surgery a myelogram is often performed to confirm the diagnosis of ruptured nucleus pulposus. At this time a reasonably large amount of spinal fluid is removed when an attempt to recover the Pantopneque is made.

TABLE VI

REPORTED INCIDENCE OF HIGH OR TOTAL SPINAL ANESTHESIA FOLLOWING EPIDURAL (PERIDURAL) BLOCK

Site of Injection	Author	Percentage
Caudal region	Moore*	2 in 3500 blocks = 0.06% (In 6 cases spinal fluid was obtained and the needle was readjusted before injection)
	Bonica ²	6 in 4200 blocks = 0.14% (Spinal fluid was noted in an additional 0.7% of cases and the needle was readjusted before injection)
Lumbar or thoracic region	Moore*	0 in 1700 blocks (The dura was punctured in 15 cases the needle was moved to a different interspace and an epidural block was administered)
	Bonica ²	1 in 2290 blocks = 0.04% (The dura was punctured in 75 cases. In 15 cases intentional spinal blocks were executed in remaining 60 cases the needle was moved to a different interspace and an epidural block was administered)
	Selva de Assis ⁷	2 in 1000 blocks = 0.2%
	Bromage ⁴	1 in 1000 blocks (approx) = 0.1%

* Barbotage is the injection of a portion of the prepared local anesthetic solution into the subarachnoid space then the withdrawal of more spinal fluid into the syringe injection of a portion of this resultant mixture withdrawal of spinal fluid again injection and so on decreasing the amount of spinal fluid with drawn each time until finally all of the contents of the syringe have been injected.

High and/or Total Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block Following Spinal and Epidural Block

A HIGH or total spinal will often follow a *purposely* administered spinal or epidural block and therefore should not surprise the physician or result in a catastrophe. The term "high spinal" is often used synonymously with the term "total spinal" although by definition they are different. A "high spinal" occurs when the level of a spinal anesthetic rises to the upper thoracic or cervical dermatomes. On the other hand a total spinal occurs when the local anesthetic agent rises above the level of the foramen magnum.

ETIOLOGY

High or Total Spinal Following an Epidural Block—The most probable reason that a high or total spinal anesthesia may develop after an epidural block is that the dura is inadvertently punctured and the local anesthetic drug is injected into the subarachnoid space. However, Frumin *et al*¹ found that following epidural anesthesia with 2% Novocain in man the concentration of Novocain in the spinal fluid during the anesthesia was about 0.2 mg per cc. This they state is the threshold concentration of this drug for the production of spinal block. They concluded that at least part of the anesthesia during the epidural block technique in man is the result of dural penetration of the Novocain and the subsequent production of spinal anesthesia. According to this work as well as other experiments cited by Bromage² which seem to substantiate the conclusions of Frumin *et al*¹ it is theoretically possible that a high spinal block may follow

an epidural block without puncture of the dura. It is the opinion of the author and his associates from observing approximately 1700 such blocks at the Mason Clinic that even though this possibility exists in reality a high spinal anesthesia seldom if ever follows an epidural block unless the dura is tapped.

The reported incidence of high or total spinal following an epidural block is small (see Table XV page 171).

High or Total Spinal Following Spinal Block—When this complication follows a purposely administered spinal anesthesia the cause is overdosage. However the cause may not always be an *actual* overdosage of the drug but a *relative* overdosage, i.e., the dosage of the local anesthetic solution may be well within normal limits but other factors cause it to rise to an unpredictable height.

Actual (True) Overdosage—In this instance either the amount of the drug, i.e., number of milligrams or the volume to which it is diluted, may be excessive or the volume and the milligrams may be accurate but the site of the spinal tap too high, say at T₁₂ or L₁ instead of L₃ or L₄.

It should be emphasized that whenever the intra abdominal pressure of a patient is increased for example by obesity, pregnancy, abdominal tumors or ascites the dosage of the local anesthetic drug and its solvent must be reduced. Our experiences at the Mason Clinic prove the validity of this consideration although it is difficult to determine whether this effect is due to (1) the flattening of the lumbar curvature (see Figure 45 page 198),

means then of knowing whether the motor roots of the phrenic are affected, or whether some of the anesthetic solution has entered the fourth ventricle and reached the respiratory centre located there."

Circulatory Changes—Initially the blood pressure and pulse may remain normal. As more of the sympathetic nervous system is blocked the blood pressure drops from dilation of the vessels and oxygen want develops first from hypotension and then from paralysis of the muscles of respiration. The pulse becomes more rapid and feeble. If the problem is not treated at this point the blood pressure and the pulse become unobtainable.

Appearance of the Patient—The skin may show little change or the patient may look cadaveric. The mucous membranes particularly the lips are blanched and pale. Cyanosis seldom occurs even if there is 5 gm of unreduced hemoglobin per 100 cc present in the circulating blood because peripheral vasoconstriction in the unanesthetized area (an attempt by the body to maintain adequate circulation) prevents the blood from reaching the subcutaneous tissue and skin of the upper extremities, neck and head.

Death—If the above signs and symptoms of a high or total spinal anesthesia are not immediately recognized and treated cardiac failure and death may ensue.

PROPHYLAXIS

Steps to prevent a high or total spinal after spinal and epidural block depend mostly on which block is being performed. However the one precaution which is applicable to both is the careful and constant observation of the patient after the block. If this precaution is not taken and the block is performed in a nonchalant manner high spinals will go unnoticed more easily and result in death. The physician must at all times check the dermatome level anesthetized, the blood pressure and the pulse. Of course the surgeon cannot properly attend to these himself. Graham and Brown⁸ state, "We cannot too strongly condemn the practice of a surgeon

being his own anesthetist. The technique of administering the anesthetic is important but of no more importance than the preparation of the patient for the anesthetic or the intelligent supervision of the patient throughout the whole operative procedure. Spinal anesthesia is a dangerous anesthetic agent unless administered by an expert anesthetist trained in spinal anesthesia."

Spinal Block—*When Doing a Spinal Block in an Obese or Obstetrical Patient, Reduce the Dosage of the Drug*—In the obese patient the pregnant and other instances where the intra-abdominal pressure is increased the dosage i.e. the amount of the local anesthetic drug and the hypertonic dextrose solution if used, as well as the total volume to which these drugs are diluted with spinal fluid should be reduced by $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the usual dose.¹⁰ In these patients even with these reduced dosages the level of anesthesia rises rapidly and to heights usually unobtainable in the normal adult with such small amounts.

Correct Low Spinal Fluid Pressures—If a spinal tap for diagnosis has been performed (myelography, etc.) prior to surgery or if the patient is markedly dehydrated the patient should be placed on a hydration routine (see Chapter 20, page 184) before a spinal anesthetic is given if time permits. This may facilitate the spinal tap at the time of surgery and may prevent a high spinal anesthesia of the type described by Kimsler *et al*.⁶

Correct Deficiencies in Blood Volume—If possible prior to administration of a spinal anesthetic every effort should be made to see that any deficiencies in blood volume are corrected. A low blood volume may render it extremely difficult to treat the hypotension and oxygen want associated with a high spinal anesthesia (see Chapter 15, page 139).^{11, 12}

Do Not Inject New Local Anesthetic Drugs into the Subarachnoid Space Unless Their Dosages and Physiological Characteristics Have Been Definitely Established by Careful Research—Recently, Articaine (lidocaine) and Cyclaine (hexylcaine) have been introduced for spinal block usage. The author has not used either drug intrathecally but Hoyt¹³

This plus the normal leakage of spinal fluid over the next 12 to 24 hours through the hole made in the dura by the 18 gauge needle often results in the presence of only a minimal amount of spinal fluid at the time spinal anesthesia is given for the surgery. In these cases we have had no trouble with resulting high or total spinal anesthesia although a dose of 10 mg of Pontocaine and 10 cc of 10% dextrose diluted to a volume of 3 cc with spinal fluid is injected at L₅. On the contrary at times we have had difficulty establishing adequate anesthesia in these cases, evidently because of the hypotension of the spinal fluid and some of these patients have had to be reblocked to get a level of analgesia above T₁₁.

In the second category i.e., *the unknown factors* are those physiological properties of a patient's spinal fluid which can not be determined prior to the administration of every spinal anesthetic and include (1) the rate of diffusion of the local anesthetic agent in the cerebrospinal fluid (2) the rate of the circulation or the convection of the cerebrospinal fluid and (3) its alkalinity i.e. the pH of the cerebrospinal fluid.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Whether the high or total spinal anesthesia is a result of a purposely administered spinal anesthesia a misplaced needle during an epidural block or the complication of a peripheral nerve block the signs and symptoms are as follows:

Mental Manifestations—The patient becomes drowsy, does not respond rapidly to questions and may appear to be comatose. Macintosh⁷ states Purdon Martin has pointed out that consciousness is maintained by an awareness of the body and of the environment. Consciousness lapses in the absence of sensory impulses to the cortex. It is clear and the writer [Macintosh] can testify from personal experience that the higher a spinal anesthetic spreads the more the awareness of the body is diminished. The area from which the cortex receives stimuli is

lessened. If the solution spreads to the foramen magnum sensory stimuli from the body are eliminated and the patient remains awake by virtue of the stimuli reaching the cortex from the cranial sensory nerves."

This explains why drowsiness occurs from high spinal anesthesia and why the anesthetic drug must spread into the cerebrospinal fluid above the foramen magnum paralyzing the cranial nerves and brain before the patient becomes unconscious.

Pupils—The pupils retain their normal size constrict or dilate according to the type of premedication. If the high or total spinal anesthesia goes untreated they dilate as death approaches.

Oxygen Want—As the spinal anesthetic rises above the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra the patient may yawn and complain of dyspnea but if he is heavily medicated or if the rise is rapid these symptoms are absent. The usual signs of impending respiratory paralysis are (1) diminution of the intercostal muscle activity with increasing diaphragmatic excursion (2) loss of the spoken voice (3) dilatation of the alae nasae and (4) the use of the accessory muscles of respiration of the neck with dropping of the jaw with each respiration.⁸ When the anesthetic solution rises above the foramen magnum diaphragmatic action usually ceases and the patient becomes unconscious. In the rare case twitching of the muscles around the mouth and eyes may be noted indicating the onset of convulsive movements from hypoxia or anoxia. Macintosh⁷ writes: "It is well known that in local and spinal analgesia sensory nerve fibers are affected before motor. If the concentration of the anaesthetic is low enough there can be sensory loss without motor paralysis. In really high spinal analgesia the skin over the neck (C2-3-4) can be insensitive when the diaphragm supplied by the motor roots of the phrenic (C3-4-5), still functions. When the spinal analgesia is more extensive still the patient loses consciousness. Even now diaphragmatic activity may be enough to sustain life. On the other hand respiration may cease and there is no

On the other hand high or total spinal block following what was intended to be a low spinal epidural or peripheral nerve block is not expected and thus brain damage or death may result.¹⁶ However if the patient has been carefully observed following the block the complication should be recognized early and there should be no cause for alarm excitement or chaos. In most cases neither a high nor total spinal anesthesia should be followed by morbidity or mortality if it is recognized immediately and the physician maintains his composure so that he may institute treatment effectively.

Irrespective of whether a high or a total spinal anesthesia results the treatment is essentially the same and must be instituted immediately and correctly.

Correct the Hypotension—Intravenous fluids should be started and vasoconstrictor drugs given intravenously to prevent or correct hypotension (see Chapter 15 page 147 for specific drug therapy).

Prevent Oxygen Want—Although oxygen want in these cases is initially a result of the hypotension which results from dilatation of the blood vessels in the anesthetized area the treatment of oxygen want must be started simultaneously with efforts to raise the blood pressure because the nerves to the muscles of respiration are also paralyzed. If the patient stops breathing or his effort to aerate his lungs is ineffectual artificial respiration must be instituted immediately. The use of a bag and mask through which oxygen can be given under pressure is the most efficient and effective means of combating oxygen want. If this equipment is not immediately available manual artificial respiration or mouth to mouth breathing should be instituted. *Barbiturates and analeptics are contraindicated! If convulsions occur they are due to hypoxia or anoxia and will be corrected by oxygenation of the patient.*

If nausea and/or vomiting result from hypoxia the airway must be cleared by tracheal suction and/or bronchoscopy prior to administering the oxygen (see Chapter 17 page 167). The most effective way to maintain a patent airway is to insert an endotracheal tube.

Artificial respiration must be maintained until the anesthesia recedes and the patient can maintain his own respirations.

Withdraw Spinal Fluid—If an inadvertent spinal administration following an epidural block is recognized early and the needle is in the subarachnoid space at the time as much spinal fluid as possible should be removed immediately remembering that too rapid withdrawal may result in herniation of the brain stem through the foramen magnum. Withdrawal may prevent a high or total spinal altogether or at least cause it to terminate more rapidly.

However if the needle has been removed (as is usually the case during a purposely administered spinal anesthesia) and a high or total spinal occurs no attempt to remove spinal fluid should be made until the oxygen want and hypotension are under control. To do so is a waste of valuable time and may result in the death of the patient. The value of withdrawing spinal fluid in this situation i.e. after 15 to 30 minutes has elapsed is probably negligible.

Treat Cardiac Failure—If cardiac failure occurs it must be treated as indicated in Chapter 7 page 74.

COMMENT

High Epidural Block—Following a purposely administered epidural block the anesthesia may occasionally reach a high unexpected level and the resulting respiratory depression hypotension and drowsiness resemble the signs and symptoms of a high spinal anesthesia. This is clearly one of the risks of epidural block. Nevertheless since the dura fuses with the inner layer of the periosteum of the skull at the foramen magnum the vital centers in the brain are not bathed by the anesthetic solution and the patient does not become unconscious. Treatment in these cases is essentially the same as for high spinal and consists of preventing oxygen want raising and maintaining blood pressure and waiting for the high level of anesthesia to recede.

reports small doses of Cyclaine heavily weighted with dextrose which have been used to produce either saddle or low spinal analgesia in obstetrics have a tendency to rise for an unpredictable period of time Hoyt found in his obstetrical patients that after 20 minutes he might have skin anesthesia to the tenth or twelfth thoracic dermatomes only to find at the end of the delivery that the sensory level had risen to the fourth thoracic dermatome or higher. This makes it clear that the new local anesthetic drugs for spinal analgesia should be tested only by physicians who are adept in the art of resuscitation. One must not forget Pfeiffer's¹⁴ declaration: "We decline to subject patients to each new venture in the pharmaceutical line."

Adherence to the Technique—At all times the physician must closely adhere to the steps of the specific technique selected. He should be particularly cognizant of whether the solution he is using is hypobaric (lighter than the specific gravity of spinal fluid), isobaric (same specific gravity as the spinal fluid) or hyperbaric (heavier than spinal fluid).

Miscellaneous—Most authors advise against the injection of a local anesthetic solution into the subarachnoid space during a labor pain or other acts of straining which are thought to cause the anesthesia to rise to abnormal heights.¹⁵

Likewise barbotage may not be advisable because it too can cause the anesthesia to rise to an unwanted height.

Epidural Block—*Observe the Needle for Drops of Spinal Fluid Appearing at Its Hub*

—Once the needle is in position for an epidural block and a 2 to 3 cc test dose has been injected, the hub should be carefully watched for 15 to 30 seconds for the appearance of spinal fluid before the remaining contemplated dose of the drug is injected. During an epidural block it is not unusual after the test dose for fluid to drip from the needle. If this does not cease after the first few drops, then the fluid should be allowed to drop on the inside of the physician's forearm. If it is cold, it is probably the anesthetic solution; and if it is warm, it is spinal fluid.¹⁷

Chemical tests may also be of value when fluid drips from the needle. Bromage⁴ states:

The drops can be collected in a test tube containing a reagent which will give a specific colour change when the analgesic solution used is added to it. A colour change in the reagent then indicates that the liquid dripping back is undiluted epidural solution (local anesthetic solution) and not spinal fluid.

For example, procaine can be detected by means of the diazo reaction because it contains an aromatic amine group. A solution of nitrous acid (produced by mixing sodium nitrite with hydrochloric acid) and 2-naphthol changes from yellow to red on the addition of procaine.¹⁸ However, he points out that testing the drops on the forearm is quite adequate and does not require added assistance.¹⁹

Aspirate Frequently—While injecting the local anesthetic solutions during epidural blocking, frequent attempts to aspirate at least in two planes and preferably in four planes should be made to be sure the needle has not been advanced into the subarachnoid space.

Inject a Test Dose—When performing an epidural block, it is always wise to inject a test dose of 2 to 3 cc of the solution of the drug, wait for 5 minutes and then test for unusual or extensive areas of analgesia before injecting the balance of the contemplated dose.¹⁷ If puncture of the dura is signalled by an extensive area of analgesia but one inadequate for the surgical procedure, a small additional amount of the solution may be given in an attempt to obtain the desired height or to be completely safe, the block should be discontinued and the existing analgesia supplemented with a general anesthetic.

TREATMENT

If the physician administering the anesthesia intends to produce a high spinal anesthesia or to induce hypotensive anesthesia and he is carefully watching the patient for sequelae like hypotension and oxygen want, their onset will not cause alarm and morbidity or mortality will seldom result.

Headache

Persistent headaches following regional block analgesia are not always precipitated by the block technique alone i.e. the actual placement of the needle or needles and/or the injection of the local anesthetic solution. Headaches may be arbitrarily classified for the purposes of this book into two groups i.e. those unassociated and those associated with puncture of the dura.

Headaches Not Associated with Puncture of the Dura—This type of headache has the following characteristics: (1) it is felt irrespective of the position of the body; (2) it is not necessarily localized but occurs in the frontal region, the occipital region or the top of the head; (3) its onset varies—it may come at the time of administration of the anesthetic during the operation or in the period of convalescence; (4) it is of mild or moderate intensity, usually easily controlled by mild analgesic drugs such as acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin) and (5) it is subject to remissions between episodes irrespective of body position.

This type of headache is precipitated by mental irritation, mental and physical fatigue, position during operation, climacteric fever, menstruation, anxiety, etc. and usually occurs in patients who are predisposed to headaches (migraine, etc.). It is not related to the anesthetic procedure.

Example I Occasionally following cervical block for a thyroidectomy, the patient may complain of an occipital headache which may persist for one to two days. In such cases the headache should not be blamed on the block procedure; the identical type of headache may follow the use of general anesthesia for this surgical procedure. The headache and neck pain are due to hyperextension of the

neck muscles due to a position used by many surgeons for thyroidectomy.

Example II When a bilateral oophorectomy with or without hysterectomy is performed particularly in a young female, the menopausal symptoms from castration often include an intermittent throbbing headache which may last indefinitely i.e. 1 to 2 years. Often when a headache of this type occurs it is automatically attributed to the anesthetic procedure particularly if a spinal anesthesia has been administered. This assumption is unwarranted.

Frequently headache may occur following general anesthesia, no anesthesia at all or at the climacteric.^{1,2} Maxson³ states "While headache still remains the most frequent after effect [of spinal anesthesia], modern technique has reduced its incidence so that its occurrence is less frequent than after the administration of ether. Other studies substantiate the belief that the incidence of headache is no greater after spinal anesthesia than after inhalation anesthesia but that following spinal block it may be more troublesome."^{1,2} My associates and I have more than once been notified by a surgeon that a patient had a "spinal headache" only to discover from the chart that the patient had not had this type of analgesia but that on the contrary intravenous Pentothal (thiopental) or an inhalation anesthetic had been administered. Arner⁴ cites similar experiences.

Other causes of headache following regional block analgesia which are not caused by dural punctures are those associated with administration of vasoconstrictor drugs. These are noted elsewhere (see Chapter 3, page 38).

Headache Associated with Puncture of the

REMEMBER THAT THE TREATMENT OF A HIGH OR TOTAL SPINAL ANESTHESIA IS ESSENTIALLY THE TREATMENT OF HYPOTENSION AND OXYGEN WANT, AND THE CHAPTERS DEVOTED TO THESE, I E, CHAPTER 15, PAGE 138 AND CHAPTER 17, PAGE 159, SHOULD BE REVIEWED

REFERENCES

- 1 FRUMIN M J SCHWARTZ H BURNS J J
BRODIE B B and PAPPEN E M The Appearance of Procaine in the Spinal Fluid During Peridural Block in Man *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 109 102 105 1953
- 2 BONICA J J Personal communication
- 3 SILVA DE ASSIS A. Peridural Anesthesia *J Urol* 69 586-601 1953
- 4 BROMAGE P R *Spinal Epidural Analgesia* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Co 1954
- 5 MAXSON L H *Spinal Anesthesia* Philadelphia Lippincott Co 1938
- 6 KAMSLER P M DOBBS C H and SOUTH WORTH J L Regional Spinal Anesthesia Utilizing the Continuous Spinal Technique of Tuohy *Anesthesiology* 13 397-406 1952
- 7 MACINTOSH R R *Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Analgesia* Edinburgh E & A Livingstone Ltd 1951
- 8 SAKLAD M *Spinal Anesthesia*. *Am J Surg* 34 519 530 1936
- 9 GRAHAM R R and BROWN W E *Spinal Anesthesia in Abdominal Surgery* *Ann Surg* 110 863 871 1939
- 10 MOORE D C *Regional Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
- 11 NICHOLSON M J Complications of Spinal Anesthesia and Their Treatment Western Conference on Anesthesia Los Angeles Hollywood Convention Reporting Co 1953
- 12 NICHOLSON M J and JENSEN F C Importance of Blood Volume Studies in Management of Surgical Patients *Anesth & Analg* 31 27 35 1952
- 13 HOYT C Personal communication
- 14 PREIFFER G E Regional Anesthesia *M Bull Vet Admin* 12 129 134 1935
- 15 ADRIANI J J *Nerve Block* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- 16 Morbidity Conference A Danger of Epidural Block *Brit J Anaesth* 25 173 174 1953
- 17 MOORE D C BRIDENBAUGH L D OWEN C K MACDOUGALL M P and CARRUTHERS H C Lumbar Epidural Block The Anesthetic of Choice for Caesarian Section? *West J Surg* 61 459-464 1953

Number of Holes in the Dura—The greater the number of holes made in the dura during an attempt at lumbar puncture the more likely is a rapid loss of spinal fluid with consequent headache.

Dehydration—Dehydration prior to or following puncture of the dura results in a lack of body water for the choroid plexus to draw on in forming new cerebrospinal fluid. Therefore the rate of formation of spinal fluid may not equal the leakage via the hole in the dura.

Vertical Position—Early ambulation or elevated positions in bed to facilitate the recovery of a surgical or obstetrical patient before the hole in the dura has closed would automatically augment the leakage of spinal fluid

reduce the volume of the cerebrospinal fluid and result in a subnormal cerebrospinal fluid pressure with the possibility of headache.

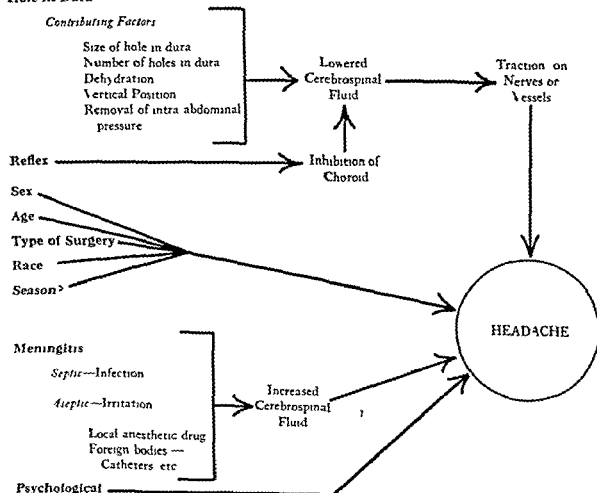
Removal of Intra abdominal Pressure—When intra abdominal pressure is relieved by the removal of a tumor the delivery of a baby or the aspiration of ascitic fluid there may be a decrease in the size of the epidural (peridural) and meningeal veins in the lumbar area which in turn results in an increase in the epidural space. This may allow the dura sac to accommodate more cerebrospinal fluid lowering the intracranial cerebrospinal fluid pressure and lessening its cushioning effect on the brain. This mechanism would be the opposite of that which operates when

TABLE XVI

CAUSES OF SPINAL HEADACHES

(Adapted from Owen et al²⁰)

Hole in Dura



Dura—There are two distinct types of headache which may follow spinal taps one is due to an increase in spinal fluid pressure and the other is caused by a decrease

Headache from Increased Spinal Fluid Pressure—The headache in these cases is a result of the increased formation of spinal fluid or a decreased absorption of it by the leptomeninges. It is not relieved or potentiated by changes in position. This type of headache is most often associated with meningeal irritation and will be discussed under **MENINGITIS** Chapter 22 page 202

Headache from Decreased Spinal Fluid Pressure—This is the type most frequently encountered following puncture of the dura and it may be termed 'hypotensive spinal headache'. *It is the one with which the rest of the material included in this chapter deals*

ETIOLOGY OF HEADACHE FROM HYPOTENSION OF THE SPINAL FLUID

Headache is probably the most common complication of dural tap whether it be performed for spinal (subarachnoid) block or diagnostically.¹⁻⁴⁰ According to articles on spinal anesthesia it occurs in 1 to 30% of the patients receiving this type of anesthesia. The relatively wide variation in its incidence evidently depends on the technique of individual authors and their criteria as to which headache is and which is not caused by the lumbar puncture. Its occurrence has been known since the time Bier⁶ and Corning⁷ first used this technique.

At the present time it is agreed that most spinal headaches are caused by leakage of spinal fluid through the hole in the dura at a rate that exceeds its replacement by the choroid plexus. However sex, age, type of surgery, local anesthetic agent, race, weather, inflammation, dural reflex with spasm of the choroid and mental disturbances have been mentioned as possible contributing factors (see Table XVI page 179).

Leakage of Spinal Fluid—The fact that a low spinal fluid pressure exists in most but not

all patients with postlumbar puncture headache has been definitely established.⁸⁻⁴¹⁻⁴⁵ However the corollary to this statement that patients with a low spinal fluid pressure following lumbar tap have headaches does not follow.⁴⁴ The degree to which the spinal fluid pressure must be lowered to create a headache is not definitely known. However Franksson and Gordh,³⁴ after attempting to measure the amount of fluid escaping through a hole of average size in the dura estimated that as much as 240 cc may be lost in a 24 hour period.

The length of time a headache from leakage of spinal fluid persists depends to some extent on the length of time it takes the dura to heal and it has been shown that a hole in the dura may not heal for six days to two weeks.²⁻³¹⁻⁴⁶ Pool⁴⁶ following myeloscopic examinations of living patients states: 'The myeloscopia has frequently revealed large collections of epidural fluid when ordinary lumbar puncture has been done within the previous two to four days. This demonstrates that leakage of spinal fluid can continue for some time after the ordinary lumbar tap. My associates and I can confirm this statement by Pool from our experience in performing 75% of the myelograms at the Mason Clinic. It is of some interest to note that Schube and LeDrew⁴⁷ believe that spinal headaches occur and persist only if the arachnoid membrane herniates or is pulled through the hole in the dura. The herniation of the arachnoid membrane might explain why the hole in the dura may not close.'

Factors which augment hypotension of spinal fluid are the size of the holes in the dura, the number of holes, dehydration, vertical position and removal of the intra-abdominal pressure.

Size of Hole in Dura—It is obvious that the larger the hole in the dura is the more rapidly spinal fluid escapes and the longer it takes for the dura to repair itself. The lowering of the incidence of spinal headache by the use of the 22 or smaller gauge needles is conclusive evidence of this.⁴⁻¹⁰⁻¹⁵⁻²⁰⁻³¹⁻³⁴⁻⁴⁸⁻⁵¹

Number of Holes in the Dura—The greater the number of holes made in the dura during an attempt at lumbar puncture the more likely is a rapid loss of spinal fluid with consequent headache.

Dehydration—Dehydration prior to or following puncture of the dura results in a lack of body water for the choroid plexus to draw on in forming new cerebrospinal fluid. Therefore, the rate of formation of spinal fluid may not equal the leakage via the hole in the dura.

Vertical Position—Early ambulation or elevated positions in bed to facilitate the recovery of a surgical or obstetrical patient before the hole in the dura has closed would automatically augment the leakage of spinal fluid

and reduce the volume of the cerebrospinal fluid and result in a subnormal cerebrospinal fluid pressure with the possibility of headache.

Removal of Intra abdominal Pressure—When intra abdominal pressure is relieved by the removal of a tumor, the delivery of a baby or the aspiration of ascitic fluid, there may be a decrease in the size of the epidural (peridural) and meningeal veins in the lumbar area which in turn results in an increase in the epidural space. This may allow the dura to stretch to accommodate more cerebrospinal fluid lowering the intracranial cerebrospinal fluid pressure and lessening its cushioning effect on the brain. This mechanism would be the opposite of that which operates when

TABLE XVI

CAUSES OF SPINAL HEADACHES

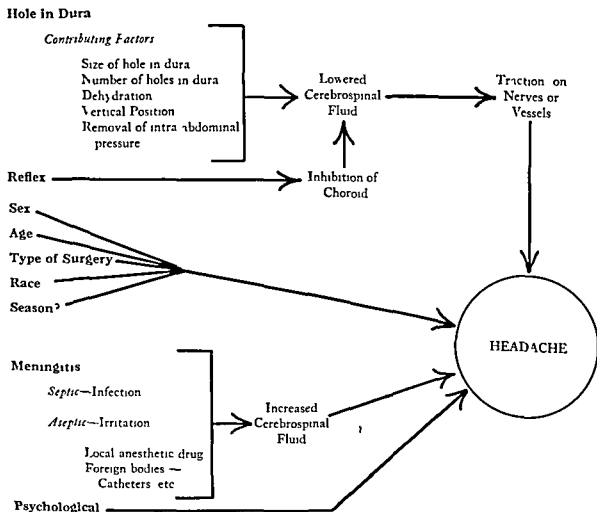
(Adapted from Olsen et al²⁰)

TABLE XVII

INCIDENCE OF POSTLUMBAR PUNCTURE
HEADACHE FOLLOWING INITIAL SPINAL
ANESTHESIA IN 997 PATIENTS

*Analysis with Respect to Sex, Age and Different
Puncture Needles
(From Arner⁴)*

Sex	Age in Years	Postlumbar Puncture Headache		
		Anton's Needle [double needle]	Pittkin's Needle	Both Needles
Males	Under 31	3.3% (5/152)	12.5% (6/48)	5.5% (11/200)
	31-50	4.7% (8/172)	5.8% (7/121)	5.1% (15/293)
	Over 51	0.5% (1/208)	1.0% (1/105)	0.6% (2/313)
	All ages	2.6% (14/532)	5.1% (14/274)	3.5% (28/806)
Females	Under 31	11.8% (2/17)	0.0% (0/12)	6.9% (2/29)
	31-50	6.3% (2/32)	8.3% (3/36)	7.4% (5/68)
	Over 51	4.1% (2/49)	6.7% (3/45)	5.3% (5/94)
	All ages	6.1% (6/98)	6.5% (6/93)	6.3% (12/191)
Males and Females	Under 31	4.1% (7/169)	10.0% (6/60)	5.7% (13/229)
	31-50	4.9% (10/204)	6.4% (10/157)	5.5% (20/361)
	Over 51	1.2% (3/257)	2.7% (4/150)	1.7% (7/407)
	All ages	3.2% (20/630)	5.4% (20/367)	4.0% (40/997)

The figures in parentheses denote the number with headache in relation to the number observed

extra abdominal pressure is used to relieve headache (see page 191)

Sex.—Headaches seem to be more common in the female than in the male (see Table XVII page 180)

Age.—In the young vigorous patient between the ages of 10 and 50 the incidence of headache seems to be higher (see Table XVII page 180, and Table XVIII page 181)^{4 10 28 34}

The reason for the decrease of headache in patients above fifty is somewhat obscure but if the current theory is correct, namely that headache is caused by downward movement of the brain and stretching of its meninges and blood vessels then it should be expected to occur less in the older patient since the blood vessels are less susceptible to stretching with increasing age. Driggs and Vandam²³ state "There is a numerical reduction in the number of pain fibers to an area with age. Age also brings with it a reduction in elasticity of blood vessels." Owen *et al*³⁰ suggest that "Another enigma [of spinal headache] is the greater frequency in young adults and females. The meninges of such individuals may be more elastic and thus more susceptible to dilatation and traction."

Type of Surgery.—The general clinical impression has been recorded that following vaginal obstetrical deliveries, anorectal and pelvic surgery, the incidence of spinal headache is higher than following other surgical procedures.^{15 18 17 20 51 5} Whether it is actually the type of surgery, the age of the patient (most obstetrical patients are young), the sex of the patient and the pre and postoperative management, i.e. early ambulation, dehydration, etc. or a combination of these would be most difficult to determine.

Greene¹⁵ writes: "Today the need for minimal dural punctures is greater than ever before. Early ambulation following operation and parturition increases the incidence of headache after spinal anesthesia. The assumption of the erect position before the dural opening has closed augments the leakage of spinal fluid and allows the reduced volume of cerebrospinal fluid to manifest itself as subnormal intracranial pressure with headache as the result. In obstetrics the complication is even more common and severe. Intra-abdominal pressure is greatly reduced after delivery and therefore the patient lacks the

TABLE XVIII

HEADACHES IN 100 PATIENTS OF EACH AGE GROUP
(From Krueger²⁰)

Under 20 years (243 patients)	11 5%
20-35 years (670 patients)	12 6%
36-50 years (97 patients)	9 2%
Over 50 years (127 patients)	2 4%

usual support to intraspinal fluid pressure provided by a normally tonic abdominal wall. Blood loss and dehydration are more marked and less treated among postpartum patients than among routine surgical cases. The effect of water balance is to decrease the availability of water for the production of cerebrospinal fluid at a rate sufficient to reproduce the estimated daily loss of 240 cc of spinal fluid through a dural puncture of average size. The puerperal convalescent is especially prone to complain of postspinal headache not only because, as a woman she is more likely to feel and express the complaint but also because she usually does not expect to have any serious discomfort after the first or second day of the puerperium. For these reasons the incidence of headache following spinal anesthesia for vaginal delivery has been reported to be greater than in any other group of hospital patients ranging from 15 to 30% depending on the diameter of the spinal needle, the earliness of postpartum ambulation and the type of patient.

Krueger²⁰ states "There was a much higher incidence of headache in obstetric patients than in those having general surgical procedures.

"The obstetric patients being younger on an average than the general surgical patients made it look as though there was a direct relationship between age and resistance to postspinal headache.

"The difference in the incidence of headaches in the two groups may be explained by the following factors

(1) The general surgical group includes many poor risk patients who are bedfast for several days postoperatively thus decreasing early leakage of spinal fluid.

(2) The use of narcotics and analgesics in patients having general surgical procedures might be expected to dull any headache that might be present.

(3) The operative pain, general malaise and lack of cerebral acuity from arterio-sclerosis all help to prevent a postspinal headache from being noticed or reported. These factors are not so prevalent in obstetric patients as in patients who have general surgical procedures.

(4) Most of the general surgical patients received 5% dextrose in distilled water intravenously in the operating room (such is not the case with our obstetric deliveries) and fluid balance was checked on the wards so that dehydration did not occur.

Owen *et al*³⁰ claim that The high incidence of headache after obstetric, anorectal and pelvic surgery may be related to postoperative dilatation of the pelvic veins with compensatory collapse of the epidural veins and dilatation of the dural sac. This would reduce the amount of spinal fluid available for floating the brain and thus intensify spinal headache.

Race—Race has been mentioned as a possible factor for headaches following puncture of the dura³⁵. Grady *et al*³⁵ found a difference in distribution of headaches according to race (see Table XIX, page 182).

TABLE XX

HEADACHES—RACE AND SEX DISTRIBUTION
OF PATIENTS
(After Grady *et al* ⁵⁵)

	No of Cases	No of Head aches	Per cent in Each Group	Per cent of All Headaches
White females	625	17	2.72	60.7
White males	781	8	1.02	28.9
Colored females	488	0	0	0
Colored males	406	3	0.74	10.7

Dural Reflex—This has been mentioned as a possible cause ⁵⁴ It would as Owen *et al* ⁵⁰ point out seem nebulous On the other hand if irritation can produce vascular spasm in an extremity, which results in pain perhaps it may produce it in the vessels of the brain with consequent headache

Psychic Disturbance, Lack of Physical Stamina, etc—These have been suggested as specific causes of hypotensive spinal headache ^{59 57 58} The fact that the psychological make up of a patient may perhaps influence the severity of interpretation of a headache is not doubted and it may be a "potentiating factor but its importance as a specific cause is doubtful The response to posture abdominal compression hydration and subarachnoid and epidural saline etc indicates that a spinal headache is in most instances not imaginary

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF HEADACHE FROM HYPOTENSION OF THE SPINAL FLUID

Postural headache is the most common of the signs and symptoms of leakage of spinal fluid from a puncture hole in the dura However the patient may also complain of nuchal rigidity or pain i.e a stiff neck visual disturbances tinnitus and decrease in hearing

Postural Headache—Onset and Duration—The headache appears 1 to 3 days after the lumbar puncture and usually persists for 1 to 5 days In a few instances however the headache may not develop for 7 to 10 days and

may last for weeks or months ³³ The author has seen this type of headache last up to 30 days

Characteristics—The outstanding characteristic of this type of headache is that it is brought on and aggravated by sitting or standing and is relieved by lying flat In most instances it is not noticed until the patient has assumed the vertical position for a period varying from two hours to two days ⁶ It is usually described as being occipital bifrontal or orbital but may be located any place in the cranium (see Table XX page 184) When the patient gets out of bed the headache is usually minimal and tends to increase in severity as the patient remains erect Rapid shaking of the head or jugular compression will aggravate the headache while compression of the common carotids will partially alleviate it

Mechanism—Wolff ^{56 57 58} points out that changes from the normal in the following intracranial structures may result in painful impulses (1) the venous sinuses and their tributaries (2) part of the dura mater at the base of the brain (3) the dural arteries and (4) the cerebral arteries at the base of the brain (see Table XX page 184) Therefore if the patient assumes an upright position when leakage of spinal fluid has occurred and the shock absorbing effect of the spinal fluid is absent or diminished the brain sags so to speak producing tension and pressure on the above mentioned structures and this action causes headache The supine position automatically reduces this tension and the headache is relieved ^{56 57 58}

Nuchal Rigidity—The patient may complain only of neck and shoulder pain or a stiff neck and such a symptom may be overlooked However in most instances when there is an occipitocervical distribution of the pain it is severe enough that the patient complains bitterly when he assumes a vertical position This neck rigidity is what has led many to believe that meningeal irritation is present

The neck pain is probably not due in most instances to meningeal irritation but is caused

by traction on, or dilatation of, the deep lying structures (dura and blood vessels) at the base of the brain, producing stimuli which are referred via the cervical cord to the neck muscles with resulting pain and spasm.^{33 37}

Visual Disturbances—These include blurring of vision difficulty in focussing colored vision confluent letters, sloping lines, and diplopia. They are usually accompanied by postural headache which calls the physician's attention to the fact that the leakage of spinal fluid is responsible and steps to correct this are usually instituted. However if they occur alone are unrecognized as a possible sign of decreased spinal fluid pressure and the hypotension of the spinal fluid goes untreated in a small percentage of cases a serious problem such as paralysis of the abducens nerve may result (see Chapter 24 page 227).⁹

Disturbances in the Labyrinth—Dripps and Vandrom³³ in reference to hypotensive spinal headache state, "Similarly altered cerebrospinal fluid dynamics may explain the tinnitus decrease in hearing or blocking of the ears observed in 1% of our patients. The anatomic connection between the cochlea and the subarachnoid space is established.⁶⁰ If India ink be injected into the cerebrospinal fluid of dogs and cats, discoloration of the perilymph of the labyrinth is noted within 15 minutes. Hughson⁶⁰ has demonstrated that with reduction in cerebrospinal fluid pressure there is a subsequent decrease in intralabyrinthine pressure associated with impairment of hearing for high tones. The change produced in the ability of the ear to transmit high tones may be sufficient to block all appreciation of such tones. In a patient recently seen by us with a severe postlumbar puncture headache and diminution in hearing both the headache and the hearing improved significantly after injection of fluid into the subarachnoid space.

Dizziness occurs after spinal anesthesia and may persist for months.^{4 23 28} However its relationship to the anesthetic procedure per se is questionable. In most cases it coexists with the headache of the type seen following leakage of spinal fluid.²⁸ Arner⁴ found an

incidence of 0.6% dizziness in his 1,191 patients surveyed and stated, "In the present series dizziness did not occur as an isolated symptom following spinal anesthesia nor did it constitute any complication of significance following spinal anesthesia. Ericsson²³ agrees with Arner that dizziness after spinal anesthesia is largely due to factors other than the block itself. No specific means of prophylaxis or treatment can be prescribed for this symptom. Intravenous Novocain (procaine) may be tried but in most instances it is not of much help.

PROPHYLAXIS OF HEADACHE FROM HYPOTENSION OF THE SPINAL FLUID

During the past seven years at the Mason Clinic we have been using fewer and fewer spinal procedures and an ever increasing number of peripheral nerve blocks and epidural (peridural) blocks in order to avoid the possible complications of spinal anesthesia of which headache is one of the most troublesome.

Both epidural and peripheral nerve blocks (such as the combination of sciatic and femoral nerve blocks for the leg and intercostal deep splanchnic [celiac plexus] block for upper abdominal surgery) have proven to be as efficacious as spinal block in our institution.^{29 61 63}

The introduction of Lylocaine (lidocaine) and Cycaine (hexylcaine) drugs with a rapid onset of effect when given epidurally has in our estimation greatly facilitated the use of epidural block. By employing these two drugs epidural anesthesia may be substituted for spinal anesthesia in most instances without sacrificing any of the advantages of spinal block.

At the present time we are using only Lylocaine for epidural blocks in the thoracic or lumbar areas and Metycaine for continuous caudal blocks because of the untoward results noted from the use of Cycaine (pages 17 and 220). To assure duration of analgesia it has been our custom to add to the Lylocaine solutions 2 mg of Pontocaine (tetracaine) per

TABLE XV

HEADACHES—RACE AND SEX DISTRIBUTION
OF PATIENTS
(After Grady *et al*²⁴)

	No of Cases	No of Head aches	Per cent in Each Group	Per cent of 28 Headaches
White females	625	17	2.72	60.7
White males	781	8	1.02	28.9
Colored females	488	0	0	0
Colored males	406	3	0.74	10.7

Dural Reflex—This has been mentioned as a possible cause⁵⁴ It would, as Owen *et al*³⁰ point out, seem nebulous. On the other hand if irritation can produce vascular spasm in an extremity which results in pain perhaps it may produce it in the vessels of the brain with consequent headache.

Psychic Disturbance, Lack of Physical Stamina, etc—These have been suggested as specific causes of hypotensive spinal headache^{9, 55}. The fact that the psychological make up of a patient may perhaps influence the severity of interpretation of a headache is not doubted and it may be a "potentiating" factor but its importance as a specific cause is doubtful. The response to posture abdominal compression hydration and subarachnoid and epidural saline etc indicates that a spinal headache is in most instances not imaginary.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF HEADACHE FROM HYPOTENSION OF THE SPINAL FLUID

Postural headache is the most common of the signs and symptoms of leakage of spinal fluid from a puncture hole in the dura. However the patient may also complain of nuchal rigidity or pain i.e. a "stiff neck" visual disturbances tinnitus and decrease in hearing.

Postural Headache—Onset and Duration—The headache appears 1 to 3 days after the lumbar puncture and usually persists for 1 to 5 days. In a few instances however the headache may not develop for 7 to 10 days and

may last for weeks or months³³. The author has seen this type of headache last up to 30 days.

Characteristics—The outstanding characteristic of this type of headache is that it is brought on and aggravated by sitting or standing and is relieved by lying flat. In most instances it is not noticed until the patient has assumed the vertical position for a period varying from two hours to two days³⁰. It is usually described as being occipital bifrontal or orbital but may be located any place in the calvarium (see Table XX page 184). When the patient gets out of bed the headache is usually minimal and tends to increase in severity as the patient remains erect. Rapid shaking of the head or jugular compression will aggravate the headache while compression of the common carotids will partially alleviate it.

Mechanism—Wolff^{6, 37} points out that changes from the "normal" in the following intracranial structures may result in painful impulses: (1) the venous sinuses and their tributaries (2) part of the dura mater at the base of the brain (3) the dural arteries and (4) the cerebral arteries at the base of the brain (see Table XX page 184). Therefore if the patient assumes an upright position when leakage of spinal fluid has occurred and the shock absorbing effect of the spinal fluid is absent or diminished the brain "sags" so to speak producing tension and pressure on the above mentioned structures and this action causes headache. The supine position automatically reduces this tension and the headache is relieved^{6, 37, 38}.

Nuchal Rigidity—The patient may complain only of neck and shoulder pain or a "stiff neck" and such a symptom may be overlooked. However in most instances when there is an occipitounuchal distribution of the pain it is severe enough that the patient complains bitterly when he assumes a vertical position. This neck rigidity is what has led many to believe that meningeal irritation is present.

The neck pain is probably not due in most instances to meningeal irritation but is caused

daily fluid intake of at least 3000 cc for three days as well as 1 cc of Pitressin intramuscularly every twelve hours for three doses. Concerning the Pitressin he writes, "The Pitressin used in this treatment contains 10 units of pressor and 0.1 units of oxytocic activity. This preparation acts on two body systems. It depresses coronary blood flow to some extent, perhaps strengthens the heart contractions and induces bradycardia.⁶⁷ These effects are perhaps reflex changes initiated by its peripheral vasoconstriction which causes a blood pressure rise in the anesthetized patient. Hypertension is not usually observed when this drug is administered to an unanesthetized patient. The second primary action of this preparation is its antidiuretic effect on the kidney. The inhibition of diuresis occurs due to an increase in tubular absorption of water. An antidiuretic effect will not be observed if the kidney is already excreting urine of maximum specific gravity. The higher concentration of chloride accompanying its antidiuretic action may even be an increase in total salt excretion per unit of time. The healthy postnatal female will not suffer a salt retention due to Pitressin. The drug is not used in patients with heart disease, hypertension, toxemia, preclampsia or eclampsia."

Size of Needle.—The possibility that the gauge of the needle influences the incidence of spinal headache caused by leakage was proposed by Hoyt⁴⁸ in 1922. He sought to reduce the incidence of spinal headache by employing the "double needle" technique which essentially consists of placing a large needle into the interspinous ligament and then inserting a smaller gauge needle through it. Since then this principle has been used by many foreign physicians.^{44 49 68 73} However, until recently the use of smaller gauge needles as a means of reducing headache following dural tap has not been stressed by American authors.^{10 15 30 104 105 107}

The incidence of spinal headache is markedly reduced by the use of 22 to 27 gauge needles when compared with 20 or larger gauge needles (see Table XVII, page 180, Table XXI, page 186 and Table XXII, page

186).^{10 15 20 30 50 71} When the hydration technique of Greene¹⁷ is used along with the small gauge needles the incidence of spinal headache is very small (see Table XXI, page 186). Greene,¹⁵ when evaluating his results states: "These findings confirm the value of reducing the diameter of the spinal needle and of hydrating the patient. It is evident, however, that oral hydration is not of sufficient influence to balance a leak as large as that produced by a 20 gauge needle. Hydration is more effective when the needle is of 22 or 24 gauge. The important factor is the diameter of the needle. Even the 24 gauge needle, however, requires the aid of vigorous hydration to reduce the headache to a minimal incidence. Therefore, there is need for the 26 gauge size."

Bevel of Needle.—The bevels of most spinal needles are ground in such a fashion that they have cutting edges. Greene^{74 76} found from experiments that a large gauge needle with such an edge made large irregular holes in the dura while a small bore needle with a sharp point possessing rounded rather than cutting edges on the bevel separated rather than cut the longitudinal fibers, permitting approximation following removal of the needle and resulting in a smaller hole (see Figure 41, page 187 and Figure 42, page 187). Thus leakage is kept to a minimum. Whitacre's^{77 78} pencilpoint needle functions on the same principle.

A comparison between headache incidence following the use of the Greene point needle and the ordinary needle of the same gauge was not found in the literature reviewed. For the past seven years at the Mason Clinic the 21 gauge Greene point needle has been used in the administration of over 3700 spinal anesthesias for all types of operations with an incidence of spinal headache of approximately 7%. While we support the theory and efficacy of hydration, no specific effort to institute it was made in this series until headache occurred.

Hart and Whitacre's⁷⁸ comparison of the regular beveled 20 gauge needle with the 20 gauge pencilpoint needle shows a marked re-

TABLE XX

PROBABLE MECHANISM OF HEADACHE FROM
LEAKAGE OF SPINAL FLUID OR MENINGITIS
(Material from Wolff⁵⁷)

<i>Etiology</i>	<i>Area of Head to Which Pain is Referred</i>
LEAKAGE OF SPINAL FLUID (Hypotension of Spinal Fluid)	
I Traction on	
A Veins passing to sagittal and transverse sinus	Front top and side of head
B Middle meningeal arteries	From eyes posterior to ears
C Intracranial portion of internal carotid arteries, and main component of circle of Willis or pia arachnoid	Region of eyes or front top or sides of the head
D Basilar and vertebral arteries and branches	Back of head and neck
II Displacement of entire intracranial arterial sys- tem from right to left or vice versa	Generalized headache from eyes to neck
INFLAMMATION OF STRUCTURES AT BASE AND CONVEXITY OF BRAIN (Hypertension of Spinal Fluid)	
I Posterior fossa	Chiefly back of head
II Supratentorial fossa	Chiefly frontal or vertical

cc of Xylocaine and regardless of the volume of solution to be injected 0.2 cc Adrenalin (epinephrine) 1:1000.⁶¹ Using these techniques rather than spinal anesthesia in the majority of cases selected for regional block procedures has greatly decreased the number of headaches.

However, when spinal analgesia is used the following means of reducing the incidence of spinal headache should be evaluated:

Avoid Usage of the Term "SPINAL"—Due to adverse publicity given spinal anesthesia by the press, following reports of its complications at medical meetings or the awarding of substantial sums following lawsuits, most anesthesiologists who are going to give a patient a spinal anesthetic prefer to use the term "lumbar block" or "subarachnoid block." Thus the patient is not alerted to the fact that spinal anesthesia is being used and consequently does not blame every ache or pain on the spinal block.

Hydrate the Patient—A positive water balance on which the choroid plexus may draw to produce spinal fluid is essential.^{15, 62} It has been shown that adequate hydration favors regeneration of spinal fluid at a rate sufficient to replace that lost via a large dural leak while inadequate fluid intake or hypertonic dextrose solutions may aggravate the effect of even a small dural leak (see Table XXI, page 186 and Table XXII, page 186).^{64, 66}

Hydration should be assured prior to during and following surgery if spinal block is to be used. It must be remembered that a dehydrated patient with a subnormal spinal fluid volume cannot replace the spinal fluid until the water for insensible loss and urinary excretion is provided.⁷⁰ The two following hydration regimes have been proposed as effective ways of assuring a positive water balance in obstetrical patients receiving spinal blocks. They are also applicable to most other patients receiving this type of anesthesia.

Greenes'¹ technique of a postoperative hydration regime for the obstetrical patient consists of 2500 cc of fluid daily during the first three postpartum days and 10 units of posterior pituitary extract subcutaneously every twelve hours for four doses during the first two days postpartum. If this intake can not be maintained by fluid by mouth intravenous or subcutaneous fluids should be given. He believes that using a 26 gauge needle for the spinal tap precludes the administration of pituitrin.

Kruegers'⁶ technique of a postoperative hydration regime for postnatal patients was adapted from Greenes¹⁵ and consists of a

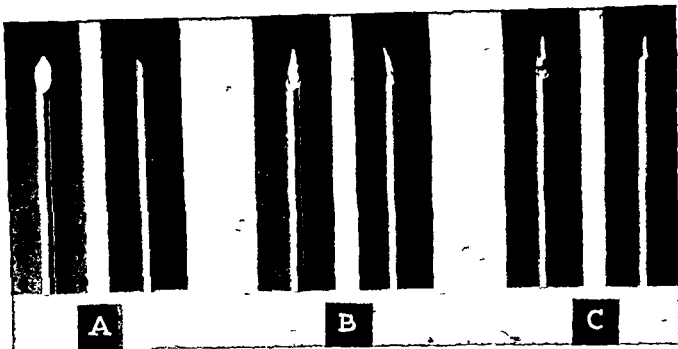


Figure 41 (A) Pitkin needle (cutting edges on bevel) (B) Greene needle (point sharp edges of bevel rounded) (C) Whitacre pencilpoint needle (point sharp bevel completely rounded)

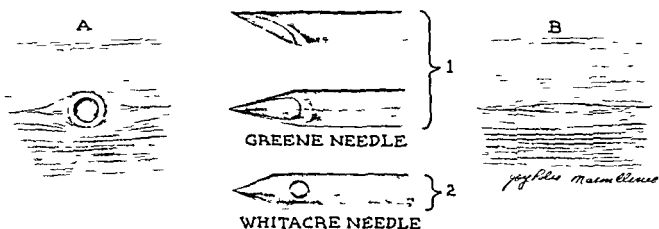


Figure 42 (A) Greene or Whitacre needle in place Only a few of the longitudinal fibers of the dura are severed most are spread—not cut (B) When needle is removed fibers tend to approximate



Figure 43 Crescent shaped cut in dura made by the sharp cutting edges of the bevel of the Pitkin needle which has been introduced into the dura with the bevel of the needle at right angles to the longitudinal fibers of the dura A maximum number of fibers are severed when a needle with this type of bevel is *incorrectly* inserted in this position into the subarachnoid space (B) Needle removed The hole in the dura gaps widely






TABLE XXI

REPORTED INCIDENCE OF HEADACHES FOLLOWING PUNCTURE
OF THE DURA WITH NEEDLES OF VARIOUS SIZES AND POINTS

<i>Author</i>	<i>Size of Needle Type of Point and Treatment</i>	<i>No. of Patients and Type of Operation</i>	<i>Percentage Incidence of Headache</i>
Greene ¹⁵	20 Gauge without hydration	17 (obstetrical)	41.0
	20 Gauge with hydration	18	33.3
	22 Gauge without hydration	93 "	26.0
	22 Gauge with hydration	108	10.0
	24 Gauge without hydration	192	8.0
	24 Gauge with hydration	149 "	2.0
	26 Gauge with modified hydration (All regular beveled points on needles)	700 "	0.4
Cann & Wyloff ¹⁰	27 Gauge without hydration (All regular beveled points on needles)	100 (all types of operations)	5.0
Owen ¹⁰	26 Gauge without hydration (All regular beveled points on needles)	862 (all types of operations)	0.69
Harris & Harmel ⁴	24 Gauge without hydration	529 (all types)	3.59
	20 Gauge without hydration	511	8.22
	Larger needles	5 "	23.8
	(All regular beveled points on needles)		
Hart & Whitacre ⁷⁸	20 Gauge regular point (No particular effort to hydrate)	2070 (all types)	5.0
	20 Gauge (pencilpoint) (No particular effort to hydrate)	3489	2.0

TABLE XXII

HEADACHE INCIDENCE WITH NEEDLE SIZE AND HYDRATION
IN OBSTETRIC PATIENTS(From Krueger⁷⁰)

20 pencilpoint with hydration (150 patients)	 4.0%
20 pencilpoint without hydration (261 patients)	 7.3%
22 beveled without hydration (30 patients)	 16.6%
20 beveled with hydration (56 patients)	 15.0%
20 beveled without hydration (282 patients)	 21.7%

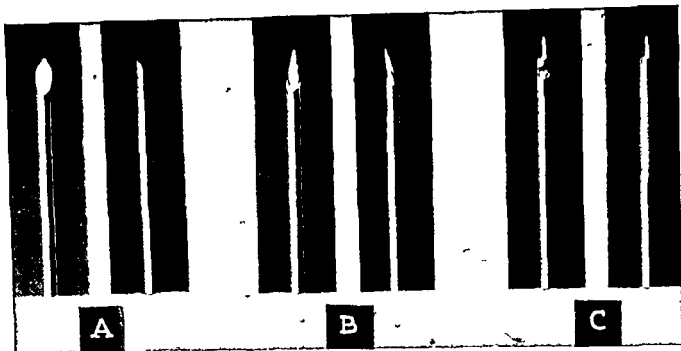


Figure 41 (A) Pitkin needle (cutting edges on bevel) (B) Greene needle (point sharp edges of bevel rounded) (C) Whitacre pencilpoint needle (point sharp bevel completely rounded)

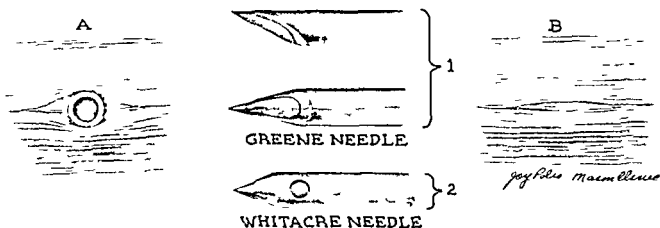


Figure 42 (A) Greene or Whitacre needle in place. Only a few of the longitudinal fibers of the dura are severed—most are spread—not cut (B) When needle is removed fibers tend to approximate

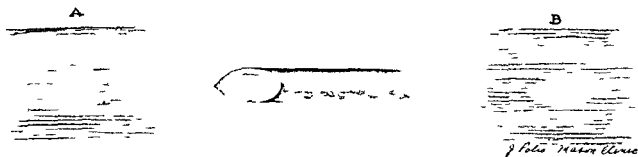


Figure 43 Crescent shaped cut in dura made by the sharp cutting edges of the bevel of the Pitkin needle which has been introduced into the dura with the bevel of the needle at right angles to the longitudinal fibers of the dura. A maximum number of fibers are severed when a needle with this type of bevel is *incorrectly* inserted in this position into the subarachnoid space (B) Needle removed. The hole in the dura gaps widely



Figure 44 (A) Pitkin needle in place in the subarachnoid space after being *correctly* inserted with the sharp cutting edges of its bevel parallel to the longitudinal fibers of the dura. When a needle with sharp cutting edges on the bevel is inserted in this manner it cuts fewer fibers of the dura (about one half as many) than when it is inserted at right angles to the fibers. (B) The hole in the dura is smaller than that produced in Figure 41 because fewer dural fibers have been severed.

duction in the incidence of headache with the latter (see Table XXI page 186). Krueger's¹⁰ study with the use of this needle in obstetrical deliveries showed the reduction in the incidence of spinal headache when it is employed with and without hydration in comparison to other gauge needles (see Table XVII page 186). Krueger's results with the 20 gauge pencilpoint needle without hydration closely approximate our results using the Greene needle.

Therefore it can be concluded that the use of any needles whose bevels are non cutting will further reduce the incidence of headaches of this type.

Method of Placing Needle—Most of the fibers of the dura run longitudinally i.e. parallel to the spinal cord.¹¹ Because of this it has been repeatedly emphasized that if the fibers are pushed apart (this occurs automatically with a Greene or pencilpoint needle as shown in Figure 42 page 187) rather than cut across (as when an ordinary beveled needle is inserted incorrectly as shown in Figure 43 page 187) they will approximate more closely when the needle is withdrawn.^{1, 30, 34, 37, 74} This approximation of fibers results in less leakage of spinal fluid. Therefore when a needle whose bevel has cutting edges is used the bevel should be inserted parallel to the fibers of the dura so that the needle will tend to split or spread them rather than cut them (Figure 44 page

188). This type of placement will result in a slit shaped small wound while cutting across the fibers will result in a crescent shaped hole which will tend to gape as the fibers retract (compare Figure 43 page 187 with Figure 44 page 188).

Bed Rest—If leakage is the principal cause of spinal headache then it might be reasonable to assume that the supine position with out a pillow or even slight Trendelenburg position would reduce the incidence of headache. Whether or not this is the case is debatable.

Sicard⁸⁰ who was probably the first investigator to stress leakage as the cause of spinal headache emphasized the importance of bed rest. Arner⁴ supports this view. Bed rest following lumbar puncture and spinal anesthesia is as pointed out in the foregoing [his study of spinal headaches] of considerable importance in the prophylactic measures against postpuncture headache. In some of the cases reported above [his study of the cause of spinal headache] the headache might have been largely due to insufficient bed rest following the operation. Jennings and Karabin⁴⁰ agree that bed rest markedly reduces the incidence of headache.

On the other hand Underwood⁸¹ reports an incidence of 19% incapacitating lumbar puncture headaches in his series and felt that bed rest following the tap did not reduce the

incidence Likewise Blau¹⁷ and Levin¹⁸ attribute little significance to bed rest

The author and his associates have not placed too much emphasis on bed rest on the basis of an unpublished study of this problem conducted at Wexley Memorial Hospital in Chicago which acted as an emergency hospital for the Navy during World War II and where a large number of emergency appendectomies were performed under spinal anesthesia on healthy young males 18 to 30 years of age. Fifty of these patients were allowed to be ambulatory as soon as the effects of the spinal anesthesia were dissipated (2 to 4 hours) and an equal number were restricted to the supine position without a pillow for 24 hours. No efforts to assure hydration were made. The incidence of headache in the two groups showed no significant difference.

Since it has been shown that a hole in the dura may not close for two weeks it is reasonable to expect that restriction to bed for only a 24 hour period would be of little help.

Epidural Saline—Kaplan and Arrowood²⁰ have advocated the injection of saline into the epidural (peridural) space at the completion of the lumbar tap as a means of reducing spinal headache. They state "After the solution containing the anesthetic drug was introduced into the subarachnoid space the needle was withdrawn into the epidural space. Then 10 to 20 cc. of normal saline solution was deposited before the needle was withdrawn. The amount injected depended on the resistance encountered during the injection. When it became difficult to introduce an additional quantity of saline solution the epidural space in that area was considered to be filled."

Using this technique with a 22 gauge needle with no special point (as a Greene needle etc.) they were able to reduce their incidence of headache from 7 to 1%. They conclude

The efficacy of this method appears to depend on the building up of a head of pressure near the dural defect and preventing leakage of spinal fluid into the epidural space. This prevents a concomitant decrease in cerebrospinal fluid pressure. It is not clear whether this saline solution remains in the region long

enough to accomplish its mission. It is conceivable that it prevents leakage long enough for a fibrin clot to form or for the piamelanoid to seal the defect."

Avoid Traumatic Punctures—Multiple punctures of the dura must be avoided otherwise a great quantity of spinal fluid may be rapidly lost (fluid goes through a sieve faster than through a pipette).

Apply Epigastric Pressure—To reduce the incidence of spinal headache Leighton and Hershenson⁶ advocate the use immediately postpartum of an umbilical hernia belt modified to give epigastric pressure. In 404 patients studied the incidence of headache was 26% in the control group and 3.4% in those who were fitted with an umbilical hernia belt as a prophylactic measure.

Administration of A C T H (corticotropin) or Antihistaminic Drugs—Ortiz and Van Der Hofstadt Alberola¹⁰⁸ have indicated that when headache follows spinal anesthesia it is referable to meningeal irritation even if there is hypotension of the spinal fluid. They base their opinion on an increased cell count of the cerebrospinal fluid. These authors advocate the use of A C T H (corticotropin) 3 to 5 mg or antihistaminic drugs namely Antistine or diethyl amino ethyl phenothiazine hydrochloride in doses of 0.1 gm and 50 mg respectively to prevent or control this increase in cell count of the cerebrospinal fluid.

This type of therapy is open to question. The mere performance of a puncture of the dura almost inevitably causes a reaction of the meninges as evidenced by an increased cell count of the cerebrospinal fluid (see Chapter 22 page 204). The fact that the cell count is elevated does not necessarily mean that headache will occur nor if it does that it is a specific result of meningeal irritation. This increased cell count usually subsides by itself in the greater number of cases without producing headache or more specific signs of meningitis.

Benadryl (diphenhydramine hydrochloride) and Dramamine (dimenhydrinate) have also been used for prophylaxis of the hypotensive type of spinal headache.^{103, 106} Shinn

TABLE XXIII

METHODS USED AT THE MASON CLINIC TO TREAT POSTSPINAL HEADACHES FROM LOWERED SPINAL FLUID PRESSURE

I When diagnosis is made the following orders are written

A Apply abdominal binder snugly over 2 bath towels before patient sits up or is ambulatory
Rationale Decrease epidural space increase spinal fluid pressure

B Codeine gr $\frac{1}{2}$ (30 mg) and Aspirin gr 10 (600 mg) prn for headache
Rationale Symptomatic relief of headache

C Measured oral intake of at least 3 000 cc of water for 4 days If this is not met supplement with 5% dextrose in distilled water intravenously
Rationale Hydration

D Nicotinamide $1\frac{1}{4}$ gr (100 mg) intramuscularly 3 times a day for 2 days
Rationale Dilatation of choroid plexus

E Surgical pituitrin (1 2000) 1 cc intramuscularly 3 times a day for 2 days
Rationale Antidiuretic action

N B Watch for pituitrin shock if it occurs stop pituitrin Do not give drug to patient with heart disease hypertension toxemia pre eclampsia or eclampsia

II If severe headache persists after this treatment then the placement of a lumbar epidural (peridural) catheter and the injection of normal saline should be evaluated
Rationale Decrease epidural space increase spinal fluid pressure

NOTE Treatment as described takes 3 days—the length of time a mild or moderate postspinal headache of this nature lasts—and therefore its efficacy may be questioned Nevertheless the patient feels an attempt to help his problem is being made

non¹⁰³ used Benidryl 50 mg by mouth preoperatively and the same dosage by mouth one and three hours postoperatively In cases where the oral route was not feasible the dosage was reduced to 20 mg and given intravenously but on the same time schedule Using the drug in this prophylactic manner he had only 5 spinal headaches in 300 cases i e 1.7% Prior to this series a control series revealed an incidence of spinal headaches of 9.4%

In the 50 obstetrical cases given Dramamine, the patient "received eight 50 mg oral doses of Dramamine in the following manner

first dose after expulsion of placenta second dose four to eight hours later remaining six doses at 7 A M (5 A M for nursing mothers) and 2 P M for three consecutive days The morning doses were timed to precede rising by approximately thirty minutes"¹⁰⁴ The use of Dramamine reduced the incidence of headache from 38% in the 50 control cases to 8% in the 50 cases receiving Dramamine

Closing the Dural Hole with Catgut—A method of closing the hole in the dura with catgut was described by Nelson⁸³ and a control study on this method was conducted by Emory⁸⁴ Emory's⁸⁴ report does not show that such a procedure lowers the incidence of spinal puncture headache although Nelson⁸³ believed that it did

TREATMENT OF HEADACHE FROM HYPOTENSION OF THE SPINAL FLUID

Each physician who does a large number of lumbar punctures has his own particular method of handling the headache problem The routine at the Mason Clinic may be found in Table XXIII page 190 In general treatment of this type of spinal headache is aimed at preventing further loss of spinal fluid and elevating the spinal fluid pressure The following means of accomplishing these aims have been suggested and the fact that so many have been proposed is ample proof that no single method is entirely satisfactory It must also be remembered that most spinal headaches last only 1 to 3 days and in view of this too vigorous treatment i e retriap may not be indicated unless the headache persists beyond three days

Bed Rest—As noted under prophylaxis the results obtained by bed rest are questionable There is no doubt that the supine position without a pillow relieves the headache but whether or not it shortens the course of the headache is open to question

Symptomatic Relief of Headache—A true hypotensive dural puncture headache at the onset is seldom relieved by analgesics such as salicylates On the other hand opiates i e

codeine gr $\frac{1}{2}$ (30 mg) to 1 gr (65 mg) and salicylates together will control the pain and it has been our custom to give codeine gr $\frac{1}{2}$ (30 mg) and Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid) gr 10 (600 mg) as necessary (p. 11) to control the headache (see Table VIII, page 190)

Hydration—Every attempt should be made to provide a positive water balance provided this is not detrimental to the patient's general physical condition. A positive water balance assures adequate fluid from which the choroid plexus can produce spinal fluid.

A daily intake of 2500 to 3000 cc of fluid should be maintained either orally or if necessary by intravenous infusions. Usually isotonic solutions i.e. normal saline or 5% dextrose in distilled water are used.¹⁵⁻²⁰ However the use of hypotonic solutions on the theory that these may facilitate the production of spinal fluid has been advocated.^{6, 8, 88} Baar⁸⁸ and Solomon⁶ feel that this type of treatment definitely reduces the incidence of headache.

Posterior pituitary extract or Pitressin may be used for its antidiuretic action to facilitate the storage of water as indicated on page 185 if there are no contraindications i.e. heart disease, hypertension, toxemia, pre-eclampsia or eclampsia. It should be noted that when pituitary or allied drugs are given so called "pituitary shock" characterized by facial pallor, nausea, belching, cramps and the desire to defecate may result.⁶⁷ However when it does there is usually reflex slowing of the pulse and no fall in blood pressure. One such case has been observed at the Mason Clinic.

Abdominal Pressure—It has been shown that by applying and then releasing pressure on the abdomen a spinal headache from hypotension of the spinal fluid may be made to disappear and reappear.¹⁷ Relief obtained from abdominal pressure is probably due to compression of the inferior vena cava with consequent engorgement of the epidural and meningeal veins of the spine in the lumbar region. This in turn compresses the dural sac resulting in a relative increase of vertebral

cerebrospinal fluid pressure and thus the spinal fluid is forced upward to cushion the brain and prevent further shifting of the brain caudad.^{17, 89}

Effective abdominal pressure may be applied by placing one or two bath towels under an abdominal binder and tightening it. At the Mason Clinic this method has proven useful but the pressure must be adequate. However Watson²¹ has tried this method on a large group of obstetrical patients with "no good results." Another very effective method is to place a deflated basketball bladder under the binder and after the binder has been wrapped snugly inflating the basketball bladder.

Spinal and Epidural Injection of Dextrose or Saline—*Spinal Injection*—In 1923 Jacobaeus and Grumerie⁴ reported two cases of severe postspinal headache which were relieved by restoring the spinal fluid pressure to normal values with a subarachnoid injection of saline solution. Since then a number of articles in which saline or dextrose or a combination of the two were injected subarachnoidally have appeared in the literature confirming these results.^{4, 43, 89, 90} Glesne⁴³ believes this method to be successful in at least 50% of the cases. The amounts of 5% dextrose in normal saline which Glesne injected subarachnoidally varied from 15 to 55 cc the average being 36 cc. He states "An attempt was made to restore the pressure to that at the initial reading [that recorded at the time of the original tap] unless the amount required proved to be excessive under which circumstances an approximation within normal range was considered adequate." In his series the spinal fluid pressure was read and recorded when the original lumbar tap was made. Then when patients developed a spinal headache and when an attempt to correct this headache by subarachnoid injection of the dextrose and saline solution was undertaken an amount of solution necessary to approximate the original recorded spinal fluid pressure reading was injected.

Epidural Injection—Rice and Dabbs⁹¹ Rusholm⁹ and Denson *et al*⁹² have demonstrated that similar effects may be obtained

TABLE XVIII

METHODS USED AT THE MASON CLINIC TO
TREAT POSTSPINAL HEADACHES FROM
LOWFRED SPINAL FLUID PRESSURE

I When diagnosis is made the following orders are written

A Apply abdominal binder snugly over 2 bath towels before patient sits up or is ambulatory
Rationale Decrease epidural space increase spinal fluid pressure

B Codeine gr 1½ (30 mg) and Aspirin gr 10 (600 mg) p r n for headache
Rationale Symptomatic relief of headache

C Measured oral intake of at least 3,000 cc of water for 4 days If this is not met supplement with 5% dextrose in distilled water intravenously
Rationale Hydration

D Nicotinamide 1½ gr (100 mg) intramuscularly 3 times a day for 2 days
Rationale Dilation of choroid plexus

E Surgical pituitrin (1:2000) 1 cc intramuscularly 3 times a day for 2 days
Rationale Antidiuretic action

N B Watch for pituitrin shock if it occurs stop pituitrin Do not give drug to patient with heart disease hypertension toxemia pre-eclampsia or eclampsia

II If severe headache persists after this treatment then the placement of a lumbar epidural (peridural) catheter and the injection of normal saline should be evaluated
Rationale Decrease epidural space, increase spinal fluid pressure

NOTE Treatment as described takes 3 days—the length of time a mild or moderate postspinal headache of this nature lasts—and therefore its efficacy may be questioned Nevertheless the patient feels an attempt to help his problem is being made

non¹⁰³ used Benadryl 50 mg by mouth preoperatively and the same dosage by mouth one and three hours postoperatively In cases where the oral route was not feasible the dosage was reduced to 20 mg and given intravenously but on the same time schedule Using the drug in this prophylactic manner he had only 5 spinal headaches in 300 cases i e 1.7% Prior to this series a control series revealed an incidence of spinal headaches of 9.4%

In the 50 obstetrical cases given Dramamine the patient "received eight 50 mg oral doses of Dramamine in the following manner

first dose after expulsion of placenta second dose four to eight hours later remaining six doses at 7 A M (5 A M for nursing mothers) and 2 P M for three consecutive days The morning doses were timed to precede arising by approximately thirty minutes"¹⁰⁰ The use of Dramamine reduced the incidence of headache from 38% in the 50 control cases to 8% in the 50 cases receiving Dramamine

Closing the Dural Hole with Catgut—A method of closing the hole in the dura with catgut was described by Nelson⁸³ and a control study on this method was conducted by Emory⁸¹ Emory's⁸¹ report does not show that such a procedure lowers the incidence of spinal puncture headache, although Nelson⁸³ believed that it did

TREATMENT OF HEADACHE FROM HYPOTENSION OF THE SPINAL FLUID

Each physician who does a large number of lumbar punctures has his own particular method of handling the headache problem The routine at the Mason Clinic may be found in Table XVIII page 190 In general treatment of this type of spinal headache is aimed at preventing further loss of spinal fluid and elevating the spinal fluid pressure The following means of accomplishing these aims have been suggested and the fact that so many have been proposed is ample proof that no single method is entirely satisfactory It must also be remembered that most spinal headaches last only 1 to 3 days and in view of this too vigorous treatment i e restip may not be indicated unless the headache persists beyond three days

Bed Rest—As noted under prophylaxis the results obtained by bed rest are questionable There is no doubt that the supine position without a pillow relieves the headache but whether or not it shortens the course of the headache is open to question

Symptomatic Relief of Headache—A true hypotensive dural puncture headache at the onset is seldom relieved by analgesics such as salicylates On the other hand opiates i e

2. NIGGARD K. K. Routine Spinal Anesthesia in a Provincial Hospital With a Comparative Study of Postoperative Complications Following Spinal and General Ether Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 79:379-116 1936
3. RAWLINGS I. I. Low Spinal Analgesia in Operative Obstetrics. A Further Series of 511 Cases. *Brit M J* 1:112-114 1950
4. ARNETT O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence. (Translated by Vernon, S. H.) *Acta chir scandinav Suppl* 167 1952
5. MAXSON L. H. *Spinal Anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Co 1938
6. BIER A. Versuche über Cocainisierung des Rückenmarkes. *Deutsche Ztschr chir* 51:361-369 1899
7. CORNING J. L. Spinal Anaesthesia and Local Medication of the Cord. *New York M J* 42:483-485 1885
8. KAISLER P. M., DARRIS C. H. and SOUTH WORTH J. L. Regional Spinal Anesthesia Utilizing the Continuous Spinal Technique of Tuohi. *Anesthesiology* 13:397-406 1952
9. BROWN S. Fractional Segmental Spinal Anesthesia in Poor Risk Surgical Patients. Report of 600 Cases. *Anesthesiology* 13:416-428 1952
10. CANN J. E. and WYCOFF C. C. Incidence of Headache with Use of 27 Gauge Spinal Needle. *Anesthesiology* 11:294-298 1950
11. SIERPE W. M. The Relation of Negative Pressure in Epidural Space to Postpuncture Headache. *Am J M Sc* 185:247-252 1934
12. BLAU A. Reactions Following Spinal Puncture. *Erol & Cutan Rev* 45:239-242 1941
13. LEVIN M. J. Lumbar Puncture Headaches. *Bull U S Army M Dept* (No 82) 107:110 1944
14. CANN J. E. and WYCOFF C. C. Continuous Spinal Anesthesia. A Modification of the Ureteral Catheter Technique. *Anesthesiology* 9:288-295 1948
15. GREENE B. A. A 26-Gauge Lumbar Puncture Needle. Its Value in the Prophylaxis of Headache Following Spinal Analgesia for Vaginal Delivery. *Anesthesiology* 11:464-469 1950
16. ANDROS C. J., DIECKMANN W. J., OUDA P., PRIDDLE H. D., SMITTER R. C. and BRYAN W. M. Jr. Spinal (Saddle Block) Anesthesia in Obstetrics. *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 55:806-820 1945
17. WEINTRAUB F., ANTINE W. and RAHIAFF A. J. Postpartum Headache After Low Spinal Anesthesia in Vaginal Delivery and Its Treatment. *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 51:682-686 1947
18. McCARLE D. W. Spinal Anesthesia in Cesarean Section. Critical Analysis of About 1,200 Cases with No Maternal Mortality. *JAMA* 151:545-549 1951
19. SELL H. A. Spinal Analgesia and Anesthesia in Obstetrics. *New York State J Med* 49:2390-2391 1949
20. KRUGER J. F. Etiology and Treatment of Postspinal Headaches. *Anesth & Analg* 32:190-198 1953
21. WATSON B. H. Spinal Anesthesia in Obstetrics. Report of Eight Thousand Cases. *West J Surg* 62:284-291 1954
22. KAPLAN M. S. and ARROWOOD J. C. Prevention of Headache Following Spinal Anesthesia. The Use of Epidural Saline. A Preliminary Report. *Anesthesiology* 13:102-107 1952
23. ERICSSON N. O. On the Frequency of Complications Especially Those of Long Duration after Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 95:167-191 1917
24. CHANASHAW T. P. and KAYE G. Spinal Analgesia in a Metropolitan Public Hospital 1937-1946. *Anaesthesia* 2:127-133 1947
25. HALGEN J. A. and BENSON R. C. Minimal Spinal Anesthesia in Vaginal Delivery. An Analysis of 1,000 Consecutive Cases. *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 53:803-811 1947
26. JORGENSEN C. L., GRAVES J. H. and SAVAGE, J. E. Saddle Block Anesthesia for Delivery. Report of 1,000 Cases. *South M J* 41:830-834 1948
27. ROGERS W. C. Spinal Anesthesia in More than Five Thousand Vaginal Deliveries. *West J Surg* 56:236-242 1948
28. THORSEN G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 121:1-272 1947
29. HERBERT C. L., TETINICK C. E. and ZIEMBA J. R. Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. An Evaluation of the Complications Encountered in 5,763 Consecutive Spinal Anesthetics. *JAMA* 142:551-557 1950
30. OWEN C. K., OWEN J. J., SERCENT W. F. and MCGOWAN J. W. Twenty six Gauge Spinal Needles for the Prevention of Spinal Headache. *Am J Surg* 85:98-103 1953
31. BOMAN K. Spinal Anesthesia and Hypotension Headache. *Acta chir scandinav* 102:110-112 1951
32. MOORE D. C. *Regional Block*. Springfield: Illinois: Charles C. Thomas Publisher 1953
33. DRIFTS R. D. and VANDAM L. D. Hazards of Lumbar Puncture. *JAMA* 147:1118-1121 1951
34. FRANKSSON C. and GORDH T. Headache After Spinal Anesthesia and a Technique for Lessening Its Frequency. *Acta chir scandinav* 94:443-454 1946

by epidural injections Rice and Dabbs⁹¹ have used indwelling epidural (peridural) catheters as well as ordinary spinal needles to place the solution in the epidural (peridural) space either in the caudal or lumbar area and have found the catheter preferable. Their technique is as follows. The amount of saline solution injected into the peridural space varies greatly with the individual patient treated. The average total dosage in our series was 82 cc. Our general schedule when using the catheter method of administration consists of an initial dose of 20 cc to 30 cc. The patient is then allowed to sit up and the usual result is that the headache is completely gone. The patient is then rechecked in one hour. Often slight discomfort will again be present at this time and an additional 30 cc is injected. In a number of our cases this has been all that is required to cure the headache. The catheter is left in place however taped to the patient's side and the distal end closed with a sterile Luer Lok cap. On the following day the patient is examined and questioned again as to discomfort. Further injections are given if needed. In only the most stubborn cases was this found necessary. All twenty two of their patients with typical severe postspinal headaches had "gratifying results. Again Denson *et al*⁹² have found that a single epidural injection of normal saline via the caudal canal will completely relieve 84% of severe hypotensive spinal headaches and that an additional 9% receive almost complete relief. Here as in the technique of Rice and Dabbs⁹¹ the rationale for the treatment lies in elevating the epidural pressure in the sacral and/or lumbar regions which in turn decreases the volume of cerebrospinal fluid these portions of the dural sac can accommodate thereby raising the brain back onto its normal fluid cushion.

The advocates of both the epidural and subarachnoid injections stress that these techniques are reserved for the *persistent severe* postspinal headache. We have had occasions to evaluate these procedures at the Mason Clinic. Recently three of our cases of headaches have fallen into this category and have

not cleared within 2 to 5 days after their onset. In all three cases the treatment was effective. One case required three injections of normal saline and the others only one.

It would seem that of these two types of injections epidural injections would be the more practical type since the dura would not be re punctured and a new avenue for leakage of spinal fluid would not be thus established.

Dilated Choroid Plexus — The cerebrospinal fluid is formed primarily by the choroid plexus and if this plexus is dilated and a positive body water balance is maintained compensating for the loss of spinal fluid from leakage may be possible. With this in mind Moyson and Lambiotte⁹³ suggested block of the superior cervical ganglion and others have advocated the use of the following drugs with varying success: (1) caffeine with sodium benzoate⁹⁴ (2) ergotamine tartrate⁹⁵ (3) dihydroergotamine⁹⁶ (4) intravenous alcohol⁹⁷ (5) nicotinamide⁹⁸ (6) Cafergot (ergotamine tartrate and caffeine alkaloid)⁹⁹ (7) Inavocin (strychnine)¹⁰⁰ (8) desoxycorticosterone acetate^{100, 101} and (9) Romicol tartrate (B pyridyl carbonyl tartrate)¹⁰².

It must be remembered that as yet no one drug has been found successful in all cases.

Psychotherapy — In addition to the specific therapy listed above the psychogenic factor must not be overlooked. Hart and Whitacre⁷⁸ state "In addition to definitive treatment the psychogenic factor should be given attention. When such a factor is unmistakably present psychotherapy may prove of benefit. It has been helpful to prevail on doctors, nurses and all others who come in contact with the patient not to draw attention to the possibility that the patient's headache is a complication of spinal anesthesia. The patient who remains unaware of the existence of this complication is much less likely to become one of its victims."

REFERENCES

1. CULLEN W. G. and GRIFFITH H. R. Post partum Results of Spinal Anesthesia in Obstetrics. *Anesth & Analg* 26:114-121 1947

2. NACIARD K K Routine Spinal Anesthesia in a Provincial Hospital With a Comparative Study of Postoperative Complications Following Spinal and General Ether Anesthesia *Acta chir scandinav* 79 379 440 1930
3. RAWLINS L I Low Spinal Anesthesia in Operative Obstetrics A Further Series of 511 Cases *Brit M J* 1 112 114 1950
4. ARNER O Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence (Translated by Vernon, S H) *Acta chir scandinav Suppl* 167 1952
5. MAYSON L H *Spinal Anesthesia* Philadelphia Lippincott Co 1938
6. BIER A Versuche über Cocainisierung des Rückenmarkes *Deutsche Zeitschr chir* 51 361-369 1899
7. CONNING J L Spinal Anesthesia and Local Medication of the Cord *New York M J* 42 483-485 1895
8. KAMISLER P M DAVIS C H and SOUTH WORTH J L Regional Spinal Anesthesia Utilizing the Continuous Spinal Technique of Tuohy *Anesthesiology* 13 397 406 1952
9. BROWN S Fractional Segmental Spinal Anesthesia in Poor Risk Surgical Patients Report of 600 Cases *Anesthesiology* 13 416 428 1952
10. CANN J E and WYCOFF C C Incidence of Headache with Use of 27 Gauge Spinal Needle *Anesthesiology* 11 294 298 1950
11. SHEPPE W M The Relation of Negative Pressure in Epidural Space to Postpuncture Headache *Am J M Sc* 188 247 252 1934
12. BLAU A Reactions Following Spinal Puncture *Urol & Cutan Rev* 45 239 242 1941
13. LEVIN M J Lumbar Puncture Headaches *Bull U S Army M Dept* (No 82) 107 110 1944
14. CANN J E and WYCOFF C C Continuous Spinal Anesthesia A Modification of the Ureteral Catheter Technique *Anesthesiology* 9 288 295 1948
15. GREENE B A A 26-Gauge Lumbar Puncture Needle Its Value in the Prophylaxis of Headache Following Spinal Analgesia for Vaginal Delivery *Anesthesiology* 11 464 469 1950
16. ANDROS G J DIECKMANN W J OUDA P FRIDDLE B D SMITTER R C and BRYAN W M Jr Spinal (Saddle Block) Anesthesia in Obstetrics *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 55 806-820 1948
17. WEINTRAUB F ANTINE W and RAPHAEL A J Postpartum Headache After Low Spinal Anesthesia in Vaginal Delivery and Its Treatment *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 54 682 686 1947
18. DE CARLE D W Spinal Anesthesia in Caesarian Section Critical Analysis of About 1200 Cases with No Maternal Mortality *JAMA* 151 515 519 1951
19. SWEIL H A Spinal Anesthesia and Anesthesia in Obstetrics *New York State J Med* 49 2590 2594 1948
20. KRUEGER J I Etiology and Treatment of Postspinal Headaches *Anesth & Analg* 32 190 198 1953
21. WATSON B H Spinal Anesthesia in Obstetrics Report of Eight Thousand Cases *West J Surg* 62 281 291 1951
22. KAPLAN, M S, and ARROWOOD J C Prevention of Headache Following Spinal Anesthesia The Use of Epidural Saline A Preliminary Report *Anesthesiology* 13 102 107 1952
23. ERICSSON N O On the Frequency of Complications Especially Those of Long Duration after Spinal Anesthesia *Acta chir scandinav* 95 167 191 1947
24. CHAKASHAW T P and KAYE G Spinal Analgesia in a Metropolitan Public Hospital 1937 1948 *Anaesthesia* 2 127 133 1947
25. HAUGEN J A and BENSON R C Minimal Spinal Anesthesia in Vaginal Delivery An Analysis of 1000 Consecutive Cases *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 53 805 811 1947
26. JORGENSEN C L GRAVES J H and SAVAGE J E Saddle Block Anesthesia for Delivery Report of 1000 Cases *South M J* 41 830 834 1948
27. ROGERS W C Spinal Anesthesia in More than Five Thousand Vaginal Deliveries *West J Surg* 56 236-242 1948
28. THOMSEN G Neurological Complications After Spinal Anaesthesia *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 121 1 272 1947
29. HERBERT C L TETRICK C E and ZIEMBA J R Complications of Spinal Anesthesia an Evaluation of the Complications Encountered in 5763 Consecutive Spinal Anesthetics *JAMA* 142 551 557 1950
30. OWEN C A OWEN J J SERGEANT W F and MCGOWAN J W Twenty six Gauge Spinal Needles for the Prevention of Spinal Headache *Am J Surg* 85 98 103 1953
31. BOMAN K Spinal Anesthesia and Hypotension Headache *Acta chir scandinav* 102 110 112 1951
32. MOONE D C Regional Block Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1953
33. DRIPPS R D and VANDAM L D Hazards of Lumbar Puncture *JAMA* 147 1118 1121 1951
34. FRANSSON C and GORDIN T Headache After Spinal Anesthesia and a Technique for Lessening Its Frequency *Acta chir scandinav* 94 443-454 1948

- 35 GRADY R W STOUGH J A and ROBINSON E B Jr. A Survey of Spinal Anesthesia from 1949 through 1952 *Anesthesiology* 15 310 319 1954
- 36 ROVENSTINE E A and ARGAN V Spinal Anesthesia with Monocaine Formate Results in 2 230 Cases *Anesthesiology* 5 40-44 1944
- 37 BABCOCK W W Spinal Anesthesia An Experience of Twenty Four Years *Am J Surg* 5 571 576 1928
- 38 ROMAN D A and ADRIANI J Supercaine glucose for Spinal Anesthesia Results of Over 5 000 Clinical Administrations *Anesthesiology* 10 270 279 1919
- 39 KING O L Spinal Analgesia A Report of 1 500 Cases *Ann Surg* 101 690 701 1935
- 40 JENNINGS W K and KARABIN J E Incidence of Headache Nausea and Vomiting Following Spinal Anesthesia *Am J Surg* 46 317 320 1939
- 41 KUNKLE E C RAY B S and WOLFF H G Experimental Studies on Headache Analysis of the Headache Associated with Changes in Intracranial Pressure *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 49 323 338 1943
- 42 PICKERING G W Lumbar Puncture Headache *Brain* 71 274 280 1948
- 43 GLENE O G Lumbar Puncture Headaches *Anesthesiology* 11 702 708 1950
- 44 MARSHALL J Lumbar Puncture Headache *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 13 71 74 1950
- 45 JACOBIAELS H C and FRUMERIE K About the Leakage of the Spinal Fluid After Lumbar Puncture and Its Treatment *Acta med scandinav* 58 10 108 1923
- 46 POOL J L Myelography Intraspinal Endoscopy *Surgery* 11 169 182 1942
- 47 SCHLUB P G and LEDREW F The Prevention of Reactions Due to Lumbar Spinal Puncture *New England J M* 211 537 539 1934
- 48 HOYT R An Apparatus for Withdrawing Spinal Fluid Without Post puncture Reaction *J A M A* 78 428-429 1922
- 49 ANTONI N Om lumbalpunktion *Stenska Lak tidning* 20 529 538 1923
- 50 ANTONI N Rachicentese capillare *Rev Neurol* 1 619 622 1925
- 51 GREENE B A GOLDSMITH M and LICHTIG S The Prevention of Headache After Spinal Analgesia for Vaginal Delivery by the Use of Hydration and a 24 Gauge Needle *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 58 709 717 1949
- 52 LUND P C and RUMBALL A C Hypobaric Pontocaine Spinal Anesthesia. 1 640 Cases *Anesthesiology* 8 181 199 1947
- 53 DAVENPORT K M Post Puncture Reactions A Clinical Study *New York State J Med* 39 1185 1187 1939
- 54 EIMENWALD H Zur Pathogenese der Beschwerden nach Lumbalpunktion *Med Klin* 25 1126-1130 1929
- 55 REDLICH F MOORE B E and KIMBELL I Jr Lumbar Puncture Reactions Relative Importance of Physiological and Psychological Factors *Psychosom Med* 8 386-393 1946
- 56 WOLFF H G and WOLF S *Pain* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1948
- 57 WOLFF H G *Headache and Other Pain* New York Oxford University Press 1948
- 58 RAY B S and WOLFF H G Experimental Studies in Headache Pain Sensitive Structures of the Head and Their Significance in Headache *Arch Surg* 41 813 856 1940
- 59 GREENE B A BERKOWITZ S and GOLDSMITH M The Prevention of Cranial Nerve Palsies Following Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 15 302-309 1954
- 60 HUGHSON W A Note on the Relationship of Cerebrospinal and Intralabyrinthine Pressures *Am J Physiol* 101 396-407 1932
- 61 MOORE D C BRIDENBACH L D OWEN C K MACDOUGALL M P and CARRUTHERS H C Lumbar Epidural Block The Anesthetic of Choice for Cesarean Section? *West J Surg* 61 459-464 1953
- 62 MOORE D C Sciatic and Femoral Nerve Block *J A M A* 150 550 554 1952
- 63 MOORE D C Pontocaine Solutions for Regional Analgesia Other Than Spinal and Epidural Block An Analysis of 2 500 Cases *J A M A* 146 803-808 1951
- 64 KUBIE L S Intracranial Pressure Changes During Forced Drainage of the Central Nervous System *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 16 319-328 1926
- 65 SOLOMON H C Raising Cerebrospinal Fluid Pressure with Especial Regard to the Effect on Lumbar Puncture Headache *J A M A* 82 1512-1515 1924
- 66 MASSERMAN J H Cerebrospinal Hydrodynamics VII Effects of the Intravenous Injection of Hypertonic Solutions of Dextrose *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 35 296-303 1936
- 67 GOODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Co 1955
- 68 KENNEDY A J Spinal Anaesthesia Clinical Experiences in 430 Cases and a Technique to Eliminate Postoperative Headache *M J Australia* 19 1 40-45 1932

- 69 JENKINS D and JOHNSON A C Lumbar Puncture in Out Patients *Lancet* 1 971 373, 1938
- 70 DATTEYER B Die Ambulatorische Lumbalpunktion *Wien Klin Wochenschr* 40 450 453 1927
- 71 DATTEYER B THOMAS L W and WEXLER C The Management of Neurosyphilis New York Crime & Stratton 1933
- 72 ALLEN H W Headache Following Lumbar Puncture *Brit M J* 2 319 1931
- 73 HARRISON L W Note on Lumbar Puncture with the Duttner Uttern of Needle *Brit J Ven Dis* 13 173 176 1937
- 74 HARRIS L M and HARNIEL M H The Comparative Incidence of Postlumbar Puncture Headache Following Spinal Anesthesia Administered Through 20 and 21 Gauge Needles *Anesthesiology* 14 390 397 1933
- 75 GREENE H M A Technique to Reduce the Incidence of Headache Following Lumbar Puncture in Ambulatory Patients with a Plan for more Frequent Examination of Cerebrospinal Fluids *Northwest Med* 22 240 245 1923
- 76 GREENE H M Lumbar Puncture and the Prevention of Postpuncture Headache *JAMA* 66 391-392 1926
- 77 WHITACRE R J Personal Communications
- 78 HART J R and WHITACRE R J Pencil point Needle in Prevention of Postspinal Headache *JAMA* 147 657-658 1951
- 79 GRAY H *Anatomy of the Human Body* 25th Ed Edited by Goss C M Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1948
- 80 SICARD J A *Le liquide céphalo rachidien* Paris Masson et Cie Gauthier Villars 1902
- 81 UNDERWOOD L J Lumbar Puncture Headache A Statistical Analysis of 500 Punctures *Am J Syph* 30 264 271 1946
- 82 LEIGHTON H T and HENDERSON B B Spinal Headache a Clinical Study *J Obstet & Gynec* 1 426-430 1933
- 83 NELSON M O Postpuncture Headaches A Clinical and Experimental Study of the Cause and Prevention *Arch Dermat & Syph* 21 615 627 1930
- 84 EVORY M L Certain Reactions Following Spinal Puncture Comparison of Techniques *Am Pract* 2 451-456 1948
- 85 WEED L H and MCLIBBEN P S Pressure Changes in the Cerebrospinal Fluid Following Intravenous Injection of Solutions of Various Concentrations *Am J Physiol* 49 512 530 1919
- 86 ALPERS B Lumbar Puncture Headache *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 14 806 812 1925
- 87 RIESE H H and SILLAK J B Experiences With Forced Spinal Drainage of the Central Nervous System *Wisconsin M J* 35 201 201 1930
- 88 BAAR GUSTAV New Procedure for the Prevention of Spinal Puncture Headache *M Rec* 98 598 599 1920
- 89 ABLEMAN R C Management of Severe Post Lumbar Puncture Headache *New York State J Med* 39 1495 1498 1939
- 90 EASTROM T Treatment of Headache After Spinal Anesthesia With Intraspinal Injection of Physiological Saline Solution *Acta chirurgica Scandinavica* 101 450-456 1951
- 91 RICE G C and DAVIS C H The Use of Peridural and Subarachnoid Injections of Saline Solution in the Treatment of Severe Postspinal Headache *Anesthesiology* 11 17-23 1950
- 92 RISHOLM L Peridurala Injektioner mot Postspinal Huvudvärk *Nord med* 45 104 1951
- 93 DENSON J S MUNN W E and BLANCH R B Jr Successful Treatment of Post Lumbar Puncture Headaches Presented at Annual Meeting of Am Soc of Anesthesiologists Cincinnati 1954
- 94 MOYSON F ET LAMBIOTTE C Traitement des céphalées post rachianesthésie par infiltration du ganglion cervical supérieur *Bruxelles méd* 27 1347 1350 1947
- 95 GUTTMAN S A Treatment of Post Lumbar Puncture Headache With Ergotamine Tartrate *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 49 556-558 1943
- 96 CALDWELL W C The Treatment of Post Lumbar Puncture Headache With DHE-45 (Dihydroergotamine) *West J Surg* 58 11 13, 1950
- 97 DEUTSCH E V The Treatment of Postspinal Headache With Intravenous Ethanol A Preliminary Report *Anesthesiology* 13 498-500 1952
- 98 WARD A E and FOLTZ E Professor and Assistant Professor respectively of the Division of Neurosurgery University of Washington Medical School Personal communications
- 99 SHONIK K Die Kopfschmerzen nach Lumbalanästhesie und ihre Verhütung durch Invocan forte *Med Klin* 44 937 1949
- 100 ASBELL N Post spinal Headache Treatment with Desoxycorticosterone Acetate *J M Soc New Jersey* 46 433-436 1949
- 101 PFEFFER R I Treatment of Postspinal Headache with Buccal Tablets of Desoxycorticosterone Acetate *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 65 21 23 1953

- 35 GRADY R W STOLCH J A and ROBINSON E B JR A Survey of Spinal Anesthesia from 1949 through 1952 *Anesthesiology* 15 310 319 1954
- 36 ROVENSTEIN C A and AFGAR V Spinal Anesthesia with Monocaine Formate Results in 2230 Cases *Anesthesiology* 5 40 44 1944
- 37 BABCOCK W W Spinal Anesthesia An Experience of Twenty Four Years *Am J Surg* 5 571-576 1928
- 38 ROMAN D A and ADRIANI J Nupercaine-glucose for Spinal Anesthesia Results of Over 5000 Clinical Administrations *Anesthesiology* 10 270 279 1949
- 39 KING O L Spinal Analgesia A Report of 1500 Cases *Ann Surg* 101 690 701 1935
- 40 JENNINGS W K and KARABIN J E Incidence of Headache Nausea and Vomiting Following Spinal Anesthesia *Am J Surg* 46 317 320 1939
- 41 KUNKLE E C RAY B S and WOLFF H G Experimental Studies on Headache Analysis of the Headache Associated with Changes in Intracranial Pressure *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 49 323-358 1943
- 42 PICKERING G W Lumbar Puncture Headache *Brain* 71 274 280 1948
- 43 GLENE O G Lumbar Puncture Headaches *Anesthesiology* 11 702 708 1950
- 44 MARSHALL J Lumbar Puncture Headache *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 13 71 74 1950
- 45 JACOBÆUS H C and FRUMERIE K About the Leakage of the Spinal Fluid After Lumbar Puncture and Its Treatment *Acta med scandinav* 59 10 108 1923
- 46 POOL J L Myelocopy Intraspinal Endoscopy *Surgery* 11 169 182 1942
- 47 SCHUBE P G and LEDREW F The Prevention of Reactions Due to Lumbar Spinal Puncture *New England J M* 211 537 539 1934
- 48 HOYT R An Apparatus for Withdrawing Spinal Fluid Without Post puncture Reaction *J A M A* 78 426-429 1922
- 49 ANTONI N Om lumbalpunktion *Stenska lak tidning* 20 529 538 1923
- 50 ANTONI N Rachicentese capillaris *Rev Neurol* 1 619 622 1925
- 51 GREENE B A GOLDSMITH M and LIGHTG S The Prevention of Headache After Spinal Analgesia for Vaginal Delivery by the Use of Hydration and a 24 Gauge Needle *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 58 709 717 1949
- 52 LUND P C and RUMBALL A C Hypobaric Pontocaine Spinal Anesthesia 1 640 Cases *Anesthesiology* 8 181 199 1947
- 53 DAVENPORT A M Post Puncture Reactions A Clinical Study *New York State J Med* 39 1185 1187 1939
- 54 EISENWALD H Zur Pathogenese der Beschwerden nach Lumbalpunktion *Med Klin* 25 1126-1130 1929
- 55 REDLICH F MOORE B E and KIMBELL I JR Lumbar Puncture Reactions Relative Importance of Physiological and Psychological Factors *Psychosom Med* 8 386-395 1946
- 56 WOLFF H G and WOLF S *Pain* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas, Publisher 1948
- 57 WOLFF H G *Headache and Other Pain* New York Oxford University Press 1948
- 58 RAY B S and WOLFF H G Experimental Studies in Headache Pain Sensitive Structures of the Head and Their Significance in Headache *Arch Surg* 41 813 856 1940
- 59 GREENE B A BERKOWITZ S and GOLDSMITH M The Prevention of Cranial Nerve Palsies Following Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 15 302-309 1954
- 60 HUGHSON W A Note on the Relationship of Cerebrospinal and Intralabyrinthine Pressures *Am J Physiol* 101 396-407 1932
- 61 MOORE D C BRIDENBACH L D OWEN C K MACDOUGALL M P and CARRUTHERS H C Lumbar Epidural Block The Anesthetic of Choice for Cesarean Section? *West J Surg* 61 459-464 1953
- 62 MOORE D C Sciatic and Femoral Nerve Block *J A M A* 150 550 554 1952
- 63 MOORE D C Pontocaine Solutions for Regional Analgesia Other Than Spinal and Epidural Block An Analysis of 2500 Cases *J A M A* 146 803-808 1951
- 64 KUBIE L S Intracranial Pressure Changes During Forced Drainage of the Central Nervous System *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 16 318 328 1926
- 65 SOLOVICH H C Raising Cerebrospinal Fluid Pressure with Especial Regard to the Effect on Lumbar Puncture Headache *J A M A* 82 1512-1515 1924
- 66 MASSERMAN J H Cerebrospinal Hydrodynamics VII Effects of the Intravenous Injection of Hypertonic Solutions of Dextrose *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 35 296-303 1936
- 67 GOODMAN L and GILMAN A *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* 2nd Ed New York Macmillan Co 1955
- 68 KENNEDY A J Spinal Anaesthesia Clinical Experiences in 430 Cases and a Technique to Eliminate Postoperative Headache *M J Australia* 19 1 40 45 1932

- 69 IRSKIN D and JOHNSON A C Lumbar Puncture in Out Patients *Lancet* **1** 371 373 1938
- 70 DATTEMER B Die Ambulatorische Lumbalpunktion *Wien Klin Wchnschr* **10** 150 453 1927
- 71 DATTEMER B THOMAS I W and WEXLER C *The Management of Neurosyphilis* New York Crane & Stratton 1911
- 72 ALLEN H W Headache Following Lumbar Puncture *Brit M J* **2** 319 1931
- 73 HARRISON L W Note on Lumbar Puncture with the Dittner Pattern of Needle *Brit J Ven Dis* **13** 173 176 1937
- 74 HARRIS L M and HARMER M H The Comparative Incidence of Postlumbar Puncture Headache Following Spinal Anesthesia Administered Through 20 and 24 Gauge Needles *Anesthesiology* **14** 390 397 1953
- 75 CRENEL H M A Technique to Reduce the Incidence of Headache Following Lumbar Puncture in Ambulatory Patients with a Plex for more Frequent Examination of Cerebrospinal Fluids *Northwest Med* **22** 240 245 1923
- 76 GREENE H M Lumbar Puncture and the Prevention of Postpuncture Headache *JAMA* **56** 391-392 1926
- 77 WHITACRE R J Personal Communications
- 78 HART J R and WHITACRE R J Pencil point Needle in Prevention of Postspinal Headache *JAMA* **147** 657 658 1951
- 79 GRAY H *Anatomy of the Human Body* 25th Ed Edited by Goss C M Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1948
- 80 SICARD J A *Le liquide cephalo rachidien* Paris Masson et Cie Gauthier Villars 1902
- 81 UNDERWOOD L J Lumbar Puncture Headache A Statistical Analysis of 500 Punctures *Am J Syph* **30** 264 271 1946
- 82 LEIGHTON H T and HENSHENSON B B Spinal Headache a Clinical Study *J Obstet & Gynec* **1** 426-430 1953
- 83 NELSON M O Postpuncture Headaches A Clinical and Experimental Study of the Cause and Prevention *Arch Dermat & Syph* **21** 615 627 1930
- 84 FMORY M L Certain Reactions Following Spinal Puncture Comparison of Techniques *Am Pract* **2** 451 456 1948
- 85 WEED L H and MCKIBBEN P S Pressure Changes in the Cerebrospinal Fluid Following Intravenous Injection of Solutions of Various Concentrations *Am J Physiol* **48** 512 530 1919
- 86 ALPERS B Lumbar Puncture Headache *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* **14** 606-612 1925
- 87 BIESE H H and SHULAK J B Experiences With Forced Spinal Drainage of the Central Nervous System *Wisconsin M J* **35** 201 204 1936
- 88 BAAR CLAYTON New Procedure for the Prevention of Spinal Puncture Headache *M Rec* **98** 598 599 1920
- 89 AHLBOM R I Management of Severe Post Lumbar Puncture Headache *New York State J Med* **48** 1495 1498 1948
- 90 EASTROM T Treatment of Headache After Spinal Anesthesia With Intraspinal Injection of Physiological Saline Solution *Acta chirurgica Scandinav* **101** 150 456 1951
- 91 RICE C G and DAVIS C H The Use of Peridural and Subarachnoid Injections of Saline Solution in the Treatment of Severe Postspinal Headache *Anesthesiology* **11** 17 23 1950
- 92 RISHOLM L Peridurala Injektioner mot Post spinal Huvudvärk *Nord med* **45** 104 1951
- 93 DENSON J S MUNRY W E and BUSCH R B Jr Successful Treatment of Post Lumbar Puncture Headaches Presented at Annual Meeting of Am Soc of Anesthesiologists Cincinnati 1954
- 94 MOYSON F ET LAMBIOTTE C Traitement des cephalées post rachianesthésie par infiltration du ganglion cervical supérieur *Bruxelles méd* **27** 1347 1350 1947
- 95 GUTTMAN S A Treatment of Post Lumbar Puncture Headache With Ergotamine Tartrate *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* **49** 556 558 1943
- 96 CALDWELL W G The Treatment of Post lumbar Puncture Headache With DHE-45 (Dihydroergotamine) *West J Surg* **58** 11 13 1950
- 97 DEUTSCH E V The Treatment of Postspinal Headache With Intravenous Ethanol A Preliminary Report *Anesthesiology* **13** 496-500 1952
- 98 WARD A E and FOLTZ E Professor and Assistant Professor respectively of the Division of Neurosurgery University of Washington Medical School Personal communications
- 99 SHONIC K Die Kopfschmerzen nach Lumbal anästhesie und ihre Verhütung durch Invocan forte *Med Klin* **44** 937 1949
- 100 ASHELL N Post spinal Headache Treatment with Desovycortosterone Acetate *J M Soc New Jersey* **46** 433 436 1949
- 101 PFEFFER R I Treatment of Postspinal Headache with Buccal Tablets of Desovycortosterone Acetate *Am J Obstet & Gynec* **65** 21 23 1953

- 102 CROSBY R M N Treatment of Post Pneumoencephalographic Headache with B Pyndyl Carbinol Tartrate (Roniacol Tartrate) *Am J M Sc* 225 61 66 1953
- 103 SHANNON T R Antihistaminic Drug in the Prevention of Spinal Headache *New York State J Med* 50 1259 1260 1950
- 104 WETCHLER B V and BRACE D E A Technique to Minimize the Occurrence of Headache After Lumbar Puncture by Use of Small Bore Spinal Needles *Anesthesiology* 16 270 282 1955
- 105 GIZYNSKI W E and SIEYERS L A Causes of Post Spinal Headaches in Vaginal Deliveries *Harper Hosp Bull* 10 136-142 1952
- 106 MARX G F and HENSLEY S G Prophylaxis of Postspinal Analgesia Headache Following Vaginal Delivery *New York State J Med* 52 1906-1908 1952
- 107 KUSHNER P Prevention of Headache Following Spinal Anesthesia *U S Armed Forces M J* 6 217 220 1955
- 108 ORTIZ A T and VAN DER HOFSTADT ALBERTA C Meningitis Following Spinal Anesthesia Prevention *Med clin* 23 409 410 1954 Abstract *J A M A* 158 351 1955

Backache

BACKACHE following a regional block particularly spinal block is neither a serious nor disabling complication but it can be annoying to the patient, the surgeon and the anesthetist. Since very little concern is normally exhibited by the physician when back pain occurs from block procedures where a spinal or epidural tap has not been attempted, this chapter will deal mainly with back pain which follows spinal and epidural anesthesia. The incidence of back pain following spinal anesthesia varies from between 2 to 25% depending on the type of investigation conducted.¹⁻⁶

ETIOLOGY

Back pain may occur following any type of anesthesia and its frequency after regional block procedures is probably no greater than after general anesthesia.⁷⁻⁸ Nevertheless, when it occurs following spinal anesthesia it is inevitably blamed on this procedure by both the physician and the patient irrespective of whether or not it occurs at the site of the spinal tap or in an unrelated area. In most of these cases the surgeon particularly when he has not administered the anesthetic accepts this assumption as fact and makes no attempt to establish the source of the pain more accurately by physical examination or by asking (1) was the pain present prior to the anesthetic? (2) is it caused by arthritic changes? (3) is it the result of metastatic carcinoma? (4) is there x-ray evidence of changes at the site of the spinal tap? and (5) what psychological factors if any are involved? It is interesting to note that Arner⁹ after studying 1191 patients 603 of which

were surveyed by questionnaires and 588 by clinical examination and roentgen studies found that a total of 233 patients (19.6%) had back pain but he states "only in 35 cases (3.0%) was any relation between operation and back pain possible or probable."

In many instances the exact etiology of back pain attributable to spinal or epidural anesthesia is unknown but the following have been proposed

Relaxation of the Back Musculature—A number of authors mention this as a possible cause of back pain and anatomically it is a plausible explanation.^{3-5,6} Normally, the back curves in the lumbar area and in many patients this curve is accentuated i.e. the patient is lordotic. When patients, particularly those with lordosis are made to lie supine for any period of time without adequate support for their normal lumbar curve pain may result. Any patient who is confined to bed for any lengthy period of time will usually complain of backache either during the time he is in bed or when he first becomes ambulatory whether he has had an anesthetic or not. If he is not only subjected to a supine position for a time but the greater majority of his back muscles are relaxed by a regional block procedure e.g. a spinal or epidural anesthesia the lumbar curve its muscle support removed automatically flattens because of gravity (see Figure 45 page 198). The effect of this flattening is to stretch the muscles ligaments and joint capsules of the spine so that when motor and sensory function return the lumbar area becomes painful. Therefore since this pain is usually limited to the lumbar area and since this is the area used most frequently

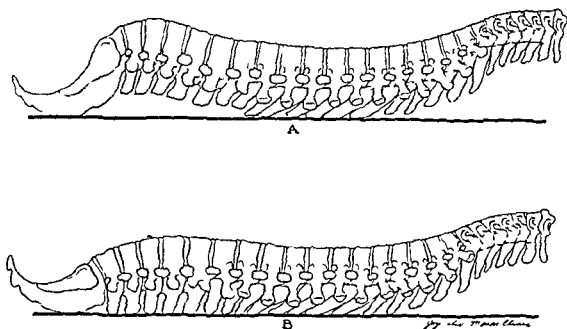


Figure 45 (A) Normal lumbar curve (B) Lumbar curve flattened or straightened as a result of the paralysis of the sensory and motor nerves of the dermatomes and consequent relaxation of the muscles of the vertebral column

for a tap the patient blames the pain on the anesthetic procedure.

Trauma to Anatomical Structures—Trauma to the intervertebral ligaments, periosteum of the vertebra, the annulus fibrosus (intervertebral disc), the blood vessels in these structures or subcutaneous tissues or to a combination of the above has been cited as another cause of backache.^{6 9 10 11 12}

It has been shown that if hypertonic saline is injected into the spinal ligament, periosteum or back muscles, a deep aching pain from this mechanical pressure results.¹³ Therefore, it seems reasonable to expect that hemorrhage into a ligament caused by a dull needle or multiple explorations regardless of the gauge of the needle may produce the same type of pain.

Damage to the intervertebral disc by trauma from the spinal needle has been proposed by Pease¹⁰ and Dripps and Vandam¹¹ as a possible cause of back pain following spinal tap. Wiberg¹⁴ while performing back operations under local anesthesia has caused lumbosacral pain by pressing on the external surface of the annulus fibrosus, and Lindblom¹⁵ during discography has noted pain as the needle is inserted into the disc for this pro-

cedure. However, in a personal communication to Arner,¹⁶ Lindblom notes that over 500 disc punctures have been performed using Diodrast (iodopyracet) solutions without any immediately noted contraindications. Nevertheless, a number of reports have appeared in the medical literature citing disc lesions following spinal punctures.^{16 17 18 19}

Trauma from Positioning the Patient—Following the establishment of spinal anesthesia with paralysis of both the sensory and motor nerve fibers, it is not unusual for the patient to be subjected to what might be termed "rough handling." In other words, painful stretching of the muscles and ligaments may occur in the anesthetized area without complaint from the patient or contraction of the muscles to prevent this trauma. This is particularly true in the patient who is to undergo a procedure for which the lithotomy position is indicated (a position which in itself tends to straighten the lumbar curve). Seldom are both legs raised and lowered at the same time and there is usually little concern as to whether or not the legs are too widely abducted or flexed. It is not unusual for these patients to complain bitterly in the postoperative period of low back pain with

radiation to the thighs and calves of the legs. It has been concluded at the Mason Clinic that much of the back pain which occurs, particularly that which follows the lithotomy position can be attributed to faulty positioning of the patient for back pain will appear in these patients whether a general or spinal anesthetic is administered.

Trauma from the Operative Procedure—A retractor misapplied during a pelvic operation or a difficult forceps extraction during a vaginal delivery may traumatize a nerve resulting in low back pain with sciatic radiation.

Infection—Reports of infected intervertebral discs, epidural abscess and/or osteomyelitis have appeared and it is obvious that such conditions would result in back pain.²¹

Psychological Aspects—At the Mason Clinic epidural (peridural) blocks are performed in preference to spinal (subarachnoid) block whenever possible and the patient is pointedly informed that he is not receiving a spinal anesthetic. In these cases the complaint of back pain has been conspicuous by its infrequency although trauma to the ligaments etc. during the placement of the needle in the epidural space must occur with the same frequency as during spinal administrations. Thus the question arises: If trauma from the needle to the subcutaneous tissues, spinal ligaments, periosteum of the bone and/or muscles is to be considered as a prime cause of low back pain following spinal block, why is the incidence of back pain following epidural block not as great as after spinal block? Clearly, the needle on its way to the epidural space must traverse these anatomical structures in the same fashion as in spinal block and in most instances the needles used for epidural blocks are larger i.e. 19 gauge in contrast to 21 gauge or smaller.

This question is not proposed to imply that trauma to these structures cannot produce backache or that back pain after either of these types of anesthesia is not real. Nevertheless it presents an intriguing and baffling aspect of the problem and calls for further study.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of back pain following spinal or epidural anesthesia are

Superficial or Deep Pain—If the pain is caused by the puncture it usually does not have sciatic nerve distribution. When sciatic nerve distribution is present, it usually indicates trauma from the positioning of the patient or from the operation.

Muscle Spasm—If the pain is severe the muscles in the lumbar area may be felt by the examining physician to be in spasm and the patient will in all probability limit his motion i.e., "splinting," occurs. The muscle spasm may be either bilateral or unilateral.

X-ray—Usually the roentgen studies of the vertebral column are negative. However in some instances myelography or discography may reveal organic changes which may or may not have been caused by the regional block procedure.²

PROPHYLAXIS

As has been noted in other chapters concerned with spinal anesthesia an attempt is made at the Mason Clinic to use other regional block procedures, i.e., epidural block, sciatic and femoral nerve block, intercostal or thoracic plexus block etc., whenever possible in preference to spinal anesthesia. This preference is not based on a fear that the serious complications of spinal anesthesia, i.e., cauda equina syndrome, etc. may result, but rather to avoid the frequent and less serious but annoying complications of spinal anesthesia of which backache and headache are probably the most prominent. When spinal or epidural anesthesia is employed, one or more of the following precautions may help to avoid back pain.

Maintain the Normal Lumbar Curve—The normal lumbar curve should be maintained by adequate back support while the patient is on the operating table as well as in bed after the operation until the block has dissipated itself. This is necessary since spinal and epidural anesthesia cause the back to lose most of its muscular support during the

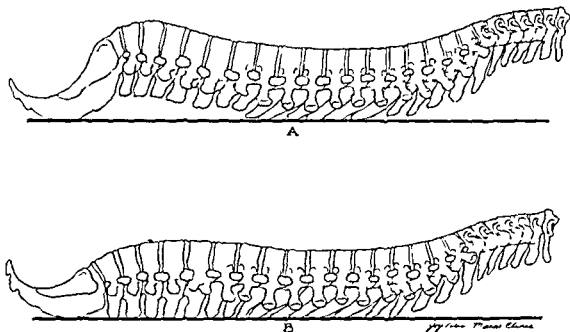


Figure 45 (A) Normal lumbar curve (B) Lumbar curve flattened or straightened" as a result of the paralysis of the sensory and motor nerves of the dermatomes and consequent relaxation of the muscles of the vertebral column

for a tap the patient blames the pain on the anesthetic procedure

Trauma to Anatomical Structures—Trauma to the intervertebral ligaments, periosteum of the vertebra, the annulus fibrosus (intervertebral disc), the blood vessels in these structures or subcutaneous tissues or to a combination of the above has been cited as another cause of backache.^{9 10 11 12}

It has been shown that if hypertonic saline is injected into the spinal ligament, periosteum or back muscles, a deep aching pain from this mechanical pressure results.¹³ Therefore it seems reasonable to expect that hemorrhage into a ligament caused by a dull needle or multiple explorations regardless of the gauge of the needle may produce the same type of pain.

Damage to the intervertebral disc by trauma from the spinal needle has been proposed by Pease¹⁰ and Dripps and Vandam.¹¹ As a possible cause of back pain following spinal tap, Wiberg¹⁴ while performing back operations under local anesthesia has caused lumbosacral pain by pressing on the external surface of the annulus fibrosus, and Lindblom¹⁵ during discography has noted pain as the needle is inserted into the disc for this pro-

cedure. However, in a personal communication to Arner,² Lindblom notes that over 5 disc punctures have been performed using Diodrast (iodopyricet) solutions without an immediately noted contraindication. Nevertheless, a number of reports have appeared in the medical literature citing disc lesions following spinal punctures.^{16 17 18 19}

Trauma from Positioning the Patient Following the establishment of spinal anesthesia with paralysis of both the sensory and motor nerve fibers, it is not unusual for the patient to be subjected to what might be termed rough handling. In other words, painful stretching of the muscles and ligaments may occur in the anesthetized state without complaint from the patient or contraction of the muscles to prevent this trauma. This is particularly true in the patient who is to undergo a procedure for which the lithotomy position is indicated (a position which in itself tends to straighten the lumbar curve). Seldom are both legs raised and lowered at the same time and there is usually little concern as to whether or not the legs are too widely abducted or flexed. It is not unusual for these patients to complain bitterly in the postoperative period of low back pain with

radiation to the thighs and calves of the legs. It has been concluded at the Mason Clinic that much of the back pain which occurs particularly that which follows the lithotomy position can be attributed to faulty positioning of the patient for back pain will appear in these patients whether a general or spinal anesthetic is administered.

Trauma from the Operative Procedure—A retractor misplaced during a pelvic operation or a difficult forceps extraction during a vaginal delivery may traumatize a nerve resulting in low back pain with sciatic radiation.

Infection—Reports of infected intervertebral discs, epidural abscess and/or osteomyelitis have appeared and it is obvious that such conditions would result in back pain.^{20, 21, 22}

Psychological Aspects—At the Mason Clinic epidural (peridural) blocks are performed in preference to spinal (subarachnoid) block wherever possible and the patient is pointedly informed that he is not receiving a spinal anesthesia. In these cases the complaint of back pain has been conspicuous by its infrequency, although trauma to the ligaments etc. during the placement of the needle in the epidural space must occur with the same frequency as during spinal administrations. Thus the question arises: If trauma from the needle to the subcutaneous tissues, spinal ligaments, periosteum of the bone and/or muscles is to be considered as a prime cause of low back pain following spinal block, why is the incidence of back pain following epidural block not as great as after spinal block? Clearly the needle on its way to the epidural space must traverse these anatomical structures in the same fashion as in spinal block and in most instances the needles used for epidural blocks are larger, i.e. 19 gauge in contrast to 21 gauge or smaller.

This question is not proposed to imply that trauma to these structures cannot produce backache or that back pain after either of these types of anesthesia is not real. Nevertheless, it presents an intriguing and baffling aspect of the problem and calls for further study.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of back pain following spinal or epidural anesthesia are:

Superficial or Deep Pain—If the pain is caused by the puncture it usually does not have sciatic nerve distribution. When sciatic nerve distribution is present it usually indicates trauma from the positioning of the patient or from the operation.

Muscle Spasm—If the pain is severe, the muscles in the lumbar area may be felt by the examining physician to be in spasm and the patient will in all probability limit his motion i.e. "splinting" occurs. The muscle spasm may be either bilateral or unilateral.

X-ray—Usually the roentgen studies of the vertebral column are negative. However in some instances myelography or discography may reveal organic changes which may or may not have been caused by the regional block procedure.²

PROPHYLAXIS

As has been noted in other chapters concerned with spinal anesthesia, an attempt is made at the Mason Clinic to use other regional block procedures i.e., epidural block, sciatic and femoral nerve block, intercostal, celiac plexus block etc. whenever possible in preference to spinal anesthesia. This preference is not based on a fear that the serious complications of spinal anesthesia i.e. cauda equina syndrome, etc. may result, but rather to avoid the frequent and less serious but annoying complications of spinal anesthesia of which backache and headache are probably the most prominent. When spinal or epidural anesthesia is employed one or more of the following precautions may help to avoid back pain.

Maintain the Normal Lumbar Curve—The normal lumbar curve should be maintained by adequate back support while the patient is on the operating table as well as in bed after the operation until the block has dissipated itself. This is necessary since spinal and epidural anesthesia cause the back to lose most of its muscular support during the

time the local anesthetic agent is effective. Carefully supporting the back of the lordotic patient is of particular importance.

Avoid Traumatizing Tissues—Every effort should be made to avoid multiple punctures—if a tap cannot be executed after two or three attempts another type of anesthesia should be considered. This is singularly true if the patient becomes restless, uncooperative or if he objects to the continuation of the procedure. If the block is administered under these conditions the patient will blame any subsequent pain or complication on the procedure regardless of whether or not there is an association and if a spinal block is executed under protest the court may uphold a charge of "technical assault."

Position the Patient Carefully—When the lithotomy position is to be used both legs should be raised and lowered at the same time. Overabduction and flexion should be avoided and once the patient is in position the surgeon or nurses should not jerk him from this position to another.

When other positions are to be used, i.e., lateral decubitus, prone, etc., the patient should be moved slowly with adequate help—he must not be roughly tugged into position.

Avoid Infection—Since any break in technique may result in infection, abscess and other processes which usually cause pain, asepsis must be assured (see Chapter 22, page 206).

Do Not Use the Word "Spinal"—When discussing a spinal anesthesia with a patient the physician should use terms such as "lumbar block" or "subarachnoid block." Many patients will blame every little ache or pain on a spinal block because friends have complained following this type of anesthesia or they have read of its untoward effects in a magazine or newspaper. The hospital personnel should also be warned against the use of the term "spinal."

TREATMENT

Before instituting routine treatment of persistent back pain following a spinal anes-

thesia, every effort to establish the correct diagnosis must be made. Physiotherapy and exercise which often are beneficial when the pain is due to bed rest, etc., may make degenerative changes such as arthritis or carcinomatous metastasis more painful.

If the pain is superficial it will usually pass away in a day or two and "skillful neglect" with watchful waiting will suffice. However, if a hematoma has formed in the tissue, physiotherapy and the control of the pain with large doses of acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin),* Tolserol, etc., and/or an opiate may be necessary. Infection should receive the appropriate therapy, i.e., antibiotics, drainage, etc.

REFERENCES

1. ERICSSON T. Spinalanestesi med Pantokain. *Nord med* 33:270-273, 1947.
2. ARNER O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 164, Stockholm, 1952.
3. ERICSSON N O. On the Frequency of Complications Especially Those of Long Duration After Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 95:167-191, 1947.
4. SANDEGARD E. Besvaren efter Spinalanestesi. *Nord med* 38:687-693, 1948.
5. HEBERT C L, TETLUCK C E and ZIEHL J F. Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. A Evaluation of the Complications Encountered in 5763 Consecutive Spinal Anesthetics. *J MA* 142:551-557, 1950.
6. THORSEN G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anesthesia and Results from 2,493 Follow-up Cases. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 121, 1947.
7. GORDH T. Discussion of paper by Thorsen G. Senkomplikationer efter Spinal anestesi. *Nord med* 17:188-189, 1943.
8. NYGAARD K K. Routine Spinal Anesthesia in a Provincial Hospital. With a Comparative Study of Postoperative Complications Following Spinal and General Ether Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 78:379-446, 1936.
9. GOLDSCHWEND F. Ueber 1000 Lumbalanesthesien mit Tropakokain. *Wien klin Wchnschr* 20:1098-1102, 1907.
10. PEASE C N. Injuries to the Vertebrae and Intervertebral Disks Following Lumbar Puncture. *Am J Dis Child* 49:849-860, 1935.

* I.e., 20 to 25 gr (1200 to 1500 mg.)

- 11 DUTTS R D and VANDAM L D Hazards of Lumbar Puncture *JAMA* 147 1118 1121 1951
- 12 ADRIANI J *Techniques and Procedures of Anesthesia* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas, Publisher 1947
- 13 KELLGREN J H On the Distribution of Pain Arising from Deep Somatic Structures with Charts of Segmental Pain Areas *Clin Sc* 4 35-46 1959
- 14 WILHE G Back Pain in Relation to the Nerve Supply of the Intervertebral Disc *Acta orthop scandinav* 19 211 221 1949
- 15 LINDBLOM K Diagnostic Puncture of Intervertebral Disks in Scintica *Acta orthop scandinav* 17 231 239 1948
- 16 ERSS P G A Case of Degeneration of the Intervertebral Disc Following Lumbar Puncture *Proc Roy Soc Med* 35 220 221 1942
- 17 BAKER A H Lesion of the Intervertebral Disk Caused by Lumbar Puncture *Brit J Surg* 34 385-388 1947
- 18 CYELMAN M Injury to Intervertebral Discs During Spinal Puncture *J Bone & Joint Surg* 22 950 955 1940
- 19 EVERETT A D Lumbar Puncture Injuries *Proc Roy Soc Med* 35 208 210 1942
- 20 BROWLEY I L CRAIG J D and KESSER, A W L Infected Intervertebral Disk after Lumbar Puncture *Brit M J* 1 132 133 1949
- 21 REMISEN D B The Role of Lumbar Puncture in the Causation of Meningitis *J Med* 17 115 118 1936
- 22 FINDLAY L and KEMP F H Osteomyelitis of the Spine Following Lumbar Puncture *Arch Dis Childhood* 18 102 105 1943
- 23 WOODSON F E Personal Communication regarding judgment in case of Woodson v Huey 2 CCH Neg Case 2d, 284—Oklahoma Supreme Court June 23 1953

time the local anesthetic agent is effective. Carefully supporting the back of the lordotic patient is of particular importance.

Avoid Traumatizing Tissues—Every effort should be made to avoid multiple punctures—if a try cannot be executed after two or three attempts another type of anesthesia should be considered. This is singularly true if the patient becomes restless, uncooperative or if he objects to the continuation of the procedure. If the block is administered under these conditions the patient will blame any subsequent pain or complication on the procedure regardless of whether or not there is an association and if a spinal block is executed under protest the court may uphold a charge of technical assault.³

Position the Patient Carefully—When the lithotomy position is to be used both legs should be raised and lowered at the same time, overabduction and flexion should be avoided and once the patient is in position the surgeon or nurses should not jerk him from this position to another.

When other positions are to be used i.e. lateral decubitus, prone, etc. the patient should be moved slowly with adequate help—he must not be roughly tugged into position.

Avoid Infection—Since any break in technique may result in infection, abscess and other processes which usually cause pain, sepsis must be assured (see Chapter 22, page 206).

Do Not Use the Word Spinal—When discussing a spinal anesthesia with a patient the physician should use terms such as "lumbar block" or "subarachnoid block." Many patients will blame every little ache or pain on a spinal block because friends have complained following this type of anesthesia or they have read of its untoward effects in a magazine or newspaper. The hospital personnel should also be warned against the use of the term "spinal."

TREATMENT

Before instituting routine treatment of persistent back pain following a spinal anes-

thesia, every effort to establish the correct diagnosis must be made. Physiotherapy and exercise which often are beneficial when the pain is due to bed rest etc. may make degenerative changes such as arthritis or carcinomatous metastasis more painful.

If the pain is superficial it will usually pass away in a day or two and "skillful neglect" with watchful waiting will suffice. However, if a hematoma has formed in the tissue heat, physiotherapy, and the control of the pain with large doses of acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin),⁶ Tolserol, etc., and/or an opiate may be necessary. Infection should receive the appropriate therapy i.e., antibiotics, drainage etc.

REFERENCES

1. ERICSSON T. Spinalanestesi med Pantokain. *Nord med* 33:270-273, 1947.
2. ARNLI O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 167, Stockholm, 1952.
3. ERICSSON N O. On the Frequency of Complications Especially Those of Long Duration After Spinal Anaesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 95:167-191, 1947.
4. SANDEGARD E. Besvaren efter Spinalanestesi. *Nord med* 38:687-693, 1948.
5. HEBERT C L, TETRICK C E and ZIEGLER J F. Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. An Evaluation of the Complications Encountered in 5763 Consecutive Spinal Anesthetics. *J A M A* 142:551-557, 1950.
6. THORSEN G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anesthesia and Results from 2,493 Follow-up Cases. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 121, 1947.
7. GORDH T. Discussion of paper by Thorsen G. Senkomplikationer efter Spinalanestesi. *Nord med* 17:188-189, 1943.
8. NYGAARD K K. Routine Spinal Anesthesia in a Provincial Hospital. With a Comparative Study of Postoperative Complications Following Spinal and General Ether Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 78:379-446, 1936.
9. GOLDSCHWEND F. Ueber 1000 Lumbalanesthesien mit Tropikokain. *Wien klin Wchnschr* 20:1098-1102, 1907.
10. PEASE C N. Injuries to the Vertebrae and Intervertebral Disks Following Lumbar Puncture. *Am J Dis Child* 49:819-860, 1935.

* I.e. 20 to 25 gr (1200 to 1500 mg.)

- 11 DAVIS R D and VANHAM L D Hazards of Lumbar Puncture *J A M A* 147 1118 1121 1951
- 12 ADAMANT J *Techniques and Procedures of Anesthesia* Springfield, Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1947
- 13 KILLICKEN J H On the Distribution of Pain Arising from Deep Somatic Structures with Charts of Segmental Pain Areas *Clin Sc* 4 35 46 1939
- 14 WIERNE G Back Pain in Relation to the Nerve Supply of the Intervertebral Disc *Acta orthop scandinav* 19 211 221 1949
- 15 LINDLOM K Diagnostic Puncture of Intervertebral Disks in Sciatia *Acta orthop scandinav* 17 231 239 1948
- 16 EERS P G A Case of Degeneration of the Intervertebral Disc Following Lumbar Puncture *Proc Roy Soc Med* 35 220 221 1942
- 17 BAKER A H Lesion of the Intervertebral Disk Caused by Lumbar Puncture *Brit J Surg* 34 355-358 1947
- 18 CHESMAN M Injury to Intervertebral Discs During Spinal Puncture *J Bone & Joint Surg* 22 950 955 1940
- 19 LAMPERT A D Lumbar Puncture Injuries *Proc Roy Soc Med* 35 209 210 1942
- 20 BROWNEY J J CHAN J D and KESSER A W I Infected Intervertebral Disk after Lumbar Puncture *Brit M J* 1 112 113 1949
- 21 RUSSELL D B The Role of Lumbar Puncture in the Causation of Meningitis *J Med* 17 115 118 1946
- 22 LINDLAY L and KEMP I H Osteomyelitis of the Spine Following Lumbar Puncture *Arch Dis Childhood* 18 102 105 1943
- 23 WOODSON I F Personal Communication regarding judgment in case of Woodson v Huey 2 CCH Neg Case 2d 284—Oklahoma Supreme Court June 23 1953

time the local anesthetic agent is effective. Carefully supporting the back of the lordotic patient is of particular importance.

Avoid Traumatizing Tissues—Every effort should be made to avoid multiple punctures—if a tap cannot be executed after two or three attempts another type of anesthesia should be considered. This is singularly true if the patient becomes restless, uncooperative or if he objects to the continuation of the procedure. If the block is administered under these conditions the patient will blame any subsequent pain or complication on the procedure, regardless of whether or not there is an association, and if a spinal block is executed under protest the court may uphold a charge of technical assault.³

Position the Patient Carefully—When the lithotomy position is to be used both legs should be raised and lowered at the same time, overabduction and flexion should be avoided and once the patient is in position the surgeon or nurses should not jerk him from this position to another.

When other positions are to be used, i.e. lateral decubitus, prone, etc. the patient should be moved slowly with adequate help—he must not be roughly tugged into position.

Avoid Infection—Since any break in technique may result in infection, abscess and other processes which usually cause purulent sepsis must be assured (see Chapter 22, page 206).

Do Not Use the Word 'Spinal'—When discussing a spinal anesthesia with a patient the physician should use terms such as "lumbar block" or "subarachnoid block." Many patients will blame every little ache or pain on a spinal block because friends have complained following this type of anesthesia or they have read of its untoward effects in a magazine or newspaper. The hospital personnel should also be warned against the use of the term "spinal."

TREATMENT

Before instituting routine treatment of persistent back pain following a spinal anes-

thesia, every effort to establish the correct diagnosis must be made. Physiotherapy and exercise which often are beneficial when the pain is due to bed rest etc. may make degenerative changes such as arthritis or carcinomatous metastasis more painful.

If the pain is superficial it will usually pass away in a day or two and skillful neglect with watchful waiting will suffice. However, if a hematoma has formed in the tissue, heat, physiotherapy, and the control of the pain with large doses of acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin),* Tolserol etc. and/or an opiate may be necessary. Infection should receive the appropriate therapy, i.e., antibiotics, drainage, etc.

REFERENCES

- ERICSSON T. Spinalanestesi med Pantokain. *Nord med* 33 270 273 1947
- ARNER O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 167 Stockholm 1952
- ERICSSON N O. On the Frequency of Complications Especially Those of Long Duration, After Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 95 167 191 1947
- SANDEGARD E. Besvär efter Spinalanestesi. *Nord med* 38 687 693 1948
- HEBERT C L, TETTERICK C E and ZIEMBA J F. Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. An Evaluation of the Complications Encountered in 5763 Consecutive Spinal Anesthetics. *J A M A* 142 551 557 1950
- THORSEN G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anesthesia and Results from 2493 Follow up Cases. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 121 1947
- CORNH T. Discussion of paper by Thorsen G. Senkomplikationer efter Spinalanestesi. *Nord med* 17 188 189 1943
- NYGAARD K K. Routine Spinal Anesthesia in a Provincial Hospital. With a Comparative Study of Postoperative Complications Following Spinal and General Ether Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 78 379 446 1936
- GOLDSCHWEID F. Ueber 1000 Lumbalanesthesien mit Tropikokain. *Wien klin Wchnsch* 20 1098 1102 1907
- PEASE C N. Injuries to the Vertebrae and Intervertebral Disks Following Lumbar Puncture. *Am J Dis Child* 49 819 860 1935

* I.e. 20 to 25 gr (1200 to 1500 mg)

- 11 DUFFY R D and VANDAM L D Hazards of Lumbar Puncture *JAMA* 147 1118 1121 1951
- 12 ADAMI J *Techniques and Procedures of Anesthesia* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1947
- 13 KITCHEN J H On the Distribution of Pain Arising from Deep Somatic Structures with Charts of Segmental Pain Areas *Clin Sc* 4 35 40 1939
- 14 WIMPE G Back Pain in Relation to the Nerve Supply of the Intervertebral Disc *Acta orthop scandinav* 19 211 221 1949
- 15 LINDSTROM K Diagnostic Puncture of Intervertebral Disks in Sciatica *Acta orthop scandinav* 17 231 239 1948
- 16 EIRS P C A Case of Degeneration of the Intervertebral Disc Following Lumbar Puncture *Proc Roy Soc Med* 35 220 221 1942
- 17 BAKER A H Lesion of the Intervertebral Disk Caused by Lumbar Puncture *Brit J Surg* 34 385-388 1947
- 18 CULMAN M Injury to Intervertebral Discs During Spinal Puncture *J Bone & Joint Surg* 22 980 985 1940
- 19 EVERETT A D Lumbar Puncture Injuries *Proc Roy Soc Med* 35 209 210 1942
- 20 BROMLEY I I CRAIC J D and KESSER A W L Infected Intervertebral Disk after Lumbar Puncture *Brit M J* 1 132 133 1949
- 21 RASMUSSEN D B The Role of Lumbar Puncture in the Causation of Meningitis *J Med* 17 115 118 1936
- 22 LINDLAY I and KESTER I H Osteomyelitis of the Spine Following Lumbar Puncture *Arch Dis Childhood* 18 102 105 1943
- 23 WOODSON I F Personal Communication regarding judgment in case of Woodson v Huey 2 CCH Neg Case 2d 284—Oklahoma Supreme Court June 23 1953

Meningitis and Meningeal Irritation

MENINGITIS is a serious complication of regional block procedures. It may occur following a lumbar puncture alone or spinal anesthesia or paravertebral or an epidural (peridural) block.^{1 18 40 0} The patient who survives a meningitis may be disabled by its sequelae. Fortunately present day means of sterilization and the decreased toxicity of local anesthetic agents have made both septic and aseptic meningitis from a regional block procedure relatively rare.

Meningeal Irritation—The terms "meningeal irritation" and "meningismus" may be used interchangeably to indicate a signs and symptom complex which includes (1) cervical rigidity (2) a positive Kernig's sign (3) nausea and vomiting and (4) an increased pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid. Meningeal irritation brings about no significant pathological changes in the spinal fluid other than the increased pressure. It may herald the onset of an aseptic or septic meningitis but it also may accompany diseases such as pneumonia and never progress to meningitis.

Meningitis—This is an inflammation of the three membranes that envelop the brain and spinal cord i.e. the dura mater, pia mater and arachnoid.¹⁰ It is normally characterized by general malaise, headache, fever, head retraction and positive cerebrospinal fluid findings. It is a specific disease entity and may be classified as either septic or aseptic.

"*Septic meningitis*" is a term used to indicate a meningitis in which bacteria can be detected in the spinal fluid.^{20 1}

"*Aseptic meningitis*" is a term used to de-

note an inflammatory condition in which all the signs and symptoms of a meningitis are present except that bacteria cannot be found in the smears or culture of spinal fluid.^{0 21}

It is unfortunate that the term "meningismus" is often erroneously used synonymously with the term "aseptic meningitis." Meningismus is a sign and symptom complex and is only a part of the clinical picture of aseptic meningitis, the diagnosis of which must be established by examination of the cerebrospinal fluid. To avoid any misunderstanding therefore the term "meningeal irritation" is preferred in this text to its synonym "meningismus."

ETIOLOGY

Whenever the epidural or subarachnoid spaces are entered a meningeal irritation may ensue which may or may not progress to an aseptic or septic meningitis.

Meningeal Irritation—The specific causes of meningeal irritation alone, following a regional block procedure in a patient with no infectious disease are usually unknown. In all probability they are the same as those which produce an aseptic meningitis but the stimulus initiating the response and the resulting inflammatory reaction are less severe and subside more rapidly.

On the other hand if a disease process e.g. a pneumonia is present at the time a block is executed one might reasonably assume that an ensuing meningeal irritation is due to that disease rather than to the block. Nevertheless the possibility that the anesthetic technique was responsible cannot be discounted.

Aseptic Meningitis—Aseptic meningitis may be caused by one or more of the following: (1) the local anesthetic agent (2) in dwelling spinal catheters or needle (3) hemorrhage (4) puncture of the dura and (5) diagnostic procedures and/or the surgical procedure.

Local Anesthetic Agents—Formerly aseptic meningitis from the use of drugs such as Spinoerum (strychnine sulfate Novocain, starch paste alcohol and normal saline), Tropicoerum (benzoyl tropin), and Stovaine (amylomerum), etc was not uncommon. Today, with refinements in synthesis and improvements in packaging the time tested local anesthetic agents, i.e. Pontocaine, Novocain, Metycaine Intracaine and Nupercaine, usually do not cause chemical irritation of the meninges provided they are used in the dosage usually recommended. Nevertheless, in a very small number of patients the nerve tissue may be markedly irritated by the local agent. Merritt and Fremont Smith² point out that the injection of any foreign substance into the subarachnoid space will result in some form of irritation of the meninges. Reaction to the time tested local anesthetic agents is usually minimal but at rare times the nerve tissue may show hyperergy, i.e., the tissue reacts in a normal fashion but overreacts (see Chapter 1 page 8). Under such circumstances an aseptic meningitis may result.

Indwelling Spinal Catheters—In most instances plastic and ureteral indwelling catheters have replaced the use of indwelling needles for continuous spinal (subarachnoid) and epidural (peridural) anesthesia in those instances where prolonged periods of analgesia are required. Their safety as well as nonirritant qualities have been shown.³ Nevertheless their mere presence as a foreign body in either the subarachnoid or epidural space may result in mechanical irritation and inflammation.

In three cases at the Mason Clinic where plastic catheters were left in the epidural space following surgery for the purpose of effecting pain relief in the postoperative period the signs and symptoms of meningeal

irritation developed 12 to 24 hours following surgery. The catheters used and the equipment necessary to place them had been heat sterilized. Injections of 7 cubic centimeters of a 2% Xylocaine (lidocaine) solution without Adrenalin were administered through these catheters as necessary during the post operative period to keep the patients free of pain from the operation. Relief of the signs and symptoms of meningeal irritation occurred in all cases within 12 hours after the removal of the catheters.

The following two questions arose concerning these three cases: what caused the irritation and what specific form of irritation resulted?

In these cases the meningeal irritation could have been caused by either the local anesthetic agent as was suggested by Cleland⁴ or by the plastic catheters. It is our belief that either the catheter or some unknown cause was responsible. This belief is substantiated by the fact that my associates and I have employed 2% Xylocaine (lidocaine) for single dose lumbar epidural analgesia as well as continuous caudal (malleable needle technique) in over 1700 cases without causing meningeal irritation. Other physicians have found Xylocaine (lidocaine) to be nonirritating when not contaminated by metal ions etc.^{20, 27}

Since these patients improved rapidly following the removal of the plastic catheters there was no indication for a diagnostic spinal tap and it was not determined whether or not a meningitis had ensued. The rapid disappearance of signs and symptoms would probably indicate a meningeal irritation alone.

Hemorrhage—Subarachnoid bleeding may occur following lumbar puncture from (1) spontaneous rupture of a cerebral or spinal cord vessel²⁸ (2) alterations in cerebrospinal fluid pressure or (3) trauma to vessels from the placement of the needle.^{29, 31} If the patient has a blood dyscrasia or is receiving anti-coagulant therapy at the time the bleeding starts the situation is doubly precarious. Jackson³⁰ has shown that if blood gains entrance to the subarachnoid space signs of

Meningitis and Meningeal Irritation

MENINGITIS is a serious complication of regional block procedures. It may occur following a lumbar puncture alone, a spinal anesthesia, a paravertebral or an epidural (peridural) block.^{1 18 49 50} The patient who survives a meningitis may be disabled by its sequelae. Fortunately present day means of sterilization and the decreased toxicity of local anesthetic agents have made both septic and aseptic meningitis from a regional block procedure relatively rare.

Meningeal Irritation—The terms meningeal irritation and meningismus may be used interchangeably to indicate a signs and symptom complex which includes (1) cervical rigidity, (2) a positive Kernig's sign, (3) nausea and vomiting, and (4) an increased pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid. Meningeal irritation brings about no significant pathological changes in the spinal fluid other than the increased pressure. It may herald the onset of an aseptic or septic meningitis but it also may accompany diseases such as pneumonia and never progress to meningitis.

Meningitis—This is an inflammation of the three membranes that envelop the brain and spinal cord, i.e. the *dura mater*, *pia mater*, and *arachnoid*.¹⁹ It is normally characterized by general malaise, headache, fever, head retraction, and positive cerebrospinal fluid findings. It is a specific disease entity and may be classified as either septic or aseptic.

Septic meningitis is a term used to indicate a meningitis in which bacteria can be detected in the spinal fluid.^{9 11}

Aseptic meningitis is a term used to de-

note an inflammatory condition in which all the signs and symptoms of a meningitis are present except that bacteria cannot be found in the smears or culture of spinal fluid.^{20 21}

It is unfortunate that the term "meningismus" is often erroneously used synonymously with the term "aseptic meningitis." Meningismus is a sign and symptom complex and is only a part of the clinical picture of aseptic meningitis, the diagnosis of which must be established by examination of the cerebrospinal fluid. To avoid any misunderstanding, therefore, the term meningeal irritation is preferred in this text to its synonym meningismus.

ETIOLOGY

Whenever the epidural or subarachnoid spaces are entered, a meningeal irritation may ensue which may or may not progress to an aseptic or septic meningitis.

Meningeal Irritation—The specific causes of meningeal irritation alone following a regional block procedure in a patient with no infectious disease are usually unknown. In all probability they are the same as those which produce an aseptic meningitis but the stimulus irritating the response and the resulting inflammatory reaction are less severe and subside more rapidly.

On the other hand, if a disease process, e.g. a pneumonia, is present at the time a block is executed, one might reasonably assume that an ensuing meningeal irritation is due to that disease rather than to the block. Nevertheless, the possibility that the anesthetic technique was responsible cannot be discounted.

the same, those due only to simple meningeal irritation resolve in 2 to 3 days and usually do not become progressively worse. The general malaise, the headache and occasionally slight head retraction—signs common to both complications—lead the physician to sample the spinal fluid for he is fearful of a meningitis and wishes to establish a definite diagnosis. The outstanding method of differentiating between simple meningeal irritation and the two types of meningitis is the laboratory analysis of the cerebrospinal fluid. This is the only way of settling the diagnosis other than further waiting.

In general septic or aseptic meningitis will produce the following signs and symptoms with the exception of spinal fluid findings. However in septic meningitis their onset may be more rapid and the course may be more fulminant.

Headache—This usually signals the onset of either a simple meningeal irritation or a meningitis. At first it is mild but increases in severity and possesses a "bursting" character as meningitis develops.¹⁰ It is present in all positions and at all times and is associated with a hypertension of the cerebrospinal fluid which differentiates it from the usual headache associated with hypotension of the spinal fluid. According to Brun¹⁰ "It may be diffuse or mainly frontal and usually radiates down the neck and into the back, being associated with pain in the spine which radiates to the limbs especially to the lower limbs."

While a high spinal fluid pressure is associated with this type of headache it may not be the cause of it. Macintosh¹¹ states "It is extremely doubtful whether mere rise of cerebrospinal fluid pressure does cause headache. Symonds reports a case in which saline was injected intrathecally and the patient's normal pressure of 170 mm. water was raised to and maintained at 550 mm. water for some minutes without causing symptoms and there are pathological states which result in similar high pressures yet do not cause headache."

Fever—The temperature varies between 100 and 102 F but in acute cases of meningitis may reach 104 F or 105 F.

Pulse—The pulse may be normal or slow, i.e., 50 to 60 early in the disease. When the pulse starts to increase above its normal rate the condition is becoming more severe and the onset of an acute meningitis is indicated.

Respirations—There is usually only a slight increase in respirations but if septic meningitis results and is not controlled by antibiotics, various forms of respiratory irregularity may be seen.

Vomiting—This is not an unusual occurrence.

Convulsions—These seldom occur in the adult patient but are not infrequent in the child.

Special Signs of Irritation of the Meninges—Cervical rigidity, head retraction, Kernig's sign (when lying supine with the thigh flexed upon the abdomen the leg cannot be completely extended¹²), and Brudzinkis sign (identical contralateral reflex reciprocal contralateral reflex and neck sign¹³) are usually present.

Cerebrospinal Fluid Findings—As mentioned previously, the composition of the spinal fluid is the deciding factor in determining whether an aseptic or septic meningitis or only a simple meningeal irritation is present (see Table XIV page 208).

Meningeal Irritation—When meningeal irritation alone occurs the spinal fluid pressure is increased but the cell count is normal or only slightly elevated (50 to 100 or less per cu. mm.) and the fluid is clear. The glucose, proteins and chlorides are not increased but in some instances the latter two may be slightly decreased. No bacteria are found.

Aseptic Meningitis—In aseptic meningitis there is an increase in the cell content of the spinal fluid usually from 100 to 1500 per cubic millimeter although in unusual cases it may be higher. Reynolds and Wilson¹⁴ reported three cases following lumbar puncture which showed signs of meningeal irritation and in which repeated taps revealed "sterile cloudy spinal fluid with cell counts ranging from 2900 to 17670." The fluid depending on the number of cells may be clear or turbid. Both polymorphonuclear and mononuclear

aseptic meningitis may occur—he terms this condition aseptic hemogenous meningitis. At the Mason Clinic we have seen one case of severe spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage which exhibited all the signs and symptoms of an acute meningitis. It occurred on the third postoperative day following an intercostal splanchnic (celiac) block for a gastric resection. The diagnosis was established by a spinal tap. Although this particular case was not associated with the anesthetic procedure it does substantiate the fact that subdural bleeding can produce the signs of acute aseptic meningitis.²³

Puncture of the Dura—Even a diagnostic lumbar puncture may produce an increase in the normal cell count of the spinal fluid to 50 or 100 cells and produce the signs of meningeal irritation. However aseptic meningitis seldom results from simple dural puncture if properly sterilized needles have been used unless blood vessels have been injured too.

Diagnostic Procedures and/or the Surgical Procedure—It is not unusual for a myelogram to be performed prior to lumbar disc surgery and a spinal anesthesia may be used as the anesthesia of choice in these patients. An aseptic meningitis may be produced by the mechanics of either of these procedures or by the drugs injected. Moreover if in addition to the above the dura is traumatized during the operation the possibility of another etiological factor has been introduced. The only proven cases of aseptic meningitis which my associates and I have seen occurred in this kind of case.

The patient was a 36 year old white female who was suspected of having a ruptured intervertebral disc. A myelogram with Pantopaque (ethyl iodophenylundecylate) three days prior to surgery confirmed the diagnosis. The Pantopaque was recovered except for a "few droplets of oil." The Pontocaine spinal anesthesia and surgery were uneventful. However on the second postoperative day the patient began to complain of a headache which persisted in all positions. On the third postoperative day her fever rose from 100 F to 103 F she showed signs of cervical rigid-

ity and her pulse rate was 120. Spinal tap revealed (1) increased pressure (2) no red blood cells (3) 1210 white blood cells 79% polymorphonuclear cells and 21% lymphocytes (4) the smear was negative except for "amorphous debris and many white cells" (5) the 24 hour and 72 hour cultures were negative (6) the chlorides and glucose determinations were normal and (7) the protein content was elevated.

Immediately after this diagnostic spinal tap the patient had been placed on Terramycin therapy, a broad spectrum antibiotic so that if the cultures proved to be positive the drug therapy might control the infection more rapidly. On the fourth postoperative day her temperature rose to 105 and then slowly subsided and read 99.6 F on the eighth postoperative day. She was discharged from the hospital on the twelfth postoperative day with no evidence of neurologic residua.

The exact cause of the aseptic meningitis is difficult to determine in this case but it could have been the diagnostic myelogram, the anesthetic procedure itself, the surgical trauma to the dura, or a combination of these.

Septic Meningitis—The incidence of meningitis varies widely. Thorsen² estimated its incidence in 1 in 800 cases and Arner¹⁰ reported one case in 21,230. The incidence is of little significance except to point out that this very serious complication does occur. Septic meningitis is caused by the introduction of bacteria into the subarachnoid space. This may occur because of (1) faulty technique in sterilization of instruments and ampules (2) a break in technique during the placement of the needle (3) trauma or (4) the execution of a spinal tap in a patient with a septic condition, particularly bacteremia.

Cases of osteitis or epidural abscess following a spinal tap have been noted^{22, 24} at either of these may be followed by a septic meningitis.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

While the early signs and symptoms of meningeal irritation and meningitis are much

the same, those due only to simple meningeal irritation resolve in 2 to 3 days and usually do not become progressively worse. The general malaise, the headache and occasionally slight head retraction—signs common to both complications—lead the physician to sample the spinal fluid for he is fearful of a meningitis and wishes to establish a definite diagnosis. *The outstanding method of differentiating between simple meningeal irritation and the two types of meningitis is the laboratory analysis of the cerebrospinal fluid.* This is the only way of settling the diagnosis other than further waiting.

In general septic or aseptic meningitis will produce the following signs and symptoms, with the exception of spinal fluid findings. However in septic meningitis their onset may be more rapid and the course may be more fulminant.

Headache—This usually signals the onset of either a simple meningeal irritation or a meningitis. At first it is mild but increases in severity and possesses a "bursting" character as meningitis develops.¹⁰ *It is present in all positions and at all times and is associated with a hypertension of the cerebrospinal fluid which differentiates it from the usual headache associated with hypotension of the spinal fluid.* According to Brun,²⁰ "It may be diffuse or mainly frontal and usually radiates down the neck and into the back being associated with pain in the spine which radiates to the limbs especially to the lower limbs."

While a high spinal fluid pressure is associated with this type of headache it may not be the cause of it. McIntosh¹¹ states: "It is extremely doubtful whether mere rise of cerebrospinal fluid pressure does cause headache." Symonds reports a case in which saline was injected intrathecally and the patient's normal pressure of 170 mm. water was raised to and maintained at 550 mm. water for some minutes without causing symptoms and there are pathological states which result in similar high pressures yet do not cause headache.

Fever—The temperature varies between 100 and 102 F° but in acute cases of meningitis may reach 104 F° or 105 F°.

Pulse—The pulse may be normal or slow to 50 to 60 early in the disease. When the pulse starts to increase above its normal rate the condition is becoming more severe and the onset of an acute meningitis is indicated.

Respirations—There is usually only a slight increase in respirations but if septic meningitis results and is not controlled by antibiotics, various forms of respiratory irregularity may be seen.

Vomiting—This is not an unusual occurrence.

Convulsions—These seldom occur in the adult patient but are not infrequent in the child.

Special Signs of Irritation of the Meninges—Cervical rigidity, head retraction, Kernig's sign (when lying supine with the thigh flexed upon the abdomen the leg cannot be completely extended¹²), and Brudzinkski's sign (identical contralateral reflex, reciprocal contralateral reflex, and neck sign¹³) are usually present.

Cerebrospinal Fluid Findings—As mentioned previously the composition of the spinal fluid is the deciding factor in determining whether an aseptic or septic meningitis or only a simple meningeal irritation is present (see Table XXIV page 206).

Meningeal Irritation—When meningeal irritation alone occurs, the spinal fluid pressure is increased but the cell count is normal or only slightly elevated (50 to 100 or less per cu. mm.) and the fluid is clear. The glucose, proteins and chlorides are not increased but in some instances the latter two may be slightly decreased. No bacteria are found.

Aseptic Meningitis—In aseptic meningitis there is an increase in the cell content of the spinal fluid usually from 100 to 1500 per cubic millimeter although in unusual cases it may be higher. Reynolds and Wilson¹⁷ reported three cases following lumbar puncture which showed signs of meningeal irritation and in which repeated taps revealed sterile cloudy spinal fluid with cell counts ranging from 2900 to 17 670. The fluid depending on the number of cells may be clear or turbid. Both polymorphonuclear and mononuclear

aseptic meningitis may occur—he terms this condition 'aseptic hemogenous meningitis'. At the Mason Clinic we have seen one case of severe spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage which exhibited all the signs and symptoms of an acute meningitis. It occurred on the third postoperative day following an intercostal splanchnic (celiac) block for a gastric resection. The diagnosis was established by a spinal tap. Although this particular case was not associated with the anesthetic procedure it does substantiate the fact that subdural bleeding can produce the signs of acute aseptic meningitis.¹⁸

Puncture of the Dura—Even a diagnostic lumbar puncture may produce an increase in the normal cell count of the spinal fluid to 50 or 100 cells and produce the signs of meningeal irritation. However aseptic meningitis seldom results from simple dural puncture if properly sterilized needles have been used unless blood vessels have been injured too.

Diagnostic Procedures and/or the Surgical Procedure—It is not unusual for a myelography to be performed prior to lumbar disc surgery and a spinal anesthesia may be used as the anesthesia of choice in these patients. An aseptic meningitis may be produced by the mechanics of either of these procedures or by the drugs injected. Moreover if in addition to the above the dura is traumatized during the operation the possibility of another etiologic factor has been introduced. The only proven cases of aseptic meningitis which my associates and I have seen occurred in this kind of case.

The patient was a 36 year old white female who was suspected of having a ruptured intervertebral disc. A myelogram with Pantopaque (ethyl iodophenylundecylate) three days prior to surgery confirmed the diagnosis. The Pantopaque was recovered except for a "few droplets of oil." The Pontocaine spinal anesthesia and surgery were uneventful. However, on the second postoperative day the patient began to complain of a headache which persisted in all positions. On the third postoperative day her fever rose from 100 F to 103 F, she showed signs of cervical rigid-

ity and her pulse rate was 120. Spinal tap revealed (1) increased pressure, (2) no red blood cells, (3) 1210 white blood cells 79% polymorphonuclear cells and 21% lymphocytes (4) the smear was negative except for "amorphous debris and many white cells," (5) the 24 hour and 72 hour cultures were negative (6) the chlorides and glucose determinations were normal and (7) the protein content was elevated.

Immediately after this diagnostic spinal tap the patient had been placed on Terramycin therapy, a broad spectrum antibiotic so that if the cultures proved to be positive the drug therapy might control the infection more rapidly. On the fourth postoperative day her temperature rose to 105 and then slowly subsided and read 99.6 F on the eighth postoperative day. She was discharged from the hospital on the twelfth postoperative day with no evidence of neurologic residua.

The exact cause of the aseptic meningitis is difficult to determine in this case but it could have been the diagnostic myelogram, the anesthetic procedure itself, the surgical trauma to the dura or a combination of these.

Septic Meningitis—The incidence of meningitis varies widely. Thorsén⁷ estimated its incidence in 1 in 800 cases and Arner¹⁰ reported one case in 21,230. The incidence is of little significance except to point out that this very serious complication does occur. Septic meningitis is caused by the introduction of bacteria into the subarachnoid space. This may occur because of (1) faulty technique in sterilization of instruments and ampules (2) a break in technique during the placement of the needle (3) trauma or (4) the execution of a spinal tap in a patient with a septic condition particularly bacteremia.

Cases of osteitis or epidural abscess following a spinal tap have been noted.^{13, 14, 15} Either of these may be followed by a septic meningitis.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

While the early signs and symptoms of meningeal irritation and meningitis are much

the same, those due only to simple meningeal irritation resolve in 2 to 3 days and usually do not become progressively worse. The general malaise, the headache and occasionally slight head retraction—signs common to both complications—lead the physician to sample the spinal fluid for he is fearful of a meningitis and wishes to establish a definite diagnosis. The outstanding method of differentiating between simple meningeal irritation and the two types of meningitis is the laboratory analysis of the cerebrospinal fluid. This is the only way of settling the diagnosis other than further waiting.

In general septic or aseptic meningitis will produce the following signs and symptoms with the exception of spinal fluid findings. However, in septic meningitis their onset may be more rapid and the course may be more fulminant.

Headache—This usually signals the onset of either a simple meningeal irritation or a meningitis. At first it is mild but increases in severity and possesses a "bursting" character as meningitis develops.²⁰ It is present in all positions and at all times and is associated with a hypertension of the cerebrospinal fluid which differentiates it from the usual headache associated with hypotension of the spinal fluid. According to Brun²⁰ "It may be diffuse or mainly frontal and usually radiates down the neck and into the back, being associated with pain in the spine which radiates to the limbs especially to the lower limbs."

While a high spinal fluid pressure is associated with this type of headache it may not be the cause of it. Macintosh¹¹ states "It is extremely doubtful whether mere rise of cerebrospinal fluid pressure does cause headache." Symonds reports a case in which saline was injected intrathecally and the patient's normal pressure of 170 mm. water was raised to and maintained at 550 mm. water for some minutes without causing symptoms and there are pathological states which result in similar high pressures yet do not cause headache."

Fever—The temperature varies between 100 and 102 F but in acute cases of meningitis may reach 104 F or 105 F.

Pulse—The pulse may be normal or slow, i.e. 50 to 60 early in the disease. When the pulse starts to increase above its normal rate the condition is becoming more severe and the onset of an acute meningitis is indicated.

Respirations—There is usually only a slight increase in respirations but if septic meningitis results and is not controlled by antibiotics various forms of respiratory irregularity may be seen.

Vomiting—This is not an unusual occurrence.

Convulsions—These seldom occur in the adult patient but are not infrequent in the child.

Special Signs of Irritation of the Meninges—Cervical rigidity, head retraction, Kernig's sign (when lying supine with the thigh flexed upon the abdomen the leg cannot be completely extended¹⁹), and Brudzinkis sign (identical contralateral reflex reciprocal contralateral reflex and neck sign¹⁹) are usually present.

Cerebrospinal Fluid Findings—As mentioned previously the composition of the spinal fluid is the deciding factor in determining whether an aseptic or septic meningitis or only a simple meningeal irritation is present (see Table XXIV page 206).

Meningeal Irritation—When meningeal irritation alone occurs, the spinal fluid pressure is increased but the cell count is normal or only slightly elevated (50 to 100 or less per cu. mm.) and the fluid is clear. The glucose, proteins and chlorides are not increased but in some instances the latter two may be slightly decreased. No bacteria are found.

Aseptic Meningitis—In aseptic meningitis there is an increase in the cell content of the spinal fluid usually from 100 to 1500 per cubic millimeter although in unusual cases it may be higher. Reynolds and Wilson²⁷ reported three cases following lumbar puncture which showed signs of meningeal irritation and in which repeated taps revealed "sterile, cloudy spinal fluid with cell counts ranging from 2900 to 17670. The fluid depending on the number of cells may be clear or turbid. Both polymorphonuclear and mononuclear

TABLE XXV

COMPARISON OF TYPICAL SPINAL FLUID FINDINGS IN
MENINGEAL IRRITATION ASEPTIC MENINGITIS AND SEPTIC MENINGITIS

	<i>Normal Spinal Fluid</i>	<i>Meningeal Irritation</i>	<i>Aseptic* Meningitis</i>	<i>Septic* Meningitis</i>
Pressure	110 mm H ₂ O	Elevated	Elevated	Elevated
Color	Clear	Clear	Clear to Xanthochromic	Xanthochromic
Cell Count	2-10 per cu mm lymphocytes or mononuclear cells	50-100 per cu mm both poly- morphs and mono- nuclear	50-1500 per cu mm, predomin- antly lymphocytes but at times many polymorphs	Usually over 1500 per cu mm, pre- dominantly poly- morphonuclear
Protein	15-40 mg	Normal or slightly lowered	Slightly increased	Increased
Glucose	50-80 mg per 100 cc	Normal	Normal	Minimal or absent
Chloride	725-750 mg per 100 cc	Normal or slightly decreased	Normal	Reduced to under 700 mg per 100 cc
Presence of bacteria in smear and/or culture	None	None	None	Present

* If diagnosis spinal tap done early in course of disease typical picture of an aseptic or septic meningitis as given here may not be seen

cells are present but usually the latter pre-
dominate. The protein content is somewhat
elevated. The glucose and chlorides are usu-
ally normal. The pressure is markedly ele-
vated and colloidal gold test shows a men-
ingitic curve. No bacteria are found.

Septic Meningitis—In septic meningitis the
condition of the spinal fluid ranges from a
slight turbidity to a definitely purulent ap-
pearance depending on the number of leuko-
cytes present. The spinal fluid pressure is in-
creased as is the total protein. The cells are
predominantly polymorphonuclear and may
be present in large numbers (thousands per
cubic millimeter). The chlorides are reduced
to approximately 650 mg per 100 cc. Glucose
is minimal or absent and the colloidal gold
test shows a meningitic curve. Bacteria may
be seen on smears or may be isolated by
culture.

Miscellaneous Signs—These may occur

when either an aseptic or septic meningitis
develops but are usually absent when only
simple meningeal irritation occurs: (1) de-
lirium, drowsiness, stupor and coma; (2)
photophobia; (3) ptosis, diplopia and squint;
(4) sluggish tendon reflexes; (5) facial pae-
sis; and (6) irregular pupils.

PROPHYLAXIS

The prophylaxis of aseptic or septic men-
ingitis and simple meningeal irritation is the
same and consists of the following:

Adequate Sterilization of Equipment—All
the instruments to be used should be carefully
and adequately cleaned and sterilized. To
date we have not had a septic meningitis
although we perform over 3,000 regional
block procedures per year of which approxi-
mately 2,000 are either spinal or epidural
blocks. Our routine technique of cleaning and
sterilizing the equipment consists of

Cleaning—A number of detergent products e.g., Hæmo Sol, Detergez etc. for cleaning needles and syringes are available but we believe that there is less risk if soap and water or water only are used for reports show that detergent cleansers have been responsible for cord degeneration²⁶. The following steps are meticulously performed

- I The needles and syringes are washed with copious amounts of clear tap water
- II A rinse with ether follows
- III The needle hubs are swabbed out with an applicator dipped in ether

Sterilization—Heat sterilization alone is above reproach if a law suit should develop (see Chapter 23 page 221)

- I A sterilizer control (Diack Proper Sterlex etc.) is placed in each tray as it is wrapped
- II The tray is then autoclaved at 255 to 260 Fahrenheit under 18 to 22 pounds of pressure for 30 minutes
- III The pressure is released from the autoclave and the steam evacuated. The tray is dried by creating a vacuum in the sterilizer for 10 minutes following which the sterilizer door is opened and the tray is left in the opened autoclave for an additional 10 minutes
- IV Once the tray is dry it is stored on a shelf away from all solutions. This point is stressed for if solutions are unspectably spilled on the tray it may become contaminated even though the sterilizer control in the tray shows adequate sterilization when it is checked
- V When the tray is opened for use the sterilizer control is examined to assure adequate sterilization. This precaution serves as a valuable check on the sterilizer and the personnel operating it

Adequate Sterilization of Local Anesthetic Agents and/or Solutions—Every attempt should be made to assure sterility of the anesthetic solution. *The author never uses hospital prepared solutions for any regional block*

procedure. All drugs and equipment used in these procedures are heat sterilized. The drugs and solvents used in spinal and epidural blocks at the Mason Clinic are Metcaine solutions, Pontocaine crystals, Novocain crystals, Xlocaine solutions, Adrenalin solutions, ephedrine hydrochloride in solution, distilled water, normal saline and 10% dextrose solutions.

The multiple dose bottles of Metcaine 1.5% (250 cc size) are purchased from the pharmaceutical house. This drug is employed in the obstetrical section for caudal anesthesias only. The Pontocaine and Novocain solutions are prepared from crystals immediately prior to the regional block procedure, not by the hospital but by the physician who is to perform the block. The crystals are received in small supposedly sterile single-dose ampules. When spinal fluid is not used the solvent to dissolve these crystals for spinal anesthetics is obtained from 5 cc ampules of distilled water (Abbott). The 2% aqueous Xlocaine solutions without Adrenalin which we use for all epidural blocks in surgery are procured in the 20 cc vials rather than the multiple dose 50 cc vials so that they may be used only once. Saline to dilute the 2% Xlocaine to a 1% solution where a volume of more than 20 cc is to be used is purchased in 100 cc bottles (Abbott).

As advocated by Griffith²⁷ and Walton²⁸ all these drugs and solvents are autoclaved in the trays together with the necessary syringes and needles. Autoclaving in this fashion serves a dual purpose: first it precludes infection should the pharmaceutical manufacturer dispense a contaminated solution and second it re-sterilizes the crystals should a small invisible crack in the glass occur during handling of the sealed ampule. Autoclaving also sterilizes a gummed label while cold sterilization usually does not.⁴

The following drugs may also be autoclaved at least once as described above: (1) Pontocaine 1% solutions (2) Novocain 1 or 2% solutions (3) ephedrine sulfate solutions (4) Methedrine solutions (5) Vasoxyl solutions (6) Nupercaine solutions (7) Dolq

min (ammonium sulfate) solutions (8) oil solutions (Proctocaine, etc.), and (9) absolute alcohol^{39, 40}. Note that ampules of Pontocaine, Novocain and Metycaine may be subjected to sterilization at least five times without altering the potency of the drug but local anesthetic solutions containing dextrose as well as the individual ampules of 10% dextrose may turn color (carmelize) if subjected to heat sterilization more than once³⁹. Hyaluronidase cannot be heat sterilized at all.

Often Adrenalin may be mixed with the local anesthetic solution in order to prolong spinal anesthesia and it is usually emphasized that Adrenalin 1:1000 will decompose if subjected to heat sterilization and therefore must be cold sterilized. Nevertheless Saklad⁴⁰ told the author that Adrenalin may be heat sterilized at least *once* without undergoing a chemical change and since then we have subjected this drug to autoclaving. No alterations in the effectiveness of the Adrenalin in prolonging spinal or epidural anesthesia or peripheral nerve blocks have been noted. Massas³ report confirms Saklad's and our findings concerning Adrenalin. To obtain concrete evidence of this ampules of Adrenalin were autoclaved at the Mason Clinic by the above described method and sent to Burroughs Wellcome & Co. for analysis to see if the potency was altered by a single autoclaving. The answer read "I have just received the assay report of the two ampules of Parke Davis Adrenalin 1:1000 that you submitted to us. Our assay revealed the following information:

R 134 L 100.6 \pm 2.0% of labeled potency

R 140 L 99.6 \pm 2.8% of labeled potency

"From these data it would appear that solutions of epinephrine can be autoclaved at least once without any drop in potency. As a matter of fact, Dr. C. W. Ferry of our Control Laboratories has informed me that we used to autoclave our ampules of epinephrine. Some of these appeared discolored after autoclaving but there is evidence that even those ampules which turned slightly yellow still retained adequate potency for clinical use."⁴¹

Tainter⁴ also confirmed the fact that

Adrenalin could be heat sterilized and added that this was true of Neosynephrine as well. He emphasized that only when these two agents turn from a clear to a colored solution are they losing their full potency, and even then they maintain enough of their potency to give satisfactory clinical results.

Although refinements in cold sterilization of drugs have been introduced by Nicholson and Eversole⁴², Steinberg⁴ and Lewis⁴³ autoclaving drugs to be used in regional nerve block is the accepted technique of sterilization at the Mason Clinic at the present time. Until recently cold sterilization of the ampules of drugs employed at the Mason Clinic had been used. No untoward complications from this occurred but the absence of complications was no reason in our estimation not to change to what logically is a better technique of sterilization and one which seems to be above reproach. As the Management Methods Magazine for December 1954 commented "When something has been done in a particular way for 15 or 20 years it is a pretty good sign in these changing times that it can be done a better way."

Scrub Hands and Use Sterile Gloves—Scrubbing of Hands—Whether or not the physician should scrub his hands in the same manner as if he were going to perform a surgical procedure is a debatable question. If he should, then the brushes to be used should have been sterilized and not previously used. Vuylsteke¹⁴ believes that the cause of two of his cases of meningitis could be traced to the use of a brush which the surgeon had previously used to clean his hands.

Gloving—It is the author's opinion that sterile gloves should always be worn when a block is being performed. First they are a definite aid in preventing dermatitis from local anesthetic drugs (see Chapter 14, Dermatitis page 127) and second they are an added factor of safety in avoiding infection. They are no more a hindrance to the anesthesiologist performing a block than to the surgeon performing a delicate operation.

Avoid Contaminating Blocking Solutions with Solutions Used to Prepare the Skin—

The medicine cup should be placed in front of the mixing graduate so that the prep solution will never pass over the local anesthetic solution. If any alcoholic solution is dropped in the anesthetic solution and goes unnoticed a slough of the tissue, a meningitis, meningeal irritation or a neurological complication may ensue.

Use Aseptic Technique when Opening Tray—Sterile forceps should be used to handle the equipment. The antiseptic solution in which such forceps are often sterilized must not drop on the tray.

Cleanse the Skin Prior to Needle Puncture—The skin should be painted with one of the readily available antiseptic solutions such as Merthiolate or Zephiran. More important, however, is the fact that sufficient time should be allowed for the antiseptic solution to exert an effect.

Touch Only Sterile Articles Once Gloved—Once the anesthesiologist has put on sterile gloves he must watch carefully that he touches only the sterile equipment.

Use Introducer Prior to Insertion of Spinal Needle—At the Mason Clinic a Sise introducer is always used so that the tip of the spinal needle never touches the patient's skin. If an introducer is not employed or if the stylet of the needle is not kept in place when the needle is inserted, it is possible for the spinal needle to effect a punch biopsy of the skin as it is inserted. Dickson⁴⁴ a British pathologist writes "In the centrifugalized deposits of lumbar puncture specimens I have not infrequently encountered squamous cells from the skin surface together with their accompanying staphylococci etc. and occasionally even little cylindrical fragments of skin punched out by the exploring needle."

Avoid Repeated Traumatic Punctures—Repeated efforts at spinal puncture may cause bleeding. Repeated trauma offers more opportunity to contaminate the needle while blood furnishes an excellent growth media for bacteria.

Do Not do a Spinal or Epidural Puncture if Patient's Bleeding Time is Increased—A blood dyscrasia or anticoagulant therapy pre-

disposes to bleeding if a blood vessel should be punctured. Therefore spinal and epidural blocks are contraindicated for these patients. Bonica⁴ cites a case of paraplegia which resulted from subarachnoid hemorrhage following spinal anesthesia in a patient with a blood dyscrasia (page 89).

Avoid Spinal or Epidural Blocks in Patients with a Bacteremia—Not to do so is to invite a severe meningitis.

Never Insert a Needle Through an Infected Area—If this is done the bacteria responsible for the infection may be easily carried into the epidural or subarachnoid space and result in a meningitis.

Avoid the Use of New Local Anesthetic Agents—New local anesthetic drugs must not be used unless adequately and thoroughly tested. Maxson⁴ states, "The search for new and better drugs goes constantly on but their experimental use should be restricted to institutions with proper facilities for their correct evaluation. Only for sound reasons should a well established drug be abandoned for an unproven one."

TREATMENT

Before instituting extensive treatment when the signs and symptoms of a meningitis or a simple meningeal irritation occur, a spinal puncture should be made to establish a definite diagnosis.

Aseptic Meningitis or Meningeal Irritation—If an aseptic meningitis or only meningeal irritation is discovered with no signs of a generalized toxicity, symptomatic therapy, good nursing care and watchful waiting may be sufficient. These cases usually improve within 2 to 4 days after onset of the signs and symptoms. The one case of subarachnoid hemorrhage which has occurred at the Mason Clinic was satisfactorily treated by careful observation and waiting. However if the patient shows a systemic toxicity, i.e. fever etc. and the cell count of the cerebrospinal fluid is increased the physician although the smear of the spinal fluid is negative probably should not wait for the spinal fluid to be cul-

tured but should place the patient on antibiotics immediately and treat him just as if septic meningitis were present

Septic Meningitis—Once this diagnosis is established intensive therapy must be instituted. It consists of

General Measures—Good nursing care is essential. The patient should be confined in a dark quiet room. Sedatives and opiates may be necessary to control headache, restlessness and occasionally convulsions. Bladder distention and constipation must be guarded against. Nutrition and fluid intake must be maintained by tube feeding and intravenous therapy if necessary.

Specific Measures—If the bacteria involved can be isolated, the appropriate antibiotic should be used. If they cannot be isolated if the signs and symptoms become progressively more severe (precluding an aseptic meningitis) and if the physician is not willing to wait for the cultures of spinal fluid to reveal the specific organisms involved then the antibiotics with the widest spectrums should be used. Penicillin, certain sulfa drugs (diazine), streptomycin, Terramycin, chloramphenicol and polymyxin B either alone or in combination have been the most useful drugs since they enter the spinal fluid in high concentrations.⁴⁶ Systemically administered Terramycin was originally thought not to enter the cerebrospinal fluid readily.⁴⁷ Therefore it was not advocated as a satisfactory drug to use in septic meningitis but recently the efficacy of Terramycin therapy in treating this disease has been noted.⁴⁸ Lavage of the subarachnoid space by placement of these drugs into this space is no longer considered necessary.

The prognosis of meningitis following a regional block procedure must be guarded but with improved antibiotic therapy the death rate and incidence of sequelae have decreased. The most frequent sequelae are deafness, blindness, aphasia, peripheral neuritis, paralysis, endocarditis and arthritis.⁷⁰⁻⁷²

REFERENCES

1. ADELMAN, M. H. and IRWIN, C. I. Acute Aseptic Meningitis Following Paravertebral Lumbar Sympathetic Blocks. *Anesthesiology* 7:422-425, 1946
2. BROWN, W. W. JR. Meningitis Following Continuous Caudal Anesthesia. *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 53:682-683, 1947
3. ERM, F. L. An Unusual Complication Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Canad. M. A. J.* 53:55, 1945
4. GARROD, L. P. The Nature of Meningitis Following Spinal Anesthesia and Its Prevention. *Brit. M. Bull.* 4:106-108, 1946
5. SADOVE, M. S. and LEVIN, M. J. Neurological Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. A Statistical Study of More than 10,000 Consecutive Cases. *Illinois M. J.* 105:169-174, 1954
6. LIVINGSTONE, H., WELLMAN, V., CLARK, D. and LAMPROS, V. So-Called Aseptic or Chemical Meningitis. Report of Two Cases. *Surg. Gynec. & Obstet.* 77:216-218, 1943
7. THORSEN, C. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anesthesia and Results from 2493 Follow Up Cases. *Acta chir. scandinav. Suppl.* 121, 1947
8. BONICA, J. J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1953
9. DRIFFS, R. D. and VANDAM, L. D. Hazards of Lumbar Puncture. *J. A. M. A.* 147:118-121, 1951
10. ARNER, O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence. *Acta chir. scandinav. Suppl.* 167, 1952
11. MACINTOSH, R. R. *Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Analgesia*. Edinburgh: E. & S. Livingstone Ltd, 1951
12. BARRIE, H. J. Meningitis Following Spinal Anesthesia. Report on 11 Cases. *Lancet* 1:242-243, 1941
13. DAVIDSON, I. M. Pseudomonas pyocyanea Meningitis Following Spinal Analgesia. *Lancet* 2:653-654, 1947
14. VUYLESTEKE, C. A. Pseudomonas pyocyanea Meningitis Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Brit. M. J.* 1:179-180, 1947
15. KENNEDY, F., EFFRON, A. S. and PERRY, C. The Grave Spinal Cord Paralysis Caused by Spinal Anesthesia. *Surg. Gynec. & Obstet.* 91:385-398, 1950
16. KEEFER, C. S. Bacterial Meningitis Following Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Anesthesia. *Am. Pract. & Digest Treat.* 1:679-682, 1950
17. REYNOLDS, K. E. and WILSON, G. Aseptic Meningitis Following Diagnostic Lumbar Puncture. Indications for Lumbar Puncture and Complications Secondary to It. *J. A. M. A.* 102:1460-1462, 1934

18. SMITH W C and LAYNE F J Meningitis Symptoms Rapidly Following Lumbar Puncture and Rapidly Disappearing *JAMA* 62 106-107 1924
19. DONLAND W A N *The American Illustrated Medical Dictionary* 22nd Ed Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1931
20. BRAIN R *Diseases of the Nervous System* 3rd Ed New York Oxford University Press 1947
21. NATHAN J M *A Textbook of Clinical Neurology* 2nd Ed New York Paul B Hoeber Inc 1946
22. MERRITT H H and LEMMON SMITH I *The Cerebrospinal Fluid* Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1937
23. DAVISON H H HINSON R A and HILLMAN L M Use of Various Plastic Catheters in the Subarachnoid and Peridural Space *Arch Surg* 62 540 547 1951
24. CLELAND J P Personal communications
25. SOUTHWORTH J I and DAVIS C H Xylocaine A Superior Agent for Conduction Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 32 159 170 1953
26. HANSON I R and HINSON R A The Use of Xylocaine A New Local Anesthetic in Surgery Obstetrics and Therapeutics *Anesth & Analg* 29 136-147 1950
27. CRAWFORD O Comparative Qualities of Three New Local Anesthetic Drugs Xylocaine Cyclaine and Prilocaine *Anesthesiology* 14 278 290 1953
28. MOORE D C Subarachnoid Hemorrhage Following Tracheobronchial Suction and the Stir up Regimen A Case Report *Anesthesiology* 15 211 213 1954
29. SCURIE P C and RASKIN N Cerebral Hemorrhages Following Lumbar Spinal Puncture *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 81 636 639 1936
30. COOKE J V Hemorrhage into the Cauda Equina Following Lumbar Puncture *Proc Path Soc* 14 104 1911
31. HAMMES E M Hemorrhage in the Cauda Secondary to Lumbar Puncture *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 3 595 596 1920
32. JACKSON J J Aseptic Hemorrhagic Meningitis An Experimental Study of Aseptic Meningeal Reactions Due to Blood and Its Breakdown Products *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 62 572 589 1949
33. RANGELL L and GLASSMAN F Acute Spinal Epidural Abscess as a Complication of Lumbar Puncture *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 102 8 18 1945
34. REMSEN D B The Role of Lumbar Puncture in the Causation of Meningitis *J Med* 17 115 118 1936
35. LINNEY I and KENNEDY F H Osteomyelitis of the Spine Following Lumbar Puncture *Arch Dis Childhood* 18 102 107 1943
36. WINKELMAN N W Neurologic Symptoms Following Accidental Intraspinal Detergent Injection *Neurology* 2 281 291 1952
37. CHURCHILL H R Safety Factors in Spinal Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 31 367-371 1952
38. WALTON I A Note to Editor *Anesthesiology* 13 411 1952
39. CARTER A B HERBERT C L DEWALD W S and TALLEY A W Multiple Autoclaving of Drugs Used in Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 15 450-453 1951
40. SAKLAD M Personal communication
41. NICHOLSON N J and LIVERSOLF U H Neurological Complications of Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 132 679 685 1946
42. STEINBERG B L Ampule Contamination in Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 11 257 258 1950
43. IRVING I W Letters to the Editor Correspondence *JAMA* 153 50 1953
44. DICKSON W F C The Cerebro-Spinal Fluid in Meningitis *Postgrad Med* 20 69 74 1944
45. MAXSON L H *Spinal Anesthesia* Philadelphia Lippincott 1938
46. HANBERRY J W Present Concepts in the Treatment of Purulent Meningitis *Neurology* 4 301-315 1954
47. HERRILL W F HERRMAN F R WEISMAN W E and BARTHOLOMEW L G Terramycin Some Pharmacologic and Clinical Observations *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 25 183 196 1950
48. HOYNE A L and SIMON D L Intramuscular Terramycin in Treatment of Meningitis Report of 21 Recoveries *Arch Pediatr* 70 319-325 1953
49. JENICEK J A Aseptic Meningitis Following Lumbar Epidural Block Case Report *Anesthesiology* 16 464-465 1955
50. RENDELL C M Chemical Meningitis Due to Syringes Stored in Lysol *Anaesthesia* 9 281 285 1954
51. ADRIANI J J and EVANGELOU M Complications of Regional Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 24 96 101 1955
52. CROSSON J W Assistant Director of Research G D Searle & Co Personal communication
53. MASSA D J Autoclaved Epinephrine and Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 157 843 1955
54. COLVIN W I Personal communication
55. TAYLOR M Personal communication
56. WHITTER F D The Effect of Autoclaving on Ampules of Local Analgesics *Anaesthesia* 9 271 280 1954

tured, but should place the patient on antibiotics immediately and treat him just as if septic meningitis were present

Septic Meningitis—Once this diagnosis is established intensive therapy must be instituted. It consists of

General Measures—Good nursing care is essential. The patient should be confined in a dark, quiet room. Sedatives and opiates may be necessary to control headache, restlessness and occasionally convulsions. Bladder distention and constipation must be guarded against. Nutrition and fluid intake must be maintained by tube feeding and intravenous therapy if necessary.

Specific Measures—If the bacteria involved can be isolated, the appropriate antibiotic should be used. If they cannot be isolated, if the signs and symptoms become progressively more severe (precluding aseptic meningitis) and if the physician is not willing to wait for the cultures of spinal fluid to reveal the specific organisms involved, then the antibiotics with the widest spectrums should be used. Penicillin, certain sulfa drugs (diazine), streptomycin, Terramycin, chloramphenicol and polymyxin B either alone or in combination have been the most useful drugs since they enter the spinal fluid in high concentrations.⁴⁶ Systemically administered Terramycin was originally thought not to enter the cerebrospinal fluid readily.⁴⁷ Therefore it was not advocated as a satisfactory drug to use in septic meningitis, but recently the efficacy of Terramycin therapy in treating this disease has been noted.⁴⁸ Lavage of the subarachnoid space by placement of these drugs into this space is no longer considered necessary.

The prognosis of meningitis following a regional block procedure must be guarded but with improved antibiotic therapy the death rate and incidence of sequelae have decreased. The most frequent sequelae are deafness, blindness, aphasia, peripheral neuritis, paralysis, endocarditis and arthritis.⁴⁹⁻⁵¹

tic Meningitis Following Paravertebral Lumbar Sympathetic Blocks. *Anesthesiology* 7:422-425, 1946

2. BROWN W. W. JR. Meningitis Following Continuous Caudal Anesthesia. *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 53:682-683, 1947
3. EID F. L. An Unusual Complication Following Spinal Anaesthesia. *Canad MAJ* 53:55, 1945
4. GARROD L. P. The Nature of Meningitis Following Spinal Anesthesia and Its Prevention. *Brit M Bull* 4:106-108, 1946
5. SADOVE M. S. and LEVIN M. J. Neurological Complications of Spinal Anesthesia: A Statistical Study of More than 10,000 Consecutive Cases. *Illinois M J* 105:169-174, 1954
6. LIVINGSTONE, H. WELLMAN V. CLARK, D. and LAMBERS V. So-Called Aseptic or Chemical Meningitis: Report of Two Cases. *Surg Gynec & Obstet* 77:216-218, 1943
7. THORSEN G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anaesthesia and Results from 2493 Follow Up Cases. *Acta chir scandinav Suppl* 121, 1947
8. BONICA, J. J. *The Management of Pain*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1953
9. DRIPPES R. D. and VANDAM L. D. Hazards of Lumbar Puncture. *JAMA* 147:118-1121, 1951
10. ARNER O. Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia: Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence. *Acta chir scandinav Suppl* 167, 1952
11. MACINTOSH, R. R. *Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Analgesia*. Edinburgh: E & S Livingstone Ltd, 1951
12. BARRIE H. J. Meningitis Following Spinal Anesthesia. Report on 11 Cases. *Lancet* 1:242, 243, 1941
13. DAVIDSON I. M. Pseudomonas pyocyanea Meningitis Following Spinal Analgesia. *Lancet* 2:653-654, 1947
14. VOYLSTEKE C. A. Pseudomonas pyocyanea Meningitis Following Spinal Anaesthesia. *Brit M J* 1:179-180, 1947
15. KENNEDY F. EFFRON A. S. and PERRY G. The Grave Spinal Cord Paralysis Caused by Spinal Anesthesia. *Surg Gynec & Obstet* 91:385-398, 1950
16. KEEFER C. S. Bacterial Meningitis Following Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Anesthesia. *Am Pract & Digest Treat* 1:679-682, 1950
17. REYNOLDS K. E. and WILSON G. Aseptic Meningitis Following Diagnostic Lumbar Puncture: Indications for Lumbar Puncture and Complications Secondary to It. *JAMA* 102:1460-1462, 1934

REFERENCES

1. ADELMAN M. H. and IRWIN C. I. Acute Asep-

proach (3) the physical status of the patient and (4) the operative risk.* The conclusion of Driggs and Vandam's⁹ article in which 10,095 cases of spinal anesthesia are reviewed is of interest. "Anesthesia of any type places a stress on the patient. A price is exacted for the pain relief and improved surgical working conditions that are provided during operation. Continuing efforts must be made to compare anesthetic agents and techniques so that this price can be assessed. Our experience indicates that the mortality rate following spinal anesthesia is lower than that recorded after general anesthesia in comparable patients undergoing comparable types of operations. Similar observations are made in the current analysis of deaths associated with anesthesia reported by Todd and Beecher. The most vociferous objection to spinal anesthesia comes from those who believe that chronic incapacitating neurological disease occurs with sufficient frequency after spinal anesthesia to make its use unjustified except in rare instances. It is not scientific thinking always to attribute to the anesthetic a neurologic complaint arising in a patient who has had spinal anesthesia. Other diagnostic possibilities must be kept in mind constantly lest specific therapy be withheld because of an error in diagnosis. Physicians appear prone to assume a cause and effect relationship between spinal anesthesia and a variety of complaints sometimes appearing years after the anesthesia. This attitude is not objective nor is it justified on the basis of available data. Some have taken the position that spinal anesthesia will soon be of historic interest only. The results of this long term study do not support such a position; they even suggest the possibility that such an attitude might deprive the patient of a safer method of anesthesia.

This chapter is not slanted to support the advocates of spinal anesthesia or to try to "bury the technique for its adversaries. However it behooves the physician employing

* Risk not only includes the ability of the anesthetist and the patient's physical status but also the hospital facilities available, ability of the surgeon, etc.

spinal block, epidural block or paravertebral block to acquaint himself with the causes as well as the possible prophylaxis of the most serious of all neurological complications which may follow them—spinal cord paralysis and/or death. The other neurological complications from these regional blocks (i.e. head ache, dizziness, cranial nerve paralysis or paresis, meningitis (septic meningitis excluded) and neuritis usually leave no permanent sequelae. Unfortunately this is not true of involvement of the arachnoid or the parenchyma of the spinal cord which instead of improving may progress in severity.

ETIOLOGY

From clinical observations as well as autopsy reports the pathological change which occurs in the greater number of the severe spinal cord complications, i.e. cauda equina syndrome paraplegia quadriplegia and death is an adhesive proliferating arachnoiditis and/or change in the spinal cord itself.^{1, 2, 3, 27} These pathological changes are usually the most marked at the level where the anesthetic solution has been injected and consist mainly of (1) softening of the cord^{15, 18} (2) myelin sheath, axis cylinder and glia destruction at the periphery of the cord and at the entrance of the posterior roots^{18, 19} (3) hyalinization of the pia and arachnoid,¹⁸ (4) damage to both the white and gray matter¹⁸ (5) hyaline changes in blood vessels,⁸ and (6) ascending myelitis.^{5, 20} Williams² believes that when the picture of chronic arachnoiditis develops, these devastating effects upon the neural structures are most probably due to decreased blood supply and starving of the nervous tissue.

The causes of these pathological changes are open to debate but it appears that one or more of the following may be responsible: (1) the destructive effects of local anesthetic agents on the leptomeninges and spinal cord (2) improper sterilization of drugs or equipment (3) undiagnosed neurological diseases (4) trauma (5) bacterial contamination of the subarachnoid space (6) subarachnoid in

Lesions of the Spinal Cord Following Regional Block Procedures

WHEN ANESTHETIC agents are injected purposely into the subarachnoid space or reach it and the parenchyma of the spinal cord following local infiltration peripheral nerve block or epidural block injury to the spinal cord may ensue. This injury may range from paralysis of a single nerve to a cauda equina syndrome or an ascending arachnoiditis with paraplegia quadriplegia or death.¹ The serious nature of these complications has led Kennedy *et al*¹ to write. From a neurological point of view we give the opinion that spinal anesthesia should be rigidly reserved for those patients unable to accept a local or general anesthetic. Paralysis below the waist is too large a price for a patient to pay in order that the surgeon should have a fine relaxed field. It is neither the purpose nor the intent of this chapter to support or take issue with such a statement. The medical literature cited above is ample evidence of the occurrence of these very serious neurological complications.

Spinal anesthesia is being extensively used in many hospitals throughout the country and it does not appear that this situation will change markedly in the near future. Whether this is a fortunate or unfortunate situation is still a hotly debated question. In all fairness to spinal anesthesia it must be said that paralysis following spinal anesthesia is relatively infrequent when the thousands of cases performed each year without incident are considered. It must also be noted that cases of serious neurological complications following general anesthesia have been reported.^{2, 26, 47}

^{111, 11} In most instances the pathological changes seen after inhalation anesthesia are a result of brain damage and not a result of destructive changes in the spinal cord which are usually the type that spinal anesthesia may bring about.

Paralysis of the brachial plexus its branches or of other nerves which are easily involved by pressure alone should not be automatically thought of as a complication of the anesthetic procedure per se when it follows a regional block procedure and surgery (see Chapter 11 page 121). Such paralysis is usually caused by position and may follow both general and regional anesthesia. It should also be noted that deaths from cardiac failure explosions respiratory depression vomiting with aspiration and unknown reasons (so called "anesthetic deaths") occur with as much or greater frequency after general anesthesia as paralysis following spinal.^{48, 49} However the unfortunate consequences of general anesthesia are literally buried and forgotten while with the regional block procedures the patient often lives to haunt the physician and make him more acutely aware of the unfortunate occurrence.

Since no anesthetic method is 100% safe and since neurological disorders may follow either general or regional anesthetic procedures the arguments as to which is the safer anesthetic method would seem to resolve itself to the following considerations: (1) who is administering the anesthetic (2) whether or not his technique is above re

or symptoms. On the other hand, in the exceptional case, for some unknown reason the patient's physiological response is abnormal—and this inflammatory reaction does not subside but progresses. When this relatively rare situation develops either a chronic arachnoiditis (leptomeningeal involvement) results with a slow onset of spinal cord pathological changes or an immediate neurolytic effect on the parenchyma of the cord per se ensues with a rapid onset of paralysis.

Improper Sterilization of Drugs and Equipment—If the ampules of the drugs used for spinal anesthesia are soaked in neurolytic drugs e.g. alcohol phenol or formaldehyde and there should be an invisible crack in the ampule these drugs may seep into the ampule. If this is not noticed at the time the drug is mixed the adulterated drug may damage the cord.⁶⁴

Moreover several special blood solvents and detergents have been devised to cleanse instruments i.e. Hemo Sol and Detergetex etc. If these solutions are not adequately rinsed from the needles and syringes their neurolytic action on the cord may result in severe neurological complications of the central nervous system.⁶⁵ In the same way if syringes and needles are cold sterilized and inadequately rinsed prior to use in regional block, neurological damage may result from the sterilizing solution.

Heat sterilization will avoid both of these!

Undiagnosed Pre-existing Neurological Diseases—A pre-existing neurological disease such as pernicious anemia multiple sclerosis tabes general paresis or cord tumors may be dormant until a lumbar tap or a spinal anesthesia has been executed. In other words the spinal anesthetic acts as the precipitating factor.^{66 67 68 69 70} The author has seen two such cases one patient had multiple sclerosis and the other amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.

The appearance of signs and symptoms of spinal cord tumors after tap of the dura is presumably due to the changes in the spinal fluid dynamics which the tap produces. These changes result in vascular engorgement and edema of the unsuspected tumor and/or its

displacement downward, creating a block. One or both of these then brings out the previously latent signs and symptoms of a pre-existing tumor.⁷¹

Trauma to the Cord or Nerve Root—During a spinal or epidural tap either a nerve root or the cord itself may be impaled by the point of the needle. The more cephalad the tap is performed above the third lumbar interspace the greater are the chances of traumatizing the cord. According to Reiman and Anson's⁷² examination of 129 adult cadavers the spinal cord ends at or above the level of the body of the second lumbar vertebra in 91% of humans. In a few, it extends caudadly to the level of the middle of the body of the third lumbar vertebra.

When the needlepoint touches or impales the nervous tissue, the patient usually complains of paresthesias in the areas innervated by the nerve or nerves. In the lumbar region these usually are represented by "electric shock like" sensations in the bladder, rectum genitalia or lower extremity. If the needle is withdrawn at this time, permanent sequelae usually do not result. On numerous occasions while placing a spinal needle the author has elicited paresthesias of the nerves of the cauda equina and has readjusted the needle. To date none of these cases has resulted in nerve involvement. Orkin *et al*⁷³ cite a case in which the needle was inadvertently inserted into the spinal cord during an attempt to execute a left stellate ganglion block by the posterior thoracic approach. The patient complained of severe pain as the needle inadvertently pierced the cord and the procedure was discontinued. No anesthetic solution having been injected. Anesthesia was noted on the left side down to the umbilicus that day. The next day no residual anesthesia was present. On the other hand, neurological sequelae, though rare, may result. Maxson⁷⁴ cites cases of impaling of the cord or its nerve roots with residual sciatic pain. Likewise Bomca⁷⁵ relates a case in which an epidural block was being attempted in the thoracic region and the spinal cord was inadvertently impaled while placing the needle. The patient com-

jection of vasopressor drugs, (7) subarachnoid injection of neurolytic drugs and (8) unusual bleeding tendencies

The Destructive Effect of Local Anesthetic Agents on the Leptomeninges and Spinal Cord—Merritt and Fremont Smith¹ have noticed that when any sterile foreign substance—this would include a local anesthetic agent—is injected into the subarachnoid space an aseptic meningeal reaction results. It has been shown experimentally in animals that when local anesthetic agents are injected in high concentrations subarachnoidally they may cause leptomeningeal inflammation and damage to the parenchyma of the spinal cord.^{8, 9} Kamsler¹⁰ notes that inflammation of the leptomeninges is a constant concomitant of spinal anesthesia in man.

Davis *et al.*⁷ showed that when Nupercaine (Spinocain), Gravocaine or Novocain (procaine) were injected in high concentrations subarachnoidally in dogs the following changes occurred: (1) the leptomeninges showed varying inflammatory changes; (2) the ganglion cells of the gray matter showed Wallerian degeneration; (3) the axis cylinders became swollen and fragmentation occurred; and (4) myelin degenerative changes in the fiber tracts of the spinal cord ensued. Friedman⁶¹ has confirmed the fact that local anesthetic agents do have a myelolytic effect on the cord and points out that the peripheral and posterior structures of the cord are the most susceptible. During regional block anesthesia the only conditions under which an unusually excessive volume of local anesthetic drug might reach the subarachnoid space and/or parenchyma of the spinal cord is when it is inadvertently injected subarachnoidally while performing an epidural (peridural) or paravertebral block or if an overdosage is by error placed in the subarachnoid space.

The reader should remember that drugs injected paravertebrally may reach the spinal cord via (1) long dural cuffs which extend past the intervertebral foramina; (2) misplaced needles which have been directed too medially and have passed between the neural arches or through the intervertebral foramina

and punctured the dura; or (3) the perineural spaces (see Chapter 5 page 43). However, even when a mistake of this nature is made, spinal cord damage does not usually follow.

The reported cases of paralysis following spinal anesthesia in man would indicate that the anesthetic agent acting as a chemical irritant is to blame for most of the pathological changes. Autopsy reports and investigative laminectomies have revealed that the greatest degree of damage occurs in the lumbar area in the vicinity of the spinal tap. This would be the area subjected to the highest chemical concentration of the local anesthetic agent. In the literature reviewed the one case of severe damage to the spinal cord other than in the lumbar area followed an inadvertent subarachnoid injection of local anesthetic solution while a paravertebral block of the upper intercostal nerves was being performed. In this situation a residual paralysis resulted which was confined to the nerve roots of both brachial plexuses. This confined damage would confirm the statement that the drug per se is to be blamed.¹¹ When spinal involvement does occur either the local anesthetic drug or other drugs (lipiodol, propylene and polyethylene glycol, the sulfonamides, penicillin or streptomycin) which may act as chemical irritants have been injected subarachnoidally.^{3, 6, 62} Spinal cord involvement rarely follows diagnostic spinal tap unless preexisting undiagnosed pathology of the spinal canal or its contents is present.

If the local anesthetic agent is the causative factor the question then arises why are thousands of spinal anesthetics performed per year and the number of reported cases of spinal cord damage so small? Allergy to the drug itself has been ruled out.²² It is the author's opinion that this again may be a case of "hyperergy" (see Chapter 1 page 8 for the definition of hyperergy). In other words the safe spinal dosage of the local anesthetic agent normally causes only a very mild inflammatory reaction. This usually results in a small increase in the cells (50 to 150) in the spinal fluid alone and produces no other signs

the sacral arteries. Cases have appeared in the literature of transverse myelitis following the clamping of a spinal branch of these arteries during sympathectomy and were attributed to the fact that the anterior spinal artery was not a continuous artery as usually described but was anomalous.⁴⁴ Haven⁴⁵ Ward⁴⁶ and Foltz⁴⁷ point out that if a vasoconstrictor drug were used subarachnoidally in a patient with such an anomalous blood supply to the spinal cord and prolonged vasoconstriction of the arteries to a section of the cord ensued results duplicating those seen following sympathectomy could occur.

In monkeys Wu *et al*⁴⁸ were able to show neurologic changes from the continuous subarachnoid injection of Adrenalin and Neosynephrine. Nevertheless this occurred only after doses ten to several hundred times the clinical dose were used continuously over long periods of time. From this research and our clinical experiences at the Mason Clinic as well as those of others cited previously, it seems reasonable to conclude that when these two time-tested vasoconstrictor agents are used subarachnoidally to prolong single dose spinal anesthesia the chances are infinitesimal that these drugs will produce spinal cord damage.

On the other hand the newly introduced vasoconstrictor drugs i.e. Vasoxyl, Levophed and Wyamine agents with a prolonged vasoconstrictor action should not be used subarachnoidally to prolong spinal anesthesia until further experimental research assures their safety when used in this fashion. The neurologist of the Mason Clinic has seen one case of cauda equina syndrome (at another hospital) which followed the subarachnoid administration of one of these drugs. In this case 0.5 cc of Vasoxyl had been mixed with the local spinal anesthetic solution in hopes of prolonging anesthesia time for an appendectomy.⁴⁹ This does not necessarily condemn the Vasoxyl since the paralysis may have been caused by other factors nevertheless the action of this drug must be considered as a possible factor.

Injection of Neurolytic Drugs into the Sub

arachnoid Space — When neurolytic drugs gain entrance to the subarachnoid space or the parenchyma of the spinal cord the reason for the sequela is obvious. Further comment is superfluous other than to point out again that (1) drugs injected paravertebrally may reach the spinal cord via (a) dural cuffs which extend past the intervertebral foramina (b) misplaced needles which have inadvertently punctured the dura or (c) the perineural spaces (see Chapter 5 page 15) and that (2) alcohol phenol oil preparations of various kinds (e.g. Brometholol) propylene glycol and polyethylene glycol are neurolytic drugs.^{50, 51}

Increased Bleeding Tendencies — If a patient has a blood dyscrasia or has been receiving anticoagulant therapy and an epidural or spinal blood vessel is traumatized bleeding into the epidural or subarachnoid space may result in neurological complications. Bonica⁵² cites such a case and states, "The author encountered one such case in which a block was administered to a surgical patient who had prolonged bleeding time unknown to the surgical team. Four days following a bloody spinal tap the patient began to have signs of the cauda equina syndrome which was found to be due to pressure from large clots in the subarachnoid space."

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of neurological complications involving the parenchyma of the spinal cord and the nerve roots depend on whether the neural tissue itself or its coverings (the leptomeninges) are primarily involved.

Damage to the Nerve Root or Parenchyma of the Spinal Cord Only — Onset and Extent of Paralysis — In these cases the onset is immediate and the paralysis is apparent from the moment the spinal anesthetic has dissipated itself. Note again that if individual nerve paralysis occurs following spinal analgesia for example paralysis of one of the nerves of the brachial plexus the lateral femoral cu

plained of severe electric shock like pain from the level of the tip down. No solution was injected and a general anesthetic was administered. At the writing of this chapter, seven months later the patient has pain and an area of numbness of the dermatomes on the left side of the abdomen. Motor and sensory function of the bowel, bladder, lower extremities, etc., are normal.

It should be stressed that if the needle is not readjusted or the procedure discontinued when a spinal nerve root or the cord is impaled, serious sequelae may develop from injecting the anesthetic solution. This may be due either to mechanical pressure or to the drugs used. If only a nerve root is involved, the patient will complain bitterly of pain as the solution is injected and will in all probability show a residual impairment of sensations of the lower extremities, bladder, or rectal paralysis, foot drop, and/or trophic disturbances. Most of the articles cited herein report this type of complication. If on the other hand an injection into the spinal cord parenchyma is made, the patient may suddenly collapse into unconsciousness and if he does not die, a transverse myelitis will usually develop.⁷ Thorsen⁸ cites seven such cases.

Other than these specifically noted types of trauma, it is unlikely that multiple punctures of the dura or tearing of a subarachnoid blood vessel can cause severe permanent spinal cord injuries unless other diseases are present, e.g., increased bleeding time. Only one possible case of medullary compression from subdural bleeding in a presumably normal adult was found in the literature.¹¹³ Even protrusion of an intervertebral disc following trauma by the spinal needle is not a permanently disabling complication.

Bacterial Contamination of the Subarachnoid Space.—The sequelae of a septic meningitis, while infrequent, are well known. They consist mainly of a chronic arachnoiditis, external hydrocephalus, and root involvement, and these in turn may lead to paralysis, blindness, cauda equina syndrome, etc.

Subarachnoid Injection of Vasoconstrictor Drugs.—Vasoconstrictor drugs have been injected subarachnoidally after being mixed

with the local anesthetic solution in an effort to prolong the duration of anesthesia. Adrenaline, Neosynephrine, and ephedrine sulfate have been quite effective in accomplishing this aim and to date no untoward spinal cord damage from their use has been reported.^{73, 83, 114} Nevertheless, the neurologists who work at our hospital are sceptical about the use of a vasoconstrictor drug subarachnoidally.^{81, 85} They base their reasoning on abnormalities in the anatomy of the blood supply to the spinal cord.

The normal blood supply to the spinal cord is described by Gray⁸⁷ as follows: "The Anterior Spinal Artery (a *spinalis anterior* ventral spinal artery) is a small branch which arises near the termination of the vertebral and descending in front of the medulla oblongata, unites with its fellow of the opposite side at the level of the foramen magnum. One of these vessels is usually larger than the other but occasionally they are about equal in size. The single trunk thus formed descends on the front of the medullary spinalis and it is reinforced by a succession of small branches which enter the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina; these branches are derived from the vertebral and the ascending cervical of the inferior thyroid in the neck, from the intercostals in the thorax, and from the lumbar, ilio-lumbar, and lateral sacral arteries in the abdomen and pelvis. They unite by means of ascending and descending branches to form a single anterior median artery which extends as far as the lower part of the medulla spinalis and is continued as a slender twig on the filum terminale. This vessel is placed in the pia mater along the anterior median fissure; it supplies that membrane and the substance of the medulla spinalis and sends off branches at its lower part to be distributed to the cauda equina."

While in most patients this artery is continuous, anomalies do occur and in these instances the anterior spinal artery is not always a continuous structure. When it is not continuous, sections of the cord may derive their arterial supply directly from the spinal branch of the intercostal arteries, lumbar arteries, and

the sacral arteries. Cases have appeared in the literature of transverse myelitis following the clamping of a spinal branch of these arteries during sympathectomy and were attributed to the fact that the anterior spinal artery was not a continuous artery as usually described but was anomalous.⁸⁴ Haven⁸⁵ Ward⁸⁶ and Foltz⁸⁶ point out that if a vasoconstrictor drug were used subarachnoidally in a patient with such an anomalous blood supply to the spinal cord and prolonged vasoconstriction of the arteries to a section of the cord ensued results duplicating those seen following sympathectomy could occur.

In monkeys Wu *et al*⁸⁷ were able to show neurological changes from the continuous subarachnoid injection of Adrenalin and Neosynephrine. Nevertheless this occurred only after doses ten to several hundred times the clinical dose were used continuously over long periods of time. From this research and our clinical experiences at the Mason Clinic as well as those of others cited previously, it seems reasonable to conclude that when these two time-tested vasoconstrictor agents are used subarachnoidally to prolong single dose spinal anesthesia the chances are infinitesimal that these drugs will produce spinal cord damage.

On the other hand the newly introduced vasoconstrictor drugs i.e. Vasoxyl Levophed and Wyamine agents with a prolonged vasoconstrictor action should not be used subarachnoidally to prolong spinal anesthesia until further experimental research assures their safety when used in this fashion. The neurologist of the Mason Clinic has seen one case of cauda equina syndrome (at another hospital) which followed the subarachnoid administration of one of these drugs. In this case 0.5 cc of Vasoxyl had been mixed with the local spinal anesthetic solution in hopes of prolonging anesthesia time for an appendectomy.⁸⁴ This does not necessarily condemn the Vasoxyl since the paralysis may have been caused by other factors nevertheless the action of this drug must be considered as a possible factor.

Injection of Neurolytic Drugs into the Sub

arachnoid Space — When neurolytic drugs gain entrance to the subarachnoid space or the parenchyma of the spinal cord the reason for the sequelae is obvious. Further comment is superfluous other than to point out again that (1) drugs injected paravertebrally may reach the spinal cord via (a) dural cuffs which extend past the intervertebral foramina (b) misplaced needles which have inadvertently punctured the dura or (c) the perineural spaces (see Chapter 5 page 18) and that (2) alcohol phenol oil preparations of various kinds (e.g. Bromsalizol) propylene glycol and polyethylene glycol are neurolytic drugs.^{88, 89, 90}

Increased Bleeding Tendencies—If a patient has a blood dyscrasia or has been receiving anticoagulant therapy and an epidural or spinal blood vessel is traumatized bleeding into the epidural or subarachnoid space may result in neurological complications. Bonica⁹¹ cites such a case and states "The author encountered one such case in which a blood was administered to a surgical patient who had prolonged bleeding time unknown to the surgical team. Four days following a bloody spinal tap the patient began to have signs of the cauda equina syndrome which was found to be due to pressure from large clots in the subarachnoid space."

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

The signs and symptoms of neurological complications involving the parenchyma of the spinal cord and the nerve roots depend on whether the neural tissue itself or its coverings (the leptomeninges) are primarily involved.

Damage to the Nerve Root or Parenchyma of the Spinal Cord Only—*Onset and Extent of Paralysis*—In these cases the onset is immediate and the paralysis is apparent from the moment the spinal anesthetic has dissipated itself. Note again that if individual nerve paralysis occurs following spinal analgesia for example paralysis of one of the nerves of the brachial plexus the lateral femoral cu

taneous nerve or the peroneal nerve, it is by all odds a positional paresis and the anesthesia should not be immediately condemned.

The paralysis when due to a spinal block procedure may involve only a single nerve or a group of nerve roots i.e. only a foot drop may occur. Cases of incontinence, rectal paresis or sexual impotency alone following spinal anesthesia have also been reported.⁹⁷⁻⁹⁸ On the other hand, a cauda equina syndrome or paraplegia may develop. A cauda equina syndrome consists of the following: (1) retention of urine (2) incontinence of feces (3) impairment of sensations in the perineal area and buttocks (4) impotency and (5) motor weakness and altered reflexes of the lower extremities.

Course—If only a single nerve or a few nerve roots are involved as when a foot drop results complete recovery may occur in six months to a year. Ferguson and Watkins⁸ Nicholson and Eversole⁹ and Brown¹⁰ report cases of foot drop following spinal anesthesia in which the patients recovered in this period of time. Palmer writing in Pitkin⁹ reports three cases of urinary incontinence alone as a result of loss of sphincter control and deCarle⁹⁴ reports one such case. All cases recovered in a "few months." Loss of potency has been attributed to spinal anesthesia but this is questionable for considerable psychotherapy alone may correct the problem.⁹⁷ When only a cauda equina syndrome develops some improvement of its symptoms particularly those of bladder and rectal dysfunction may ensue. But a case of paraplegia seldom improves markedly although it does not usually become progressively worse as does the granulomatous leptomeningeal proliferation of chronic arachnoiditis.

Spinal Fluid Findings—Few changes are found in the spinal fluid which is not difficult to obtain. The spinal fluid of a typical case 20 hours after anesthesia showed (1) initial pressure of 50 mm. of water (2) total protein 347 mg. (3) 21 mg. of sugar per 100 cc. of spinal fluid and (4) lymphocytes.³

Surgical Explorations—The lesions in these cases are most marked at the site of injection

of the drug and limited to the nervous tissue of the cord and its nerve roots. The coverings of the cord i.e. the dura and the arachnoid, are not markedly involved in the pathological changes.

Damage to the Leptomeninges—**Onset and Extent of Paralysis**—Following the spinal anesthesia there is usually a period during which the patient is symptom free. He has no indication of neurological involvement. Usually three or four days to a few months and in the occasional case one to two years after the spinal anesthetic procedure was executed he begins to develop pain, sensory loss or weakness of one or both legs.²² The bladder and rectum may or may not be involved at the onset.

Williams²² states: "The symptoms [in chronic arachnoiditis] result from the constrictive effect of the arachnoiditis upon the vascular channels of the spinal cord the least competent of which are in the mid dorsal region." He believes that this explains why the neurological findings in these cases often suggest a tumor at the level of the sixth thoracic vertebra. The clinical picture in these cases is that of a transverse myelitic lesion not that of the lower motor neuron involvement which accompanies the cauda equina syndrome.

Course—One of the characteristics of the arachnoiditis is that it is chronic and progressively becomes more severe. The arachnoiditis may become stationary after a certain time and then regress slightly but it may also progress to obliterate the entire subarachnoid space and may eventually cause death.¹⁻²² Seldom once the paralysis has occurred is recovery ever remarkable.

Williams in referring to this slow onset states: "All 9 patients recovered from their initial operations and anesthesia and left the hospital without neurologic symptoms. This is probably the most sinister aspect of this disorder, for those who performed the operations and gave the anesthetics are probably unaware that their services carried later reprisals."

Spinal Fluid Findings—In most of these cases it is impossible to obtain spinal fluid because of the chronic proliferative arachnoid

is. However if a tap is successfully executed evidence of a block of the spinal fluid is present

Surgical Exploration—When viewed grossly following a laminectomy a dense arachnoiditis is seen. Microscopically there is seen a dense collagenous fibrous cuff surrounding and constricting the spinal cord and adjacent vessels and containing in its interstices scattered aggregations of inflammatory cells.

PROPHYLAXIS

Of course the best prophylaxis against any regional block complication is not to perform the block. Nevertheless this is often an impractical attitude. Moreover the author knows of no procedure in medicine that is 100% safe 100% of the time. And since spinal anesthesia appears to be gaining popularity among physicians at the present time rather than losing it it behooves the physicians using this type of analgesia to see that the following prophylactic steps are rigidly observed. Most of these prophylactic measures have previously been enumerated by Nicholson and Versole³ Griffith,¹⁰⁰ Anderson¹⁰¹ and Macintosh.¹⁰

Carefully Clean and Sterilize all Needles and Syringes—Avoid the use of detergent compounds when washing instruments and use heat sterilization methods (see Chapter 22 page 206)

Avoid Contamination of the Drugs Either by Bacteria or Neurolytic Agents—Autoclaving drugs to be injected in the subarachnoid space is today the preferred method of assuring sterility and preventing the neurolytic agents often used in cold sterilization techniques from being inadvertently placed subarachnoidally (see Chapter 22 page 207)

Supposedly improved methods of cold sterilization including deep coloration of the sterilizing solutions have been advocated as simple expedients to reduce the unnoticed contamination of these drugs by the sterilizing solution.^{6, 103, 104, 10} However these techniques are not as fool proof as heat sterilization and may give the physician a false sense of security.^{100, 107, 106, 107}

Identify all Drugs Prior to Subarachnoid Use—Hospital prepared solutions and solutions not clearly labelled should not be accepted for injection

Discard Turbid or Cloudy Solutions—Solutions which have become turbid or contain undissolved crystals should not be employed

Do Not Perform Spinal Puncture in the Presence of Infection—If the patient has a bacteremia or the area to be entered by the needle is infected use another type of anesthesia

Avoid Spinal Anesthesia in Presence of Known Spinal Cord Disease, Virus Infections, and Intractable Back Pain—Tuberculous sclerosis, pernicious anemia, spinal cord tumors, metastatic vertebral lesion, acute poliomyelitis and chickenpox are contraindications to spinal anesthesia.^{2, 21} Michelsen²¹ cites four cases of intraspinal tumors which were diagnosed only after a spinal anesthesia accentuated the symptoms. He felt that the diagnosis could have been made by the physician performing the spinal tap in two of the cases prior to the administration of the local anesthetic drug. In one of these two cases the spinal fluid was discolored and in the other it was under marked pressure

Do Not Inject Local Anesthetic Solution Unless a Free Flowing Clear Spinal Fluid Is Obtained—Persistently bloody tap or xanthochromic spinal fluid is a definite contraindication to injecting the local anesthetic solution. Or if paresthesias are elicited during the tap and/or a free flow of spinal fluid is not obtained the needle should be readjusted to overcome these problems. If this cannot be accomplished another type of anesthesia should be used

If severe paresthesias result as the drug is being injected the injection should be halted and the needle readjusted. Then if paresthesias still occur, the procedure should be discontinued. Maxson⁷⁰ stresses the use of a short beveled spinal needle to reduce the incidence of impaling the spinal cord and its nerve roots

Use the Smallest Applicable Dosage of a Time Tested Local Anesthetic Agent which Will Produce the Desired Effect—Since local

anesthetic agents are neurolytic in high concentrations and since some patients may exhibit the phenomenon of hyperergy (see page 8) the lowest possible dosage and concentration of a local anesthetic drug which will give the desired anesthesia should be employed. The maximum concentrations of drugs commonly used in spinal anesthesia are (1) 0.5% Pontocaine (2) 5% Novocain (3) 4% Metycaine and (4) 0.1% Nupercaine.¹⁰¹

Do not use every new local anesthetic drug made available commercially for spinal or epidural analgesia. The time tested drugs such as Pontocaine, Novocain, etc. should not be discarded too readily for new drugs unless these new drugs have been tested extensively experimentally and have proven their definite advantage over the drugs that have stood the test of time (see Maxson's statement page 209). To date my associates and I have seen three cases of prolonged numbness attributable to the local anesthetic agent following epidural (peridural) block and none following spinal (subarachnoid) block. All three occurred following the use of 2% Cyclaine for caudal block. One of these persisted for one week and involved the area around the anus. The other two resolved within 48 and 72 hours respectively. One of these two involved the area innervated by the right lateral femoral cutaneous nerve and the other involved the skin of the buttocks.

Do Not Inject the New Powerful Vasoconstrictor Drugs with a Prolonged Duration Subarachnoidally.—Viscoryl, Levophed, or Wyamine should not at the present time be substituted for Adrenalin, Neosynephrine, or ephedrine sulfate to prolong subarachnoid anesthesia. Their powerful vasoconstrictor action may produce a prolonged constriction of the anterior spinal artery, resulting in hypoxia or anoxia of the cord.

Lavage the Subarachnoid Space if a Spinal Fluid Block Is Suspected.—If the desired level of analgesia is unobtainable by the ordinary methods, one should consider the possibility of a spinal fluid block. To remove any residual anesthetic solution in these cases, Nicholson

and Eversole³ advise flushing out the subarachnoid space with isotonic saline.

If There Exists a Previous History of Difficulties with a Spinal Anesthetic, Avoid Spinal Analgesia.—If the history of the patient reveals delayed return of motor or sensory function following a previous spinal, choose some other type of analgesia.

Do Not Force a Patient to Have a Spinal Anesthetic.—This type of patient is a constant complainer and if any residual from a spinal block develops, legal action is unavoidable. Griffith¹⁰⁰ states "there are some patients both in obstetrics and in surgery, who simply do not want a spinal anesthetic under any circumstances. For these patients, unless there is some vital reason for choosing spinal anesthesia, it is foolish for the anesthetist to insist. Let us sensibly choose some other method. A nervous patient who has been persuaded against his will to undergo spinal anesthesia will have a tendency to blame all his aches and pains for years afterwards to this procedure, whether or not there is any logical connection. It is equally foolish for an anesthetist to persist in unsuccessful attempts at lumbar puncture when a patient is becoming disgruntled and tense. When spinal anesthesia is given to a patient against his will, it may be interpreted by the court as technical assault."¹⁰³

TREATMENT

When these unfortunate sequelae arise following a spinal anesthesia, careful handling of the patient is essential. A diagnostic lumbar tap, exploratory surgery of the spinal cord, or watchful waiting may be indicated. Surgery seldom improves the patient and in many instances has made the condition worse. This, according to Williams², is singularly true in cases of chronic arachnoiditis. However, Ward⁸ feels that he has improved some of these patients by freeing adhesions between the meninges and the spinal cord or its nerve roots.

Certainly, good nursing, adequate care of the bladder and rectum, a suitable psycho-

logical approach to the situation and rehabilitation are all essential. Therefore when a severe neurological complication occurs the patient should be referred to the neurosurgeon who is skilled in handling these problems. The unfortunate physician who administered the anesthetic should also inform his lawyer or insurance company of the occurrence.

COMMENT

Law Suits—In most instances when these complications occur and a law suit is instituted in the United States the patient is awarded the verdict on the basis of "Res Ipsa Loquitur" i.e. the condition speaks for itself, not on the fact that the physician has been negligent. This is unfortunate because it encourages the patient to sue. It is interesting to note that in England the court is prone to support the hospital and the physician when negligence cannot be proven.^{109, 110} The court decisions in two cases of paralysis from the waist down from Nupercaine contaminated with phenol solution which occurred in England indicated this and served to warn us of the danger of cold sterilization of ampoules of drugs to be used in spinal anesthesia. The following is quoted from the British Medical Journal:¹¹⁰

"Lord Justice Denning said that no one could be unmoved by the disaster of these two men. The fact called for an explanation by the hospital authorities and Dr Graham and they had given one. They spared no trouble or expense to seek out the cause of the disaster. There was a danger that the ampoules might become cracked and the cracks might be so fine that they could not be detected by ordinary inspection. The carbolic disinfectant in which the ampoules were kept would then seep through the cracks into the nupercaine and no one would realize that it had taken place. That was the explanation of the disaster and the question was whether any of the staff was negligent. Medical science had conferred great benefits on mankind, but those benefits were attended by considerable risks. Every surgical operation was attended by risks. Dr Graham sought to escape the danger of infection by disinfecting the ampoule. In escaping that known danger he unfortunately ran into another danger. He did not know that there could be

undetectable cracks but it was not negligent for him not to know it at that time. We must not look at this 1947 accident with 1951 spectacles and his lordship. The judge acquitted Dr Graham of negligence and we should uphold his decision. Never again it was to be hoped would such a thing happen. It was the extraordinary accident to these two men which first disclosed the danger. Now days it would be negligence not to realize the danger but it was not then. These two men had suffered such terrible consequences that there was a natural feeling that they should be compensated but we should be doing a disservice to the community if we were to impose liability on hospitals and doctors for everything that happened to go wrong. Doctors would be led to think more of their own safety, he continued than of the good of their patients. Initiative would be stifled and confidence shaken. A proper sense of proportion requires us to have regard to the conditions in which hospitals and doctors have to work. We must insist on due care for the patient at every point but we must not condemn as negligence that which is only a misadventure."

REFERENCES

1. KENNEDY F, EFFRON A S and PERRY G. The Grave Spinal Cord Paralysis Caused by Spinal Anesthesia. *Surg Gynec & Obstet* 91 385-398 1950.
2. THORSEN C. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anesthesia and Results from 2493 Follow Up Cases. *Acta chir scandinav suppl* 121 1947.
3. NICHOLSON M J and EVERSOLE, U H. Neurological Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. *JAMA* 132 679 685 1946.
4. SCHILDT E. Low Spinal Cord Injuries Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Acta chir scandinav* 95 101 131 1947.
5. BEIGNER R P, ROSEMAN E, JOHNSON H and SMITH W R. Severe Neurologic Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. Report of Six Cases. *Anesthesiology* 12 717 727 1951.
6. SKAGGS M L. Relation of Neurological Complications of Subarachnoid Block to Some Unseen Dangers of New Techniques. *California Med* 71 130 131 1949.
7. STREIFLER M. Spinal Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Confinau neuro* 10 96-103 1949.
8. FERGUSON F R and WATKINS K H. Paralysis of the Bladder and Associated Neurological Sequelae of Spinal Anesthesia (Cauda Equina Syndrome). *Brit J Surg* 25 733 752 1937.

- 9 ROSENBAUM H E LONG F B JR HINCHEY T R and TRUFANT S A Paralysis with Saddle Block Anesthesia in Obstetrics *AM A Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 68 783 790 1952
- 10 LIGHT G SWEET W H LIVINGSTONE H and ENGEL R Neurological Changes Following Spinal Anesthesia *Surgery* 7 138 156 1940
- 11 STOUT R J Nerve Damage Following Intrathecal Injection of Amethocaine Hydrochloride (Pontocaine Hydrochloride) *Anesth & Analg* 30 290 291 1951
- 12 WINKELMAN N W Neurologic Symptoms Following Accidental Intraspinal Detergent Injection *Neurology* 2 284 291 1952
- 13 WILSON C RUFF C and WILSON W W The Dangers of Intrathecal Medication *JAMA* 140 1076-1079 1949
- 14 HEWER C L Discussion of "Nervous Sequelae of Spinal Anaesthesia" by Ashworth H A *Proc Roy Soc Med* 26 506 1933
- 15 GREENHILL J P Shall Spinal Anesthesia be Used in Obstetrics? *Anesthesiology* 11 283 288 1950
- 16 FRANKE M Über Dauerschädigungen nach Lumbalanästhesie mit Novokain Suprarenin Lösung *Deutsche Ztschr chir* 202 262 269 1927
- 17 CRITCHLEY M and OTHERS Discussion on the Neurological Sequelae of Spinal Anesthesia *Proc Roy Soc Med* 30 1007 1032 1937
- 18 KAMMAN C R and BAKER A B Damage to the Spinal Cord and Meninges Following Spinal Anesthesia—A Clinical Pathological Study *Minnesota Med* 27 786-791 1943
- 19 BROCK S BELL A and DAVISON C Nervous Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 106 441 447 1936
- 20 HANNES E M Neurological Complications Associated with Spinal Anesthesia—Eight Cases *Minnesota Med* 27 339 345 1943
- 21 MICHELSEN J J Neurologic Manifestations Following Spinal Anesthesia *Neurology* 2 255 259 1952
- 22 WILLIAMS J M Focal Spinal Arachnoiditis Complicating Spinal Anesthesia *J Internat Coll Surgeons* 22 18 29 1954
- 23 KENNEDY F SOMBERG H M and GOLDBERG B R Arachnoiditis and Paralysis Following Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 129 664 667 1945
- 24 HAYNES W G and SMITH F A Cervical Arachnoiditis Occurring after Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 3 444 447 1942
- 25 RABINER A M Concerning Neurologic Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia *New York State J Med* 50 2546-2549 1950
- 26 BAUMAN J Paralysie par compression ou elongation nerveuse au cours de manoeuvres intra veineuses d'anesthésie et de réanimation *Anesth et analg* 7 158 160 1950
- 27 MENNINGER VON LERCHENTHAL E Periphere Nervenschädigungen und Armlähmungen nach intravenöser Evipannatrium Narkose *Wien klin Wchenschr* 60 100 102 1948
- 28 DIENER K G Nerve Injuries Following Operations A Survey of Cases Occurring During a Six Year Period *Anesthesiology* 11 289 295 1950
- 29 HUMPHREY J H and McCLELLAND M Cranial Nerve Palsies with Herpes Following General Anesthesia A Report from the Central Middlesex County Hospital *Brit M J* 1 315-318 1944
- 30 COURVILLE C B The Pathogenesis of Necrosis of the Cerebral Gray Matter Following Nitrous Oxide Anesthesia *Ann surg* 107 371 379 1938
- 31 WOLTMAN H W Postoperative Neurologic Complications *Wisconsin M J* 35 427 436 1936
- 32 CILIBERTI B J Paraplegia Following Inhalation Anesthesia for Subtotal Gastrectomy A Case Report *Anesthesiology* 9 439 440 1948
- 33 THOMAS P and DWYER C S Postoperative Flaccid Paraplegia Case Report *Anesthesiology* 11 635 638 1950
- 34 ZWEIGHAFT J F B Hemiplegia Occurring Immediately after Tonsillectomy *Anesthesiology* 10 729 732 1949
- 35 SCRUTON W A A Case of Hemiplegia Occurring Immediately after Tonsillectomy under General Anesthesia *Laryngoscope* 27 96-97 1917
- 36 PISETSKY J E Hemiplegia Following Ether Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 6 522 527 1945
- 37 GRACEY G F Hemiplegia Following Tonsillectomy *Laryngoscope* 27 40 42 1917
- 38 LENAIAH N E Unusual Postoperative Complication—Decerebrate Rigidity *Anesthesiology* 4 543 545 1943
- 39 GELBAUER P W and COLEMAN F P Post anesthetic Encephalopathy Following Cyclopropane *Ann Surg* 107 481 485 1938
- 40 BRAINDY M B Triplegia Following Tonsillectomy Embolic Occlusion of the Arteries of the Spinal Cord *Am J Dis Child* 49 716-721 1935
- 41 O'BRIEN J D and STEEGMANN A T Severe Degeneration of Brain Following Nitrous Oxide Oxygen Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 107 486 491 1938
- 42 STEEGMANN A T Encephalopathy Following Anesthesia Histologic Study of Four Cases *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 41 995 997 1939

- 43 LOWENBERG K WACOSER R and ZINDLER T Destruction of the Cerebral Cortex Following Nitrous Oxide Oxygen Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 104 801 810 1936
- 44 COUNVILLE C B Asphyxia as a Consequence of Nitrous Oxide Anesthesia *Medicine* 15 129 245 1936
- 45 SINCLAIR R N Ascending Spinal Paralysis Following Hysterectomy under General Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 9 250 257 1951
- 46 COUNVILLE C B Ether Anesthesia and Cerebral Anoxia A Study of the Causative Factors in the Serious Anesthetic and Post Anesthetic Complications *Anesthesiology* 2 41 58 1911
- 47 WINTER F P Complete Mindlessness (Lowest Degree of Idioecy) with Cerebral (Cortical) Diplegia After Status Convulsivus Associated with Ether Anaesthesia. *Brit J Child Dis* 28 14 21 1931
- 48 BRECHIN H K and TODD D P A Study of Deaths Associated with Anesthesia and Surgery Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1951
- 49 TODD D P and BRECHIN H K A Study of Deaths Associated with Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 140 2-34 1951
- 50 DRIFTS R D and VANDAM L D Long Term Follow up of Patients Who Received 10 098 Spinal Anesthetics Failure to Discover Major Neurological Sequelae *JAMA* 156 1486-1491 1954
- 51 MERRITT H H and FREMONT SMITH F *The Cerebrospinal Fluid* Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1937
- 52 DAVIS L HAVEN H GIVENS J H and EMMETT J Effects of Spinal Anesthetics on the Spinal Cord and Its Membranes An Experimental Study *JAMA* 97 1781 1785 1931
- 53 LUNDY J S ESSEX H E and KERNOLIAN J W Experiments with Anesthetics IV Lesions Produced in the Spinal Cord of Dogs by a Dose of Procaine Hydrochloride Sufficient to Cause Permanent and Fatal Paralysis *JAMA* 101 1546-1550 1933
- 54 VAN LIER E H Histologischer Beitrag zur Rückenmarksanästhesie *Beitr klin Chir* 53 413-419 1907
- 55 SPIELMEYER W Veränderungen des Nervensystems nach Stovainanästhesie *München med Wchenschr* 55 1629 1634 1908
- 56 WOSSOLO E Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Veränderungen der Nissl'schen Granula bei der Lumbalanästhesie *Arch f klin Chir* 86 1017 1053 1908
- 57 KLOSE H und VOGT H Experimentelle Untersuchungen zur Spinal analgesie *Mitt Grenz-geb Med Chir* 19 737 805 1909
- 58 MACFARLAND A D and WATKINS K H An Experimental Investigation into the Cause of Paralysis Following Spinal Anesthesia *Brit J Surg* 25 679 683 1938
- 59 KOSTER H and KAMMIS I P Histologic Studies of the Spinal Cord Following Spinal Anesthesia *Am J Surg* 25 277 280 1934
- 60 KAMMIS I P M Study of the Changes in Spinal Fluid Cell Count During Spinal Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 30 103 109 1951
- 61 FRIEDMAN I D Discussion of paper by Brock S Bell A and Davison C (Ref 19)
- 62 DAVIS L HAVEN H and STONE T T The Effect of Injections of Iodized Oil in the Spinal Subarachnoid Space *JAMA* 91 772 777 1910
- 63 MOORE D C HAIN R WARD A E and BRIDENBACH I D The Importance of the Perineural Spaces in Nerve Blocking *JAMA* 156 1050 1053 1954
- 64 CULLEN S C *Anesthesia in General Practice* Chicago Year Book Publisher 1910
- 65 YASKIN H E and ALPERT B J Neuropsychiatric Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia *Ann Int Med* 23 184 200 1945
- 66 FLEISS A N Multiple Sclerosis Appearing after Spinal Anesthesia *New York State J Med* 49 1076 1949
- 67 PATON L M and CRAIG W McK Tumor of the Spinal Cord Sudden Paralysis Following Lumbar Puncture *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic* 15 170 172 1910
- 68 REIMAN A T and ANSON B J Vertebral Level of Termination of the Spinal Cord with Report of a Case of Sacral Cord *Anat Rec* 88 127 138 1944
- 69 ORKIN L R PAPPER E M and ROVENSTINE E A The Complications of Stellate and Thoracic Sympathetic Nerve Blocks *J Thoracic Surgery* 20 911 922 1950
- 70 MAXSON L H *Spinal Anesthesia* Philadelphia Lippincott & Co 1938
- 71 BONICA J J Personal communication
- 72 ARNER O Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence *Acta chir scandi nav Suppl* 167 1952
- 73 BRAY K E KATZ S and ADRIANI J The Effect of Vasoconstrictors upon the Duration of Spinal Anesthesia A Controlled Study in Man *Anesthesiology* 10 40 53 1949
- 74 RÖNBERGER F T Spinal Anesthesia—Practical Facts and Common Fallacies—Clinical Research on Prolonged Spinal Anesthesia Using Vasoconstrictor Adjunctives *Anesth & Analg* 22 252 263 1943

- 9 ROSENBAUM H E LONG F B Jr HINCHEY T R and TRUFANT S A Paralysis with Saddle-Block Anesthesia in Obstetrics *A M A Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 68 783 790 1952
- 10 LIGHT G SWEET W H LIVINGSTONE H and ENGEL R Neurological Changes Following Spinal Anesthesia *Surgery* 7 138 156 1940
- 11 STOUT R J Nerve Damage Following Intrathecal Injection of Amethocaine Hydrochloride (Pontocaine Hydrochloride) *Anesth & Analg* 30 290 294 1951
- 12 WINKELMAN N W Neurologic Symptoms Following Accidental Intraspinal Detergent Injection *Neurology* 2 284 291 1952
- 13 WILSON C RUIP C and WILSON W W The Dangers of Intrathecal Medication *J A M A* 140 1076 1079 1949
- 14 HEWER C L Discussion of Nervous Sequelae of Spinal Anaesthesia by Ashworth H A *Proc Roy Soc Med* 26 506 1933
- 15 GREENHILL J P Shall Spinal Anesthesia be Used in Obstetrics? *Anesthesiology* 11 283 288 1950
- 16 FRANKE M Über Dauerschädigungen nach Lumbalanästhesie mit Novokain Suprarenin Lösung *Deutsche Ztschr chir* 202 262-269 1927
- 17 CRITCHLEY M and OTHERS Discussion on the Neurological Sequelae of Spinal Anesthesia *Proc Roy Soc Med* 30 1007 1032 1937
- 18 KAMMAN G P and BAKER A P Damage to the Spinal Cord and Meninges Following Spinal Anesthesia—A Clinico-Pathological Study *Minnesota Med* 27 786-791 1943
- 19 BROCK S BELL A and DAVISON C Nervous Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia *J A M A* 106 441 447 1936
- 20 HAMMES C M Neurological Complications Associated with Spinal Anesthesia—Eight Cases *Minnesota Med* 27 339 345 1943
- 21 MICHELSEN J J Neurologic Manifestations Following Spinal Anesthesia *Neurology* 2 255 259 1952
- 22 WILLIAMS J M Focal Spinal Arachnoiditis Complicating Spinal Anesthesia *J Internat Coll Surgeons* 22 18 29 1954
- 23 KENNEDY F SOMBERG H M and GOLDBERG B R Arachnoiditis and Paralysis Following Spinal Anesthesia *J A M A* 129 664 667 1945
- 24 HAYLES W G and SMITH F A Cervical Arachnoiditis Occurring after Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 3 444 447 1942
- 25 RABINER A M Concerning Neurologic Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia *New York State J Med* 50 2546-2549 1950
- 26 BAUMAN J Paralyse par compression ou elongation nerveuse au cours de manoeuvres intra veineuses d'anesthésie et de reanimation *Anesth et analg* 7 158 160 1950
- 27 MENNINGER VON LERCHENTHAL C Periphere Nervenschädigungen und Armlähmungen nach intravenöser Evipanatrium Narkose *Wien klin Wchenschr* 60 100 102 1948
- 28 DRUMER K G Nerve Injuries Following Operations A Survey of Cases Occurring During a Six Year Period *Anesthesiology* 11 289 295 1950
- 29 HUMPHREY J H and MCCLELLAND M Cranial Nerve Palsies with Herpes Following General Anesthesia A Report from the Central Middlesex County Hospital *Brit M J* 1 315 318 1944
- 30 COURVILLE C B The Pathogenesis of Necrosis of the Cerebral Gray Matter Following Nitrous Oxide Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 107 371 379 1938
- 31 WOLTMAN, H W Postoperative Neurologic Complications *Wisconsin M J* 35 427 436 1936
- 32 CILIBERTI B J Paraplegia Following Inhalation Anesthesia for Subtotal Gastrectomy A Case Report *Anesthesiology* 9 439 440 1948
- 33 THOMAS P and DWYER C S Postoperative Flaccid Paraplegia Case Report *Anesthesiology* 11 635 636 1950
- 34 ZWEIFART J F B Hemiplegia Occurring Immediately after Tonsillectomy *Anesthesiology* 10 729 732 1949
- 35 SCRUTON W A A Case of Hemiplegia Occurring Immediately after Tonsillectomy under General Anesthesia *Laryngoscope* 27 96-97 1917
- 36 PISETSKY J E Hemiplegia Following Ether Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 6 522 527 1945
- 37 GRACEY G F Hemiplegia Following Tonsillectomy *Laryngoscope* 27 40 42 1917
- 38 LENAHAN N E Unusual Postoperative Complication—Decerebrate Rigidity *Anesthesiology* 4 543 545 1943
- 39 GEBAUER P W and COLEMAN F P Post anesthetic Encephalopathy Following Cyclopropane *Ann Surg* 107 481-485 1938
- 40 BRADY M B Triplegia Following Tonsillectomy Embolic Occlusion of the Arteries of the Spinal Cord *Am J Dis Child* 49 716-721 1935
- 41 O'BRIEN J D and STEEGMANN A T Severe Degeneration of Brain Following Nitrous Oxide Oxygen Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 107 486 491 1938
- 42 STEEGMANN A T Encephalopathy Following Anesthesia Histologic Study of Four Cases *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 41 995 997 1939

- 109 MEDICINE AND LAW: Spinal Anesthesia. *Lancet* 2:1089-1090, 1953
- 110 MEDICOLEGAL: Spinal Anesthetics: Appeals Fail. *Bull. M. J.* 1:940, 1954
- 111 SINCLAIR, R. N.: Ascending Spinal Paralysis Following Hysterectomy Under General Anesthesia. *Anaesthesia* 9:256-257, 1954
- 112 NORMAN, J. E.: Nerve Lacer Following General Anesthesia. *Anaesthesia* 10:57-58, 1955
- 113 Chronic Spinal Epidural and Subdural Hematoma: Report of Three Cases and Review of Literature. *Medicina* 14:579-598, 1954. Abstract in *JAMA* 155:513, 1957
- 114 MASSA, D. J.: Autoclaved Epinephrine and Spinal Anesthesia. *JAMA* 157:543, 1955
- 115 ARONSON, J. and EVANOFF, M.: Complications of Regional Anesthesia. *Anesth. & Analg.* 34:96-101, 1955

- 75 ROMBERGER F T and RATCLIFF F W Ten thousand Spinal Anesthetics Five-thousand with Ephedrine Intrathecally—Random Comment *J Indiana M A* 40 217 219 1947
- 76 PRICKETT M D GROSS E G and CULLEN S C Spinal Analgesia with Solutions of Procaine and Ephedrine A Preliminary Report of 108 Cases *Anesthesiology* 6 469 475 1945
- 77 POTTER J K and WHITACRE R J Pontocaine Dextrose Ephedrine for Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 7 499 504 1946
- 78 WHITACRE R J and POTTER J K Subarachnoid Use of Vasoconstrictors in Spinal Anesthesia *Ann Surg* 127 338 341 1948
- 79 ROONEY J and KARP M Prolonged Spinal Analgesia with Epinephrine Pontocaine and Dextrose *Anesth & Analg* 28 156 160 1949
- 80 TAYLOR R L Prolonged Spinal Anesthesia Using Ephedrine Sulfate *Am J Surg* 79 369 372 1950
- 81 BONICA J J BACKUP P H and PRATT W H Use of Vasoconstrictors to Prolong Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 12 431 441 1951
- 82 BROCKMEYER M L and MCGOWAN T S Prolonged Spinal Anesthesia Use of Intrathecal Vasoconstrictor Substances *Surg Gynec & Obstet* 86 528 536 1949
- 83 CRAWFORD O B and AUSHERRMAN H M Prolonged Spinal Anesthesia Using Neosynephrine Pontocaine *Anesth & Analg* 29 13 21 1950
- 84 HAVEN H Neurologist Mason Clinic Personal communications
- 85 WARD A E Professor of Neurosurgery University of Washington School of Medicine Personal communications
- 86 FOLTZ E Assistant Professor of Neurosurgery University of Washington School of Medicine Personal communications
- 87 GRAY H *Anatomy of the Human Body* 25th Ed edited by Goss C M Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1948
- 88 MOSBECG W H JR VORIS H C and DUFFY J Paraplegia as a Complication of Sympathectomy for Hypertension *Ann Surg* 139 330 334 1954
- 89 WU J J HARNAGLE D L A BRIZZEE K R and SMITH S M Neurological Effects Following Intrathecal Administration of Vasoconstrictor Drugs in Rhesus Monkeys *Anesthesiology* 15 71-88 1954
- 90 MOTILCHER M and WILSON G Brown Sequard Paralysis Following a Paravertebral Alcohol Injection for Angina Pectoris *JAMA* 97 247 1931
- 91 HACKMEYER R Oil Soluble Anesthetics—A Review and Report on a Study for Their Improvement *J Missouri M A* 47 892 902 1950
- 92 MANNHEIMER W PIZZOLATO P and AUBRIAN J Mode of Action and Effects on Tissues of Long Acting Local Anesthetics *JAMA* 154 29 32 1953
- 93 MARGOLIS G HALL H E and NOWILL W K An Investigation of Efocaine A Long Acting Local Anesthetic Agent I Animal Studies *Arch Surg* 67 715 730 1953
- 94 NOWILL W K HALL H E and MARGOLIS G An Investigation of Efocaine A Long Acting Local Anesthetic Agent *Arch Surg* 67 731 737 1953
- 95 TENG P Paraplegia Resulting from Lumbar Paravertebral Injection of Alcohol for Nerve Pain Report of a Case *West J Surg* 56 594 595 1948
- 96 BONICA J J *The Management of Pain* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1953
- 97 PITKIN C P *Conduction Anesthesia* Edited by Southworth J L and Hingson R A Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1946
- 98 DECARLE D W Spinal Anesthesia in Cesarean Section Critical Analysis of About 1200 Cases with no Maternal Mortality *JAMA* 154 545 549 1954
- 99 BROWN S Fractional Segmental Spinal Anesthesia in Poor Risk Surgical Patients Report of 600 Cases *Anesthesiology* 13 416-428 1952
- 100 GRIFFITH H R Safety Factors in Spinal Anesthesia *Anesth & Analg* 31 367 371 1953
- 101 ANDERSON B M The Dents of Spinal Anesthesia *California Med* 76 261 262 1952
- 102 MACINTOSH R R *Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Analgesia* Edinburgh E & S Livingstone Ltd 1951
- 103 LEWIS L D Storing Ampuls for Spinal Anesthesia *JAMA* 153 50 1953
- 104 STEINBERG B L Ampule Contamination in Spinal Anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 11 257 258 1950
- 105 GARROD L P Sterilizing Ampoules *Brit M J* 2 1269 1953
- 106 SEARLES P W and NOWILL W K The Role of Sterilizing Solution in the Cauda Equina Syndrome Following Spinal Anesthesia *New York State J Med* 50 2541 2544 1950
- 107 SAKLAD M Personal communications
- 108 WOODSON F E Personal communication regarding judgment in case of Woodson vs Huey 2 CCH Neg Case 2d 284—Oklahoma Supreme Court June 23 1953

TABLE XXX

INCIDENCE OF ABDUCENS NERVE PALSY FOLLOWING LUMBAR PUNCTURE

Author	Cases			Percentage
	Abducens	Other	Total	
Arner ⁴	1 (0.1)	0	1	0.1
Arner ⁴ and Kennedy ⁵	1 (0.1)	0	1	0.1
Babcock ¹⁰	2 (0.0)	0	2	0.0
Prone ⁸	1 (0.1)	0	1	0.1
Seibert ¹¹ and Bishop ¹²	1 (0.1)	1	2	0.1
Fairclough ¹³	2 (0.1)	1	3	0.1
Kennedy ⁵ and Lockhart ¹⁰	1 (0.1)	2	3	0.1
Arner ⁴	1 (0.1)	0	1	0.1
Greene ¹⁴	1 (0.1)	0	1	0.1

by itself bring about the complication it is not unreasonable to expect that a combination of them may be responsible. The work of Arner⁴ and Kennedy and Lockhart¹⁰ substantiates this belief. Arner⁴ states "post-puncture spinal fluid hypotension cannot be the only factor of significance in the genesis of palsy of the abducens and other cranial nerves since such pareses seem to be considerably more common after spinal anesthesia than after diagnostic lumbar puncture alone."

Since the abducens nerve is the cranial nerve most frequently affected it is the most discussed and while the factors listed below have been suggested in articles dealing with that specific nerve they generally apply to most if not all cranial nerve palsies or pareses.

Hypotension of the Spinal Fluid (Leakage Theory).—Most authors reporting cases of sixth nerve (abducens) injury seem to agree that the leakage of spinal fluid and the resultant low spinal fluid pressure is probably the

most important single factor in producing this complication. The following statement of Greene *et al*¹⁴ is typical of this belief. "Post-puncture palsies of cranial nerves are primarily caused by the effect of gravity on a brain that has lost its intracranial water cushion by leakage of cerebrospinal fluid through a lumbar dural puncture in a patient whose state of hydration is inadequate to replace spinal fluid as rapidly as it is lost. In most patients the low intracranial volume of cerebrospinal fluid leads only to a postpuncture headache. In some however a cranial nerve palsy follows because of an anatomical or functional susceptibility of one or more cranial nerves usually the abducens to traction or pressure or both by the brain that is caudally displaced by severe or prolonged reduction of cerebrospinal fluid volume."

The theory that cranial nerve palsy is caused primarily by hypotension of the spinal fluid is based on the following observations.

Headache Precedes Nerve Paralysis.—In all most all cases reported a typical postlumbar puncture headache was present during the three days to three weeks that elapsed prior to the development of the palsy.^{6, 8, 10, 11, 17, 20, 21}

Large gauge Needles with Regular Bevels Were Employed in Most of the Reported Cases.—It has been shown that when large gauge needles are used particularly those with cutting bevels the incidence of postlumbar puncture headache is increased (see Chapter 20, page 178). Moreover in most of the reported cases of abducens nerve palsy 16 to 20 gauge needles with regular bevels were employed to execute the lumbar puncture. The only five cases of abducens nerve palsies in Dripps and Vandam's¹⁰ series of 6147 spinal anesthetics occurred in the 637 patients who were tapped with 16 gauge needles. A 16 gauge needle was also used in Brown's⁸ series of 600 cases with 2 abducens nerve palsies.

Palses Occur after Patient is No Longer in Prone Position.—Thorsén¹ Kunkle *et al*³ and Wolff²³ substantiate the fact that the basic cause of a cranial nerve palsy is the decreased volume of cerebrospinal fluid in the intracranial cavity when the head is elevated.

Lesions of the Brain and/or the Intracranial Portion of the Cranial Nerves

IF UNTOWARD reactions to a regional block procedure such as prolonged hypotension, convulsions or cardiac failure occur *brain* damage may be a sequela of the oxygen deprivation which accompanies these complications. However damage of the parenchyma of the brain seldom if ever is a result of the local anesthetic drug per se or of trauma from the placement of a needle. Even if a high spinal results during an intracranial injection with a local anesthetic agent e.g. a gasserian ganglion block death or brain damage should not ensue provided resuscitative measures are instituted immediately and continued until the physiological effects of the drug are dissipated.

On the other hand damage to the *cranial nerves* as they course within the calvarium while not common has been reported a number of times as a sequela of spinal anesthesia or a diagnostic spinal tap and occasionally as a residuum from a misplaced needle during a gasserian ganglion block with neurolytic drugs i.e. alcohol or phenol. Paralysis or paresis of any of the twelve cranial nerves or of several at once may occur¹⁻³. Judging from the number of reports in the medical literature of abducens nerve involvement in comparison to the other cranial nerves it would appear that without a doubt this cranial nerve is the one which is usually affected following spinal anesthesia^{1,21}. Blatt³ in reviewing 88 cases of cranial nerve damage found the trochlear nerve involved in 4 cases the oculomotor nerve in 6 and the abducens

nerve in the remaining 78. In the 324 cases of cranial nerve paresis reported by Thorsén¹ about 93% (299 cases) showed involvement of the abducens nerve alone. These reports indicate that the dural puncture whether purposely or inadvertently performed is responsible for this type of lesion. While most instances of abducens nerve paralysis have occurred following spinal anesthesia, some have been reported after diagnostic lumbar taps^{1,17,22,24}. The incidence of abducens nerve involvement varies widely (see Table XXV page 227).

As noted previously damage to the parenchyma of the brain seldom if ever results from the actual mechanics of executing a block and reports of such damage could not be found in the literature. Therefore this chapter deals mainly with paralysis or paresis of the intracranial portion of the cranial nerves. The terms intracranial "within the calvarium and cranial cavity" are stressed because damage to the cranial nerves or their branches after their exit from the skull has been considered in Chapter 11 page 112.

ETIOLOGY

The etiology of paralysis or paresis of the nerves lying within the cranial cavity with the exception of those cases which follow the injection of neurolytic drugs intracranially, has not been definitely established^{4,11,2,31}. A number of factors have been cited as possible causes and while any single one of these may

tremely high concentrations are employed. However the strongest concentration of Novocain (procaine) advocated at the present time for use in regional block is 5% and Lund *et al.* have shown that a 17% concentration of this drug is required to cause nerve damage if injected into the subarachnoid space of a dog.

Meningitis or Meningeal Irritation.—Maxson¹⁰ attributed abducens nerve palsy to meningeal irritation and Babcock¹¹ attributed his five cases to contaminated solutions of injected Stovaine or Tropicaine. While there is no question that paralysis and paresis of the ocular muscles and even loss of sight may occur from a meningitis it is unlikely that this is the mechanism following lumbar puncture unless a septic meningitis from improper technique occurs. Kennedy and Lockhart¹² point out that spinal fluids examined during the paresthesia in all cases they reviewed were found to be normal. On the other hand they state that a low grade infection from some flaw in technique could be responsible for paralysis of the abducens nerve.¹³

Dattner and Thomas¹⁴ suggest the possibility that abducens nerve paralysis may result from a latent virus infection but admit this to be "pure speculation."

Increased Intracranial Pressure.—Any increase in the intracranial pressure would tend to force the brain downward causing it to exert traction and pressure on the cranial nerves. This has been mentioned as a possible mechanism of cranial nerve injury.^{15, 16} On the other hand Bryce Smith and Macintosh¹⁷ believe that the nerve may be stretched but that the lesion itself is due to reduced not to the raised intracranial pressure which Lurclough has suggested may be responsible.

Interference with Binocular Vision.—Lurclough¹⁸ suggests that the cause of abducens nerve palsy is an interruption by the spinal tap or the drug used of one or more of the essentials necessary to binocular vision. This theory is not mentioned or supported by other authors reporting on cases of abducens nerve palsy.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Onset.—When the damage is caused by a neurolytic drug the onset is sudden and prodromal symptoms do not occur. On the other hand cranial nerve paresis or paralysis following a puncture of the dura alone or following spinal anesthesia usually does not develop for 3 to 21 days and prodromal signs and symptoms usually occur. The signs and symptoms of palsy of the cranial nerves from these latter causes are those detailed below. They are the ones which may signal an impending onset of an abducens nerve palsy. Those palsies which follow the use of a neurolytic drug are a known hazard of using such an agent.

Prodromal Symptoms.—Prior to the development of the signs and symptoms of cranial nerve injury with a slow onset following a puncture of the dura the patient may complain of symptoms resembling those which accompany a low spinal fluid pressure following a spinal tap and including: (1) a typical postspinal puncture headache, (2) dizziness, (3) nausea and (4) a stiff neck.

When these symptoms occur they may progress no further but because of their potential significance they cannot be viewed lightly—thus inherent that vigorous treatment to correct them must be instituted immediately. Otherwise cranial nerve damage may ensue.

Paralysis or Paresis of the Cranial Nerve or Nerves Involved.—These imply either motor and/or sensory loss of the structures the nerve supplies depending on the type of fibers the paralyzed nerve contains. For example: (1) the acoustic nerve is entirely sensory, (2) the abducens nerve is entirely motor, (3) the trigeminal nerve is mainly sensory but does have a motor component and (4) the glossopharyngeal nerve contains a relatively equal number of sensory and motor fibers.

When any of the nerves to the ocular muscles are involved a squint results and photophobia, blurring of vision and esophoria may ensue. Since the abducens nerve is the one affected in the greater number of cases it is

Their conclusions are easily explained—when a patient sits or stands the brain sags because of the effect of gravity and if the cushioning effect of the cerebrospinal fluid is no longer present due to leakage it is reasonable to assume that excessive traction or pressure on the cranial nerves will result.

Anatomy of the Cranial Nerves—Most of the cranial nerves are subject to pressure or traction if the cerebrospinal fluid is reduced. The trochlear nerve being the most slender and having the longest intracranial course might perhaps be thought to be the most vulnerable but on the contrary the abducens nerve is more vulnerable because (1) its course is also long (2) it makes a sharp bend over the angular apex of the petrous temporal bone through Dorello's canal and (3) as it passes between the pons and occipital bone it is crossed by the anterior inferior cerebellar and the internal auditory artery.^{16 34 3} These obstacles predispose to its compression when hypotension of the cerebrospinal fluid occurs.

Damage to Blood Supply to Nucleus of the Sixth Nerve and Hypoxia or Anoxia—The blood is supplied to the abducens nucleus via two very narrow arterial medullae from the basilar artery and it is possible (though unlikely) that a vascular accident or *any prolonged hypotension* during the surgical procedure or in the postoperative period might result in hypoxia or anoxia of the nucleus and consequently in palsies of the abducens nerve.³

While Dattner and Thomas³ believe this to be unlikely, the theory is supported somewhat by the fact that cranial nerve palsies have occurred in the absence of dural puncture. Woltman³⁶ has cited two cases of abducens nerve palsy subsequent to ether anesthesia. Courville³⁷ has reported several cases of cranial nerve palsy (abducens nerve included) following inhalation anesthesia and Norman⁴³ noted a case of partial right third cranial nerve palsy following anesthesia with Pentothal and tubocurarine chloride, cyclopropane and oxygen. In these cases the complication could have been caused by anoxia.

Neurolytic Drugs—Occasionally the gas-

serian (semilunar) ganglion is injected with *alcohol* or *phenol* as a therapeutic measure to relieve the pain of trigeminal neuralgia (le douloureux). If the needle point is misplaced and lies outside the capsule of the ganglion cranial nerve palsies may ensue, particularly those of the oculomotor, the trochlear nerve, the abducens nerve and the glossopharyngeal nerve.

Local Anesthetic Agents—The direct action of the local anesthetic agent on the cranial nerves or their nuclei has been suggested as a possible cause of palsy.¹⁻ It is possible that this might have been a factor in the early days of spinal anesthesia when drugs for spinal anesthesia were in their developmental stages. Spielmeier³⁸ in his article on Stovaine points out that if nerve cells are affected by anesthetic agents at all it is most likely that of the cranial nerves the abducens nerve would be involved since there are fewer cells in its nuclei. The hypothesis that local anesthetic agents may act directly on the cranial nerves may also be somewhat supported by the consideration of Kennedy and Lockhart⁹ who note the superficial relationship of the abducens nerve to the fourth ventricle and write "It must be remembered also that the abducens nerve has a superficial relation to the fourth ventricle which communicates with the subarachnoid space into which the anesthetic agent is injected."

However with the time tested low toxicity local anesthetic agents in use today it is highly unlikely that the toxicity theory is a significant etiologic factor in cranial nerve palsy. In the cases of abducens nerve palsies which have recently occurred no one local anesthetic agent can be singled out for scrutiny since Pontocaine, Novocain and Nupercaine have all been employed.^{9 8 11 1} Moreover it is difficult to condemn these drugs or any others in light of the fact that cranial nerve palsy has occurred following diagnostic lumbar punctures where no drug at all has been injected into the subarachnoid space.^{1 17 10 4}

Perhaps the only time that the local anesthetic agent might be condemned is when ex-

travels high concentrations are employed. However, the strongest concentration of Novocain (procaine) advocated at the present time for use in regional block is 5% and Lindy et al.¹⁹ have shown that a 17% concentration of this drug is required to cause nerve damage if injected into the subarachnoid space of a dog.

Meningitis or Meningeal Irritation—Maxson⁴⁰ attributed abducens nerve palsy to meningeal irritation and Babcock¹² attributed his five cases to contaminated solutions of imported Stovaine or Tropicaine. While there is no question that paralysis and paresis of the ocular muscles and even loss of sight may occur from a meningitis it is unlikely that this is the mechanism following lumbar puncture unless a septic meningitis from improper technique occurs. Kennedy and Lockhart⁴⁰ point out that spinal fluids examined during the paresis in all cases they reviewed were found to be normal. On the other hand they state that a low grade infection from some flaw in technique could be responsible for paralysis of the abducens nerve.⁴⁰

Dattner and Thomas²³ suggest the possibility that abducens nerve paralysis may result from a latent virus infection but admit this to be "pure speculation."

Increased Intracranial Pressure—Any increase in the intracranial pressure would tend to force the brain downward causing it to exert traction and pressure on the cranial nerves. This has been mentioned as a possible mechanism of cranial nerve injury.^{11, 16} On the other hand Bryce Smith and Macintosh¹⁷ believe that the nerve may be stretched but that the lesion itself is due to reduced not to the raised intracranial pressure which Fairclough has suggested may be responsible.

Interference with Binocular Vision—Fairclough¹⁶ suggests that the cause of abducens nerve palsy is an interruption by the spinal tap or the drug, used of one or more of the essentials necessary to binocular vision. This theory is not mentioned or supported by other authors reporting on cases of abducens nerve palsy.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Onset—When the damage is caused by a neurolytic drug, the onset is sudden and prodromal symptoms do not occur. On the other hand cranial nerve paresis or paralysis following a puncture of the dura alone or following spinal anesthesia usually does not develop for 3 to 21 days and prodromal signs and symptoms usually occur. The signs and symptoms of palsies of the cranial nerves from these latter causes are those detailed below. They are the ones which may signal an insidious onset of an abducens nerve palsy. Those palsies which follow the use of a neurolytic drug are a known hazard of using such an agent.

Prodromal Symptoms—Prior to the development of the signs and symptoms of cranial nerve injury with a slow onset following puncture of the dura, the patient may complain of symptoms resembling those which accompany a low spinal fluid pressure following a spinal tap and including (1) a typical postspinal puncture headache (2) dizziness (3) nausea and (4) a stiff neck.

When these symptoms occur they may progress no further but because of their potential significance they cannot be viewed lightly—they indicate that vigorous treatment to correct them must be instituted immediately. Otherwise cranial nerve damage may ensue.

Paralysis or Paresis of the Cranial Nerve or Nerves Involved—These imply either motor and/or sensory loss of the structures the nerve supplies depending on the type of fibers the paralyzed nerve contains. For example (1) the acoustic nerve is entirely sensory (2) the abducens nerve is entirely motor (3) the trigeminal nerve is mainly sensory but does have a motor component and (4) the glossopharyngeal nerve contains a relatively equal number of sensory and motor fibers.

When any of the nerves to the ocular muscles are involved a *squint* results and *photophobia*, *blurring of vision* and *esophoria* may ensue. Since the abducens nerve is the one affected in the greater number of cases it is

Their conclusions are easily explained—when a patient sits or stands the brain sags because of the effect of gravity and if the cushioning effect of the cerebrospinal fluid is no longer present due to leakage it is reasonable to assume that excessive traction or pressure on the cranial nerves will result.

Anatomy of the Cranial Nerves—Most of the cranial nerves are subject to pressure or traction if the cerebrospinal fluid is reduced. The trochlear nerve being the most slender and having the longest intracranial course might perhaps be thought to be the most vulnerable but on the contrary the abducens nerve is more vulnerable because (1) its course is also long (2) it makes a sharp bend over the angular apex of the petrous temporal bone through Dorello's canal and (3) as it passes between the pons and occipital bone it is crossed by the inferior cerebellar and the internal auditory artery.^{10 34 3} These obstacles predispose to its compression when hypotension of the cerebrospinal fluid occurs.

Damage to Blood Supply to Nucleus of the Sixth Nerve and Hypoxia or Anoxia—The blood is supplied to the abducens nucleus via two very narrow arteriae medianae from the basilar artery and it is possible (though unlikely) that a vascular accident or any prolonged hypotension during the surgical procedure or in the postoperative period might result in hypoxia or anoxia of the nucleus and consequently in palsies of the abducens nerve.³

While Dattner and Thomas³ believe this to be unlikely the theory is supported somewhat by the fact that cranial nerve palsies have occurred in the absence of dural puncture. Woltman³⁶ has cited two cases of abducens nerve palsy subsequent to ether anesthesia. Courville³⁷ has reported several cases of cranial nerve palsy (abducens nerve included) following inhalation anesthesia and Norman⁴³ noted a case of partial right third cranial nerve palsy following anesthesia with Pentothal, tubocurarine chloride, cyclopropane and oxygen. In these cases the complication could have been caused by anoxia.

Neurolytic Drugs—Occasionally the gas

serian (semilunar) ganglion is injected with alcohol or phenol as a therapeutic measure to relieve the pain of trigeminal neuralgia (le douloureux). If the needle point is misplaced and lies outside the capsule of the ganglion cranial nerve palsies may ensue particularly those of the oculomotor, the trochlear nerve, the abducens nerve and the glossopharyngeal nerve.

Local Anesthetic Agents—The direct action of the local anesthetic agent on the cranial nerves or their nuclei has been suggested as a possible cause of palsy.^{1*} It is possible that this might have been a factor in the early days of spinal anesthesia when drugs for spinal anesthesia were in their developmental stages. Spielmeyer³⁸ in his article on Stovaine points out that if nerve cells are affected by anesthetic agents at all it is most likely that of the cranial nerves the abducens nerve would be involved since there are fewer cells in its nuclei. The hypothesis that local anesthetic agents may act directly on the cranial nerves may also be somewhat supported by the consideration of Kennedy and Lockhart⁹ who note the superficial relationship of the abducens nerve to the fourth ventricle and write: "It must be remembered also that the abducens nerve has a superficial relation to the fourth ventricle which communicates with the subarachnoid space into which the anesthetic agent is injected."

However with the time tested low toxicity local anesthetic agents in use today it is highly unlikely that the toxicity theory is a significant etiological factor in cranial nerve palsy. In the cases of abducens nerve palsies which have recently occurred no one local anesthetic agent can be singled out for scrutiny since Pontocaine, Novocain and Nupercaine have all been employed.^{6 8 11 1*} Moreover it is difficult to condemn these drugs or any others in light of the fact that cranial nerve palsy has occurred following diagnostic lumbar punctures where no drug at all has been injected into the subarachnoid space.^{1 17 2 4}

Perhaps the only time that the local anesthetic agent might be condemned is when ex

an abdominal binder and if necessary epidural (peridural) injections of saline via an indwelling catheter (see Chapter 20 page 190)

Prevent Atrophy of Muscles—Since the palsy is only temporary in most cases, the muscles involved should be stimulated with weak galvanic current to prevent atrophy from disuse

Consult an Ophthalmologist—When the ocular muscles are involved, as they are in the greater number of cases a specialist should be consulted. Usually he will cover the eye to eliminate the distressing diplopia. However no attempt to correct the squint will be made until the lesion has persisted without improvement for at least a year⁴¹

Prognosis—Most cranial nerves affected by paresis will as with the usual peripheral nerve injury, return to normal function. Those which occur from lumbar punctures or spinal anesthesia particularly abducens nerve palsy, usually resolve in one week to four months. From their own experiences and a review of the literature Kennedy and Lockhart⁴² concluded that 90% of the cases of abducens nerve palsy following spinal anesthesia recover in 8 weeks or less. If the palsy results from the use of a neurolytic drug nine months to one year may be necessary for recovery

In spite of the fact that most cases of cranial nerve palsy recover, the prognosis must be guarded as Hingson *et al*⁴³ report a case of abducens nerve palsy of five years duration with no improvement. Thorsen⁴⁴ also cites cases of permanent paralysis

COMMENTS

Lumbar Puncture Death—This is due to damage to the vital centers in the medulla. It is most likely to occur with the patient in the sitting position. To date this type of problem has not been encountered at the Mason Clinic. On this subject Maxson⁴⁵ warns that "By careless and rapid withdrawal of large quantities of spinal fluid through a large needle with the patient in the sitting posture the normal water cushion of the brain is removed and herniation of the brain stem

through the foramen magnum may occur. In such a case death is due to pressure on the medullary centers and may be sudden. Most of the recorded cases had intracranial tumors others cerebral hemorrhage. A spinal anesthetic should never be attempted in such cases and lumbar puncture if performed should be done in the lateral posture. A small caliber needle is a safeguard"

Cranial Nerve Palsy Following the Use of Trichlorethylene (Trilene, Trumar)—At the present time trichlorethylene is being used extensively as an analgesic during obstetrical labor. Often obstetrical patients are given a spinal anesthetic just before delivery. Should a cranial nerve palsy ensue the physician might condemn the regional block procedure. It must be emphasized that trichlorethylene was originally employed to treat trigeminal neuralgia because of its depressant action on the cranial nerves. This depressant action on the nervous tissue may result in cranial nerve paralysis particularly if the drug is used over a prolonged period, if it has started to decompose or if it is given in a closed system. Twenty-two incidences of cranial nerve palsy following the use of this drug in anesthesia have been cited⁴. In addition to these 22 cases 2 cases of facial nerve palsy following the use of Trilene for labor and delivery were described in a recent letter to the author

If cranial nerve palsies following the use of trichlorethylene do not clear within a month they may be permanent or at least semi-permanent, i.e., last 6 months or longer⁴⁶. While the trigeminal and facial nerves are the ones usually involved palsies of all the cranial nerves with the exception of the first, second, ninth and eleventh nerves have been reported following the use of trichlorethylene⁴

Convulsions and Retinal Hemorrhage Following "Pressure Caudal"—Not infrequently the anesthesiologist is requested to perform pressure caudal injections for sciatic or back pain. This entails the rapid injection of 50 to 90 cc of solution into the caudal canal. The solution must be injected rapidly so that it will not escape through the foramina and thus

interesting to note that (1) its incidence is greater in women than in men (2) the ratio of unilateral to bilateral palsy is 3 to 1 and (3) neither eye is predominantly involved.¹¹ Furthermore, the affection may develop on the side opposite the one on which the patient is lying at the time a large amount of spinal fluid is lost because the brain sags toward the side which is down, placing the greatest tension on the opposite nerve. Bryce Smith and Macintosh¹⁷ cite such a case following the administration of a spinal block.

PROPHYLAXIS

Prophylaxis to a large extent depends on whether a neurolytic drug is to be injected or a spinal puncture performed.

Prevention of the Incorrect Placement of Neurolytic Drugs During a Gasserian Ganglion Block.—When neurolytic drugs are to be injected into the gasserian (semilunar) ganglion the only prophylactic measures which may assure correct placement of the needles are (1) x-ray studies of the placement of the needle (2) injection of a Diodrast solution equal to the amount of neurolytic agent to be used followed by roentgen studies within 2 to 5 minutes to determine whether the solution remains within the capsule of the ganglion or spreads diffusely and (3) injections of small amounts of local anesthetic agents and study of their effects prior to the injection of the neurolytic drug.

Even when these precautions are taken it is possible that cranial nerve damage may result from a change in the needle's position due to (1) movement by the patient due to pain which accompanies the injection of a neurolytic drug or (2) slight changes in the patient's position during the interval between the taking of the x-rays and the decision to inject the neurolytic drug.

Recently Jaeger⁴⁴ has suggested that the gasserian ganglion be blocked (coagulated and destroyed) with boiling distilled water as a means of avoiding the dangers involved in the use of neurolytic drugs. He states "It is improbable that damage to the brain or other

cranial nerves will result if no more than 1 ml of water is injected at any one time since the water temperature is immediately lowered to a safe level the instant it is diluted by the intracranial cerebrospinal fluid."

Prevention of Cranial Nerve Palsies Following a Spinal Tap.—As Greene *et al*¹ state "Prevention of postpuncture palsies of the cranial nerves begins with the prophylaxis of the lumbar puncture headache. This prophylaxis consists of (1) use of a small gauge needle, (2) use of a Greene or pencilpoint needle (3) hydration and replacement of blood loss and (4) bed rest etc (see Chapter 20 page 183). If a postpuncture headache should develop even though some or all of these steps have been observed it should not be considered in a casual manner but treated vigorously as advocated in Chapter 20 page 190. It must always be remembered that this type of headache may be the forerunner of a cranial nerve palsy."

Greene *et al*¹ believe that the most effective and prompt means of removing the threat of palsy is recumbency, but this is not necessarily true. It is granted that bed rest will prevent the downward pressure, but as the patient lies down and the brain sags upward traction in a different direction may develop. The case cited by Bryce Smith and Macintosh¹⁷ and mentioned above is a good illustration.

The prophylactic use of nicotinic acid to dilate the vessels of the brain and increase the production of spinal fluid by the choroid plexus is questioned by Greene *et al*²¹ on the basis that its action increases the volume and relative weight of the brain and therefore aggravates the traction or pressure. Whether or not this is an important consideration only further experimental studies can determine.

TREATMENT

As soon as palsy or paralysis is noted the following therapy should be instituted.

Correct Headache.—If the headache is still present when the palsy occurs it should be vigorously treated with *bed rest, hydration*

an abdominal binder and if necessary epidural (peridural) injections of saline via an indwelling catheter (see Chapter 20, page 190).

Prevent Atrophy of Muscles—Since the palsy is only temporary in most cases the muscles involved should be stimulated with weak galvanic current to prevent atrophy from disuse.

Consult an Ophthalmologist—When the ocular muscles are involved as they are in the greater number of cases a specialist should be consulted. Usually he will cover the eye to eliminate the distressing diplopia. However no attempt to correct the squint will be made until the lesion has persisted without improvement for at least a year.⁴¹

Prognosis—Most cranial nerves affected by paresis will as with the usual peripheral nerve injury return to normal function. Those which occur from lumbar punctures or spinal anesthesia particularly abducens nerve palsy usually resolve in one week to four months. From their own experiences and a review of the literature Kennedy and Lockhart⁴² concluded that 90% of the cases of abducens nerve palsy following spinal anesthesia recover in 8 weeks or less. If the palsy results from the use of a neurolytic drug nine months to one year may be necessary for recovery.

In spite of the fact that most cases of cranial nerve palsy recover the prognosis must be guarded as Hingson *et al*⁴³ report a case of abducens nerve palsy of five years duration with no improvement. Thorsén¹ also cites cases of permanent paralysis.

COMMENTS

Lumbar Puncture Death—This is due to damage to the vital centers in the medulla. It is most likely to occur with the patient in the sitting position. To date this type of problem has not been encountered at the Mason Clinic. On this subject Maxson⁴⁴ warns that "By careless and rapid withdrawal of large quantities of spinal fluid through a large needle with the patient in the sitting posture the normal water cushion of the brain is removed and herniation of the brain stem

through the foramen magnum may occur. In such a case death is due to pressure on the medullary centers and may be sudden. Most of the recorded cases had intracranial tumors others cerebral hemorrhage. A spinal anesthetic should never be attempted in such cases and lumbar puncture if performed should be done in the lateral posture. A small caliber needle is a safeguard."

Cranial Nerve Palsy Following the Use of Trichlorethylene (Trilene, Trimar)—At the present time trichlorethylene is being used extensively as an anesthetic during obstetrical labor. Often obstetrical patients are given a spinal anesthetic just before delivery. Should a cranial nerve palsy ensue the physician might condemn the regional block procedure. It must be emphasized that trichlorethylene was originally employed to treat trigeminal neuralgia because of its depressant action on the nervous tissue. This depressant action on the nervous tissue may result in cranial nerve paralysis particularly if the drug is used over a prolonged period if it has started to decompose or if it is given in a closed system. Twenty-two incidences of cranial nerve palsy following the use of this drug in anesthesia have been cited.⁴ In addition to these 22 cases 2 cases of facial nerve palsy following the use of Trilene for labor and delivery were described in a recent letter to the author.

If cranial nerve palsies following the use of trichlorethylene do not clear within a month they may be permanent or at least semi-permanent i.e. last 6 months or longer.⁴ While the trigeminal and facial nerves are the ones usually involved palsies of all the cranial nerves with the exception of the first, second, ninth and eleventh nerves have been reported following the use of trichlorethylene.⁴⁵

Convulsions and Retinal Hemorrhage Following Pressure" Caudal—Not infrequently the anesthesiologist is requested to perform pressure caudal injections for sciatic or back pain. This entails the rapid injection of 50 to 90 cc. of solution into the caudal canal. The solution must be injected rapidly so that it will not escape through the foramina and thus

fail to elevate the pressure in the epidural space

Following the injection of the solution it is common for the referring physician to manipulate the patient's legs and back. This is usually performed with much vigor. Because the manipulation of the back is attended with pain the patient must receive either a regional anesthetic or a general anesthetic. Following regional anesthesia we have observed convulsions not due to systemic toxic reaction. Following general anesthesia and this technique Callahan, McConville and Goss⁴⁴ have observed 8 cases of retinal hemorrhage.

Convulsions—To perform a pressure caudal and back manipulation it has been our custom at the Mason Clinic to (1) place the needle in the caudal canal (2) inject 30 cc of 1% Xylocaine solution (3) wait 15 minutes for the anesthetic effects of the Xylocaine to become well established (4) then inject 50 to 70 cc of normal saline rapidly until the patient complains of either an aching between the scapula or a headache and (5) vigorous manipulation of the back and legs.

On a number of occasions after 30 to 40 cc of the saline had been injected and before the complaint of headache the patient had a convulsion which lasted 10 to 20 seconds. Presumably this is due (1) to motion of the cord caused by the rapid injection of the saline or (2) to the increase in the spinal fluid pressure which results from filling the epidural space which then forces the cerebrospinal fluid from the dural sac into the cranial cavity increasing intracranial pressure. To date we have seen no untoward effects from either the injection, the convulsion or the manipulation.

These patients are never given general anesthesia prior to such an injection and whenever the patient complains of pain between the scapula, headache or has a convulsion the injection is suspended but the manipulation is performed.

Retinal Hemorrhage—Callahan, McConville and Goss⁴⁵ have observed retinal hemorrhage following back manipulations under general anesthesia. Their technique originally consisted of (1) anesthetizing the patient with sodium Pentothal (2) inserting the

needle into the caudal canal (3) injecting rapidly 90 to 125 cc of normal saline (4) removing the needle and (5) vigorous manipulation of the back and legs. They observed 8 cases of central retinal hemorrhage limited to one eye following this technique. The patients' main complaint was blurred vision. In time the hemorrhage disappeared and no untoward ocular involvement other than a central scotoma in one case resulted. Since they have observed retinal hemorrhages in these patients they have changed their technique as follows: (1) Pentothal is administered until the patient is unconscious (2) the back is manipulated (3) the caudal needle is inserted and (4) only 60 to 80 cc of normal saline is injected. It will be noted that the back manipulation is performed prior to the injection of the normal saline and that the amount of saline injected has been substantially reduced. It was felt by these physicians that the vigorous manipulation of the back after the injection of the saline exerted an additive effect on the pressure already created by the injection of the normal saline and may have been responsible for the retinal hemorrhage. Since they have changed their technique fewer retinal hemorrhages have occurred. The exact mechanism of this type of hemorrhage has not been determined.

It is the authors' opinion that giving the general anesthetic may create a dangerous situation because the signs that the epidural space has been almost filled with saline, i.e. complaint of headache, pain between the shoulders or convulsion are not available. Thus a dosage of the saline in excess of that which is needed to fill and exert pressure in the epidural space may be administered. Farr⁴⁶ found that the whole epidural space of fresh cadavers was filled by 118 cc of an aqueous solution of sodium iodide injected through the sacral canal and that 89 cc of this fluid extended up to the 4th thoracic segment.

REFERENCES

1. THORSEN, G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anaesthesia and Results from 2,493 Follow up Cases. *Acta chir. scandinav. Suppl.* 121, 1947.

2. BERGER R P, ROSEMAN I, JOHNSON H and SMITH W R Severe Neurologic Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia. Report of Six Cases. *Anesthesiology* 12:717-727 1951
3. BLATT N Neuropathie und Neuropathische Konstitution als disponierende Faktoren für Augenmuskellähmungen nach Lumbal-anästhesie. *Wien med Wochenschr* 79:1391-1396 1929
4. ARNER O Complications Following Spinal Anesthesia Their Significance and a Technique to Reduce Their Incidence. *Acta chir scandinav Suppl* 167 1952
5. ROSE A T., and LUTZKATZ S Paralysis of the Abducens Nerve Following Spinal Anesthesia. *New England J Med* 237:52, 1947
6. PARKE W M Abducens Nerve Palsy Following Spinal Anesthesia A Case Report. *Anesthesiology* 9:440-441 1915
7. ANDREASSEN M In discussion of Log M Neurologiske følger af anæsthesi. *Nord med* 46:1687-1689 1951
8. BROWN S Fractional Segmental Spinal Anesthesia in Poor Risk Surgical Patients. Report of 600 Cases. *Anesthesiology* 13:416-428 1952.
9. HINGSON R A, FENGLSON C H and PALMER L A Advances in Spinal Anesthesia. *Ann Surg* 118:971-981 1943
10. DRIPPS R D and VANDAM L D Hazards of Lumbar Puncture. *J.A.M.A* 117:1118-1121 1951
11. STEINBERG B and BISHOP H F Abducens Nerve Palsy Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 7:296-298 1946
12. HAYMAN I R and WOOD P M Abducens Nerve (VI) Paralysis Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Ann Surg* 115:864-868 1942
13. BARCOCK W W Spinal Anesthesia An Experience of Twenty four Years. *Am J Surg* 5:571-576 1928
14. AVERETT L, SUSSMAN W and ZIMRING Spinal Anesthesia with a Report of 896 Cases. *Am J Obstet & Gynec* 24:339-347 1932
15. TREMPER G Spinal Anesthesia. *Canad M A J* 33:169-172 1935
16. FAIRCLOUGH W A Sixth Nerve Paralysis after Spinal Analgesia. *Brit M J* 2:801-803 1945
17. BRYCE SMITH, R and MACINTOSH R R Sixth Nerve Palsy after Lumbar Puncture and Spinal Analgesia. *Brit M J* 1:275-278 1951
18. SANDEGARD E Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. *Nord med* 38:687-693 1948
19. ERGOVA M A Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. *Khirurgiya Medgez Moskva* 6:1937 Quoted (1939) by Kennedy Efron and Perry
20. KENNEDY H J and LOCKHART C Paralysis of Abducens Nerve Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 13:159-192 1952
21. CROFT B A, BERKOWITZ S and GOLDSMITH M The Prevention of Cranial Nerve Palsies Following Spinal Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 15:302-309 1951
22. ROBINSON H M Jr Abducens Palsy (with Subsequent Recovery) Following Lumbar Puncture. *Am J Syph* 29:422-423 1945
23. DATTEN B and THOMAS F W Bilateral Abducens Palsy Following Lumbar Puncture. *New York State J Med* 11:1660-1662 1941
24. LITTE L C The Extra Ocular Muscles A Clinic Study of Normal and Abnormal Ocular Motility 3rd Ed Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1941
25. NICHOLSON M J and EVERSOLE U H Neurologic Complications of Spinal Anesthesia. *J.A.M.A* 132:679-685 1948
26. EVERSOLE U H Complications of Spinal Anesthesia in Surgical Practice of the Lahey Clinic Philadelphia W B Saunders Co 1951
27. COLLINS V J Principles and Practice of Anesthesiology Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1952.
28. EVANS F T Modern Practice in Anesthesia New York Paul B Hoeber Inc 1949
29. HARRIS T A B The Mode of Action of Anaesthetics Baltimore Williams and Wilkins Co 351-358 1951
30. KENNEDY F, EFRON A S and PERRY C The Grave Spinal Cord Paralysis Caused by Spinal Anesthesia. *Surg Gynec & Obstet* 91:385-398 1950
31. ROYAN D A and ADRIANI J Nupercaine—Glucose for Spinal Anesthesia Results of Over 5 000 Clinical Administrations. *Anesthesiology* 10:270-279 1949
32. KUNKLE, E C, RAY B S and WOLFF H G Experimental Studies on Headache Analysis of Headache Associated with Changes in Intracranial Pressure. *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 49:323-358 1943
33. WOLFF HAROLD G Headache and Other Head Pain New York Oxford University Press, 1948
34. SPIEGEL, E A and SOMMER I Neurology of the Eye Ear Nose and Throat New York Grune and Stratton 1944
35. YASKIN J C Paralysis of the Extraocular Muscles Clinicoanatomic Considerations Report of Cases of Paralysis of the Oculomotor and Abducens Nerves Due to Unusual Causes. *Arch Ophth* 21:1010-1020 1939
36. WOLTMAN H W Postoperative Neurologic Complications Wisconsin M J 35:427-436 1936

fail to elevate the pressure in the epidural space

Following the injection of the solution it is common for the referring physician to manipulate the patient's legs and back. This is usually performed with much vigor. Because the manipulation of the back is attended with pain the patient must receive either a regional anesthetic or a general anesthetic. Following regional anesthesia we have observed convulsions not due to systemic toxic reaction. Following general anesthesia and this technique Callahan, McConville and Goss⁴ have observed 8 cases of retinal hemorrhage.

Convulsions—To perform a pressure caudal and back manipulation it has been our custom at the Mason Clinic to (1) place the needle in the caudal canal (2) inject 30 cc of 1% Xylocaine solution (3) wait 15 minutes for the anesthetic effects of the Xylocaine to become well established (4) then inject 50 to 70 cc of normal saline rapidly until the patient complains of either an itching between the scapula or a headache and (5) vigorous manipulation of the back and legs.

On a number of occasions after 30 to 40 cc of the saline had been injected and before the complaint of headache the patient had a convulsion which lasted 10 to 20 seconds. Presumably this is due (1) to motion of the cord caused by the rapid injection of the saline or (2) to the increase in the spinal fluid pressure which results from filling the epidural space which then forces the cerebrospinal fluid from the dural sac into the cranial cavity increasing intracranial pressure. To date we have seen no untoward effects from either the injection the convulsion or the manipulation.

These patients are never given general anesthesia prior to such an injection and whenever the patient complains of pain between the scapula headache or has a convulsion the injection is suspended but the manipulation is performed.

Retinal Hemorrhage—Callahan, McConville and Goss⁴ have observed retinal hemorrhage following back manipulations under general anesthesia. Their technique originally consisted of (1) anesthetizing the patient with sodium Pentothal (2) inserting the

needle into the caudal canal (3) injecting rapidly 90 to 125 cc of normal saline (4) repositioning the needle and (5) vigorous manipulation of the back and legs. They observed 8 cases of central retinal hemorrhage limited to one eye following this technique. The patient's main complaint was blurred vision. In time the hemorrhage disappeared and no untoward ocular involvement other than a central scotoma in one case resulted. Since they have observed retinal hemorrhages in these patients they have changed their technique as follows: (1) Pentothal is administered until the patient is unconscious (2) the back is manipulated (3) the caudal needle is inserted and (4) only 60 to 80 cc of normal saline is injected. It will be noted that the back manipulation is performed prior to the injection of the normal saline and that the amount of saline injected has been substantially reduced. It was felt by these physicians that the vigorous manipulation of the back after the injection of the saline exerted an additive effect on the pressure already created by the injection of the normal saline and may have been responsible for the retinal hemorrhage. Since they have changed their technique fewer retinal hemorrhages have occurred. The exact mechanism of this type of hemorrhage has not been determined.

It is the authors' opinion that giving the general anesthetic may create a dangerous situation because the signs that the epidural space has been almost filled with saline i.e. complaint of headache pain between the shoulders or convulsion are not reliable. Thus a dosage of the saline in excess of that which is needed to fill and exert pressure in the epidural space may be administered. Farr¹⁰ found that the whole epidural space of fresh cadavers was filled by 118 cc of an aqueous solution of sodium iodide injected through the sacral canal and that 89 cc of this fluid extended up to the 4th thoracic segment.

REFERENCES

1. THORSEN, G. Neurological Complications After Spinal Anaesthesia and Results from 2 493 Follow up Cases. *Acta chir. scandinav. Suppl.* 121 1947.

Miscellaneous Complications from Paralysis of the Autonomic Nervous System

OTHER THAN hypotension there are a number of complications which have been reported from paralysis of the sympathetic portion of the autonomic nervous system. These have mainly occurred following spinal and epidural block procedures but may appear following peripheral nerve blocks of the splanchnic (celiac) plexus or of the lumbar sympathetic ganglia. From the number of reports in the literature it can be assumed that the complications discussed in this chapter are infrequent. This is fortunate since they are usually of a serious nature.

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Pulmonary embolism during or shortly following spinal, epidural and lumbar sympathetic blocks has been reported¹⁻⁴.

Etiology—According to Owens and Smith¹ when one part of the body's circulatory system is dilated by a block, another part must constrict to compensate for this shift in blood volume. Discussing the application of this "borrowing lending" theory (hemometakinesia) proposed by DeBakey *et al.*⁶ as it applies to lumbar sympathetic block Owens and Smith¹ state "Following a lumbar sympathetic block there is a marked vasodilatation in the lower extremity associated with increase in blood volume and rate of blood flow. Here we have blood 'borrowed' by the leg at the expense of the remainder of the body as indicated by cooling and decrease in volume of pulse deflection and total volume of these areas [rest of body] as noted on a

plethysmograph. Not all of the expense of this shift of blood is borne entirely by the opposite leg, since its decrease is not as great as the other legs increase. Here every organ that can afford to lend blood does so and the amount depends on the quality and quantity of the shift."

When this "borrowing lending" is caused by a regional block procedure in the elderly patient with arteriosclerotic heart disease, Owens and Smith believe that the patient is in a precarious position. If a pulmonary infarction develops at this time it would probably result in death. The combination of pre-existing heart disease, reduction of blood supply to the heart by the block and additional myocardial insufficiency produced by the spasm from the pulmonary embolus are more than such a patient could survive.

Further they feel that in treating thrombophlebitis excessive manipulation or movement of the blocked leg or legs together with the dilatation from the block facilitates the release of a thrombus or the breaking off of an embolus. One would conclude from this that a patient should not be permitted to be ambulatory immediately following a lumbar sympathetic block—a hypothesis which clinical experience has not entirely substantiated for often this block and early ambulation is one of the treatments used for thrombophlebitis.

Signs and Symptoms—The signs and symptoms of pulmonary embolism are well known to physicians; the cardinal ones are (1) pain in the chest (2) oxygen want (3) pulmo-

- 37 COURVILLE C B *Untoward Effects of Nitrous Oxide Anesthesia* Pacific Press Publishing Association Mountain View California 1939
- 38 SPIELMEYER W *Veränderungen des Nerven systems nach Stovain Anästhesie München med Wchnschr* 55 1629 1634 1908
- 39 LUNDY J S ESSEX H E and KERNOHAN J W *Experiments with Anesthetics IV Lesions Produced in the Spinal Cord of Dogs by a Dose of Procaine Hydrochloride Sufficient to Cause Permanent and Fatal Paralysis JAMA* 101 1546-1550 1933
- 40 MAXSON L H *Spinal Anesthesia* Philadelphia Lippincott 1938
- 41 HUNGERFORD L N Ophthalmologist Mason Clinic Personal communication
- 42 OSTLERE G *Trichlorethylene Anaesthesia* London E & S Livingstone Ltd 1953
- 43 NORMAN J E *Nerve Palsy Following General Anaesthesia Anaesthesia* 10 87 88 1955
- 44 JAEGER R A *Method for Controlling Pain of the Face and Jaws Caused by Tic Douloureux Science* 120 466 1954
- 45 CALLAHAN J J McCONVILLE B E and Goss H L Personal communication To be published
- 46 FARR R E *Sacral Anesthesia Some Practical and Experimental Points Arch Surg* 12 715 726 1926

PHLEBOTHROMBOSIS AND THROMBOPHLEBITIS

Allen Barker and Hines¹ believe that from a clinical standpoint no differentiation between thrombophlebitis and phlebothrombosis should be made as it will only result in confusion. By definition phlebothrombosis is partial or complete venous occlusion by an intravascular clot which is unassociated with inflammation the clot being loosely attached to the vein wall¹². On the other hand thrombophlebitis is partial or complete venous occlusion by an intravascular firmly adherent clot which is associated with and dependent upon inflammation of the vein wall¹³. Ochsner and DeBakey¹³ feel that phlebothrombosis may exist for a short time prior to the onset of thrombophlebitis.

Etiology and Prophylaxis—While the author and his associates have not observed phlebothrombosis attributable to a regional block Wasmuth¹⁴ states. Phlebothrombosis is defined as the intravascular coagulation of blood. During anesthesia the occurrence of phlebothrombosis follows the retardation of blood flow either by external pressures or the suppression of circulation by other means. Spinal anesthesia with the peripheral vascular paralysis of the lower extremities frequently lays the groundwork for thrombosis if precautionary steps are not taken to alleviate these dangers. Elastic bandages applied snugly around the legs prevent the pooling of blood in the venous system by constant external pressure. Other prophylactic steps are (1) avoid depression of circulation especially by hypotension, (2) prevent pressure at dangerous points such as the popliteal space and (3) prevent stretching of the limbs with concomitant stretching of vessels.

"The use of elastic bandages on the legs is not without danger. Their efficiency in preventing phlebothrombosis from stagnation of blood is great. However during bouts of hypotension the external pressure applied to the leg may become greater than the arterial pressures. Long periods of ischemia of the peripheral tissues are to be avoided."

Treatment—The treatment of phlebothrombosis and thrombophlebitis following regional block procedures is the same as that which follows the disease from other causes and consists of anticoagulants, fluid therapy, surgical ligations, antibiotics, sympathetic block, etc.

REFERENCES

- OWENS J C and SMITH A J. Fatal Pulmonary Embolism During Regional Nerve Anesthesia. *Angiology* 4 23 32 1953
- BISHOP H F. Operating Room Deaths. *Anesthesiology* 7 651 662 1946
- TAYLOR I B. Case Report. Fatal Pulmonary Embolism Occurring During Operation. *Anesthesiology* 3 689 691 1942
- DILLON J B. A Consideration of Some Factors Causing Death in the Operating Room. *California Med* 71 353 355 1949
- LOBBAN P H and MERRIAM W. Spinal Anesthesia: Analysis of Causes of Death in 716 Cases. *Surgery* 31 421-428 1952
- DEBAKEY M E, BUNCH G, RAY T and OCHSNER A. The Borrowing Lending Hemodynamic Phenomenon (Hemometakinesis) and Its Therapeutic Application in Peripheral Vascular Disturbances. *Ann Surg* 128 850 865 1947
- MOORE D C. *Stellate Ganglion Block*. Springfield Illinois: Charles C Thomas Publisher 1954
- PALLIN I M and GOLDMAN M. Fatal Massive Pulmonary Collapse During Spinal Anesthesia. *Anesthesiology* 10 325-342 1949
- DETAATS C, FENN G K and JENKINSON E L. Reflex Pulmonary Atelectasis. *JAMA* 120 686 690 1942
- BURSTEIN C L. Effect of Spinal Anesthesia on Intestinal Activity. *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 42 291 293 1939
- BURSTEIN C L. *Fundamental Considerations in Anesthesia*. New York: Macmillan Co 1949
- ALLEN E V, BARKER N W and HINES E A. *Peripheral Vascular Diseases*. 2nd Ed. Philadelphia: W B Saunders 1955
- OCHSNER A and DEBAKEY M. Thrombophlebitis and Phlebothrombosis. *South Surgeon* 8 269 290 1939
- WASMUTH C E. Contributor to Hale D E. *Anesthesiology by Forty American Authors*. Philadelphia: Davis Co 1954

PART III

INCIDENTAL COMPLICATIONS

Introduction to Part III

THIS PART of the book discusses those complications which occur during or following a regional block procedure. They are not definitely a direct result of an untoward pharmacological action of the drugs used, tissue damage from lytic drugs or trauma associated with the technique. *They may be directly or indirectly associated with the block procedure and may occur following local infiltration, peripheral nerve block, and spinal or epidural block.*

Broken Needles or Catheters

THE BREAKAGE of a needle or a catheter may be of little significance other than to create a momentarily embarrassing situation provided the part of the needle or catheter remaining in the patient is easy to retrieve. Unfortunately, this is not always the case. During the past fourteen years the author has had four needles and two plastic catheters for continuous anesthesia break in patients surgery being required for their extraction. Of the 4 needles one broke while giving a single dose caudal with a non malleable 19 gauge needle one while inserting a needle for a transsacral block another while seeking paresthesias for a brachial plexus block and the fourth 2½ hours after a continuous caudal anesthetic with a malleable needle had been established and three doses of the local anesthetic drug had been given with success (see Figure 46 page 243). The two plastic epidural catheters had been in place in the epidural space for approximately 72 hours in an attempt to effect a prolonged sympathetic block when they broke. The break occurred where they entered the skin and the broken end then submerged into the subcutaneous tissue (see Figure 47 page 243).

ETIOLOGY

Focal Weak Spots—When a needle or catheter breaks it is usually caused by stress being placed on a *known* or *unknown* weak spot. In the case of needles focal weak spots usually occur at the point where the shaft of the needle is fitted to the hub or where a bent needle has been straightened. In the case of plastic catheters we have found that

the focal weak spot is usually where the catheter emerges from the skin.

In the needle which has a focal weak spot breakage may result even when the needle is handled correctly but is more prone to occur when it is forced against bone or when an attempt to change its direction is made without first withdrawing the point to the subcutaneous tissues.

Incorrect Method of Inserting Catheter—In any continuous regional block technique the shearing off of a plastic or ureteral catheter by trying to withdraw the catheter from the needle once the catheter has passed the tip of the needle is an inherent danger of this technique.¹

PROPHYLAXIS

Breakage of a needle or catheter may not be the fault of the physician but may result when the patient is turned or moved. This appeared to be the cause in the one case mentioned in which a continuous caudal needle broke. The same cause must have been operative in breaking the two plastic catheters which had to be removed by surgery since similar catheters taped in place in the same fashion have not broken although they have been left in place for seven days. Nevertheless the following precautions will prevent or minimize the breaking of needles or catheters in the patient.

Check All Needles and Catheters Carefully—Prior to use all needles and catheters should be carefully examined for weak spots and the stylet checked to see that it is freely movable. A stylet which is stuck in a needle



Figure 46 Broken malleable caudal needle (A) Anterior-posterior view (B) Lateral view

may indicate a rusted spot in the needle while one which is difficult to move in a catheter may indicate that the catheter has been sterilized with a sharp bend in it.

Avoid Kinking a Catheter—A catheter should not be kinked during sterilization. This may be avoided by sterilizing catheters in Petri dishes (see Figure 48 page 244) or transparent cellophane tubes.^{2,3} When a

catheter is taped in place care should be taken to see that it does not turn at an acute angle as it enters the skin.

Do Not Straighten Bent Needles—Once the shaft of a needle has been bent it must be discarded, not straightened and reused. To sterilize and reuse such a needle is to ask for trouble. The great majority of needles in use today will rust when their polished surface has once been damaged and this rusting results in a focal weak spot.

Use Security Bend Needles—Since most needles which break during field block local infiltration and nerve block break at the junction of the hub and shaft, the use of security bend needles will prevent the physician from accidentally inserting the needle to that point. Thus if a security bend needle does break at the junction of the shaft and the hub it is easily removed (see Figure 49 page 244).

Handle Needles Correctly—Never should a needle be forced against a bony landmark (see Figure 50 page 245). Likewise its shaft should never be bent when changing its direction (see Figure 51 page 245).

Do Not Withdraw Catheter Once It Has Passed the Tip of the Needle—When catheters are used they must be carefully inserted and once the catheter has passed the tip of the needle it must never be withdrawn while the needle remains inserted or the catheter may be sheared off.¹ If the catheter meets an obstruction and cannot be advanced after it has passed the point of the needle then both the needle and catheter should be withdrawn simultaneously and the procedure started anew.

Do Not Reuse Needles Indefinitely—Re

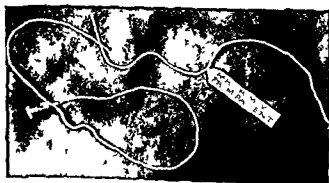


Figure 47 Broken plastic catheter

Broken Needles or Catheters

THE BREAKAGE of a needle or a catheter may be of little significance other than to create a momentarily embarrassing situation provided the part of the needle or catheter remaining in the patient is easy to retrieve. Unfortunately, this is not always the case. During the past fourteen years the author has had four needles and two plastic catheters for continuous anesthesia break in patients surgery being required for their extraction. Of the 4 needles one broke while giving a single dose caudal with a non malleable 19 gauge needle one while inserting a needle for a transsacral block another while seeking paresthesias for a brachial plexus block and the fourth 2½ hours after a continuous caudal anesthetic with a malleable needle had been established and three doses of the local anesthetic drug had been given with success (see Figure 46 page 243). The two plastic epidural catheters had been in place in the epidural space for approximately 72 hours in an attempt to effect a prolonged sympathetic block when they broke. The break occurred where they entered the skin and the broken end then submerged into the subcutaneous tissue (see Figure 47 page 243).

ETIOLOGY

Focal Weak Spots—When a needle or catheter breaks it is usually caused by stress being placed on a *known* or *unknown* weak spot. In the case of needles focal weak spots usually occur at the point where the shaft of the needle is fitted to the hub or where a bent needle has been straitened. In the case of plastic catheters we have found that

the focal weak spot is usually where the catheter emerges from the skin.

In the needle which has a focal weak spot breakage may result even when the needle is handled correctly but is more prone to occur when it is forced against bone or when an attempt to change its direction is made without first withdrawing the point to the subcutaneous tissues.

Incorrect Method of Inserting Catheter—In any continuous regional block technique the shearing off of a plastic or ureteral catheter by trying to withdraw the catheter from the needle once the catheter has passed the tip of the needle is an inherent danger of this technique.¹

PROPHYLAXIS

Breakage of a needle or catheter may not be the fault of the physician but may result when the patient is turned or moved. This appeared to be the cause in the one case mentioned in which a continuous caudal needle broke. The same cause must have been operative in breaking the two plastic catheters which had to be removed by surgery since similar catheters taped in place in the same fashion have not broken although they have been left in place for seven days. Nevertheless the following precautions will prevent or minimize the breaking of needles or catheters in the patient.

Check All Needles and Catheters Carefully—Prior to use all needles and catheters should be carefully examined for weak spots and the stylet checked to see that it is freely movable. A stylet which is stuck in a needle



Figure 46 Broken malleable caudal needle (A) Anterior posterior view (B) Lateral view

may indicate a rusted spot in the needle while one which is difficult to move in a catheter may indicate that the catheter has been sterilized with a sharp bend in it.

Avoid Kinking a Catheter—A catheter should not be kinked during sterilization. This may be avoided by sterilizing catheters in Petri dishes (see Figure 48 page 244) or transparent cellophane tubes.^{2,3} When a

catheter is taped in place care should be taken to see that it does not turn at an acute angle as it enters the skin.

Do Not Straighten Bent Needles—Once the shaft of a needle has been bent it must be discarded, not straightened and reused. To sterilize and reuse such a needle is to ask for trouble. The great majority of needles in use today will rust when their polished surface has once been damaged and this rusting results in a focal weak spot.

Use Security Bend Needles—Since most needles which break during field block local infiltration and nerve block break at the junction of the hub and shaft, the use of security bend needles will prevent the physician from accidentally inserting the needle to that point. Thus if a security bend needle does break at the junction of the shaft and the hub it is easily removed (see Figure 49 page 244).

Handle Needles Correctly—Never should a needle be forced against a bony landmark (see Figure 50 page 245). Likewise its shaft should never be bent when changing its direction (see Figure 51 page 245).

Do Not Withdraw Catheter Once It Has Passed the Tip of the Needle—When catheters are used they must be carefully inserted and once the catheter has passed the tip of the needle it must never be withdrawn while the needle remains inserted or the catheter may be sheared off.¹ If the catheter meets an obstruction and cannot be advanced after it has passed the point of the needle, then both the needle and catheter should be withdrawn simultaneously and the procedure started anew.

Do Not Reuse Needles Indefinitely—Re

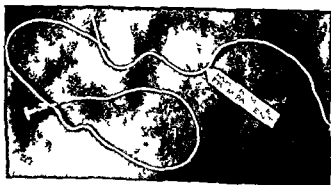


Figure 47 Broken plastic catheter

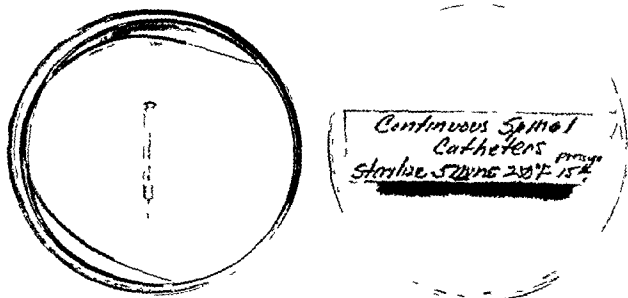


Figure 48 Petri dish used to sterilize catheters and avoid their kinking

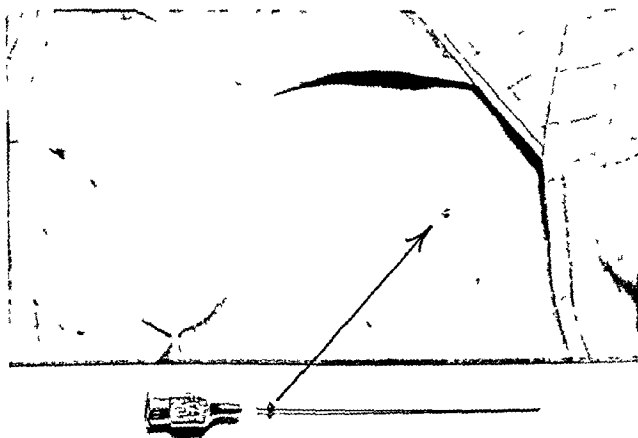


Figure 49 Needle with security bead broken at junction of hub and shaft while doing a brachial plexus block. Removal was made easy by security bead

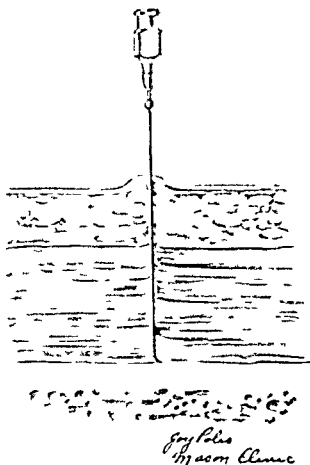


Figure 50 Needle point bent on bone by too rapid insertion of the needle when seeking bony landmarks

sterilization of needles tends to make them lose their temper and become brittle. Needles also tend to dull from continued use. Therefore it has been our policy to change all needles in our regional block trays at least once a year.

TREATMENT

Whenever a needle or catheter breaks every effort to recover it including surgery must be made immediately. A broken needle is singularly dangerous because it has the tendency to change positions i.e. migrate as the patient moves and since both its point and the broken edge are sharp it may puncture a vital organ. The use of x ray and the placing of guide needles as well as the use of the Berman Locator prior to and during surgery may prove of aid.

Lahey⁴ described a method of recovering broken spinal needles without the use of x ray

or the Berman Locator which has proven satisfactory at the Lahey Clinic. It consists primarily of exposing the aponeurosis over the erector spinae, splitting it on each side of the spine, palpating on each side of the spine with the index finger until the broken needle is found and removing it with a right angled hemostat. Should the broken needle lie directly between and beneath the spinous process the interspinous ligament is gently grasped with a right angle (gill bladder type) Mixer) forceps and upward traction exerted on this ligament until the needle is found by palpation, by surgical exploration of the ligament, or both.

To recover the broken needles and catheters in all but one of our cases required only an incision in the skin and exploration of the subcutaneous tissues. One case required more

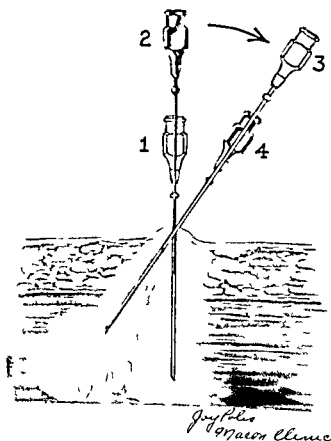


Figure 51 Correct method of changing direction of the needle (1) Needle deep in tissue (2) Needle withdrawn to subcutaneous tissue (3) Direction of needle changed (4) Needle reinserted. If the direction of a needle is changed in this fashion its shaft will not be bent.

surgery and the bone plate over the caudal canal had to be cut away by a rongeur to recover the broken part of the needle

thor that no such complication has ever arisen in his series of cases

COMMENT

Possible Loss of the Tip of the Whitacre (Pencilpoint) Point Needle—The tip of the Whitacre point needle is soldered to its shaft and according to Schwidetzky may loosen after repeated sterilizations. He feels that when this occurs the point could possibly be left in the patient's back. He postulated that the soldered junction could become loose because the expansion coefficients of the metal in the point and in the shaft are different. No instances of such breakage could be found in the literature and Whitacre⁶ has told the au-

REFERENCES

- 1 KAMSLER P M DABBS C H and SOUTHWORTH J L Regional Spinal Anesthesia Utilizing the Continuous Spinal Technic of Tuohy *Anesthesiology* 13 397 406 1952
- 2 MOORE D C Sterilization of the Continuous Spinal or Caudal Catheter *Anesthesiology* 11 258 259 1950
- 3 PRENZLAU M S and KARP M Maintenance of Sterile Anesthesia Equipment *Anesthesiology* 15 566-569 1954
- 4 LAHEY F H The Removal of Broken Spinal Anesthesia Needles *JAMA* 93 518 519 1929
- 5 SCHWIDETZKY O O R Personal communication
- 6 WHITACRE R J Personal communication

Unsatisfactory Anesthesia

In this sense of the word this is not a complication of nerve block since usually no untoward sequelae are caused by it. Nevertheless, inasmuch as it does occur, it should perhaps be noted that when blocks are unsatisfactory, the cause in most instances is due to technical errors on the part of the physician performing the block. *Seldom is the failure caused by the deterioration of a local anesthetic agent or by anatomical anomalies.* The over all incidence of complete failure of regional block techniques in the hands of physicians skilled in their usage is approximately 5 to 7%.

Often intravenous Pentothal (sodium thiopental) and/or intravenous fluids are administered when either the regional block analgesia is unsatisfactory, the patient is restless or the surgery is prolonged. The two most common local complications of administering intravenous Pentothal and fluids are

Vascular Spasm Following Intra arterial Administration of Pentothal—Often Pentothal analgesia is given intravenously in conjunction with regional block analgesia. If the Pentothal is accidentally started in an artery the patient will complain of severe pain in the extremity. When this occurs the physician should immediately suspect an intra arterial injection but he should not remove the needle until he has slowly administered 50 to 100 cc of 0.2% Novocain (procaine) through it to relieve the spasm. If this is not successful in

relieving the spasm or if the physician neglects to do it, then either lumbar sympathetic or stellate ganglion block therapy (depending on whether the leg or arm is involved) should be instituted immediately to relieve the vasospasm and prevent further sequelae.¹

Swelling from Extravasation of Intravenous Fluids During Surgical Procedure—When intravenous fluids are given during surgery the needle may become dislodged from the vein resulting in a large extravascular fluid deposit in the extremity and pain. If the tumefaction is not treated immediately in the patient with arteriosclerosis or other vascular diseases extravasation may cause tissue slough particularly if the solution contains a vasoconstrictor drug or Pentothal. This type of complication may be prevented by injecting 10 to 20 cc of either a normal saline solution or a 1.0% Novocain solution or a 0.15% Pontocrine solution containing 150 to 300 TRU of hyaluronidase (Wydase Aldase Diffusin) into and around the tumefaction gently massaging the area and applying an elastic (Ace) bandage for a few hours. If this does not suffice then sympathetic block therapy should be initiated.

REFERENCES

1. MOORE D. C. *Stellate Ganglion Block*. Springfield, Illinois: Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1954.
2. MOORE D. C. Correspondence to Editor *Anesthesiology* 12:398-399, 1951.

Amnesia in Outpatients Following Regional Block Procedures

AMNESIA in outpatients during regional block procedures may result either from pre medication or from the drug used. In the hospital patient amnesia is usually sought but in the outpatient it may lead to difficulty.

Premedication—Outpatients should receive little or no premedication and if they are medicated they should stay in a recovery room for two to four hours and then be escorted home. If these precautions are not followed the patient may sustain an injury on the way home which may result in a lawsuit. Barbiturates in particular are known to exert a prolonged effect and cause impairment in cerebration. Von Felsinger *et al*¹ state: "The effect of 0.1 gm of pentobarbital sodium on a variety of complex psychological functions has been investigated. As long as five and one half to eight hours after ingestion of the drug and following a light breakfast significant impairment of visual perception, attention, arithmetical performance, and recall was demonstrated. Associations were increased in number after drug administration but these were less readily determined. It showed less relation to external stimuli than after the placebo. In a confusing and disturbing test situation the drug effect was to facilitate resistance to distraction. Serial learning and an analogies test failed to show drug effect."

"These findings are offered as objective confirmation of the frequent complaint of hangover after the use of pentobarbital sodium in ordinary hypnotic dose. It is suggested that the prolonged effects detected here must be

considered as factors which limit the usefulness of this and similar agents when such persistence of effect might be undesirable, that is, where it is important that the individual's full mental faculties be available."

During World War II this action of the barbiturates was drawn to the author's attention by a case of a medical officer to whom Pentothal anesthesia was administered for the opening of a furuncle at eight o'clock in the morning. This officer, after what appeared to be a full recovery from the effects of the Pentothal, performed an operation at eleven o'clock and following surgery went about performing his usual duties which included writing orders until five o'clock in the afternoon when he drove home. The next morning in surgery he volunteered the information that he could not recall his activities of the previous day, including his drive home. The prolonged effects of Pentothal are further substantiated by Dundees² research in both humans and dogs.

Local Anesthetic Drugs—In general local anesthetic drugs do not cause amnesia. However, Hickey², an anesthesiologist from Little Rock, Arkansas, informed the author that he knew of twelve dental patients who had received Xylocaine (lidocaine) in dentists' offices and were unable to remember facts and events which transpired in the five hours following the execution of the block. Xylocaine is known to have a depressing effect on the brain when given in dosages exceeding 300 mg (see Chapter 1, page 16). However, it was a bit surprising to find that small amounts of the drug such as those commonly used in

dentistry, i.e. 2 to 5 cc. of 2% solution (40 to 100 mg.) may have the same effect.

REFERENCES

1. VON LITZINGER, J. M., LASSANA, L., and BRETHER, H. K.: The Persistence of Mental Impairment Following a Hypnotic Dose of a Barbiturate. *J. Pharm. & Exper. Therap.* 109:284-291, 1953.
2. BRETHER, J. H.: Personal communication.
3. DUNIFF, J. W.: Observations on the Dosage and Cumulative Action of Thiopentone. *Anaesthesia* 10:153-157, 1955.

1. VON LITZINGER, J. M., LASSANA, L., and BRETHER

Retention of Urine

THE INABILITY of a patient to urinate following anesthesia of any type is not infrequent.^{1, 2, 3} Its incidence is greater following pelvic surgery and surgery of the urogenital system than following upper abdominal surgery or surgery other than intra abdominal.

ETIOLOGY

Urinary retention is usually attributed to *pre existing urinary infection or difficulty* the anesthetic the horizontal position of the patient the pain of injured tissues the surgical procedures and drugs such as opiates.⁴ When spinal or epidural blocks are used most surgeons almost inevitably blame the anesthetic procedure. Bellis⁵ states "Spinal anesthesia temporarily establishes a type of neurogenic vesical dysfunction, probably due to the anesthetic agent. The bladder wall remains somewhat insensitive to its distending contents and although the expulsive force of the detrusor may actually not be diminished the normal strong reflex vesical contractions which coincide with desire to void, do not appear until the volume of the bladder and the intravesical tension are so great as to invite further pressure anesthesia of the wall, and a continued sensory type of retention which initiates urinary infection." On the other hand Bomze² in a recent article reviewing 121 cases 25 of which had difficulty in voiding postoperatively states "The presence of findings in the admission urinalysis the presence or absence of urinary complaints preoperatively, and the type of anesthetic used had no bearing on the occurrence or severity

of postoperative urinary dysfunction." Of these 25 patients 9 received spinal anesthesia and 16 had general anesthesia.

It has been our conclusion at the Mason Clinic that the two main reasons for the failure to urinate following a surgical procedure relate to the type of surgery performed and hypotension.

Type of Surgical Procedure—When pelvic surgery is performed it has been observed that the incidence of urinary retention increases irrespective of the type of anesthetic. Bomze² substantiates this observation by claiming that "The important fact demonstrated [by his study] is that when the surgery involved any great amount of handling of the bladder or dissection about the bladder the patient was very likely to have postoperative bladder dysfunction."

Hypotension—If a patient has a low blood pressure or blood volume postoperatively production of urine may be reduced because filtration pressure is inadequate.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

When urinary retention occurs the bladder becomes distended and although the urgency to urinate is present, the patient cannot void. Pain may be quite severe until the patient successfully voids or is catheterized.

PROPHYLAXIS

Atraumatic Surgery—According to Bomze² the best prophylaxis of postoperative urinary retention is to avoid injury to the bladder during operation.

Use Indwelling Catheter—If trauma to the bladder occurs at operation an indwelling catheter should be used for the first 24 to 48 hours or longer, depending on the degree of trauma. It is preferable to do this rather than to leave orders to catheterize the patient every 8 to 12 hours. The indwelling catheter puts the bladder at complete rest and allows the edema caused by surgical trauma to subside.

Bellis⁵ further emphasizes the importance of catheterizing the patient before over distention of the bladder occurs. He states "To wait until the bladder is distended to these levels [500 to 1300 cc—volume necessary to initiate sensation to void in patients after spinal anesthesia is dissipated] is to court infection. If malaise, chills, fever and leukocytosis follow catheterization after the bladder has been so distended the blame need not be placed on the catheter. The surgeon must call himself to task for allowing the seeds of infection to become implanted in the bladder wall by permitting distention, pressure necrosis, retention and reduced sensitivity to pursue their vicious cycle. Early catheterization of patients after administration of spinal anesthesia and perhaps after inhalation anesthesia is a necessary therapeutic adjunct.

"The surgeon must be mindful of the hour at which the bladder was emptied preoperatively, the diuretic effect of the sympathetic paralyzing anesthetics and the fluids administered postoperatively. Often a patient will require catheterization 4 or 5 hours after returning from the operating room where operation perhaps of 1 hour has been performed and following which intravenous solutions have been administered. Merely to direct a subordinate to catheterize in 12 hours if patient has not voided is a fateful and foreboding procrastination. Early catheterization by preventing pressure anesthesia of the bladder wall, will facilitate early subsequent spontaneous voiding while delayed or widely spaced catheterization serve to aggravate the neurogenic dysfunction and precipitate infection."

Avoid Postoperative Hypotension—Blood and fluid replacement is essential during surgery and if necessary, vasoconstrictor drugs should be used during the postoperative period to maintain the blood pressure until the regional block procedure has dissipated itself.

Preoperative Training in Use of Urinal and Bedpan—Collins² states, "It is difficult to understand however why the anesthesia and spinal in particular as well as type of operation should be exclusively emphasized as the cause of retention when the majority of patients cannot use a urinal in bed preoperatively. I believe that patients should be encouraged to use and be taught to use a urinal and bedpan preoperatively. In my experience such a regimen has significantly diminished postoperative retention."

TREATMENT

The treatment of urinary retention depends to a great extent on whether or not the bladder has been traumatized during surgery.

Bladder Not Traumatized—In these cases the bladder dysfunction is probably neurogenic i.e. either the trigone does not contract or there is a decrease in tone of the detrusor muscle and the treatment of choice consists of one or two catheterizations following which the patient usually voids voluntarily.

Voluntary urination may be encouraged by hot packs to the perineum, standing or sitting the patient in the upright position, early ambulation and/or suggesting another catheterization in the patient's presence. Prostigmine (neostigmine), physostigmine (eserine), Urecholine (bethanechol) and Methylol (methacholine) have been advocated as urinary stimulants in cases which are primarily neurogenic i.e., those resulting from block anesthesia where the bladder has not been traumatized. But Creevy⁴ points out that measures which rely on cholinergic, vagotropic, or parasympathomimetic drugs, audible running water, etc. to produce voiding do not produce the physiological emptying permitted by a correctly passed well lubricated catheter. Bellis⁵ stresses that urine obtained by means other

than a catheter is more often than not merely overflow i.e. the bladder is not emptied below the normal capacity

Whenever prostigmine or physostigmine is employed the possibility of a toxic reaction while relatively rare must be considered. At the Mason Clinic one such case has been seen when prostigmine was used for a reason other than retention and Richardson⁶ reports another. Goodman and Gilman⁷ describe reactions to these drugs as follows:

The symptoms and signs of poisoning by physostigmine and prostigmine are sufficiently similar to allow a single description to suffice for both drugs. Poisoning from these alkaloids usually occurs accidentally in medical practice. Symptoms come on quickly after ingestion of the drug and soon reach their peak. The effects on the bowel are as a rule first to be noted and violent peristalsis, nausea, vomiting, colic, persistent purging and vomiting occur. The skeletal muscle phenomena consist of fibrillary twitchings all over the body, nystagmus and dysarthria. Restlessness and weakness are prominent. The pupils are pinpoint in size and distant objects are blurred. Sweating, salivation and lacrimation may be marked. Dyspnea is present due to bronchial constriction and abundant pulmonary secretions. There is urinary urgency and difficulty in voiding. The skin is ashen gray in color and bathed in a cold perspiration. The heart rate is rapid, the pulse weak and the blood pressure at shock level. Consciousness is not disturbed except for faintness and the fear of impending disaster. A fatal outcome is usually caused either by pulmonary edema or central respiratory paralysis. Death may occur within one half to two hours after symptoms are first noted.

"Treatment consists of hypodermic or intravenous administration of one or two mg. of atropine sulfate dependent upon the urgency of the case. Atropine quickly counteracts the serious effects of physostigmine, namely those

on the lungs and circulation but it does not influence the annoying but innocuous skeletal muscle twitchings. These subside as the drug is eliminated from the body.

Bladder Traumatized—When retention is due to this cause the treatment must be twofold: first, further damage to the bladder must be prevented and second residual urine should be avoided. To prevent overdistention of the bladder with further trauma and to prevent residual urine from accumulating the bladder should be kept empty and at rest by means of an indwelling catheter. The length of time the catheter remains in place depends on the speed with which the bladder recovers and may be 4 to 6 days. While Urecholine, Mecholyl and prostigmine may be used when the bladder is not traumatized, Bomze² emphasizes that they are not effective in cases where the bladder is traumatized.

When an indwelling catheter is used all precautions to avoid infection of the bladder should be observed, i.e. connectors, rubber tubing and drainage bottle should be sterile. The urine should be examined daily by the laboratory for bacteria. If infection occurs it must be treated by the usual antibiotic therapy.

REFERENCES

1. MAXSON, L. H. *Spinal Anesthesia*. Philadelphia and New York: Lippincott, 1938.
2. BOMZE, E. J. Bladder Dysfunction Following Gynecological Surgery. *West J Surg* 62: 325-328, 1954.
3. COLLINS, V. J. *Principles and Practice of Anesthesiology*. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1952.
4. CREEVEY, C. D. The Care of the Urinary Bladder After Operation. *Surgery* 7: 423-426, 1940.
5. BELLIS, C. J. Cystometry After Spinal Anesthesia. *Surgery* 16: 896-905, 1944.
6. RICHARDSON, F. M. Concerning the Action of Prostigmine. Report of a Case. *Anesthesiology* 7: 568-569, 1946.
7. GOODMAN, L. and GILMAN, A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. New York: Macmillan Co., 1941.

Atelectasis and Bronchopneumonia

ATELECTASIS and bronchopneumonia seldom if ever occur when regional block procedures are employed for extremity or extraperitoneal surgery. However following intraperitoneal operations these two lung complications occur at about the same frequency under regional block procedures as under general anesthesia.

ETIOLOGY

The anesthetic agent or technique per se is usually not the cause. In most instances atelectasis and bronchopneumonia are caused by one or more of the following: (1) the preoperative status of the patient; (2) too heavy sedation; (3) pain from surgery; and (4) failure to institute the "stir up regimen."

Preoperative Status of the Patient—Patients with respiratory complications, i.e. the common cold, bronchiectasis, etc., are often predisposed to lung complications of this nature.

Sedation—Too heavy postoperative sedation for pain is dangerous, particularly in the patient with pre-existing lung diseases. Not only do the opiates decrease the rate of respirations and diminish the cough reflex, but they also slow the action of the cilia in the bronchi and trachea so that secretions are not moved toward the larynx.

Pain from Surgery—This perhaps is the outstanding offender because it decreases the depth of respiration which in turn results in poor aeration of the alveoli. The patient particularly the one with upper abdominal incisions often will not take deep breaths, i.e. he "splints" respirations so as not to aggravate or bring on pain.

Stir up Regimen—In most institutions no effort to make the patient follow a "stir up regimen," i.e. cough, move from side to side or take deep breaths, is made by the nursing or house staff unless specific instructions are written that this be carried out at specified times and the results be charted.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS

Physiological Findings—Increase in temperature, rate of respiration and tachycardia are usually the first signs of respiratory distress. Cough and hypoxia rapidly follow. However occasionally a cough may be the first warning sign and if while making post-operative rounds the patient is noted to cough every 20 to 45 seconds some lung complication should be suspected. In these cases the temperature and pulse should be checked and auscultation of the chest should be performed. Even if physical examination is negative the patient should be carefully observed for the development of the signs and symptoms of respiratory complications during the next 24 hours.

Roentgen Studies—X-ray evidence of the disease is usually present and confirms the physical findings. If x-ray is to be used for diagnosis a 6 foot film should be taken since bedside x-rays are usually of little value and are often misleading (see Figure 16 page 61).

PROPHYLAXIS

Steps to prevent pneumonia and atelectasis should be instituted prior to surgery and during anesthesia as well as in the postoperative

period. All too often the physician does not think of the prevention of lung complications until the patient is plagued with one and this may be too late.

Prophylactic Treatment Prior to Anesthesia—In patients with pre-existing lung disease preoperative antibiotic therapy, postural drainage and bronchoscopy are indicated to minimize the accumulation of secretions. If noninfected bronchorrhea from silicosis etc. is present a course of adrenal extract therapy (Cortisone etc.) 2 to 3 weeks prior to elective surgery will often reduce the bronchorrhea to a minimum. However if Cortisone is used in this fashion it must be continued during surgery and the first 3 to 5 days postoperatively. Otherwise severe complications or death may result.¹

The preoperative medication should be carefully selected and given in the correct dosage so as not to depress respiration. Waters⁶ has shown that if morphine and a belladonna drug are administered in the ratio of 1:25 maximum sedation will ensue with minimal respiratory depression.

The stomach should be emptied of its contents prior to surgery. This may necessitate only the restriction of oral intake 12 hours before surgery or it may necessitate the use of a Levin or Ewald tube. This procedure may preclude vomiting or silent regurgitation of stomach content during the anesthetic procedure, the operation and the postoperative period.

Prophylactic Treatment During Anesthesia—In the anesthetized patient gross vomiting or silent regurgitation of stomach contents is particularly dangerous.¹¹ If the emesis should be inhaled the hydrochloric acid may destroy the epithelium of the alveoli and bring about a chemical pneumonia. Therefore if a patient vomits or is suspected of silent regurgitation every attempt should be made to remove the vomitus before it reaches the alveoli for they suffer the greatest damage from the acid. Some anesthesiologists feel that blind suction through a large endotracheal tube is as effective as bronchoscopy. We do not share this opinion because as

stated in Chapter 18 page 168 it is our belief that "a peek is worth two guesses." If a patient aspirates the only certain method of being sure that stomach contents are not left in the trachea and bronchi is by means of the bronchoscope.

Prophylaxis in Postoperative Period—Postoperatively the following care to prevent lung complications should be instituted as indicated by the patient's condition.

Stir up Regimen—This includes (1) turning the patient from side to side (2) having the patient when awake take 5 to 10 deep breaths every hour for the first 48 hours (3) urging him to cough to remove mucus and secretions from the lung and (4) if necessary having him sit on the edge of the bed and making him cough as he is pounded gently on the back to loosen plugs. Since improperly applied abdominal binders may greatly restrict respiratory efforts the physician should check to see that they are applied properly and are not restricting respirations.

Intercostal Blocks—These are of particular value if the patient refuses to cough because of pain following upper abdominal operations. More often than not once the pain is relieved these patients will be most cooperative in carrying out the "stir up regimen."¹²

Tracheal Suction—If the patient refuses to cough even after an intercostal block then he may be made to cough by passing a urethral catheter through the nose into the trachea. Just sucking out the pharynx is of little help in these cases but it is all that may usually be expected if the task is left to a nurse rather than performed by a physician familiar with this technique.

Bronchoscopy—If in spite of the above therapy the patient develops atelectasis or regurgitates fluid from his stomach into his trachea and cannot expel it because he is too weak then bronchoscopy must be performed.

Antibiotic Therapy—If any aspiration of gastric contents occurs if atelectasis is present or if a pneumonia unheralded by these situations develops appropriate antibiotic therapy i.e. penicillin Terramycin etc. should be started at once in an effort to pre-

vent pneumonia. It must be remembered that administration of the antibiotics following aspiration of the stomach contents does not directly help the healing of the alveolar epithelium damaged by the hydrochloric acid in the digestive juices but it does help to prevent secondary infection.

TREATMENT

Active treatment of atelectasis or bronchopneumonia is the same as prophylactic treatment in the postoperative period (see above). In addition, oxygen by nasal catheter, bag, and mask or by tent may be indicated. Oxygen should not be saved as a last resort for the dying but used rather as a valuable therapeutic agent for the living.¹⁰

REFERENCES

1. SALASSA R. M. BENNETT W. A. KRSTIC I. R. JR. and STRACUT R. C. Postoperative Adrenal Cortical Insufficiency—Occurrence in Patients Previously Treated with Cortisone. *JAMA* 152 1509 1515 1953.
2. EDITORIAL. Surgery in Patients with Cortisone induced Adrenal Insufficiency. *JAMA* 148 1422 1423 1952.
3. STOCUMER C. H. and LUNDY J. S. The Use and Abuse of Cortisone in Surgery. *S Clin North America* 32 1105 1107 1952.
4. PATRICK R. T. UNDERHILL I. O. and ADAMS R. C. Anesthesia for Patients with Certain Diseases of the Endocrine Glands. *S Clin North America* 32 1109 1114 1952.
5. LEBERER C. C. PRINCE F. S. and BICKFORD W. D. Adrenal Atrophy and Irreversible Shock Associated with Cortisone Therapy. *JAMA* 149 1542 1543 1952.
6. WATERS R. M. A Study of Morphine, Scopolamine and Atropine and Their Relation to Preoperative Medication and Pain Relief. *Texas State J Med* 34 304-305 1938.
7. BARTLETT R. W. Bilateral Intercostal Nerve Block for Upper Abdominal Surgery. *Surg Gynec & Obst* 71 191 197 1940.
8. MCGILVER R. S. ZOLINGER R. M. and LEVY HAN A. F. A Clinical Study of the Effect of Intercostal Nerve Block with Nupercaine in Oil Following Upper Abdominal Surgery. *Surg Gynec & Obstet* 86 650 656 1949.
9. BRINKOFF S. Prolonged Intercostal Nerve Block in Upper Abdominal Operations. *Ann Surg* 127 136-143 1918.
10. MUSHY W. R. *Anaesthesia for the Poor Risk and Other Essays*. Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas Publisher 1918.
11. BRISON W. and ADRIANI J. "Silent Regurgitation and Aspiration During Anesthesia." *Anesthesiology* 15 644 649 1954.

Hiccough and Paralytic Ileus

Hiccough—The relationship of hiccoughs to a regional block procedure either during surgery or following it is difficult to evaluate. Most of the cases of hiccoughs which have occurred at the Mason Clinic during surgery have clearly been related to traction on the stomach, ileum, gall bladder or spleen and have ceased shortly after the pull on these organs was suspended.

If hiccoughs are troublesome to the surgeon and traction on the viscera cannot be suspended, it has been our finding that the only sure way of stopping the hiccoughs has been the administration of cyclopropane until apnea has occurred and then performing controlled respirations for 5 minutes. When the patient is allowed to regain consciousness the hiccoughs have usually ceased. The use of d-desoxyephedrine in 10 mg doses intravenously has been suggested as a means of relieving hiccough. We have tried this in 5 patients and were only able to relieve the hiccoughs in 1.

On occasion Pentothal anesthesia has been effective in stopping this complication but its effects have not been as consistent as the use of cyclopropane.

Paralytic Ileus—Paralytic (adynamic) ileus may occur following any type of anesthetic procedure and it may occur in cases where no anesthesia is administered. Paralytic ileus is usually a direct sequel of peritoneal irritation. Best and Taylor¹ state: "The most common cause of paralytic ileus is peritonitis; it may also result from severe intestinal injury or undue handling and exposure of the bowel during abdominal operations." It has been our finding at the Mason Clinic that the most serious and persistent cases of paralytic ileus

have occurred following retroperitoneal operations particularly kidney explorations.

While paralytic ileus may occur following a regional block, it is highly unlikely that the block initiates it. It should be noted that one of the treatments of paralytic ileus is spinal epidural or celiac plexus block. Any one of these blocks paralyzes the abdominal portion of the sympathetic nervous system, leaving the parasympathetic nervous system unopposed and as a result the bowel contracts and expels the gas.^{2,3,4}

Paralytic ileus may also occur in patients who are receiving Banthine (methantheline) therapy. These cases may come to surgery for a condition other than that for which the Banthine is being administered. If they develop paralytic ileus following surgery, the ileus may be unrelated to either the surgery or the anesthesia.⁶

REFERENCES

1. BEST C. H. and TAYLOR N. B. *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* 4th Ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1945.
2. MARKOWITZ J. and CAMPBELL W. R. The Relief of Experimental Ileus by Spinal Anesthesia. *Am J Physiol* 81:101-106, 1927.
3. OCHSNER A., GAGE I. M. and CUTTING R. A. Treatment of Ileus by Splanchnic Anesthesia. Preliminary Report of Experimental Study. *JAMA* 90:1847-1853, 1928.
4. WAGNER G. A. Zur Behandlung des Ileus mit Lumbalanästhesie. *Arch f Gynak* 117:336-339, 1922.
5. VOORHOFVE H. C. Singultus in Patients During and After Anesthesia. *Nederl tijdschr geneesk* 98:3289-3294, 1954. Abstract *JAMA* 157:1260, 1955.
6. GUNN C. G. JR. and ALLEN M. S. Paralytic Ileus following the Use of Banthine During Gastrointestinal Bleeding. *New England J Med* 251:705-707, 1954.

Complications of Specific Regional Nerve Blocks

THE CHAPTERS in this book are arranged to deal with the specific complications of regional nerve blocks in general. No effort is made to list a specific regional nerve block procedure i.e., brachial plexus block, stellate ganglion block, etc., and then to enumerate its complications.

Therefore the Appendix names the commonly used regional block procedures, listing the complications which may follow their use, and gives the page or pages where this particular complication is discussed in detail. In this manner the Appendix serves as a supplement to the Index, and for convenience the nerve blocks are placed in alphabetical order.

Abscess formation, cellulitis, slough, bleeding into the tissues from trauma, to blood vessels, breaking of a needle, pain following insertion of a needle, swelling at the site of the block from bleeding or the injection of too much anesthetic solution, neuritis, dermatitis, and systemic reactions are all inherent hazards of any regional block procedure. While their repeated listing under each block named may appear repetitious, it seems advisable to fulfill the purpose of this section by a thorough listing.

The infrequency with which complications occur following a regional block procedure usually precludes the possibility that all the complications which may occur following a specific block procedure will have been observed at any one institution regardless of the number of blocks performed. Therefore the list of complications found under each specific regional block procedure represents the complications of that block as compiled from medical literature as well as the experience of the author and his colleagues. Those complications observed by the author and/or

his associates at the Mason Clinic are italicized. The italicizing of a term should not be construed to mean that this complication has been observed frequently—in many instances it may have been seen only once or twice.

BRACHIAL PLEXUS BLOCK

- Abscess, cellulitis, slough, ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Cerebral air embolism 66
- Dermatitis 127
- Dislocated shoulder 112
- Hematoma 89
- Hemopneumothorax 65
- Hemoptysis 61
- High or total spinal block 45
- Horner's syndrome (*paralysis of cervical sympathetic*) 120
- Mediastinal emphysema 62
- Neuritis 112 114 119
- Overflow onto other nerves 47 120
- Oxygen want (*primary*) 42
- Pain 84
- Pain simulating that of pneumothorax 65
- Phrenic nerve block 43
- Pleural effusion 62
- Pleural shock 66
- Pneumothorax 55 56
- Stellate block 120
- Subcutaneous emphysema 62
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

CAROTID SINUS NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess, cellulitis, slough, ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Horner's syndrome (*paralysis of cervical sympathetic*) 120

Hiccough and Paralytic Ileus

Hiccough—The relationship of hiccoughs to a regional block procedure either during surgery or following it is difficult to evaluate. Most of the cases of hiccoughs which have occurred at the Mason Clinic during surgery have clearly been related to traction on the stomach, ileum, gall bladder or spleen and have ceased shortly after the pull on these organs was suspended.

If hiccoughs are troublesome to the surgeon and traction on the viscera cannot be suspended it has been our finding that the only sure way of stopping the hiccoughs has been the administration of cyclopropane until apnea has occurred and then performing controlled respirations for 5 minutes. When the patient is allowed to regain consciousness the hiccoughs have usually ceased. The use of desoxyephedrine in 10 mg doses intravenously has been suggested as a means of relieving hiccoughs. We have tried this in 5 patients and were only able to relieve the hiccoughs in 1.

On occasion Pentothal anesthesia has been effective in stopping this complication but its effects have not been as consistent as the use of cyclopropane.

Paralytic Ileus—Paralytic (adynamic) ileus may occur following any type of anesthetic procedure and it may occur in cases where no anesthesia is administered. Paralytic ileus is usually a direct sequel of peritoneal irritation. Best and Taylor¹ state "The most common cause of paralytic ileus is peritonitis; it may also result from severe intestinal injury or undue handling and exposure of the bowel during abdominal operations." It has been our finding at the Mason Clinic that the most serious and persistent cases of paralytic ileus

have occurred following retroperitoneal operations particularly kidney explorations.

While paralytic ileus may occur following a regional block it is highly unlikely that the block initiates it. It should be noted that one of the treatments of paralytic ileus is spinal epidural or celiac plexus block. Any one of these blocks paralyzes the abdominal portion of the sympathetic nervous system leaving the parasympathetic nervous system unopposed and as a result the bowel contracts and expels the gas.^{2,3,4}

Paralytic ileus may also occur in patients who are receiving Banthine (methantheline) therapy. These cases may come to surgery for a condition other than that for which the Banthine is being administered. If they develop paralytic ileus following surgery the ileus may be unrelated to either the surgery or the anesthesia.⁵

REFERENCES

1. BEST, C. H. and TAYLOR, N. B. *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice*. 4th Ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1945.
2. MARKOWITZ, J. and CAMPBELL, W. R. The Relief of Experimental Ileus by Spinal Anesthesia. *Am. J. Physiol.* 81:101-106, 1927.
3. OCHSNER, A., GAGE, I. M. and CURTIS, R. A. Treatment of Ileus by Sympathetic Anesthesia. Preliminary Report of Experimental Study. *J. A. M. A.* 90:1847-1853, 1928.
4. WAGNER, G. A. Zur Behandlung des Ileus mit Lumbalanästhesie. *Arch. f. Gynäk.* 117:336-339, 1922.
5. VOORHOEVE, H. C. Singultus in Patients During and After Anesthesia. *Nederl. tijdschr. geneesk.* 98:3289-3294, 1954. Abstract. *J. A. M. A.* 157:1260, 1955.
6. CLAY, C. G. JR. and ALLEN, M. S. Paralytic Ileus following the Use of Banthine During Gastrointestinal Bleeding. *New England J. Med.* 251:705-707, 1954.

Complications of Specific Regional Nerve Blocks

THE CHAPTERS in this book are arranged to deal with the specific complications of regional nerve blocks in general. No effort is made to list a specific regional nerve block procedure, i.e., brachial plexus block, stellate ganglion block, etc., and then to enumerate its complications.

Therefore the Appendix names the commonly used regional block procedures, listing the complications which may follow their use and gives the page or pages where this particular complication is discussed in detail. In this manner the Appendix serves as a supplement to the Index and for convenience the nerve blocks are placed in alphabetical order.

Abscess formation, cellulitis, slough, bleeding into the tissues from trauma to blood vessels, breaking of a needle pin following insertion of a needle, swelling at the site of the block from bleeding or the injection of too much anesthetic solution, neuritis, dermatitis, and systemic reactions are all inherent hazards of any regional block procedure. While their repeated listing under each block named may appear repetitious, it seems advisable to fulfill the purpose of this section by a thorough listing.

The infrequency with which complications occur following a regional block procedure usually precludes the possibility that all the complications which may occur following a specific block procedure will have been observed at any one institution regardless of the number of blocks performed. Therefore, the list of complications found under each specific regional block procedure represents the complications of that block as compiled from medical literature as well as the experience of the author and his colleagues. Those complications observed by the author and/or

his associates at the Mason Clinic are italicized. The italicizing of a term should not be construed to mean that this complication has been observed frequently—in many instances it may have been seen only once or twice.

BRACHIAL PLEXUS BLOCK

- Abscess, cellulitis, slough, ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Cerebral air embolism 60
- Dermatitis 127
- Dislocated shoulder 112
- Hematoma 89
- Hemopneumothorax 65
- Hemoptysis 61
- High or total spinal block 48
- Horner's syndrome (paralysis of cervical sympathetic) 120
- Mediastinal emphysema 62
- Neuritis 112 114 119
- Overflow onto other nerves 47 120
- Oxygen want (primary) 42
- Pain 84
- Pain simulating that of pneumothorax 65
- Phrenic nerve block 43
- Pleural effusion 62
- Pleural shock 60
- Pneumothorax 55 56
- Stellate block 120
- Subcutaneous emphysema 62
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

CAROTID SINUS NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess, cellulitis, slough, ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Horner's syndrome (paralysis of cervical sympathetic) 120

CAROTID SINUS NERVE BLOCK (cont)

- Pain 84
- Paralysis of vagus nerve 44
- Puncture of pharynx 125
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

CAUDAL BLOCK

- See Epidural (Peridural) Block page 258

CELIAC (SPLANCHNIC) PLEXUS BLOCK

- See Splanchnic (Celiac Plexus) Block page 264

CERVICAL PLEXUS BLOCK

- (Paravertebral Somatic Nerve Block in Cervical Area)

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Central nervous system lesions 212 226
- Headache 53 177
- Hiccough 256
- High or total spinal block 48
- Lesions of central nervous system
 - brain 226
 - intracranial nerves 226
 - spinal cord 212
- Meningeal irritation 202
- Meningitis 202
- Neuritis 112 119
- Overflow onto other nerves 120
- Oxygen want
 - primary 42
 - secondary to hypotension from high spinal 46 159
- Pain 84
- Pain simulating that of pneumothorax 65
- Pneumothorax 55
- Spinal cord lesions 212
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37
- Transverse myelitis 122
- Trauma to roots of spinal cord 212

COCYGEAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain, 84
- Swelling 89 94

COCYGEAL NERVE BLOCK (cont)

- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

COMMON PERONEAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

DIGITAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Gangrene 97
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

EPIDURAL (PERIDURAL) BLOCK

- (Caudal Lumbar Thoracic or Cervical Area)

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Atelectasis 253
- Backache 197
- Bleeding 87
- Brain damage from oxygen want (secondary to hypotension) 160
- Broken catheter 242
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Convulsions 17 231
- Cranial nerve lesions 226
- Fetal puncture 125
- Headache 177
- Hiccough 256
- High epidural block, 175
- High or total spinal block 170
- Hypotension 138 156
- Impotency 218
- Incontinence of urine and/or feces 218
- Leg pain from caudal anesthesia 85
- Lesions of central nervous system
 - brain 226

EPIDURAL (LUMBAR) BLOCK (cont.)

- Intracranial nerves 226
- spinal cord 212
- Lumbar puncture death 231
- Meningeal irritation 202
- Meningitis 202
- Nausea and vomiting 165
- Needle in baby's cranium 125
- Neuritis 215 216
- Osteomyelitis of vertebral column 199 201
- Oxygen want (secondary to hypotension) 151
- Pain 84 85
- Paralytic ileus 256
- Perforation of the bowel 237
- Peripheral nerve lesion
 - abducens palsy from puncture of dura 220
 - neuritis from trauma to nerve roots 215 216
- Phlebotrombosis 235
- Pneumonia 253
- Pulmonary collapse (acute) 236
- Pulmonary embolism 235
- Puncture of fetus 125
- Puncture of rectum (caudal) 121
- Retinal hemorrhage 231
- Ruptured nucleus pulposus 195
- Scotoma 232
- Spinal cord lesions 212 215
- Swelling 89 91
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33 161
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37 159
- Tap (lateral or midline) of subarachnoid space 48 49
- Thrombophlebitis 238
- Trauma to spinal nerve roots 215 216
- Urine retention 250

FACIAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Corneal ulcer and/or keratitis 121
- Dermatitis 127
- keratitis 121
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 91
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

FEMORAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69

FEMORAL NERVE BLOCK (cont.)

- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 113 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 91
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

CASPIAN (SIMILAN) CASCION BLOCK
(Trigeminal Nerve Block)

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Corneal ulcer and/or keratitis 121
- Cranial nerve lesion 226
- Cranial nerve paralysis 120
- Death 119
- Dermatitis 127
- Herpetic eruptions 114
- High or total spinal block 18
- Keratitis 121
- Meningeal irritation 202
- Meningitis 202
- Overflow onto other nerves 120
- Oxygen want (secondary to hypotension) 159
- Pain 84
- Slough 121
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37
- Transverse myelitis 119

GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Dysphagia 120
- Neuritis 112 119
- Oxygen want (primary) 42
- Pain 84
- Paralysis of
 - accessory nerve 45
 - cervical sympathetic nerves 45
 - facial nerve 120
 - hypoglossal nerve 44
 - vagus nerve 44
- Puncture of pharynx 125
- Swelling 89 91
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

HERNIA BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

INFRAORBITAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess (sterile from alcohol) cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding (into cheek eyelids orbit) 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling (cheek eyelids orbit) 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

INTERCOSTAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Epidural block 53
- Hemopneumothorax 65
- Hemoptysis 61
- High or total spinal block 48
- Neuritis (Ephedrine) 112 119
- Oxygen want (primary) 42
- Pain 84
- Pain simulating that of pneumothorax 65
- Pleural effusion, 62
- Pleural shock 66
- Pneumothorax 55
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37
- Transverse myelitis 122

INTERCOSTAL NERVE BLOCK COMBINED WITH SPLANCHNIC (CELIAC PLEXUS) BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Atelectasis 253
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69

INTERCOSTAL NERVE BLOCK COMBINED WITH SPLANCHNIC (CELIAC PLEXUS) BLOCK (cont)

- Dermatitis 127
- Hemopneumothorax 65
- Hiccough 258
- High or total spinal block 48
- Neuritis 112 119
- Oxygen want (primary) 42
- Pain 84
- Pleural effusion 62
- Pleural shock 66
- Pneumonia 253
- Pneumothorax 55
- Puncture of aorta or vena cava 124
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37
- Transverse myelitis 122

LATERAL FEMORAL CUTANEOUS NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain, 84
- Swelling, 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

LOCAL INFILTRATION

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling, 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

LUMBAR SOMATIC NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Backache 197
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- High or total spinal block 48

LUMBAR SOMATIC NERVE BLOCK (cont)**Lesions of central nervous system**

- brain 226
- intracranial nerves 220
- spinal cord 212

Meningeal irritation 202

Meningitis 202

Neuritis 112 119

Pain 84

Spinal cord lesions 212

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

Transverse myelitis 122

Trauma to spinal nerve roots 215 216

LUMBAR SYMPATHETIC BLOCK

See Paravertebral Sympathetic Cation Block in
Lumbar Area page 262

MANDIBULAR NERVE BLOCK

Abscess (sterile from alcohol) cellulitis slough ul-
ceration 93 150

Bleeding (into cheek) 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Overflow onto other nerves 120

Pain 84

Fracture of pharynx 125

Slough 121

Swelling 89 94 107

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

MAXILLARY NERVE BLOCK

Abscess (sterile from alcohol) cellulitis slough ul-
ceration 93 150

Bleeding (into cheek eyelids orbit) 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Orbital injection loss of vision 89 120

Overflow onto other nerves 120

Pain 84

Slough 121

Swelling 89 94 107

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

MEDIAN NERVE BLOCK AT ELBOW OR WRIST (cont)

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

Neuritis 112 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

MENTAL NERVE BLOCK

Abscess (sterile from alcohol) cellulitis slough ul-
ceration 93 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7, 69

Dermatitis 127

Neuritis 112 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

OBTURATOR NERVE BLOCK*Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150*Bleeding* 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

Neuritis 112 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

OPHTHALMIC NERVE BLOCK*Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150*Bleeding (into orbit)* 89

Broken needle, 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Pain 84

Systemic reaction to

- local anesthetic agent 6 33

- vasoconstrictor drug 37

PARAVERTEBRAL SOMATIC NERVE BLOCK

In cervical area see Cervical Plexus Block page 258
in thoracic area see Intercostal Nerve Block
page 260 in lumbar area see Lumbar Somatic
Nerve Block page 260 and in sacral area see
Transsacral Block page 265

MEDIAN NERVE BLOCK AT ELBOW OR WRIST*Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN CERVICAL AREA

See Stellate Ganglion Block page 264

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN LUMBAR AREA

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

Backache 197

Bleeding

with anticoagulant therapy 88 90

without anticoagulant therapy 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Lesions of central nervous system

brain 226

intracranial nerves 226

spinal cord 212

Meningeal irritation 202

Meningitis 202

Neuritis 112 119

Osteomyelitis of vertebral column 199 204

Pain 84

Pulmonary embolism 235

Puncture of

aorta or vena cava 124

bowel 124

kidney 125

peritoneum 125

Spinal cord lesions 212

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

Transverse myelitis 122

Trauma to spinal nerve roots 215 216

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN THORACIC AREA

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

Anginal pain 85

Asthmatic attacks 47

Backache 197

Bleeding

with anticoagulant therapy 88 90

without anticoagulant therapy 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Cerebral air embolism 66

Death 72 119

Dermatitis 127

Hemopneumothorax 65

Hemoptysis 61

High or total spinal block 48

Lesions of central nervous system

brain 226

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN THORACIC AREA (cont)

intracranial nerves 226

spinal cord 212

Meningeal irritation 202

Meningitis 202

Neuritis 112 119

Osteomyelitis of vertebral column 199 204

Overflow onto other nerves 120

Pain 84

Pain simulating that of pneumothorax 65

Pleural effusion 62

Pleural shock 66

Pneumothorax 55

Pulmonary embolism 235

Spinal cord lesions 212

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

Transverse myelitis 119 122

Trauma to roots of spinal nerves 215 216

PENIS BLOCK

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

Impotency 125

Neuritis 112 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

PHRENIC NERVE BLOCK

(Local infiltration of phrenic nerve per se as it
lies on the anterior scalenus muscle)

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Neuritis 112 119

Oxygen want (primary) 42

Overflow onto other nerves 120

Pain 84

Paralysis of nerves of brachial plexus 120

Pneumothorax 55

Puncture of esophagus 125

Puncture of trachea 124

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

PES SACRAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain, 84
- Puncture of rectum 124
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

PUDENDAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain, 84
- Puncture of rectum 124
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

RADIAL NERVE BLOCK AT ELBOW OR WRIST

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

SCALP BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150
- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling, 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

SCIATIC NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

SCIATIC NERVE BLOCK (cont.)

- Bleeding 87
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Dermatitis 127
- Neuritis 112 119
- Pain 84
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

SPINAL (SUBARACHNOID) BLOCK

- Adjuvant nerve palsy 226
- Abscess, cellulitis slough, ulceration 93 150
- Aseptic meningitis 203
- Atelectasis 253
- Backache 197
- Bleeding 87
- Brain damage from oxygen want (secondary to hypotension) 160
- Broken catheters 242
- Broken needle 242
- Cardiac failure and death 7 69
- Cranial nerve lesions 226
- Dermatitis 127
- Headache 177
- Hiccough 256
- High or total spinal block 170
- Hypotension 138 150
- Impotency 218
- Incontinence of urine and/or feces 218
- Lesions of central nervous system
 - brain 226
 - intracranial nerves 226
 - spinal cord 212
- Lumbar puncture death 231
- Meningeal irritation 202
- Meningitis 202
- Nausea and vomiting 165
- Neuritis 215 126
- Osteomyelitis of vertebral column 199 204
- Oxygen want (secondary to hypotension) 159
- Pain 84
- Paralysis 212
- Paralytic ileus 256
- Perforation of the bowel 237
- Phlebotrombosis, 238
- Pneumonia 253
- Pulmonary collapse 236
- Pulmonary embolism 235
- Ruptured nucleus pulposus 198
- Septic meningitis 204
- Spinal cord lesions 212
- Swelling 89 94
- Systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN CERVICAL AREA

See Stellate Ganglion Block page 264

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN LUMBAR AREA

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

Backache 197

Bleeding

with anticoagulant therapy 58 90

without anticoagulant therapy 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Lesions of central nervous system

brain 226

intracranial nerves 226

spinal cord 212

Meningeal irritation 202

Meningitis 202

Neuritis 112 119

Osteomyelitis of vertebral column 199 204

Pain 84

Pulmonary embolism 235

Puncture of

aorta or vena cava 124

bowel, 124

kidney 125

peritoneum 125

Spinal cord lesions 212

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

Transverse myelitis 122

Trauma to spinal nerve roots 215 216

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN THORACIC AREA

Abscess cellulitis slough, ulceration 93 150

Anginal pain 85

Asthmatic attacks 47

Backache 197

Bleeding

with anticoagulant therapy 88 90

without anticoagulant therapy 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Cerebral air embolism 66

Death 72 119

Dermatitis 127

Hemopneumothorax 65

Hemoptysis 61

High or total spinal block, 48

Lesions of central nervous system

brain, 226

PARAVERTEBRAL SYMPATHETIC GANGLION BLOCK IN THORACIC AREA (cont)

intracranial nerves 226

spinal cord 212

Meningeal irritation 202

Meningitis 202

Neuritis 112 119

Osteomyelitis of vertebral column 199 204

Overflow onto other nerves 120

Pain 84

Pain simulating, that of pneumothorax 65

Pleural effusion 62

Pleural shock 66

Pneumothorax 55

Pulmonary embolism 235

Spinal cord lesions 212

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

Transverse myelitis 119 122

Trauma to roots of spinal nerves 215 216

PENIS BLOCK

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

Impotency 125

Neuritis 112 119

Pain, 84

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

PHRENIC NERVE BLOCK

(Local infiltration of phrenic nerve per se as it lies on the anterior scalenus muscle)

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration, 93 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7 69

Dermatitis 127

High or total spinal block 48

Neuritis 112 119

Oxygen want (primary) 42

Overflow onto other nerves 120

Pain 84

Paralysis of nerves of brachial plexus 120

Pneumothorax 55

Puncture of esophagus 125

Puncture of trachea 124

Swelling 89 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

SUBTRAOCULAR OR SUPRAORBITAL NERVE BLOCK (cont)

Neuritis 112, 119

Pain 84

Swelling of eyelids (too much solution) 84

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6, 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

SYMPATHETIC CANGHION BLOCK

In cervical area see Stellate Ganglion Block page 261
in thoracic area see Paravertebral Sympathetic Ganglion Block in Thoracic Area page 262
and in lumbar area see Paravertebral Sympathetic Ganglion Block in Lumbar Area page 262

THORACIC SYMPATHETIC CANGHION BLOCK

See Paravertebral Sympathetic Ganglion Block in Thoracic Area page 262

TIBIAL NERVE BLOCK

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93, 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7, 69

Dermatitis 127

Neuritis 112, 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89, 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6, 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

TOPICAL APPLICATION TO MUCOUS MEMBRANES

Cardiac failure and death 7, 33, 69

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6, 21, 29, 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

TOPICAL APPLICATION TO SKIN

Dermatitis (systemic allergic reaction) 127

TRANSASCRAL BLOCK

Abscess cellulitis slough, ulceration 93, 150

Bleeding 87, 89

TRANSASCRAL BLOCK (cont)

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7, 69

Dermatitis 127

Lesions of central nervous system

brain 2, 6

intracranial nerves 2, 6

spinal cord 212

Neuritis 112, 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89, 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6, 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

TRICEMINAL NERVE BLOCK

See Cervical Ganglion Block page 259

ULNAR NERVE BLOCK AT ELBOW OR WRIST

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93, 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7, 69

Dermatitis 127

Neuritis 112, 119

Pain 84

Swelling 89, 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6, 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

VAGUS NERVE BLOCK

Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration 93, 150

Bleeding 87

Broken needle 242

Cardiac failure and death 7, 69

Dermatitis 127

Neuritis 112, 119

Oxygen want (primary) 42

Pain 84

Paralysis of

accessory nerve 45

cervical sympathetic nerves 45

glossopharyngeal nerve 44

recurrent laryngeal nerve 44

vagus nerve 44

Swelling 89, 94

Systemic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 6, 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

SPINAL (SUBARACHNOID) BLOCK (cont)

- Thrombophlebitis (pelvic surgery)* 238
- Transverse myelitis* 122
- Trauma to spinal nerve roots* 215 216
- Urine retention*, 250

SPLANCHNIC (CELIAC PLEXUS) BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150
- Bleeding (inadvertent puncture of vena cava or aorta)* 87 124
- Broken needle* 242
- Cardiac failure and death* 7 69
- Dermatitis* 127
- Epidural (peridural) block* 53
- High or total spinal block* 48
- Hypotension* 152 156
- Lesions of central nervous system*
 - brain* 226
 - intracranial nerves* 226
 - spinal cord* 212
- Meningeal irritation* 202
- Meningitis* 202
- Neuritis* 112 119
- Overflow onto other nerves* 120
- Oxygen want (secondary to hypotension)* 152 159
- Pain* 84
- Puncture of*
 - bowel* 124
 - kidney* 125
 - peritoneum* 125
- Swelling* 89 94
- Systemic reaction to*
 - local anesthetic agent* 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug* 37
- Tap (lateral) of subarachnoid space* 48 49
- Transverse myelitis* 122

STELLATE GANGLION BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough, ulceration* 93 105 150
- Anginal pain* 85
- Asthmatic attacks* 47
- Bleeding*
 - with anticoagulant therapy* 88 90
 - without anticoagulant therapy* 87
- Broken needle* 242
- Cardiac failure and death*, 7 69
- Cerebral air embolism* 66
- Dermatitis* 127
- Dural puncture* 215
- Epidural (peridural) block* 53
- Hemopneumothorax* 65
- Hemoptysis* 61
- High or total spinal block* 48
- Medastinal emphysema* 62
- Neuritis* 215 216
- Overflow onto other nerves* 120
- Oxygen want (primary)* 42
- Pain* 84

STELLATE GANGLION BLOCK (cont)

- Pain simulating that of pneumothorax* 87
- Paralysis of*
 - brachial plexus* 120
 - phrenic nerve* 43
 - recurrent laryngeal nerve* 44
 - vagus nerve* 44
- Pleural effusion* 62
- Pleural shock* 66
- Pneumothorax* 55 56
- Puncture of*
 - esophagus* 125
 - thoracic duct* 125
 - thyroid gland* 125
- Suclling* 89 94
- Systemic reaction to*
 - local anesthetic agent* 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug* 37
- Transverse myelitis* 122
- Trauma to nerve roots of spinal cord* 212

SUPERIOR LARYNGEAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150
- Bleeding* 87
- Broken needle* 242
- Cardiac failure and death* 7 69
- Dermatitis* 127
- Pain* 84
- Puncture of trachea* 125
- Suclling* 89 94
- Systemic reaction to*
 - local anesthetic agent* 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug* 37

SUPRASCAPULAR NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150
- Bleeding* 84
- Broken needle* 242
- Cardiac failure and death* 7 69
- Dermatitis* 127
- Neuritis* 112 119
- Pain* 84
- Pain simulating that of pneumothorax* 65
- Pneumothorax* 55
- Suclling* 89 94
- Systemic reaction to*
 - local anesthetic agent* 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug* 37
- Vaginitis* 101

SUPRATROCHLEAR OR SUPRAORBITAL NERVE BLOCK

- Abscess cellulitis slough ulceration* 93 150
- Bleeding (into eyeball)* 84
- Broken needle* 242
- Cardiac failure and death* 7 69
- Dermatitis* 127

Index

A

- Abdominal
 - binder in treatment of spinal headache 190 191
 - tumors predisposing to high spinal block 170 173
 - wall area of slough from Novocain Adrenalin solution 95
- Abducens nerve
 - anatomy 228
 - palsy complication of epidural and spinal block 226
- Abscess
 - epidural cause of septic meningitis 201
 - etiology 93
 - from injection of drugs 84 93 125
 - governed by depth of injection 101
 - prophylaxis 105
 - signs and symptoms 102
 - treatment 107 125
- Absolute alcohol sterilization 208
- Accessory nerve 45
- Acetylsalicylic acid (see Aspirin page 269)
- A C T H (corticotropin)
 - prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
 - treatment of
 - dermatitis 132
 - spinal headache 189
- Acute pulmonary collapse 236
 - resulting in cardiac failure 72
- Acute systemic allergic reactions 36
- Additional help necessity in case of
 - cardiac failure 75
 - hypotension 149
 - oxygen want 162
 - systemic toxic reactions 28
- Adduction of vocal cords cause of oxygen want 44
- Adhesive pachymeningitis 119
- Adrenal glands hypotension from paralysis of nerves 140
- Adrenalin (epinephrine)
 - action cancelled by chlorpromazine 142
 - complications from its use
 - arrhythmias 41
 - gangrene 96 106 107
 - neuritis 114
 - peripheral nerve lesions 114
 - release of metallic ions from equipment 95 114
- Adrenalin (epinephrine)
 - complications from its use (cont.)
 - slough 95
 - spinal cord lesions 210
 - tachycardia 35
 - tissue damage 95 96
 - vagospasmodic reflex 71 72
 - ventricular fibrillation 78
 - optimal concentration 39
 - reactions 37 41
 - sterilization 207 208
 - use in treatment of
 - allergic reactions 35 47
 - cardiac arrest 77
 - dermatitis 132
 - hypotension 147
- Adrenergic drugs chlorpromazine 41
- Age as a factor in
 - bilateral paravertebral sympathetic block 236
 - cardiac failure 73
 - cerebral damage 145 160
 - cerebral hypoxia 145
 - chlorpromazine therapy 142
 - dosage of anesthetic agent 11
 - prophylaxis of hypotension 115
 - spinal headache 180 181
 - therapeutic nerve blocks 236
- Air hunger symptom of oxygen want 160
- Airways establishment 23 163
- Alcohol
 - complications from its use
 - bleeding following use 88
 - cranial nerve lesions 226 228
 - dermatitis 127
 - neuritis 112 119
 - overflow 119
 - pain 84
 - peripheral nerve lesions 112
 - spinal cord damage 99
 - spinal cord lesions 217
 - tissue damage 94
 - tissue slough 99
 - transverse myelitis 122
 - intravenous in treatment of spinal headache 192
 - neurolytic drug 113
 - results of overflow 119
 - spinal cord damage explained 48

Index

A

Abdominal
 binder in treatment of spinal headache 190 191
 tumors predisposing to high spinal block 170 173
 wall area of slough from Novocain Adrenalin solution 95

Abducens nerve
 anatomy 225
 paresis complication of epidural and spinal block 226

Abscess
 epidural cause of septic meningitis 204
 etiology 93
 from injection of drugs 84 93 125
 governed by depth of injection 101
 prophylaxis 105
 signs and symptoms 102
 treatment 107 125
 Absolute alcohol sterilization 205

Accessory nerve 45

Acetylsalicylic acid (see Aspirin page 269)

ACTH (corticotropin)
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 159
 treatment of
 dermatitis 132
 spinal headache 169

Acute pulmonary collapse 236
 resulting in cardiac failure 72

Acute systemic allergic reactions 36

Additional help necessity in case of
 cardiac failure 75
 hypotension 149
 oxygen want 162
 systemic toxic reactions 28

Adduction of vocal cords cause of oxygen want 41
 Adhesive pachymeningitis 119

Adrenal glands hypotension from paralysis of nerves 140

Adrenalin (epinephrine)
 action cancelled by chlorpromazine 142
 complications from its use
 arrhythmias 41
 gangrene 96 106 107
 neuritis 114
 peripheral nerve lesions 114
 release of metallic ions from equipment 95 114

Adrenalin (epinephrine)
 complications from its use (cont.)
 slough 95
 spinal cord lesions 216
 tachycardia 35
 tissue damage 95 96
 vagosympathetic reflex 71 72
 ventricular fibrillation 75
 optimal concentration 33
 reactions 37 41
 sterilization 207 208
 use in treatment of
 allergic reactions 35 47
 cardiac arrest —
 dermatitis 132
 hypotension 147

Adrenolytic drugs chlorpromazine 41

Age as a factor in
 bilateral paravertebral sympathetic block 216
 cardiac failure 73
 cerebral damage 145 160
 cerebral hypoxia 145
 chlorpromazine therapy 142
 dosage of anesthetic agent 13
 prophylaxis of hypotension 145
 spinal headache 150 161
 therapeutic nerve blocks 236

Air hunger symptom of oxygen want 160

Airways establishment 23 163

Alcohol
 complications from its use
 bleeding following use 68
 cranial nerve lesions 226 228
 dermatitis 127
 neuritis 112 119
 overflow 119
 pain 84
 peripheral nerve lesions 112
 spinal cord damage 99
 spinal cord lesions 217
 tissue damage 94
 tissue slough 99
 transverse myelitis 122
 intravenous in treatment of spinal headache 192
 neurolytic drug 113
 results of overflow 119
 spinal cord damage explained 48

- Alcohol (cont)
 sterilization 208
 treatment of alcohol neuritis 120
 use in cold sterilization 113 215
- Aldase (see Hyaluronidase page 277)
- Allergic systemic reactions to
 local anesthetic agents 33
 vasoconstrictor drugs 37
- Allergy
 asthmatic attack after stellate ganglion block 47
 contact dermatitis 127
 definitions 8
 local tissue reactions
 Arthus phenomenon 96
 dermatitis 127
 slough 96
 systemic toxic reactions to
 local anesthetic agents 33
 vasoconstrictor drugs 37
- Almond oil as cause of tissue damage 100
- Aluminum acetate use in dermatitis 132
- Alveolar hypoxia
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160 162
 definition 42
 predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Amethocaine (see Pontocaine page 284)
- Aminophylline (theophylline with ethylenediamine)
 in treatment of
 asthmatic breathing 35 47
 hypertension 40
- Ammonium sulfate (Dolamin)
 complications from its use
 dermatitis 127
 tissue damage 101
- P A B solutions 101
 sterilization 207
- Amnesia associated with use of
 barbiturate 248
 chlorpromazine 142
 local anesthetic drugs 248
 oil embolism 122 123
 premedication 248
- Ampules complications from faulty sterilization 93
 94 113 204 215
- Amyl nitrate
 differentiation of cardiac failure from fainting 75
 treatment of hypertension 40
- Amylocaine (see Stovaine page 287)
- Amylotrophic lateral sclerosis
 contraindication to spinal block 219
 precipitated by lumbar puncture 215
- Analeptics use in
 cardiac arrest 72 77
 convulsions 175
 systemic reactions 24
 ventricular fibrillation 77
- Anaphylactic shock
 definition 8
- Anaphylactic shock (cont)
 signs and symptoms 34
 treatment 35
- Anemia
 appearance of patient 160
 cause of oxygen want 45
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145 160
 162
pernicious contraindication to spinal block 215
 219
 predisposing to oxygen want 45
- Anesthesia unsatisfactory 247
- Anesthetic agent (see Local anesthetic agents page 279)
- Anesthetic index of a local anesthetic agent 9 10
- Anginal pain
 accompanying stellate ganglion block 85 86
 symptom of oxygen want 161
- Angioneurotic edema sign of allergy 8 34
- Anoxia (see Oxygen want page 282)
- Antibiotic therapy
 destructive effects on spinal cord 214
 uses in
 abscess 125
 aspiration of emesis 163
 atelectasis 254
 backache 200
 intestinal rupture 237
 meningeal irritation 210
 pneumonia 254
 pneumothorax 64
 prevention of damage to lung after vomiting 168
 prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 puncture of the rectum 124
 septic meningitis 210
 thoracotomy 81
- Anticoagulant therapy complications from its use
 aseptic meningitis 203
 bleeding 88
 cauda equina syndrome 217
 death 88
 lesions of the spinal cord 217
- Antidiuretic effect of Pitressin 185
- Antihistaminic drugs use in
 allergic reactions 35
 clinical anaphylactic shock 35
 dermatitis 131 132
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
 treatment of itching 131
- Antipruritics use in treatment of dermatitis 131
- Antiseptic solutions
 cause of
 dermatitis 132
 meningitis 208
 neuritis 115
 contaminating anesthetic solution 94 208
- Antistime in prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
- Anton's (double) needle 180 185

- Anxiety**
 cause of headache 177
 contributing to oxygen want 79
 predisposing to vasovagal reflex 71
 symptom of
 oxygen want 100
 reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 38
- Aphasia** sequela of meningitis 210
- Apnea**
 result of
 barbiturate 27
 elimination of carbon dioxide 161
 sign of toxic reaction 18
- Apothecia** cause of dermatitis 128
- Appearance of the patient following**
 cardiac failure 73
 high epidural block 173 175
 high spinal block 173
 hypotension and oxygen want 114
 oxygen want (primary) 45
 prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252
- Apprehension** symptom of
 hypotension 144
 reaction to
 local anesthetic agent 17
 vasoconstrictor drug 38
- Arachnoid**
 anatomy 51
 herniated through dural puncture 178
 laceration 213
- Arachnoiditis** following spinal block 212 218
- Areas of high vascularity** 12
- Arterial injection** inadvertent 12 14
- Arteriogram** following stellate block 11
- Arteriosclerosis**
 cause of retarded drug absorption 15
 indicating vasoconstrictor drug 150
 predisposing to
 cerebral hypoxia and dimming 145
 slough from Laceration 151
- Arthritis** sequela of meningitis 210
- Arthur phenomenon** 96
- Artificial respiration** in
 clinical anaphylactic shock 35
 high or total spinal block 175
 respiratory failure 163 175
 systemic toxic reactions 25
- Ascites**
 aspiration of fluid cause of headache 179
 predisposing to high spinal block 170 173
- Ascorbic acid** in prophylaxis of toxic reaction 15 21
- Aspic hemogenic meningitis** 204
- Aspic meningitis** 202
- Aspic preparation of skin** as cause of dermatitis 132
- Aspiration of emesis** 167
- Aspirin** (acetylsalicylic acid)
 cause of tissue irritation 101
 in treatment of
 backache 200
- Aspirin** (acetylsalicylic acid)
 in treatment of (cont.)
 headache 177
 neuritis 120
 pain 85
 pain of pneumothorax 64
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
 spinal headache 190 191
 used to potentiate action of local anesthetic drugs 101
- Asthmatic attacks** from stellate ganglion block 47
- Asthmatic breathing** 8 18 34
- Atelctasis** 253
- Atmospheric hypoxia**
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 160 162
 definition 12
 predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Atropine sulfate**
 cancel bradycardic action of Aescyl 135
 use in
 cardiac failure 74
 perforation of the bowel 237
 prophylaxis of
 acute pulmonary collapse 236
 intestinal rupture 237
 treatment of
 cardiac failure 75 77 78
 prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252
- Autoclaving of drugs and equipment** 93 94 206-208
- Axis cylinder destruction** 214

B

- Backache** after epidural paravertebral or spinal block 197
- Bacteremia** contraindication to spinal or epidural block 209 219
- Banthine** (Methantheline) cause of paralytic ileus 256
- Barbiturates**
 cause of amnesia 245
 contraindications 21 149 175
 excessive doses cause of hypoxia 160
 prophylaxis of systemic reactions to local anesthetic agents 20
 treatment of
 dermatitis 131
 reaction to
 local anesthetic agent 25
 vasoconstrictor drug 40
- Barbiturate** 171
- Barium chloride** in cardiac failure 78
- B-dimethylaminoethyl benzohydril ether S-chloro-theophyllin** etc (Drumamine) in prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting 166
- Bedpan** preoperative training in its use 251
- Bed rest**
 prophylaxis of
 cranial nerve palsy 230
 pneumothorax 63
 spinal headache 168

- Bed rest (cont)
 treatment of spinal headache 190
 Bedside x rays 61 62
 Belching caused by pituitrin 191
 Belladonna drug dosage in relation to morphine 254
 Benacol cause of tissue damage 100
 Benadryl (diphenhydramine)
 resulting in systemic reaction 34
 use in
 allergic reactions 34 47
 dermatitis 131
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
 systemic allergic reactions 34
 Benzocaine
 cause of dermatitis 128
 chemical classification 20
 Benzyl tropine (Tropicocaine) cause of aseptic meningitis 203
 Benzyl alcohol cause of tissue damage 100
 Berman locator in recovery of broken needles 245
 Berman plastic airway 23
 Bethanechol (Urecholine) in treatment of urine retention 251
 Bilateral pneumothorax 61 65
 Binocular vision alteration by cranial nerve lesion 229
 Biopsy of skin by needle 209
 Bishydroycoumarin (see Dicoumarol page 273)
 Bladder
 paralysis from neurolytic drugs 119
 puncture 125
 trauma cause of urinary retention 250
 Blebs treatment 107
 Bleeding
 cause of
 backache 198
 hypotension 158
 meningitis 203
 spinal cord lesions 217
 complication of peripheral nerve block 87
 spontaneous in anticoagulant therapy 91
 Blindness resulting from
 bleeding into the orbit 88 89
 meningitis 210
 optic nerve block 120
 Blistering result of Levophed infusion 152
 Blood dyscrasias resulting in
 aseptic meningitis 203
 bleeding 88
 spinal cord lesions 217
 Blood morphology changes sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129
 Blood pressure
 apparatus 145
 fall due to
 chlorpromazine therapy 141
 epidural or subarachnoid bleeding 90
 spinal and epidural block 143 161
 in
 acute pulmonary collapse 236
 blood pressure
 in (cont)
 cardiac failure 73
 high spinal block 173
 prostagmine or physostigmine reaction 252
 low predisposing to slough from Levophed 151
 Blood supply of spinal cord
 anomalies 216
 effects of vasoconstrictor drugs 217
 Blood vessels
 hyaline changes 213
 puncture 124
 Blurred vision sign of
 cortical stimulation 16
 oculomotor nerve palsy 229
 orbital hemorrhage 89
 prostagmine or physostigmine reaction 252
 retinal hemorrhage 232
 B naphthol in detecting spinal fluid 174
 Boiling water use in gasserian ganglion block 250
 Bowel perforation 237
 B pyridyl curbenol tartrate in treatment of spinal headache 192
 Brachial plexus
 anesthesia from overflow 120
 complications of block (see page 257)
 Bradycardia
 caused by Pitressin 185
 sign of toxic reaction 7 19
 Brain
 edema from cardiac failure 80
 lesions following spinal or epidural block 226
 survival time 74
 Broken needles
 etiology 242
 prophylaxis 242
 treatment 245
 Bromsalizol
 cause of spinal cord lesions 217
 composition 113
 Bronchiectasis predisposing to atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 Bronchopneumonia 253
 Bronchoscopy
 prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
 use in vomiting 163 168
 Bronchospasms 18
 Brown fluid aspirated from rectum 124
 Brudzinski's sign in meningitis 205
 Burning on injection of drugs 102 166
 Butesin
 cause of dermatitis 128
 chemical classification 20
 Butethanol (see Pontocaine page 284)
 Butyn
 cause of dermatitis 128
 chemical classification 20

C

- Cadaveric appearance in
 cardiac failure 73
 high epidural anesthesia 175
 high spinal anesthesia 173
 pulmonary collapse 236
 Cadaveric vs cyanotic appearance of patient 45 46
 111
 Cafeterol use in treatment of spinal headache 192
 Caffeine alkaloid in treatment of spinal headache 192
 Caffeine sodium benzoate use in treatment of
 cardiac failure 77
 spinal headache 192
 systemic reaction 21
 Calamine use in itching 35
 Calcium chloride
 cause of cardiac syncope 132
 use in
 cardiac arrest 75
 dermatitis 132
 ventricular fibrillation contraindicated 76
 Calcium gluconate use in dermatitis 132
 Carbon dioxide
 accumulation in vomiting 168
 high blood level from oxygen administration in
 closed system 156
 Cardiac arrest 19 69
 Cardiac decompensation
 complication of serum albumin 81
 contraindication to spinal and epidural block 115
 predisposing to slough from Levophed 151
 Cardiac dilatation sign of oil embolism 122
 Cardiac disease
 contraindication to
 block of sympathetic nervous system 236
 epidural block 145
 Pitressin 185
 spinal block 145
 predisposing to oxygen want 159
 Cardiac failure 19 40 69
 Cardiac irregularities caused by
 Adrenalin 41
 Benadryl 34
 chlorpromazine 143
 local anesthetic agent 17
 vasoconstrictor drug 41
 Cardiac massage (manual systole) 76
 Cardiac syncope caused by calcium chloride 132
 Cardiovascular diseases vasoconstrictor drugs indi-
 cated for hypotension 150
 Carotid sinus nerve block complications (see page
 257)
 Casts cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113
 Catgut closure of dural hole to prevent spinal head-
 ache 190
 Catheter ureteral or plastic
 broken 242
 cause of meningitis 203
 indwelling cause of
 aseptic meningitis 203
 Catheter ureteral or plastic
 indwelling cause of (cont.)
 tissue irritation 102
 in injection of epidural saline 192
 sterilization 244
 Catheter urethral use in
 tracheal suction 81 163 251
 urine retention 251
 Cautions used to potentiate action of anesthetic agents
 101
 Cauda equina syndrome
 complication of using
 neurolytic drug 119
 vasoconstrictor drug 210
 definition 218
 prognosis 218
 sequela of spinal cord lesion 212 213
 Caudal block complications (see page 258)
 Celiac plexus (splanchnic) block complications (see
 pages 258 261)
 Cellulitis 93
 Cerebral air embolism from stellate block 66
 Cerebral edema treatment 80
 Cerebral hypoxia result of hypotension 135
 Cerebral vascular accident from hypotension 150
 160
 Cerebrospinal fluid findings in
 aseptic meningitis 205 206
 meningeal irritation 205 206
 septic meningitis 206
 Cerebrovascular disease contraindication to spinal
 and epidural block 145
 Cervical ganglion block in treatment of spinal head-
 ache 192
 Cervical plexus block complications (see page 255)
 Cervical rigidity symptom of meningeal irritation
 202 203
 Chemical pneumonitis from aspiration of emesis 163
 Chest pain simulating that of pneumothorax 65
 Chickenpox contraindication to spinal block 219
 Childbirth cause of headache 179
 Chloral hydrate use in dermatitis 131
 Chloramphenicol use in septic meningitis 210
 Chlorpromazine (Thorazine Largactil)
 action 142
 cause of
 dermatitis 132
 hypotension 141
 contraindications 142
 dosage 142
 prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting 166
 treatment of vasoconstrictor overdosage 41
 Cholinergic drugs use in urine retention 251
 Choreaiform movements sign of cortical stimulation
 18
 Choroid plexus dilatation in treatment of spinal
 headache 190 192
 Chronic hypoxia
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160 162

- Bed rest (cont)
treatment of spinal headache 190
- Bedside x rays 61 62
- Belching, caused by pituitrin 191
- Belladonna drug dosage in relation to morphine 254
- Benacol cause of tissue damage 100
- Benadryl (diphenhydramine)
resulting in systemic reaction 34
used in
allergic reactions 34 47
dermatitis 131
prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
systemic allergic reactions 34
- Benzocaine
cause of dermatitis 128
chemical classification 20
- Benzoyl tropane (Tropacocaine) cause of aseptic meningitis 203
- Benzyl alcohol cause of tissue damage 100
- Berman locator in recovery of broken needles 245
- Berman plastic airway 23
- Bethanechol (Urecholine) in treatment of urinary retention 251
- Bilateral pneumothorax 61 65
- Binocular vision alteration by cranial nerve lesion 229
- Biopsy of skin by needle 209
- Bishydroxycoumarin (see Dicoumarol page 273)
- Bladder
paralysis from neurolytic drugs 119
puncture 125
trauma cause of urinary retention 250
- Blebs treatment 107
- Bleeding
cause of
backache 198
hypotension 158
meningitis 203
spinal cord lesions 217
complication of peripheral nerve block 87
spontaneous in anticoagulant therapy 91
- Blindness resulting from
bleeding into the orbit 88 89
meningitis 210
optic nerve block 120
- Blistering result of Levophed infusion 152
- Blood dyscrasias resulting in
aseptic meningitis 203
bleeding 88
spinal cord lesions 217
- Blood morphology changes sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129
- Blood pressure
apparatus 145
fall due to
chlorpromazine therapy 141
epidural or subarachnoid bleeding 90
spinal and epidural block 143 161
in
acute pulmonary collapse 230
- Blood pressure
in (cont)
cardiac failure 73
high spinal block 173
prostagline or phystostigmine reaction 252
low predisposing to slough from Levophed 151
- Blood supply of spinal cord
anomalies 216
effects of vasoconstrictor drugs 217
- Blood vessels
hyaline changes 213
puncture 121
- Blurred vision sign of
cortical stimulation 16
oculomotor nerve palsy 229
orbital hemorrhage 89
prostagline or phystostigmine reaction 252
retinal hemorrhage 232
- Bupivacaine in detecting spinal fluid 174
- Boiling water use in gasserian ganglion block 230
- Bowel perforation 237
- B pyridyl carbenol tartrate in treatment of spinal headache 192
- Brachial plexus
anesthesia from overflow 120
complications of block (see page 237)
- Bradycardia
caused by Pitressin 185
sign of toxic reaction 7 19
- Brain
edema from cardiac failure 80
lesions following spinal or epidural block 226
survival time 74
- Broken needles
etiology 242
prophylaxis 242
treatment 245
- Bromsalizol
cause of spinal cord lesions 217
composition 113
- Bronchiectasis predisposing to atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
- Bronchopneumonia 253
- Bronchoscopy
prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
use in vomiting 163 168
- Bronchospasms 18
- Brown fluid aspirated from rectum 124
- Brudzinksis sign in meningitis 205
- Burning on injection of drugs 102 166
- Butesin
crust of dermatitis 128
chemical classification 20
- Butethanol (see Pontocaine page 284)
- Butyn
cause of dermatitis 128
chemical classification 20

C

- Caloric apposition in cardiac failure 73
- high epidural anthesis 175
- high spinal anthesis 173
- pulmonary collapse 250
- Calverley as example appearance of patient 47 40 114
- Caloric use in treatment of spinal block 192
- Calcium alcohol in treatment of spinal block 192
- Calcium gluconate use in d-tinitis 132
- cardiac failure 77
- spinal block 192
- ventilation 24
- Calcium use in blocking 35
- Calcium chloride
- cause of cardiac syncope 132
- use in
- cardiac arrest 78
- d-tinitis 132
- ventricular fibrillation contraindicated 78
- Calcium gluconate use in d-tinitis 132
- Carbon dioxide
- accumulation in vomiting 108
- high blood level from oxygen administration in closed system 106
- Cardiac arrest 19 69
- Cardiac decompensation
- complication of serum albumin 81
- contraindication to spinal and epidural block 145
- predisposing to shock from Levophed 151
- Cardiac dilation sign of oil embolism 122
- Cardiac disease
- contraindication to
- block of sympathetic nervous system 250
- epidural block 145
- Intress 185
- spinal block 145
- predisposing to oxygen want 133
- Cardiac failure 19 40 61
- Cardiac irregularities caused by
- Adrenalin 41
- Benadryl 34
- chlorpromazine 143
- local anesthetic agent 17
- vasoconstrictor drug 41
- Cardiac massage (manual systole) 70
- Cardiac syncope caused by calcium chloride 132
- Cardiovascular diseases vasoconstrictor drugs indicated for hypotension 150
- Carotid sinus nerve block complications (see page 257)
- Casts cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113
- Catgut closure of dural hole to prevent spinal headache 190
- Catheter urethral or plastic
- broken 242
- cause of meningitis 203
- indwelling cause of aseptic meningitis 203
- Catheter urethral or plastic
- block as cause of (cont.)
- breath stimulation 102
- in treatment of epidural block 192
- sterilization 244
- Catheter urethral use in tracheal extubation 81 163 254
- urethral catheter 251
- Catheter used to prevent catheterization of anesthetic agent 101
- Catheter urethral use
- complication of urethral catheter drug 119
- vasoconstrictor drug 216
- d-tinitis 215
- prevention 215
- separation of spinal cord from 212 213
- Caul block (complication) (see page 255)
- Cela-plum (epidural) block (complication) (see page 255 264)
- Cellulitis 63
- Cerebral air embolism from a late block 66
- Cerebral edema treatment 80
- Cerebral hypoxia result of hyperventilation 145
- Cerebral vascular accident from hyperventilation 140 160
- Cerebrospinal fluid findings in
- aseptic meningitis 205 206
- meningeal irritation 205 206
- septic meningitis 206
- Cerebrovascular disease contraindication to spinal and epidural block 145
- Cervical ganglion block in treatment of spinal headache 112
- Cervical plus block complications (see page 255)
- Cervical rigidity symptom of meningeal irritation 202 205
- Chemical pneumonitis from aspiration of emesis 163
- Chest pain stimulating that of pneumothorax 65
- Chickenpox contraindication to spinal block 219
- Childbirth cause of headache 170
- Chloral hydrate use in d-tinitis 131
- Chlorophenol use in septic meningitis 210
- Chlorpromazine (Thorazine Largactil)
- action 142
- cause of
- dermatitis 132
- hypotension 111
- contraindications 142
- dosage 142
- prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting 166
- treatment of vasoconstrictor overdose 41
- Cholinergic drugs use in urine retention 251
- Choriform movements sign of cortical stimulation 18
- Choroid plexus dilatation in treatment of spinal headache 100 192
- Chronic hypoxia
- contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 115 160 162

- Bed rest (cont)
 - treatment of spinal headache 190
- Bedside x rays 61 62
- Belching caused by pituitrin 191
- Belladonna drug dosage in relation to morphine 254
- Benacol cause of tissue damage 100
- Benadryl (diphenhydramine)
 - resulting in systemic reaction 34
 - use in
 - allergic reactions 34 47
 - dermatitis 131
 - prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
 - systemic allergic reactions 34
- Benzocaine
 - cause of dermatitis 128
 - chemical classification 20
- Benzoyl tropine (Tropicocaine) cause of aseptic meningitis 203
- Benzyl alcohol cause of tissue damage 100
- Berman locator in recovery of broken needles 245
- Berman plastic airway 23
- Bethanechol (Urecholine) in treatment of urine retention 251
- Bilateral pneumothorax 61 65
- Binoocular vision alteration by cranial nerve lesion 229
- Biopsy of skin by needle 209
- Bishydroxycoumarin (see Dicoumarol page 273)
- Bladder
 - paralysis from neurolytic drugs 119
 - puncture 125
 - trauma cause of urinary retention 250
- Blebs treatment 107
- Bleeding
 - cause of
 - backache 198
 - hypotension 158
 - meningitis 203
 - spinal cord lesions 217
 - complication of peripheral nerve block 87
 - spontaneous in anticoagulant therapy 91
- Blindness resulting from
 - bleeding into the orbit 88 89
 - meningitis 210
 - optic nerve block 120
- Blistering result of Levophed infusion 152
- Blood dyscrasias resulting in
 - aseptic meningitis 203
 - bleeding 88
 - spinal cord lesions 217
- Blood morphology changes sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129
- Blood pressure
 - apparatus 145
 - fall due to
 - chlorpromazine therapy 141
 - epidural or subarachnoid bleeding 90
 - spinal and epidural block 143 161
 - in
 - acute pulmonary collapse 256
 - Blood pressure
 - in (cont)
 - cardiac failure 73
 - high spinal block 173
 - prostagline or physostigmine reaction 252
 - low predisposing to slough from Levophed 151
- Blood supply of spinal cord
 - anomalies 216
 - effects of vasoconstrictor drugs 217
- Blood vessels
 - hyaline changes 213
 - puncture 124
- Blurred vision sign of
 - cortical stimulation 16
 - oculomotor nerve palsy 229
 - orbital hemorrhage 89
 - prostagline or physostigmine reaction 252
 - retinal hemorrhage 232
- B naphthol in detecting spinal fluid 174
- Boiling water use in gasserian ganglion block 230
- Bowel perforation 237
- B pyridyl carbenol tartrate in treatment of spinal headache 192
- Brachial plexus
 - anesthesia from overflow 120
 - complications of block (see page 257)
- Bradycardia
 - caused by Pitressin 185
 - sign of toxic reaction 7 19
- Brain
 - edema from cardiac failure 80
 - lesions following spinal or epidural block 236
 - survival time 74
- Broken needles
 - etiology 242
 - prophylaxis 242
 - treatment 245
- Bromsalizol
 - cause of spinal cord lesions 217
 - composition 113
- Bronchiectasis predisposing to atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
- Bronchopneumonia 253
- Bronchoscopy
 - prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
 - use in vomiting 163 168
- Bronchospasms 18
- Brown fluid aspirated from rectum 124
- Brudzinski's sign in meningitis 205
- Burning on injection of drugs 102 166
- Butesin
 - cause of dermatitis 128
 - chemical classification 20
- Butethanol (see Pontocaine page 284)
- Butyn
 - cause of dermatitis 128
 - chemical classification 20

- Chronic hypoxia (cont)
 predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Cinchocaine (see Nupercaine page 282)
- Circumcision block cause of impotence 125
- Cleaning of equipment 207
- Climacteric cause of
 cardiac arrest 73
 headache 177
- Clinical anaphylactic shock
 definition 8
 differentiation from systemic toxic reaction 17
 treatment 35
- Coagulation time prolonged contraindication to regional block 90
- Cobefrin (Corbasil) use as a vasoconstrictor 39
- Cocaine
 chemical classification 20
 danger of adding Adrenalin to it 107
 dosage 13
 resulting in death 7
 toxicity and potency 10
 used in topical anesthesia 7 10
 vasoconstrictor action 13 19
- Coccygeal nerve block complications (see page 258)
- Codeine use in treatment of
 neuritis 120
 pain of pneumothorax 64
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
 spinal headache 190
- Cold sterilization of drugs and equipment 93 208
 cause of spinal cord lesion 219 221
- Colic symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252
- Coma symptom of
 cerebral air embolism 66
 cerebral edema 80
 meningitis 206
 oil embolism 122
 oxygen want 144 160
- Common peroneal nerve block complications (see page 258)
- Complications of blocks (see Appendix under specific block 257 265)
- Consciousness mechanism 172
- Contact dermatitis 127
- Convulsants in cardiac failure 77
- Convulsions
 barbiturates and anaesthetics contraindicated 164 175
 etiology
 Adrenalin overdosage 38
 allergic reaction 34
 Benadryl overdosage 34
 cerebral edema 80
 epidural block 140
 hypotension 138
 inadvertent intra arterial injection 13
 meningeal irritation 205
 meningitis 202
- Convulsions
 etiology (cont)
 oil embolism 122 123
 oxygen want 161
 pressure caudal 231
 systemic toxic reactions to
 local anesthetic drugs 16 17 18
 vasoconstrictor drugs 38
 treatment 149 164
- Copper ions cause of
 peripheral nerve injury 114
 tissue reaction 94
- Coramine (nikethimide) use in
 cardiac failure 77
 systemic reaction 24 27
- Corbasil (Cobefrin) use as a vasoconstrictor 39
- Corneal ulcers and keratitis 121
- Coronary artery disease contraindication to
 spinal and epidural block 145
 vasoconstrictor drugs 150
- Coronary occlusion
 resulting from hypotension 92
 resulting in
 cardiac arrest 72
 hypotension 141
 ventricular fibrillation 72
- Cortical depression 19
- Cortical stimulation
 signs and symptoms 17
 treatment 25
- Corticotropin (see ACTH page 267)
- Cortisone
 resulting in death 254
 use in
 atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
 bronchorrhea 254
 dermatitis 132
- Cough sign of
 atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 lung puncture 58
 oil embolism 123
 tracheal injection 124
- Covicone use in prophylaxis of dermatitis 180
- Cramps caused by pituitrin 191
- Cranial nerve lesions 226
- Cranial nerves anatomy 228
- Cyanosis
 appearance in
 acute pulmonary collapse 256
 asthmatic attack 47
 high or total spinal block 173
 hypotension 144
 oil embolism 123
 primary oxygen want 45
 toxic reaction 19
 definition 46 144
- Cyanotic vs cadaveric appearance 45 46 144
- Cyclaine (heptylcaine)
 chemical classification 20

- Cycline (Chasman) (cont.)
 contributing factors
 burning on injection 54
 high or total spinal block 175
 pain 54, 114
 prolonged numbness 220
 reactions 17
 tissue damage 96
 toxemia 15
 toxicity 11
- Cylohexolates (Mazzone) use in nausea and vomiting 166
- Cyclohexamide in treatment of hemorrhage 256
- Cyclohexamide shock 156

D

- Diazepam, severity of meningitis 210
- Death
 cerebral
 cerebral overcharge 34
 cardiac arrest, 13, 69
 clinical anaphylactic shock 34, 35
 convulsion 254
 cerebral or subdural blood bleeding 85
 gastric ganglion block 119
 gastric dilation, 165
 high or total spinal block 173, 175
 hypotension, 135, 144, 161
 inadvertent high or total spinal block 45
 lumbar puncture 231
 oxygen want, 42, 161
 paravertebral block 119
 pneumothorax, 61, 65
 respiratory change 140, 157
 primary oxygen want 46
 rapid withdrawal of spinal fluid 175
 spinal cord lesions 212, 213, 216
 reactions to local anesthetic agents 7
 22
 topical application of Novocain 33
 trigeminal nerve block 119
 ventricular fibrillation 69
 vertebro in regional block 69
- Dehydrocholine hydrochloride (see Methedrine page 279)
- Deseran (see Procaine page 254)
- Desaturated heart disease
 complication of serum albumin, 81
 contraindication to spinal and epidural block 145
 predisposing to slough from Levophed 151
- Dilatation of heart 79
- Dehydration
 cause of headache 179
 predisposing to high spinal block 171
 use in dermatitis 131
- Delayed allergic systemic reaction, 36
- Delirium, symptom of
 meningitis 206
 oxygen want, 160
- Demand hypoxia
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160, 162
 definition 42
 predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Dermal treatment of pain of pneumothorax 64
- Dermatitis 127
- Desoxyn (see Methedrine page 279)
- Desoxycortone crotone acetate in treatment of spinal headache 192
- Detergent products, complications from their use
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 spinal cord damage 215
 tissue damage 93
- Detergent, complications from its use (see Detergent products above)
- Dextrose
 heat sterilization 205
 hypertonic solution, cause of headache 184
 solution in treatment of spinal headache 190, 191
 treatment of
 cardiac failure 77
 cerebral edema 81
- Diabetes
 indicating spinal or epidural block, 145
 predisposing to slough from Levophed 151
- Diack's enlizer control 93, 207
- Diagnostic procedures, cause of aseptic meningitis 204
- Diapedesis of red blood cells 95
- Diazine in treatment of septic meningitis 210
- Diazo-reaction in detecting spinal fluid, 174
- Dibucaine (see Nupercaine page 252)
- Dicoumarol (bishydroxycoumarin)
 action cancelled 92
 cause of bleeding, 90
- Dithion (see Intracaine page 278)
- Diethyl amino-ethyl phenothiazine hydrochloride in prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
- Diffusin (see Hivaluronidase page 277)
- Digital nerve block, complications (see page 235)
- Digitalis use in cardiac failure
 prophylaxis 74
 treatment, 77
- Digits gangrene 97
- Dihydroergotamine use in treatment of spinal headache 192
- Dilatation of choroid plexus in treatment of spinal headache 190, 192
- Dilatation of heart caused by oil embolism, 123
- Dilatation of pupils in cardiac failure 73
- Dilatation of stomach from artificial respiration 163, 165
- Diodrast
 complications from its use
 bleeding 85
 cardiac failure 72
 pain, 101
 tissue irritation 101
 in disc puncture 195
 use as contrast medium 14, 15, 230

- Chronic hypoxia (cont)
 - predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Cinchocaine (see Nupercaine page 282)
- Circumcision block, cause of impotence 125
- Cleaning of equipment 207
- Climacteric cause of
 - cardiac arrest 75
 - headache 177
- Clinical anaphylactic shock
 - definition 8
 - differentiation from systemic toxic reaction 17
 - treatment 35
- Coagulation time prolonged contraindication to regional block 90
- Cobefrin (Corbasil) use as a vasoconstrictor 39
- Cocaine
 - chemical classification 20
 - danger of adding Adrenalin to it 107
 - dosage 13
 - resulting in death 7
 - toxicity and potency 10
 - used in topical anesthesia 7 10
 - vasoconstrictor action 13 19
- Coccygeal nerve block complications (see page 258)
- Codeine use in treatment of
 - neuritis 120
 - pain of pneumothorax 64
 - peripheral nerve lesions 116
 - spinal headache 190
- Cold sterilization of drugs and equipment 93 208
 - cause of spinal cord lesion 219 221
- Colic symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252
- Coma symptom of
 - cerebral air embolism 66
 - cerebral edema 80
 - meningitis 206
 - oil embolism 122
 - oxygen want 144 160
- Common peroneal nerve block complications (see page 258)
- Complications of blocks (see Appendix under specific block 257 265)
- Consciousness mechanism 172
- Contact dermatitis 127
- Convulsants in cardiac failure 77
- Convulsions
 - barbiturates and analeptics contraindicated 164 175
 - etiology
 - Adrenalin overdosage 38
 - allergic reaction 34
 - Benadryl overdosage 34
 - cerebral edema 80
 - epidural block 140
 - hypotension, 138
 - inadvertent intra arterial injection 13
 - meningeal irritation 205
 - meningitis 202
- Convulsions
 - etiology (cont)
 - oil embolism 122 123
 - oxygen want 161
 - pressure caudal 231
 - systemic toxic reactions to
 - local anesthetic drugs 16 17 18
 - vasoconstrictor drugs 38
 - treatment 149 164
- Copper ions cause of peripheral nerve injury 114
- tissue reaction 94
- Coramine (nikethamide) use in cardiac failure 77
 - systemic reaction 24 27
- Corbasil (Cobefrin) use as a vasoconstrictor 39
- Corneal ulcers and keratitis 121
- Coronary artery disease contraindication to spinal and epidural block 145
 - vasoconstrictor drugs 150
- Coronary occlusion
 - resulting from hypotension 92
 - resulting in
 - cardiac arrest 72
 - hypotension 141
 - ventricular fibrillation 72
- Cortical depression 19
- Cortical stimulation
 - signs and symptoms 17
 - treatment 25
- Corticotropin (see ACTH page 267)
- Cortisone
 - resulting in death 254
 - use in
 - atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
 - bronchorrhea 254
 - dermatitis 132
- Cough sign of
 - atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 - lung puncture 58
 - oil embolism 123
 - tracheal injection 124
- Covicone use in prophylaxis of dermatitis 130
- Cramps caused by pituitrin 191
- Cranial nerve lesions 226
- Cranial nerves anatomy 228
- Cyanosis
 - appearance in
 - acute pulmonary collapse 236
 - asthmatic attack 47
 - high or total spinal block 173
 - hypotension 144
 - oil embolism 123
 - primary oxygen want 45
 - toxic reaction 19
 - definition 46 144
- Cyanotic vs cadaveric appearance 45 46 144
- Cyclaine (hexylcaine)
 - chemical classification 20

- Ephedrine hydrochloride (see sulfate below)
 Ephedrine sulfate
 action 147
 cause of spinal cord lesions 216
 contraindications in cardiac failure 77
 dosage 33 147
 prophylaxis of
 hypotension 144
 perforation of the bowel 237
 sterilization 207
 treatment of
 allergic reaction 35
 hypotension from
 chlorpromazine 142
 spinal or epidural block 147
 Epidural (peridural)
 abscess cause of aseptic meningitis 204
 anesthesia
 complications (see page 255)
 contraindications 115
 high 53 175
 injection of saline or dextrose
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
 treatment of spinal headache 190 191
 Epigastric pressure
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
 treatment of spinal headache 190 191
 Epinephrine (see Adrenalin page 267)
 Epineurium 51
 Equipment
 cleaning 93 206
 sterilization 93 206
 used in
 aspiration of emesis 166
 treatment of reactions 23 24 25 26 166 167
 Ergotamine tartrate in treatment of spinal headache 192
 Ergotrate cause of nausea and vomiting 167
 Erythema multiforme sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129
 Eserine (physostigmine) in treatment of urinary retention 251
 Esophagus
 puncture 125
 traction cause of nausea and vomiting 165
 Esophoria symptom of oculomotor nerve palsy 229
 Ether
 cause of
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 tissue damage 94
 use in cleaning instruments 207
 Ethocaine (see Novocain page 281)
 Ethyl iodophenylundecylate (see Pantopaque page 204)
 Evans blue dye method of blood volume determination 139
 Eversole laryngoscope 26
 Excursion sign of toxic reaction 18
 Exophthalmus sign of orbital bleeding 89
 Extravasation of fluids treatment 107 247
 Eye puncture 125
- ## I
- Facial nerve block complications (see page 259)
 Fainting in
 prostagline or physostigmine reaction 252
 psychomotor responses 28
 relation to "pleural shock" 66
 toxic reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 38
 Faulty positioning of patient resulting in peripheral nerve lesions 112
 Fear symptom of
 oxygen want 15 144
 prostagline or physostigmine reaction 252
 reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 38
 Femoral nerve block complications (see page 259)
 Fetus puncture of head 125
 Fever
 cause of headache 177
 influence on absorption of drugs 16
 sign of
 allergic reaction of the dermis 129
 atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 meningeal irritation 205
 meningitis 202 205
 Fibrillation ventricular 19 69
 Fingers gangrene 97
 Flushing reaction to Aminophylline 35
 Forceps contaminating anesthetic solutions 209
 Formaldehyde
 avoidance of use in cold sterilization 93 215
 cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113
 Fowler's position in hypotension 148 149
 Frothy sputum sign of oil embolism 122 123
- ## G
- Gag Roser 167
 Gall bladder traction cause of
 hiccough 256
 nausea and vomiting 165
 Gangrene 97 121
 Gasserian ganglion block complications (see page 259)
 Gastric dilation cause of death 168
 General anesthesia vs spinal anesthesia intestinal obstruction 168
 Gliosis destruction 213
 Glossopharyngeal nerve
 anatomy 44
 complications of block (see page 259)
 Gloves prophylaxis of
 dermatitis 130
 infection 105
 meningitis 208
 Gravocaine destructive effects on spinal cord 214
 Gray matter degeneration of ganglion cells 214

Diethane cause of tissue damage 100
 Diphenhydramine (see Benadryl page 270)
 Diplopia
 from orbital bleeding 89
 symptom of meningitis 206
 Discoloration of Adrenalin 40 208
 Disorientation
 caused by oil embolism 122
 symptom of oxygen want 144
 Distilled water sterilization 207
 Diuretics in treatment of itching 131
 Dizziness symptom of
 cortical stimulation 16
 cranial nerve lesion 229
 oxygen want 144
 spinal headache 183
 Dolium (ammonium sulfate)
 benzyl alcohol included 100 101
 sterilization 207
 Dosage recommended
 local anesthetic agents 11 12 13
 vasoconstrictor drugs 39 147
 Double needle technique (Anton's needle)
 definition 185
 effect on spinal headache 180
 Dramamine (8 dimethylaminoethyl benzohydryl
 ether 8 chlorothephyllinate)
 in prophylaxis of
 nausea and vomiting 166 167
 spinal headache 189
 Drinalfa (see Methedrine page 279)
 Drowsiness
 caused by oil embolism 123
 symptom of
 high spinal block 172
 meningitis 206
 oxygen want 144
 Drug poisoning
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160 162
 predisposing to oxygen want, 45
 Drugs commonly used for regional anesthesia 12 13
 Duodenum traction cause of nausea and vomiting
 165
 Dura anatomy 51
 Dura headache from multiple puncture 179
 Duracaine cause of tissue damage 100
 Dural cuff anatomy 48 50 51
 Dural puncture
 cause of
 cranial nerve lesion 226
 headache 178
 lumbar puncture d ath 231
 meningeal irritation 204
 spinal cord damage 215
 sealing mechanism 178
 Dural reflex influence on spinal headache 162
 Dysphagia symptom of glossopharyngeal nerve
 block 120

Dyspnea symptom of
 high spinal or epidural block 172
 oil embolism 123
 oxygen want 45 161
 pneumothorax 59
 prosthigmine or physostigmine reaction 252
 toxic reaction
 local anesthetic agent 18
 vasoconstrictor drug 39

E

Ecchymosis 87
 Eclampsia contraindication to Pitressin 185
 Edema
 angioneurotic sign of allergy 34
 cerebral 80
 laryngeal caused by urticaria 132
 pulmonary symptom of pulmonary embolism 236
 result of
 allergic reaction of the dermis 129
 anesthetic solution 95
 Arthus phenomenon 96
 tissue damage 102 151
 tissue manipulation 113
 Elocaine complications from its use 22 85 99
 Elocaine methylene blue solution in spinal cord of
 monkey 52
 Egg albumin used to potentiate action of anesthetic
 drugs 101
 Electric shock in treatment of
 cardiac failure 75
 ventricular fibrillation 79
 Embolectomy in treatment of pulmonary embolism
 236
 Embolism
 cerebral air 66
 oil 122
 pulmonary 235
 Emphysema
 cause of
 oxygen want 43 160
 pneumothorax 58
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160 162
 predisposing to oxygen want, 45
 result of pneumothorax
 mediastinal, 59 62
 subcutaneous 59 62
 x ray revealing 43 59
 Empurin compound in relief of pain 116 120
 Endocarditis sequela of meningitis 210
 Endocrine imbalance in cardiac failure 73
 Endoncurium 51
 Endotracheal tubes
 illustrated 23
 initiating vagal reflexes 72
 preferred to other airways 163
 Enophthalmus in Horner's syndrome 120
 Environmental temperature relative to incidence of
 reaction 16

Ephedrine hydrochloride (see sulfate below)

Ephedrine sulfate

action 147

cause of spinal cord lesions 216

contraindicated in cardiac failure 77

dosage 35 147

prophylaxis of

hypotension 144

perforation of the bowel 237

sterilization 207

treatment of

allergic reaction 35

hypotension from

chlorpromazine 142

spinal or epidural block 147

Epidural (peridural)

abscess cause of aseptic meningitis 204

anesthesia

complications (see page 258)

contraindications 145

high 53 175

injection of saline or dextrose

prophylaxis of spinal headache 189

treatment of spinal headache 190 191

Epigastric pressure

prophylaxis of spinal headache 189

treatment of spinal headache 190 191

Epinephrine (see Adrenalin page 267)

Epineurium 51

Equipment

cleaning 93 206

sterilization 93 206

used in

aspiration of emesis 166

treatment of reactions 23 24 25 26 166 167

Ergotamine tartrate in treatment of spinal headache 192

Ergotrate cause of nausea and vomiting 167

Erythema multiforme sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129

Eserine (physostigmine) in treatment of urinary retention 251

Esophagus

puncture 125

traction cause of nausea and vomiting 165

Esophoria symptom of oculomotor nerve palsy 229

Ether

cause of

peripheral nerve lesions 113

tissue damage 94

use in cleaning instruments 207

Ethocaine (see Novocain page 281)

Ethyl iodophenylundecylate (see Pantopaque page 204)

Evans blue dye method of blood volume determination 159

Excise laryngoscope 26

Excursion sign of toxic reaction 18

Exophthalmus sign of orbital bleeding 69

Extravasation of fluids treatment 107 247

Eye puncture 125

F

Facial nerve block complications (see page 259)

Fainting in

prosthigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

psychomotor responses 28

relation to "pleural shock" 66

toxic reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 38

Faulty positioning of patient resulting in peripheral nerve lesions 112

Fever symptom of

oxygen want 15 111

prosthigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 38

Femoral nerve block complications (see page 259)

Fetus puncture of head 125

Fever

cause of headache 177

influence on absorption of drugs 16

sign of

allergic reaction of the dermis 129

atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253

meningeal irritation 205

meningitis 202 205

Fibrillation ventricular 19 69

Fingers gangrene 97

Flushing reaction to Aminophylline 35

Forceps contaminating anesthetic solutions 209

Formaldehyde

avoidance of use in cold sterilization 9, 215

cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113

Fowler's position in hypotension 148 149

Frothy sputum sign of oil embolism 122 123

G

Gag Riser 167

Gall bladder traction cause of

hiccough 256

nausea and vomiting 165

Gangrene 97 121

Gasserian ganglion block complications (see page 259)

Gastric dilation cause of death 168

General anesthesia vs spinal anesthesia intestinal obstruction 168

Glia destruction 213

Glossopharyngeal nerve

anatomy 44

complications of block (see page 259)

Gloves prophylaxis of

dermatitis 150

infection 105

meningitis 208

Gravocaine destructive effects on spinal cord 214

Gray matter degeneration of ganglion cells 214

Greene point needle

action 185

illustrated 187

used to avoid

cranial nerve palsy 230

spinal headache 186

Guedel airway 23

Guedel laryngoscope blade 26

H

Haemo Sol complications from its use (see Detergent products page 273)

Head of fetus puncture 125

Head lowering use in hypotension 148

Head retraction symptom of meningitis 205

Headache

etiology

age 180

cortical stimulation 17

decreased spinal fluid pressure 178

dehydration 179

dural reflex 182

hypotension of spinal fluid 178

inadvertent cervical nerve injection 53 177

increased spinal fluid pressure 178

leakage of spinal fluid 178

meningeal irritation 205

meningitis 205

oxygen want 144 160

psychic disturbances 182

race 181

removal of intra abdominal pressure 179

sex 180

type of surgery 180

vasoconstrictor drug 38

vertical position 179

hypotensive spinal headache definition 178

incidence in general vs spinal anesthesia 177

localization according to cause 184

not associated with puncture of the dura 177

prodromal sign of nerve palsy 226 227

prophylaxis 183

signs and symptoms 182

symptom of meningitis 205

treatment 190

Heart disease contraindication to

block of sympathetic nervous system 235

epidural block, 145

Pitressin 185

spinal block, 145

Heat sterilization of drugs and equipment 9, 41
206-208

Hemangioma cause of nerve lesions 114

Hematoma (bleeding)

cause of

backache 198

meningitis 205

pain, 84 89

spinal cord lesions 217

Hematoma (bleeding) (cont)

etiology 87 198

treatment 91 200

Hemiplegia result of cerebral air embolism 66

Hemoglobin hypoxia

contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145

160 162

definition 42

predisposing to further oxygen want 45

Hemopneumothorax 65

Hemoptysis from

cerebral air embolism 66

oil embolism 123

pneumothorax 61

pulmonary embolism 236

Hemorrhage

cause of

aseptic meningitis 203

backache 198

hypotension 158

pain 84 89

spinal cord lesions 217

complication of peripheral nerve block 87

spontaneous in anticoagulant therapy 91

Heparin cause of bleeding 92

Hernia belt in prophylaxis of spinal headache 189

Hernia block complications (see page 260)

Herniation of the

arachnoid 178

brain stem 175

intervertebral disc 198 216

Herpes zoster 114

Hexylcaine (see Cycloaine page 272)

Hiccough associated with regional block 256

High altitudes

cause of oxygen want 45 160

contraindication to general anesthesia 45

High blood level of

local anesthetic agent 6

vasoconstrictor drug 37

High epidural block following

epidural block 175

peripheral nerve block 53

High spinal block following

peripheral nerve block 48

spinal and epidural block 170

Hippuric acid cause of tissue irritation 101

Histotoxic hypoxia

contraindication to general anesthesia 45

contributing to hypoxia from high spinal and epidural block 145 160 162

definition 42

predisposing to further oxygen want 45 160

Hoarseness 44

Horner's syndrome 120 125

Hospital prepared solutions avoidance of use 207

Hyaline changes in blood vessels 213

Hydration of pia and arachnoid membranes 213

Hyaluronic acid barrier to bleeding 87
 Hyaluronidase (Aldase Diffusin Wadase)
 complications
 blanching 101
 dermatitis 127
 erythema 101
 tissue damage 101
 vaginitis 101
 in prophylaxis of
 gangrene 106 107
 irritation due to metallic ions 116
 in treatment of
 bleeding 91
 extravasation of intravenous fluids 107 247
 swelling 91 107
 spreading factor relative to toxic reactions 15 22
 sterilization 209
 Hydration
 prophylaxis of
 cranial nerve palsy 230
 spinal headache 184 186
 treatment of spinal headache 190 191
 Hydrocephalus sequela of meningitis 216
 Hydrochloric acid damage to lungs 15
 Hyperergy
 cause of
 meningitis 203
 spinal cord lesions 214
 systemic toxic reaction 8
 definition 8
 Hyperpnea sign of ischemic attack 47
 Hyperpyrexia
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160 162
 predisposing to oxygen want 45
 Hypersecretion of lungs 18
 Hypersensitivity definition 8
 Hypertension of spinal fluid
 cause of headache 178
 symptom of meningeal irritation 202 205
 Hypertension vascular
 cause of hypoxia 160
 contraindication to
 Pitressin 185
 spinal and epidural block 145
 vasoconstrictor drug 150
 predisposing to severe hypotension 150
 result of vasoconstrictor drugs 38 144
 treatment 40
 Hyperthyroidism
 cause of oxygen want 160
 contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
 160 162
 predisposing to oxygen want 45
 Hypertonic solutions cause of tissue damage 95
 Hypoglossal nerve
 anatomy 44
 paralysis 44
 Hypotension in the postoperative period 156

Hypotension of spinal fluid
 cause of
 cranial nerve lesions 227
 headache 178
 definition 178
 effect on spinal block 171
 Hypotension vascular
 complications
 cranial nerve lesion 228
 urine retention 250
 epidural block vs spinal block 110 151
 etiology
 bleeding 90
 celiac plexus block 152
 chlorpromazine 141
 epidural block 138 156
 oxygen want 43 159
 pneumothorax 59
 positional changes 110
 pregnancy 141
 systemic toxic reaction to local anesthetic drug
 18 34
 spinal block 138 156
 primary vs secondary 42 46 138
 prophylaxis 144
 secondary vs primary 42 46 138
 signs and symptoms 143
 spinal vs epidural block 151
 treatment 146
 Hypotensive spinal headache
 definition 178
 etiology 178
 prophylaxis 183
 signs and symptoms 182
 treatment 190
 Hypotonic solutions
 cause of tissue damage 95
 treatment of spinal headache 191
 Hypoxia (see Oxygen want page 282)

I

Idiosyncrasy definition 8
 Ilkum traction cause of hiccough 256
 Impotency result of
 puncture of penile fascia 125
 spinal cord lesion 218
 Infection complications 85 199 204 213 216
 Infiltration (local) complications (see page 260)
 Inflammation of
 leptomeninges 214 216
 meninges 202
 tissue
 result of contaminated solutions 94
 signs and symptoms 102
 treatment 107
 Infraorbital nerve block complications (see page 260)

Instruments

- cleaning 207
- faulty sterilization cause of septic meningitis 204
- sterilization 207
- useful in anesthetic procedures 26 167

Intercostal block

- complications (see page 260)
- use in prevention of atelectasis and broncho pneumonia 254

Intestinal obstruction spinal or epidural (peridural) block vs general anesthesia 168

Intestine puncture 124

Intra abdominal pressure removal cause of spinal headache 179

Intracaine (diethovin)

- chemical classification 20
- dosage 13
- mechanism of action 95
- toxicity and potency 10

Intracaine in oil cause of tissue damage 100

Intracranial nerves

- anatomy 228
- anesthesia from overflow 120
- lesions 226

Intraneural injections complications

- high or total spinal block 49
- peripheral nerve injuries 113
- transverse myelitis 51 52 122 217

Intravenous alcohol in treatment of spinal headache 192

Intravenous fluids

- extravasation 247
- prophylaxis of hypotension 145
- treatment of
 - asthmatic attacks 47
 - blood loss 92
 - cardiac failure 77
 - cerebral edema 81
 - hypotension 145

Intravenous injections inadvertent 12 72

Intravenous Novocain in treatment of

- dizziness 183
- neuritis 120
- peripheral nerve lesions 116
- vascular spasm 247

Intravenous Pontocaine in treatment of

- neuritis 120
- peripheral nerve lesions 116

Introducer rationale of use 209

Invocan (strychnine) in treatment of spinal headache 192

Iontophoresis mecholyl, 108

Irregular respiration sign of toxic reaction 18

Irritability caused by oil embolism 123

Irritation of the meninges special signs 202

Ischemia cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113

Itching from dermatitis 129

J

Jackson laryngoscope 26

Joint

pains 34

swelling sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129

K

Keratitis resulting from

gasserian ganglion block 121

overflow onto facial nerve 120

Kernig's sign in meningeal irritation 202 205

Kerocaine (see Novocain page 281)

Kidney

affected by Pitressin 185

paralysis of nerves cause of hypotension 140

puncture 125

L

Labyrinth disturbances from spinal headache 183

Lacrimation marked symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

Lahey method recovery of broken spinal needles 245

Largactil (see Chlorpromazine page 271)

Large intestine puncture 124

L-arterenol (see Levophed below)

Laryngeal edema 85 132

Laryngoscopes 26

Laryngospasm caused by Pentothal 167

Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve block complications (see page 260)

Lavage of subarachnoid space in

placement of antibiotic drugs 210

spinal fluid obstruction 220

Law suits

cold sterilization a cause 221

heat sterilization a precaution 93 94

precautions before use of lytic drugs 106 119

Leakage of spinal fluid

cause of

cranial nerve lesions 227

spinal headache 178

Leptomeninges damage 213 214

Lesions of

brain 226

cranial nerves 226

peripheral nerves 112

spinal cord 212

Levarterenol bitartrate (see Levophed below)

Levophed (levarterenol bitartrate)

action 148

action decreased by chlorpromazine 142

complications

slough 151

spinal cord lesions 217

tissue damage 96 150

dosage 148

- Lavophed (levarterenol bitartrate) (cont)
 - site of infusion 151
 - treatment of hypotension 142
- Lidocaine (see Xylocaine page 291)
- Ligation of bleeding vessel 92
- Lignocaine (see Xylocaine page 291)
- Lipiodol destructive effects on spinal cord 214
- Liver site of detoxification 15
- Local anesthetic agents
 - action on blood vessels 13
 - anesthetic index 9 10
 - cause of
 - allergic systemic reactions 6 33
 - cranial nerve lesions 228
 - dermatitis 127
 - destructive effects on spinal cord 214
 - inflammation of the leptomeninges 214
 - peripheral nerve lesions 113
 - systemic allergic reactions 6 33
 - systemic toxic reactions 6
 - tissue reactions 93
 - chemical grouping 20
 - dosage 12 13
 - effect on autonomicity of the specific tissues 71
 - mechanism of action 93
 - optimal concentrations 12 13
 - potency 9 10
 - sterilization 207
 - toxicity 9 10
 - vasodilator action 13 19
- Local infiltration complications (see page 260)
- Local toxic tissue reactions to drugs 93 127
- Loquacity sign of cortical stimulation 17
- Lordosis factor in backache 197
- Lotion use in dermatitis 35 132
- Lowered blood volume cause of hypotension 139
- Lozenge test for
 - allergy 34
 - clinical anaphylactic shock 34
 - systemic toxic reactions 21
- Lumbar curve relation to backache 199
- Lumbar puncture
 - cause of
 - death 231
 - headache 178
 - Sise introducer 209
- Lumbar somatic nerve block
 - complications (see page 260)
 - resulting from overflow 120
- Lumbar sympathetic nerve block
 - complications (see pages 261 262)
 - treatment of vascular spasm 247
- Lung puncture 55
- Lymph node swelling sign of allergic reaction of the
 - dermis 129
- Lytic non oily drugs cause of tissue damage 99

M

- Macintosh laryngoscope blade 26
- Mandibular block complications (see page 261)
- Manual systole 76
- Mareline (cyclizine lactate) use in nausea and
 - vomiting 166
- Massive cardiac 76
- Maxillary nerve block complications (see page 261)
- Maximal concentrations of
 - local anesthetic agents 12 13
 - vasoconstrictor drugs 39 147
- Mecholyl (methacoline)
 - iontophoresis in treatment of blebs 108
 - use in urine retention 251
- Median nerve block at elbow or wrist complications
 - (see page 261)
- Mediastinal emphysema 59 62
- Mediastinal shift cause of hypotension 59
- Medulla depression from previous overstimulation 19
- Memory loss caused by oil embolism 123
- Meningeal irritation 202
 - cause of
 - cranial nerve lesions 229
 - spinal headache 169
- Meningismus 202
- Meningitis 202
- Menstruation cause of headache 177
- Mental nerve block complications (see page 261)
- Mephentermine sulfate (see Wyamine page 291)
- Mercurial derivatives cause of dermatitis 132
- Methylol cause of dermatitis 132
- Metallic ions cause of
 - pain 85
 - peripheral nerve injury 114
 - tissue damage 94
- Metallic taste sign of cortical stimulation 17
- Metastatic carcinoma cause of nerve lesions blamed
 - on block 114 197 215
- Metastatic vertebral lesion contraindication to spinal
 - block 219
- Methacoline (Mecholyl) in treatment of
 - blebs 108
 - urinary retention 251
- Methamphetamine (see Methedrine below)
- Methantheline (Banthine) cause of paralytic ileus 256
- Methedrine (Desoxyn Drinalfa d desoxyephedrine
 - Pervitin Norodin methamphetamine)
 - action 148
 - dosage 148
 - prophylaxis of
 - hypotension 144
 - nausea and vomiting 166
 - sterilization 207
 - treatment of
 - hiccough 256
 - hypotension 147
- Methemoglobinemia 41

Instruments

- cleaning 207
- faulty sterilization cause of septic meningitis 204
- sterilization 207
- useful in anesthetic procedures 26 167

Intercostal block

- complications (see page 260)
- use in prevention of atelectasis and broncho pneumonia 254

Intestinal obstruction spinal or epidural (peridural)

- block vs general anesthesia 168

Intestine puncture 124

Intra abdominal pressure removal cause of spinal headache 179

Intracaine (diethovin)

- chemical classification 20
- dosage 13
- mechanism of action 95
- toxicity and potency 10

Intracaine in oil cause of tissue damage 100

Intracranial nerves

- anatomy 228
- anesthesia from overflow 120
- lesions 226

Intraneural injections complications

- high or total spinal block 49
- peripheral nerve injuries 113
- transverse myelitis 51 52 122 217

Intravenous alcohol in treatment of spinal headache 192

Intravenous fluids

- extravasation 247
- prophylaxis of hypotension 145
- treatment of
 - asthmatic attacks 47
 - blood loss 92
 - cardiac failure 77
 - cerebral edema 81
 - hypotension 145

Intravenous injections inadvertent 12 72

Intravenous Novocain in treatment of dizziness 183

- neuritis 120
- peripheral nerve lesions 116
- vascular spasm 247

Intravenous Pontocaine in treatment of neuritis 120

- peripheral nerve lesions 116
- Introducer rationale of use 209

Invocan (strychnine) in treatment of spinal headache 192

Iontophoresis mecholyl 108

Irregular respiration sign of toxic reaction 18

Irritability caused by oil embolism 123

Irritation of the meninges special signs 202

Ischemia cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113

Itching from dermatitis 129

J

Jackson laryngoscope 26

Joint

- pains 34
- swelling sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129

K

Keratitis resulting from

- gasserian ganglion block 121
- overflow onto facial nerve 120

Kernig's sign in meningeal irritation 202 205

Kerocaine (see Novocain page 281)

Kidney

- affected by Pitressin 185
- paralysis of nerves cause of hypotension 140
- puncture 125

L

Labyrinth disturbances from spinal headache 183

Lacrimation marked symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

Lahey method recovery of broken spinal needles 245

Largactil (see Chlorpromazine page 271)

Large intestine puncture 124

L-arterenol (see Levophed below)

Laryngeal edema 35 132

Laryngoscopes 26

Laryngospasm caused by Pentothal 167

Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve block complications (see page 260)

Lavage of subarachnoid space in placement of antibiotic drugs 210

spinal fluid obstruction 220

Law suits

- cold sterilization a cause 221
- heat sterilization a precaution 93 94
- precautions before use of lytic drugs 106 119

Leakage of spinal fluid

- cause of
 - cranial nerve lesions 227
 - spinal headache 178

Leptomeninges damage 213 214

Lesions of

- brain 226
- cranial nerves 226
- peripheral nerves 112
- spinal cord 212

Levarterenol bitartrate (see Levophed below)

Levophed (levarterenol bitartrate)

- action 148
- action decreased by chlorpromazine 142
- complications
 - slough 151
 - spinal cord lesions 217
 - tissue damage 96 150
- dosage 148

- Needles**
trauma resulting in (cont)
 intervertebral disc protrusion 216
 peripheral nerve lesions 114
 pleural effusion 62
 pneumothorax 55
 puncture of organ 124
 types, factor in spinal headache 178 180 155
 180 187
- Whitacres (penicilpoint) needle**
 function 185
 illustrated 187
 loss of point 216
 prophylaxis of
 cranial nerve palsy 230
 spinal headache 186
- Nembutal (see Pentobarbital page 283)**
- Novocaine (see Novocain page 281)**
- Neophrin (see Neosynephrine below)**
- Neostigmine (prosgimine) in urinary retention 251**
- Neosynephrine (phenylephrine Neophryn)**
 action 147
 cause of spinal cord lesions 216
 contraindicated in cardiac failure 77
 diagnosis of cardiac failure 75
 dosage 147
 optimal concentration 39 147
 prophylaxis of hypotension 144
 site of injection 150
 treatment of hypotension 142 150
- Nerve lesions 112 226**
- Nerve root damage following spinal block 215**
- Nervousness sign of cortical stimulation 17**
- Neuritis**
 due to
 casts 113
 contaminated drugs or equipment 114
 intraneural injections 113
 meningitis 210
 metallic ions 114
 needle trauma 114
 neurolytic drugs 112 119
 overflow onto somatic nerves 120
 treatment 120
- Neurogenic circulatory depression 138**
- Neurogenic vesical dysfunction 250**
- Neurologic complications from bleeding 89 217**
- Neurological disease cause of spinal cord lesions 215**
- Neurological lesions 212**
- Neurolytic drugs complications**
 bleeding 88
 corneal ulcers and keratitis 121
 cranial nerve lesions 226 228
 necrosis 94
 neuritis 120
 overflow 119
 pain 84
 peripheral nerve lesions 112
 slough 94
- Neurolytic drugs complication (cont)**
 spinal cord lesions 215 217
 transverse myelitis 19 122 217
- Nickel ions cause of**
 peripheral nerve injury 114
 tissue reactions 94
- Nicotinic acid (Nicotinamide)**
 prophylaxis of cranial nerve palsy 230
 treatment of
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
 spinal headache 190, 192
- Nikethamide (see Coramine page 272)**
- Nitroglycerin in treatment of hypertension 10**
- Nitrous acid in detecting spinal fluid 174**
- Noradrenalin (see Levophed page 278)**
- Norepinephrine, (see Levophed page 278)**
- Norodin (see Methedrine page 279)**
- Novest oil resulting in**
 pleural effusion, 66
 tissue damage 94 100
- Novocain (procaine)**
 absorption from esophagus and stomach 21
 anesthetic index 9 10
 atypical reactions 17
 cause of
 allergic reactions 33
 dermatitis 127 128
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 spinal cord lesions 214
 systemic toxic reactions 6
 tissue swelling 94
 chemical classification 20
 concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
 dosage 12
 heat sterilization 93 207
 ingredient in Elocaine 99
 mechanism of action 95
 oil preparation cause of tissue damage 100
 prepared from crystals only 94
 prophylaxis of
 cardiac failure 74
 ulceration 107
 topical application cause of death 33
 toxicity and potency, 10
 treatment of
 cardiac arrest contraindicated, 78
 cerebral edema 81
 dizziness 183
 neuritis 120
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
 vascular spasm 247
 ventricular fibrillation 78 79
- Novol cause of dermatitis 128**
- Nuchal (cervical) rigidity**
 from spinal headache 182
 in meningitis 205
 prodromal symptom of cranial nerve lesions 229
- Nucleus pulposus damage 198**
- Numbness sign of nerve lesion 114**

- Methoxamine hydrochloride (see Vasoxy) page 290)
- Methyl amino heptane (see Oenethyl) page 282)
- Metrazol (pentylenetetrazol) in
cardiac failure 77
systemic reaction 24 27
- Metycaine (piperocaine)
anesthetic index 9 10
cause of dermatitis 128
concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
dosage 12
heat sterilization 207
in spinal block 171
mechanism of action 95
potency 9 10
toxicity 9 10
- Miller Abbott tubes initiating vagal reflex 72
- Miosis in Horner's syndrome 120
- Monocaine chemical classification 20
- Morbilloform eruptions sign of allergic reaction of the
dermis 129
- Morphine sulfate
dosage in relationship to belladonna drug 237 254
prophylaxis of perforation of the bowel 237
routine sedative 142
treatment of pain of pneumothorax 64
- Motor fibers susceptibility to anesthetic agents rela-
tive to sensory fibers 11
- Mucous membrane test for systemic toxic reaction
21 34
- Multiple sclerosis
contraindication to spinal block 219
precipitated by lumbar puncture 215
- Muscle paralysis cause of hypotension 139
- Muscle spasm accompanying backache 199
- Muscular incoordination sign of oxygen want 160
- Myelin sheath destruction 213
- Myelitis ascending 213
- Myelitis transverse caused by
intraneural injections 49 122
neurolytic drugs 122 217
spinal cord lesions 216
vasoconstrictor drugs 216
- Myelography
cause of aseptic meningitis 204
confirming leakage theory 178
effect on subsequent spinal block 171
- Myocardial damage
factor in cardiac failure 72
vasoconstrictors indicated in hypotension 150
- Myocardial depression from local anesthetic agents
19 72
- N**
- Nausea
etiology
Benadryl overdose 34
cortical stimulation 16 165
ergotrate 167
- Nausea
etiology (cont)
hypertension (from vasoconstrictor drugs) 38
165
hypotension 144 165
hypoxia 18 165
intestinal obstruction 168
local anesthetic drug 18 18 33 165
meningeal irritation 202
motion 165
odors 165
opiates 165
oxygen want 42 144 165
pituitrin 191
premedication 165
prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252
traction on viscera 165
vagus nerve stimulation 165
vasoconstrictor drug 148 165
prodromal symptom of cranial nerve lesions 239
prophylaxis 168
signs and symptoms 34 166
treatment 166
- Neck stiffness prodromal symptom of cranial nerve
lesions 239
- Necrosis (gangrene) 97 121
- Needle aspiration of the chest in pneumothorax 64
- Needle placed in heart in diagnosis of cardiac failure
75
- Needle size factor in spinal headache 178
- Needles
Anton's (double) needle 180 185
bevel factor in spinal headache 185
broken 242
Greene point
function 183
illustrated 187
prophylaxis of
cranial nerve palsy 230
spinal headache 186
loss of Whitacre needle point 246
non cutting point 185
pencilpoint (Whitacre) needle
function 185
illustrated 187
loss of point 246
prophylaxis of
cranial nerve palsy 230
spinal headache 186
placement to avoid headache 188
plastic for intravenous fluids 145
security head 243
short bevel to avoid spinal cord lesion 219
small gauge to avoid
cranial nerve palsy 230
lumbar puncture death 231
spinal headache 185
trauma resulting in
bleeding 87

- Needle**
 trauma resulting in (cont.)
 intervertebral disc protrusion 216
 peripheral nerve lesions 114
 pleural effusion 62
 pneumothorax 77
 puncture of organ 124
 types factor in spinal headache 178 180 185
 186 187
- Needles (pencilpoint) needle**
 function 185
 illustrated 187
 loss of point 210
 prophylaxis of
 cranial nerve palsy 230
 spinal headache 186
- Nembutal** (see Pentobarbital page 283)
- Neocaine** (see Novocain page 281)
- Neophryn** (see Neosynephrine below)
- Neostigmine** (prostigmine) in urinary retention 251
- Neosynephrine** (phenylephrine Neophryn)
 action 147
 cause of spinal cord lesions 216
 contraindicated in cardiac failure 77
 diagnosis of cardiac failure 75
 dosage 147
 optimal concentration 39 147
 prophylaxis of hypotension 111
 site of injection 150
 treatment of hypotension 112 150
- Nerve lesions** 112 226
- Nerve root damage** following spinal block 215
- Nervousness** sign of cortical stimulation 17
- Neuritis**
 due to
 casts 113
 contaminated drugs or equipment 114
 intraneural injections 113
 meningitis 210
 metallic ions 114
 needle trauma 114
 neurolytic drugs 112 119
 overflow onto somatic nerves 120
 treatment 120
- Neurogenic circulatory depression** 138
- Neurogenic vesical dysfunction** 250
- Neurologic complications** from bleeding 89 217
- Neurological disease** cause of spinal cord lesions 215
- Neurological lesions** 212
- Neurolytic drugs** complications
 bleeding 88
 central ulcers and keratitis 121
 cranial nerve lesions 226 228
 necrosis 94
 neuritis 120
 overflow 119
 pain 84
 peripheral nerve lesions 112
 slough 94
- Neurolytic drugs** complication (cont.)
 spinal cord lesions 215 217
 transverse myelitis 89 122 217
- Necked tons** cause of
 peripheral nerve injury 114
 tissue reactions 94
- Nicotinic acid** (Nicotinamide)
 prophylaxis of cranial nerve palsy 230
 treatment of
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
 spinal headache 190 192
- Nikethamide** (see Coramine page 272)
- Nitroglycerin** in treatment of hypertension 10
- Nitrous acid** in detecting spinal fluid 174
- Noradrenalin** (see Levophed page 278)
- Norepinephrine** (see Levophed page 278)
- Norodin** (see Methedrine page 279)
- Novest-oil** resulting in
 pleural effusion 66
 tissue damage 91 100
- Novocain** (procaine)
 absorption from esophagus and stomach 21
 anesthetic index 9 10
 atypical reactions 17
 cause of
 allergic reactions 33
 dermatitis 127 128
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 spinal cord lesions 214
 systemic toxic reactions 6
 tissue swelling 94
 chemical classification 20
 concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
 dosage 12
 heat sterilization 93 207
 ingredient in Elocaine 99
 mechanism of action 95
 oil preparation cause of tissue damage 100
 prepared from crystals only 94
 prophylaxis of
 cardiac failure 74
 ulceration 107
 topical application cause of death 33
 toxicity and potency 10
 treatment of
 cardiac arrest contraindicated 78
 cerebral edema 81
 dizziness 183
 neuritis 120
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
 vascular spasm 217
 ventricular fibrillation 78 79
- Novol** cause of dermatitis 128
- Nuchal** (cervical) rigidity
 from spinal headache 182
 in meningitis 205
 prodromal symptom of cranial nerve lesions 229
- Nucleus pulposus** damage 193
- Numbness** sign of nerve lesion 114

- Methoxamine hydrochloride (see Vasoxyl page 290)
- Methyl amino heptane (see Oenethyl page 282)
- Metrazol (pentyletetratzol) in
cardiac failure 77
systemic reaction 24 27
- Metycaine (piperocaine)
anesthetic index 9 10
cause of dermatitis 128
concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
dosage 12
heat sterilization 207
in spinal block 171
mechanism of action 95
potency 9 10
toxicity 9 10
- Müller Abbott tubes initiating vagal reflex 72
- Miosis in Horner's syndrome 120
- Monocaine chemical classification 20
- Morbilloform eruptions sign of allergic reaction of the
dermis 129
- Morphine sulfate
dosage in relationship to belladonna drug 237 254
prophylaxis of perforation of the bowel 237
routine sedative 142
treatment of pain of pneumothorax 64
- Motor fibers susceptibility to anesthetic agents rela-
tive to sensory fibers 11
- Mucous membrane test for systemic toxic reaction
21 34
- Multiple sclerosis
contraindication to spinal block 219
precipitated by lumbar puncture 215
- Muscle paralysis cause of hypotension 139
- Muscle spasm accompanying backache 199
- Muscular incoordination sign of oxygen want 160
- Myelin sheath destruction 213
- Myelitis ascending 213
- Myelitis transverse caused by
intraneural injections 49 122
neurolytic drugs 122 217
spinal cord lesions 216
vasoconstrictor drugs 216
- Myelography
cause of aseptic meningitis 204
confirming leakage theory 178
effect on subsequent spinal block 171
- Myocardial damage
factor in cardiac failure 72
vasoconstrictors indicated in hypotension 150
- Myocardial depression from local anesthetic agents
19 72
- ## N
- Nausea
etiology
Benadryl overdosage 34
cortical stimulation 16 165
ergotrate 167
- Nausea
etiology (cont)
hypertension (from vasoconstrictor drugs) 38
165
hypotension 144 165
hypovolemia 18 165
intestinal obstruction 168
local anesthetic drug 16 18 33 165
meningeal irritation 202
motion 165
odors 165
opiates 165
oxygen want 42 144 165
pituitrin 191
premedication 165
prostaglandin or physostigmine reaction 252
traction on viscera 165
vagus nerve stimulation 165
vasoconstrictor drug 148 165
prodromal symptom of cranial nerve lesions 229
prophylaxis 166
signs and symptoms 34 166
treatment 166
- Neck stiffness prodromal symptom of cranial nerve
lesions 229
- Necrosis (gangrene) 97 121
- Needle aspiration of the chest in pneumothorax 64
- Needle placed in heart in diagnosis of cardiac failure
75
- Needle size factor in spinal headache 178
- Needles
Anton's (double) needle 180 185
bevel factor in spinal headache 185
broken 242
Greene point
function 185
illustrated 187
prophylaxis of
cranial nerve palsy 230
spinal headache 186
loss of Whitacre needle point 246
non cutting point 185
pencilpoint (Whitacre) needle
function 185
illustrated 187
loss of point 246
prophylaxis of
cranial nerve palsy 230
spinal headache 186
placement to avoid headache 188
plastic for intravenous fluids 145
security head 243
short bevel to avoid spinal cord lesion 219
small gauge to avoid
cranial nerve palsy 230
lumbar puncture death 231
spinal headache 185
trauma resulting in
bleeding 87

Oxygen want
 complications (cont)
 death 46
 hypotension 46
 nausea 18 165
 vagosympathetic reflex 71
 vomiting 18 165
 etiology 42 59 159
 onset of signs and symptoms 45 160
 prophylaxis 47 162
 signs and symptoms in
 atelectasis 253
 bronchopneumonia 253
 high epidural block 175
 high spinal block 172
 hypotension 45 160
 pneumothorax 58
 pulmonary embolism 235
 treatment 25 163

P

PAB solutions cause of tissue damage 101

Pain
 cause of
 atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 urine retention 250
 vagosympathetic reflex 71
 etiology 84
 prophylaxis 85
 signs and symptoms 85
 symptom of
 bleeding 89
 coronary insufficiency 85
 dermatitis 129
 local toxic tissue reaction 102
 oil embolism 123
 overflow of neurolytic drugs 120
 peripheral nerve lesions 114
 pneumothorax 59 65
 pulmonary embolism 235
 treatment 85

Pantocaine (see Pontocaine page 284)

Pantopaque (ethyl iodophenylundecylate) cause of
 aseptic meningitis 204

Papaverine in treatment of pulmonary embolism 236

Paralysis caused by
 meningitis 210
 neurolytic drugs 119
 overflow of anesthetic solutions
 glossopharyngeal nerve 44
 hypoglossal nerve 44
 phrenic nerve 43
 recurrent laryngeal nerve 44
 vagus nerve 44
 peripheral nerve lesion 114
 regional block 212
 tourniquet 113

Paralysis of nerves cause of hypotension
 adrenal glands and kidneys 140

Paralysis of nerves cause of hypotension (cont)
 celiac (splanchnic) plexus 152
 result of overflow 43
 skeletal muscles 139
 spinal nerves 139

Paralytic ileus associated with regional block 256

Paraplegia 212 213 221

Parasympathetic nervous system cardiac failure from
 its stimulation 71

Parasympathomimetic drugs use in urine retention
 251

Paravertebral somatic nerve block complications
 cervical area (see pages 258 261)
 lumbar area (see pages 260 261)
 sacral area (see pages 261 265)
 thoracic area (see pages 260 261)

Paravertebral sympathetic ganglion block complica-
 tions
 cervical area (see Stellate Ganglion Block pages
 262 264)
 lumbar area (see page 262)
 thoracic area (see page 262)

Parenchyma of lung damage 43 58

Parenchyma of spinal cord damage 217

Paresis
 contraindication to spinal block 219
 due to spinal cord lesions 215
 facial symptom of meningitis 206
 precipitated by
 lumbar puncture 215
 peripheral nerve block 49 120 217

Patch test, to predetermine
 dermatitis 131
 systemic reaction 21 34

Peanut oil cause of
 dermatitis 128
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 tissue damage 100

Pencilpoint (Whitacre) needle
 loss of tip 246
 illustrated 187
 prophylaxis of leakage of spinal fluid 185 230

Penicillin (also see Antibiotic therapy page 268)
 destructive effects on spinal cord 214
 in prophylaxis of
 atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 245
 infection of punctured organ 124 125
 in treatment of
 pneumothorax 64
 septic meningitis 210

Penile fascia puncture 125

Penis block complications (see page 262)

Pentobarbital (Nembutal)
 cause of amnesia 248
 prophylaxis of systemic toxic reaction 21 40

Pentothal (thiopental)
 cause of
 amnesia 248
 vascular spasm 247

Nupercaine (Dibucaine)

- cause of
 - dermatitis 128
 - slough 95
 - spinal cord lesions 214
 - tissue swelling 95
- chemical classification 20
- concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
- dosage 13 95
- heat sterilization 207
- mechanism of action 96
- oil preparations cause of tissue damage 100
- optimal concentration 13 95
- topical application 95
- toxicity and potency 10

O

- Oatmeal use in dermatitis 131
- Obesity predisposing to high spinal 170 173
- Obstetrics etiology of
 - high or total spinal 170
 - spinal headache 179
- Obturator nerve block complications (see page 261)
- Occlusion of coronary artery cause of hypotension 141
- Oculomotor nerve
 - anesthesia from overflow 120
 - paresis 226
- Oenethyl (2 methylamino heptane hydrochloride)
 - action 148
 - dosage 148
 - prophylaxis of hypotension 144
 - tissue damage from use 98
 - treatment of hypotension 147
- Oil embolism 122
- Oil preparations
 - cause of
 - embolism 122
 - necrosis 95
 - neuritis 112
 - peripheral nerve lesions 113
 - pleural effusion 66
 - slough 95 100
 - spinal cord lesions 217
 - systemic toxic reaction 22
 - tissue damage 94 100
 - sterilization 208
- Onset of signs and symptoms 17
- Oophorectomy cause of headache 177
- Ophthalmic nerve block complications (see page 261)
- Opiates
 - cause of
 - nausea and vomiting 165
 - urinary retention 250
 - dosage relative to belladonna drug 237
 - treatment of pain 64 85 116 120 131 190 200 210
- Optic nerve anesthesia from overflow 120

- Optimal concentrations of
 - belladonna drug to opiate 237
 - local anesthetic drugs 12 13
 - vasoconstrictor drugs 39 147
- Oral administration of anesthetic solutions 21 37
- Orbital bleeding 88 89
- Organic acids used to potentiate action of anesthetic drugs 101
- Organic bases used to potentiate action of anesthetic drugs 101
- Organs puncture 55 124
- Osteitis cause of septic meningitis 204
- Ouabain use in cardiac failure 77
- Overconfidence symptom of oxygen want 45 160
- Overdosage relative to toxic reactions 20
- Overflow onto nerves
 - accessory nerves 45
 - brachial plexus 120
 - cervical sympathetic nerves 120
 - facial nerve 120
 - glossopharyngeal nerve 44
 - hypoglossal nerve 44
 - lumbar somatic nerve 120
 - oculomotor nerve 120
 - optic nerve 120
 - phrenic nerve 43
 - recurrent laryngeal nerve 44
 - sympathetic nerve fibers 45
 - thoracic somatic nerves 120
 - treatment 47 120
 - vagus nerve 44
 - with neurolytic agents 112 119
- Oxygen administration
 - hypotension from discontinuing 156
 - prophylaxis of
 - convulsions 16
 - hypotension 145
 - nausea and vomiting 167
 - treatment of oxygen want caused by
 - asthmatic breathing 35
 - cardiac failure 76
 - cerebral edema 81
 - clinical anaphylactic shock 35
 - convulsions 26
 - dyspnea following pneumothorax 64
 - hypotension 145
 - nausea and vomiting 167
 - pulmonary embolism 236
 - systemic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 23 35
 - vasoconstrictor drug 40
- Oxygen want
 - classification, 42 46
 - complications
 - cardiac failure 46 71 72
 - cerebral edema 80
 - cerebral pathological changes 74 145
 - convulsions 18 161
 - cranial nerve lesions 228

Oxygen want

complications (cont)

death 46

hypotension 46

nausea 18 165

vagosympathetic reflex 71

vomiting 18 165

etiology 42 59 159

onset of signs and symptoms 15 160

prophylaxis 47 162

signs and symptoms in

atelectasis 253

bronchopneumonia 253

high epidural block 175

high spinal block 172

hypotension 45 160

pneumothorax 58

pulmonary embolism 235

treatment 25 163

P

PAB solutions cause of tissue damage 101

Pain

cause of

atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253

urine retention 250

vagosympathetic reflex 71

etiology 84

prophylaxis 85

signs and symptoms 85

symptom of

bleeding 89

coronary insufficiency 85

dermatitis 129

local toxic tissue reaction 102

oil embolism 123

overflow of neurolytic drugs 120

peripheral nerve lesions 114

pneumothorax 59 65

pulmonary embolism 235

treatment 85

Pantocaine (see Pontocaine page 284)

Pantopaque (ethyl iodophenylundecylate) cause of

aseptic meningitis 204

Papaverine in treatment of pulmonary embolism 236

Paralysis caused by

meningitis 210

neurolytic drugs 119

overflow of anesthetic solutions

glossopharyngeal nerve 44

hypoglossal nerve 44

phrenic nerve 43

recurrent laryngeal nerve 44

vagus nerve 44

peripheral nerve lesion 114

regional block 212

tourniquet 113

Paralysis of nerves cause of hypotension

adrenal glands and kidneys 140

Paralysis of nerves cause of hypotension (cont)

celiac (splanchnic) plexus 152

result of overflow 13

skeletal muscles 139

spinal nerves 138

Paralytic ileus associated with regional block 256

Paraplegia 212 213 221

Parasympathetic nervous system cardiac failure from

its stimulation 71

Parasympathomimetic drugs use in urine retention

251

Paravertebral somatic nerve block complications

cervical area (see pages 258 261)

lumbar area (see pages 260 261)

sacral area (see pages 261 265)

thoracic area (see pages 260 261)

Paravertebral sympathetic ganglion block complica-

tions

cervical area (see Stellate Ganglion Block pages

262 264)

lumbar area (see page 262)

thoracic area (see page 262)

Parenchyma of lung damage 43 58

Parenchyma of spinal cord damage 217

Paresis

contraindication to spinal block 219

due to spinal cord lesions 215

facial symptom of meningitis 206

precipitated by

lumbar puncture 215

peripheral nerve block 49 120 217

Patch test, to predetermine

dermatitis 131

systemic reaction 21 34

Peanut oil cause of

dermatitis 128

peripheral nerve lesions 113

tissue damage 100

Pencilpoint (Whitacre) needle

loss of tip 246

illustrated 187

prophylaxis of leakage of spinal fluid 185 230

Penicillin (also see Antibiotic therapy page 268)

destructive effects on spinal cord 214

in prophylaxis of

atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 245

infection of punctured organ 124 125

in treatment of

pneumothorax 64

septic meningitis 210

Penile fascia puncture 125

Penis block complications (see page 262)

Pentobarbital (Nembutal)

cause of amnesia 248

prophylaxis of systemic toxic reaction 21 40

Pentothal (thiopental)

cause of

amnesia 248

vascular spasm 217

- Pentothal (thiopental) (cont)
 use in
 convulsions 27 149 164
 hiccough 256
 nausea and vomiting 167
 retching 167
 systemic reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 40
 vascular spasm from intra arterial administration 247
- Pentylentetrazol (see Metrazol page 280)
- Percaïne (see Nupercaine page 282)
- Perforation of bowel 237
- Peridural (epidural) block complications (see page 258)
- Perineural spaces importance in peripheral nerve block 49 51
- Peripheral nerve lesions 112
- Peritoneum puncture 125
- Peritonitis cause of paralytic ileus 256
- Personnel (see Additional help page 267)
- Pervitin (see Methedrine page 279)
- Pharynx
 anesthesia from overflow 45
 puncture 125
- Phenergan hydrochloride (Promethazine hydrochloride) use in nausea and vomiting 166
- Phenobarbital (phenylethylbarbituric acid Luminal) use in treatment of
 dermatitis 131
 pain 116 120
- Phenol
 complications
 bleeding 88
 cranial nerve lesions 226 228
 dermatitis 127
 overflow 119
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 spinal cord damage 217
 tissue damage 99
 treatment of itching 35
 treatment of phenol neuritis 120
 use in cold sterilization 93
- Phenylephrine (see Neosynephrine page 281)
- Phlebothrombosis 238
- Photophobia symptom of
 meningitis 206
 oculomotor nerve palsy 229
- Phrenic nerve block
 complications (see page 262)
 result of overflow 45
- Physical status of patient relative to toxic reaction 15
- Physiotherapy in treatment of
 backache 200
 pain 85
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
- Physostigmine (eserine) use in *urine retention* 251
- Pia mater relation to peripheral nerve structure 51
- Picrotoxin (also see Analeptics page 268) contra indicated in treatment of
 cardiac failure 77
 systemic reactions 24 27
- Piprocaine (see Metycaine page 280)
- Pitkin needle
 action 185
 effect of spinal headache 186
 illustrated 187 188
 method of insertion 187 188
- Pitressin
 contraindications 185
 hypotension 148
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 185
- Pituitrin
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 184
 treatment of spinal headache 190 191
- Plinocaine (see Novocain page 281)
- Plasma in treatment of
 cardiac failure 77
 cerebral edema 80
 hypotension 150
- Plastic catheter breakage 242
- Plastic needle for intravenous infusion 145
- Pleura
 puncture 55
 relation to the vertebrae and sympathetic ganglion 55
 variations in anatomy 58
- Pleural effusion 60 62 66
- Pleural pain etiology 65
- Pleural shock 66
- Pneumonitis chemical from aspiration of emesis 163
- Pneumothorax 55
- Poliomyelitis contraindication to spinal block 219
- Polyethylene glycol complications
 dermatitis 127
 neuritis 119
 overflow 119
 peripheral nerve lesion 113
 spinal cord damage 214 217
 tissue damage 99
- Polymyxin B use in septic meningitis 210
- Pontocaine (tetracaine)
 chemical classification 20
 complications
 aseptic meningitis 204
 atypical reaction 16
 death from topical application 7 22
 dermatitis 128
 tissue swelling 94
 concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
 dosage 12
 heat sterilization 94 207
 mechanism of action 95
 prepared from crystals only 94
 sterilization 94 207
 toxicity and potency 9 10

- Procaine (tetracaine) (cont.)
 treatment of
 neuritis 120
 peripheral nerve lesions 118
 Pooling of oil cause of tissue damage 94
 Position, cause of
 backache 198
 cardiac failure 73
 headache 177
 high spinal block 171
 peripheral nerve lesions 112
 urine retention, 250
 Position, in treatment of urine retention 251
 Positional changes
 cause of
 death, 73 140
 hypotension, 73 140
 nausea and vomiting 165
 pulmonary embolism, 235
 during splanchnic block, 153
 treatment of hypotension, 145
 Postoperative period, etiology of hypotension, 156
 Postural headache from tap of dura, 182
 Potassium, cause of tissue irritation, 101
 Potassium chloride use in ventricular fibrillation 78
 79
 Potassium permanganate use in dermatitis, 131
 Potency of anesthetic drugs 10
 Preeclampsia, contraindication to Pitreson, 185
 Pre-existing neurological diseases prominence after
 lumbar tap 215
 Pre-existing organic lesions cause of peripheral nerve
 palsy 114
 Pregnancy
 cause of hypotension, 141
 predisposing to high spinal block, 170 173
 Premedication
 cause of
 amnesia, 245
 nausea and vomiting 165
 oxygen want, 160
 masking symptoms of oxygen want, 20 160
 Preoperative training in use of bedpan and urinal, 251
 Presacral nerve block, complications (see page 263)
 Preservatives cause of tissue damage 100
 Pressure caudal, complications 231
 Pressure from injection, cause of tissue reaction, 97
 102
 Primary oxygen want, 42
 Procaine (see Novocain, page 281)
 Procaine amide (Pronestyl) use in cardiac failure
 74, 78
 Protocaine (oil preparation)
 cause of tissue damage 94 100
 sterilization, 208
 Prolonged coagulation time complications
 aseptic meningitis 205
 bleeding, 68
 death, 68
 Prolonged coagulation time complications (cont.)
 spinal cord lesions 217
 Promethazine (phenergan hydrochloride) in pro-
 phylaxis of nausea and vomiting 166
 Propofol (procaine amide) use in cardiac failure
 prophylaxis 74
 treatment 75 79
 Proper sterilizer control 93 207
 Propylene glycol, complications
 dermatitis 127
 neuritis 113 217
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 spinal cord damage 214 217
 tissue damage 99
 Prostigmine (neostigmine) use in urine retention 251
 Protamine in counteracting heparin, 92
 Proteins cause of tissue irritation, 101
 Pruritus treatment, 131
 Psychological aspects of
 backache 199 200
 headache 184 192
 Psychomotor response to block procedure 25
 Psychoneurosis influence on spinal headache 182
 Psychotherapy in spinal headache 192
 Ptosis
 Horner's syndrome 120
 symptom of meningitis 206
 Pudendal nerve block complications (see page 263)
 Pulmonary atelectasis 253
 Pulmonary collapse acute 236
 Pulmonary disease predisposing to oxygen want,
 159 160
 Pulmonary edema
 possible complication of serum albumin, 81
 symptom of pulmonary embolism, 236
 Pulmonary embolism, 235
 Pulmonary friction rub symptom of pulmonary
 embolism 235
 Pulmonary parenchyma, damage 45
 Pulse in
 acute pulmonary collapse 236
 different types of oxygen want, 45 46
 epidural or subarachnoid hemorrhage 90
 high spinal block, 173
 hypotension, 144
 meningeal irritation, 205
 oxygen want, variations according to cause 161
 prosthigmine or phosostigmine reaction, 252
 Punch biopsy of skin in spinal puncture 209
 Puncture of dura
 complications
 cranial nerve lesions 227
 headache 178
 lumbar puncture death, 231
 meningeal irritation 204
 spinal cord damage 215
 sealing mechanism, 178
 Puncture of organs and blood vessels 55 124

- Pentothal (thiopental) (cont)
 use in
 convulsions 27 149 164
 hiccough 256
 nausea and vomiting 167
 retching 167
 systemic reaction to vasoconstrictor drug 40
 vascular spasm from intra arterial administration 247
- Pentylenetetrazol (see Metrazol page 280)
- Percaine (see Nupercaine page 282)
- Perforation of bowel 237
- Peridural (epidural) block complications (see page 258)
- Perineural spaces importance in peripheral nerve block 49 51
- Peripheral nerve lesions 112
- Peritoneum puncture 125
- Peritonitis cause of paralytic ileus 256
- Personnel (see Additional help page 267)
- Pervitin (see Methedrine page 279)
- Pharynx
 anesthesia from overflow 45
 puncture 125
- Phenergan hydrochloride (Promethazine hydrochloride) use in nausea and vomiting 166
- Phenobarbital (phenylethylbarbituric acid Luminal)
 use in treatment of
 dermatitis 131
 pain 116 120
- Phenol
 complications
 bleeding 88
 cranial nerve lesions 226 228
 dermatitis 127
 overflow 119
 peripheral nerve lesions 113
 spinal cord damage 217
 tissue damage 99
 treatment of itching 35
 treatment of phenol neuritis 120
 use in cold sterilization 93
- Phenylephrine (see Neosynephrine page 281)
- Phlebotrombosis 238
- Photophobia symptom of
 meningitis 206
 oculomotor nerve palsy 229
- Phrenic nerve block
 complications (see page 262)
 result of overflow 43
- Physical status of patient relative to toxic reaction 15
- Physiotherapy in treatment of
 backache 200
 pain 85
 peripheral nerve lesions 116
- Physostigmine (eserine) use in urine retention 251
- Pia mater relation to peripheral nerve structure 51
- Picrotoxin (also see Analeptics page 268) contra indicated in treatment of
 cardiac failure 77
 systemic reactions 24 27
- Piprocaine (see Metycaine page 280)
- Pitkin needle
 action, 185
 effect of spinal headache 186
 illustrated 187 188
 method of insertion 187 188
- Pitressin
 contraindications 185
 hypotension 148
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 185
- Pitutrin
 prophylaxis of spinal headache 184
 treatment of spinal headache 190 191
- Plinocaine (see Novocain page 281)
- Plasma in treatment of
 cardiac failure 77
 cerebral edema 80
 hypotension 150
- Plastic catheter breakage 242
- Plastic needle for intravenous infusion 145
- Pleura
 puncture 55
 relation to the vertebrae and sympathetic ganglion 55
 variations in anatomy 58
- Pleural effusion 60 62 66
- Pleural pain etiology 65
- Pleural shock 66
- Pneumonitis chemical from aspiration of emesis 163
- Pneumothorax 55
- Polomyelitis contraindication to spinal block 219
- Polyethylene glycol complications
 dermatitis 127
 neuritis 119
 overflow 119
 peripheral nerve lesion 113
 spinal cord damage 214 217
 tissue damage 99
- Polymyxin B use in septic meningitis 210
- Pontocaine (tetracaine)
 chemical classification 20
 complications
 aseptic meningitis 204
 atypical reaction 16
 death from topical application 7 22
 dermatitis 128
 tissue swelling 94
 concentration for spinal anesthesia 220
 dosage 12
 heat sterilization 94 207
 mechanism of action 95
 prepared from crystals only 94
 sterilization 94 207
 toxicity and potency 9 10

- Pontocaine (tetracaine) (cont)
 - treatment of
 - neuritis 120
 - peripheral nerve lesions 116
- Pooling of oil cause of tissue damage 94
- Position cause of
 - backache 198
 - cardiac failure 73
 - headache 177
 - high spinal block 171
 - peripheral nerve lesions 112
 - urine retention 250
- Position in treatment of urine retention 251
- Positional changes
 - cause of
 - death 73 140
 - hypotension 73 140
 - nausea and vomiting 165
 - pulmonary embolism 235
 - during splanchnic block 153
 - treatment of hypotension 148
- Postoperative period etiology of hypotension 150
- Postural headache from tap of dura 182
- Potassium cause of tissue irritation 101
- Potassium chloride use in ventricular fibrillation 78 79
- Potassium permanganate use in dermatitis 131
- Potency of anesthetic drugs 10
- Preeclampsia contraindication to Pitressin 185
- Pre-existing neurological diseases pronouncement after
 - lumbar tap 215
- Pre-existing organic lesions cause of peripheral nerve palsy 114
- Pregnancy
 - cause of hypotension 141
 - predisposing to high spinal block 170 173
- Premedication
 - cause of
 - amnesia 248
 - nausea and vomiting 165
 - oxygen want 160
 - masking symptoms of oxygen want 20 160
- Preoperative training in use of bedpan and urinal 251
- Presacral nerve block complications (see page 263)
- Preservatives cause of tissue damage 100
- Pressure caudal complications 231
- Pressure from injection cause of tissue reaction 97 102
- Primary oxygen want 42
- Procaine (see Novocain page 281)
- Procaine amide (Pronestyl) use in cardiac failure 74 78
- Proctocaine (oil preparation)
 - cause of tissue damage 94 100
 - sterilization 208
- Prolonged coagulation time complications
 - aseptic meningitis 203
 - bleeding 88
 - death 88
 - prolonged coagulation time complications (cont)
 - spinal cord lesions 217
- Promethazine (phenergerin hydrochloride) in prophylaxis of nausea and vomiting 160
- Pronestyl (procaine amide) use in cardiac failure prophylaxis 74
- treatment 78 79
- Propper sterilizer control 93 207
- Propylene glycol complications
 - dermatitis 127
 - neuritis 113 217
 - peripheral nerve lesions 113
 - spinal cord damage 214 217
 - tissue damage 93
- Prostigmine (neostigmine) use in urine retention 251
- Protamine in counteracting heparin 92
- Proteins cause of tissue irritation 101
- Pruritis treatment 131
- Psychological aspects of
 - backache 199 200
 - headache 184 192
- Psychomotor response to block procedure 28
- Psychoneurosis influence on spinal headache 182
- Psychotherapy in spinal headache 192
- Ptoxis
 - Horner's syndrome 120
 - symptom of meningitis 208
- Pudendal nerve block complications (see page 263)
- Pulmonary atelectasis 253
- Pulmonary collapse acute 236
- Pulmonary disease predisposing to oxygen want 159 160
- Pulmonary edema
 - possible complication of serum albumin 81
 - symptom of pulmonary embolism 236
- Pulmonary embolism 235
- Pulmonary friction rub symptom of pulmonary embolism 235
- Pulmonary parenchyma damage 45
- Pulse in
 - acute pulmonary collapse 236
 - different types of oxygen want 45 46
 - epidural or subarachnoid hemorrhage 90
 - high spinal block 173
 - hypotension 144
 - meningeal irritation 205
 - oxygen want variations according to cause 161
 - prostagline or phosostigline reaction 252
- Punch biopsy of skin in spinal puncture 209
- Puncture of dura
 - complications
 - cranial nerve lesions 227
 - headache 178
 - lumbar puncture death 231
 - meningeal irritation 204
 - spinal cord damage 215
 - sealing mechanism 178
- Puncture of organs and blood vessels 55 124

Pupils

- dilatation in cardiac failure 73
- irregular sign of meningitis 206

Purging symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

Pyrimbenzamine (tripelennamine hydrochloride)

- cause of tissue damage 102
- use in dermatitis 131

Pyridoxine hydrochloride (B6) use in nausea and vomiting 166

Q

Quadruplegia sequela of spinal cord lesion 212 213

Quinidine in cardiac failure 78

Quinine derivative cause of tissue irritation 101

R

Race influence on spinal headache 181

Radial nerve block at elbow or wrist complications (see page 263)

Rales 18 122

Reactions to

- local anesthetic agents
 - allergic systemic 33 127
 - definitions 8
 - local tissue 93 127
 - toxic systemic (high blood level) 6
- vasoconstrictor drug
 - allergic systemic 37
 - toxic systemic (high blood level) 37

Rectal incontinence caused by neurolytic drugs 119

Rectal paresis result of spinal cord lesion 218

Recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis from overflow 44

Reflex phenomena cause of cardiac failure 71

Regional anesthesia vs general anesthesia

- death rate 70

intestinal obstruction 186 237

Regional nerve blocks complications (see Appendix under specific block 257 265)

Relative high blood level of a drug 8

Relative potency of a drug 9

Relative toxicity of a drug 9

Relaxation of back muscles cause of backache 197

Removal of broken catheters and needles 245

Renal failure result of hypotension 138

Repetition of block cause of nerve injuries 114

"Res ipsa loquitur" 221

Respiratory embarrassment from

- local anesthetic agent 18
- oxygen want, 42 144 161
- pneumothorax 59
- vasoconstrictor drug 38

Respiratory obstruction from angioneurotic edema 34 35

laryngeal obstruction 45

pharyngeal obstruction, 45

vomitus 165

Restlessness symptom of

cerebral edema 80

oxygen want 59 144

reaction to

local anesthetic agent 17

vasoconstrictor drug 38

Retching symptom of

intestinal contraction 237

oxygen want 161

Retention of urine 250

Retinal hemorrhage following pressure caudal 231

Retractor misplaced cause of nerve lesions 113

Retrograde amnesic effect of chlorpromazine 142

Retroperitoneal bleeding 88 90

Rhizotomy use in treatment of

neuritis 120

peripheral nerve lesions 116

Rhonchi 18

Roaring in the ears sign of cortical stimulation 17

Romacal tartrate (B pyridyl carbenol tartrate) 192

Roser mouth gag 167

Running water in treatment of urine retention 251

S

Safety of various anesthetic methods 212

Salicylates use in dermatitis 131

Saline injected to avert pleural puncture 62

prophylaxis of

cranial nerve lesions 230

pleural puncture 62

spinal headache 189

treatment of spinal headache 191

Saline normal sterilization 207

Salivation marked symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

Salves use in dermatitis 132

Sanders inflatable cuff for endotracheal tube 23

Scalenus anticus muscle infiltration followed by overflow 120

Scalp block complications (see page 263)

Sciatic femoral nerve block complications (see pages 259 263)

Scopolamine use in

prophylaxis of perforation of the bowel 237

treatment of cardiac arrest 78

Scotoma complication of pressure caudal 232

Scrotum tissue slough from Novocain Adrenalin solution 98

Scrubbing of hands required for regional block 208

Scurocaine (see Novocain page 281)

Security bead needles 243

Sedation cause of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253

Semilunar (gasserian) ganglion block complications (see page 259)

Sensory fibers susceptibility to anesthetic agents relative to motor fibers 11

Septic meningitis 202

- Septicemia (bacteremia), cause of septic meningitis 201
- Serum albumin use in cerebral edema 80
- Sesame oil cause of dermatitis 127
- local tissue reactions 101
- Sex as factor in spinal headache 180
- Shaking hand technique of injection 53
- Shock from hypotension 144
- Shock tissues 33
- Signs and symptoms onset in systemic toxic reactions 17
- Sise introducer used prior to spinal puncture 209
- Skin aseptic preparation complications
- dermatitis 132
- meningitis 209
- Skin plugs found in spinal fluid 209
- Skin wheal
- cause of slough 95
- test for systemic reaction 21 34
- Slough
- etiology 93 121 151
- prophylaxis 105
- signs and symptoms 102
- treatment 107 122
- Small gauge needle used to avoid spinal headache 185
- Small intestine puncture 124
- Smells cause of nausea and vomiting 166
- Sodium chloride contraindicated in cardiac failure 77
- Sodium Pentothal (see Pentothal page 283)
- Sodium thiosulfate use in dermatitis 131
- Solution preservatives cause of dermatitis 127
- Solvent used for local anesthetic solutions 94
- Specific tissues of the heart 70
- Spinal anesthesia
- avoidance of term spinal 184 199 200
- complications (see page 263)
- contraindications 145 160 162
- vs epidural relative to hypotension 151
- vs general anesthesia in intestinal obstruction 168
- Spinal cord
- anatomy 48 51
- anomalies in blood supply 216
- destruction by neurolytic drugs 217
- lesions 212
- pathology in
- arachnoiditis 218
- leptomeninges damaged 219
- nerve root damaged 218
- parenchyma proper damaged 217
- softening 213
- tumors
- contraindication to spinal block 219
- precipitated by lumbar puncture 215
- Spinal fluid
- findings in
- arachnoiditis 218
- Spinal fluid
- findings in (cont.)
- aseptic meningitis 205
- leptomeninges damaged 218
- meningeal irritation 205
- nerve root damaged 218
- parenchyma damaged 218
- septic meningitis 206
- obstruction indicating subarachnoid lysis 220
- withdrawal in
- inadvertent spinal block 175
- lumbar puncture death 231
- Spinal headache 177
- Spinal injection of
- glucose or saline in treatment of spinal headache 191
- saline in prophylaxis of spinal headache 189
- Spinocerin (strychnine sulfate Novocain starch paste alcohol and normal saline)
- cause of aseptic meningitis 203
- destructive effects on spinal cord 214
- Splanchnic (celiac plexus) block complications (see page 264)
- Spleen traction cause of hiccough 256
- Spontaneous hemorrhage in anticoagulant therapy 91
- Spreading agents cause of toxic reactions 14 22
- Squint
- result of
- abducens nerve palsy 226
- meningitis 206
- oculomotor nerve palsy 120 229
- Stagnant hypoxia 42
- Starch use in dermatitis 131
- Stellate ganglion block
- complications (see page 264)
- in treatment of
- local toxic tissue reactions 108
- peripheral nerve lesions 120
- pulmonary embolism 236
- slough of nose 122
- vascular spasm 247
- Sterilex sterilizer control 207
- Sterilization (autoclaving) of drugs 94 207
- Sterilization of equipment 93 206 208
- Sterilizer controls (indicators) 93 207
- Sterilizer indicators (controls) 93 207
- Stir up regimen use postoperatively in
- after care of cardiac failure 81
- prevention of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
- Stomach traction cause of
- hiccough 256
- nausea and vomiting 165
- Stovaine (amylocaine) cause of
- cranial nerve lesions 228
- meningitis 203
- Streptomycin (also see Antibiotic therapy page 268)
- destructive effects on spinal cord 214
- prophylaxis of infection of punctured bowel 124

Streptomycin (cont.)

- treatment of punctured organs 125
- use in septic meningitis 210
- Strontium bromide in dermatitis 131
- Strophanthin use in cardiac failure 77
- Subarachnoid block (see Spinal anesthesia page 287)
- Subcutaneous emphysema 59 62
- Sucrose treatment of cerebral edema 81
- Suction catheter 23
- Sulfa drugs use in septic meningitis 210
- Sulfonamides destructive effects on spinal cord 214
- Superficial placement of drugs cause of tissue damage 94 103
- Superior cervical ganglion block in treatment of spinal headache 192
- Superior laryngeal nerve block, complications (see page 264)
- Supraorbital nerve block, complications (see page 264)
- Suprascapular nerve block, complications (see page 264)
- Supratrochlear nerve block, complications (see page 264)
- Surgery type factor in spinal headache 180
- Surgical exploration findings in
 - arachnoiditis 219
 - damage to parenchyma of cord, 218
 - leptomeninges damaged 219
 - nerve root damage 218
- Surgical manipulation or trauma cause of
 - aseptic meningitis 204
 - cardiac failure 72
 - hypotension, 153
 - nausea and vomiting 165
 - peripheral nerve lesions 113
 - urine retention, 250
- Survival time of the brain 74
- Susceptibility definition, 8
- Swallowing of drugs 21 36
- Sweating marked, symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction, 252
- Sweet almond, cause of
 - dermatitis 127
 - tissue damage 100
- Swelling
 - etiology
 - bleeding 89 91
 - dermatitis 128
 - extravasation of intravenous fluids 247
 - injection of drugs 93 94
 - prophylaxis 105
 - signs and symptoms 102
 - treatment, 91 107
- Sympathectomy in treatment of
 - neuritis 120
 - peripheral nerve injury 116
- Sympathetic block
 - complications

Sympathetic block

- complications (cont)
 - in cervical area (see pages 264 265)
 - in lumbar area (see pages 262 265)
 - in thoracic area (see pages 262 265)
- contraindicated with prolonged coagulation time 90
- preparation of graft site 108
- treatment of
 - neuritis 120
 - peripheral nerve injury 116
- Sympathetic nervous system cardiac failure from its stimulation 71
- Sympatholytic drugs contraindicated in cardiac failure 77
- Symptomatic relief of spinal headache 190
- Syncope result of
 - Aminophylline overdosage 35
 - systemic toxic reaction 19 28
- Systemic toxic reactions
 - allergic type
 - delayed 36
 - local anesthetic agent, 6 33
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37
 - classification, 6 7
 - high blood level type
 - local anesthetic agent 6
 - vasoconstrictor drug 37
 - psychomotor type 28 29

T

Tapes

- contraindication to spinal block 219
- precipitated by lumbar puncture 215
- Tachycardia sign of
 - overflow onto vagus nerve 45
 - oxygen want, 45 143
 - pneumothorax 61
 - toxic reaction to
 - local anesthetic agent 7 19
 - vasoconstrictor drug 38
- Tachypnea
 - caused by vasoconstrictor drug 38
 - symptom of
 - atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253
 - oxygen want, 18 45 144 161
- Tars use in dermatitis 132
- Technical assault, 220
- Temperature influence on absorption of drugs 16
- Terramycin (also see Antibiotic therapy page 268)
 - prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254
 - treatment of
 - aseptic meningitis 204
 - septic meningitis 210
- Tests to avoid
 - allergic reactions 34
 - high blood level reaction, 21
 - inadvertent spinal tap 174

- Tetracaine (see Lontocaine page 254)
- Theophylline with ethylenediamine (Aminophylline)
in treatment of
asthmatic breathing 35 47
hypertension 40
- Thiamine chloride in treatment of peripheral nerve
lesions 116
- Thiobarbiturate thiopental (see Lenthotal page
253)
- Thiopental (see Lenthotal page 253)
- Thoracic duct puncture 125
- Thoracic somatic nerve block complications (see
Intercostal nerve block pages 260 261)
- Thoracic somatic nerves anesthesia from overflow
120
- Thoracic sympathetic ganglion
anatomy 55
complications of block (see pages 262 265)
- Thoracotomy 75
- Thiorazine (see Chlorpromazine page 271)
- Thrombophlebitis 238
- Thrombosis
complication of
head lowering 149
hypotension 138 235
precipitated by bleeding 92
- Thyroid disease predisposing to oxygen want 45 159
- Thyroid gland puncture 125
- Thyrotoxicosis cause of rapid drug detoxification 15
- Tibial nerve block complications (see page 265)
- Tidal hypoxia
contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
160 162
definition 42
predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Tinel's sign 113
- Tingling sign of nerve lesion 113 114
- Tinnitus symptom of oxygen want 144
- Tissue damage from drugs 96 102
- Toes gangrene 97
- Tolserol in treatment of headache 200
- Tongue anesthesia 45
- Topical application
suitable drugs 12 13
to mucous membranes complications (see page
265)
to skin complications (see page 265)
- Total spinal block (see High spinal page 276)
- Tourniquet
cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113
treatment of systemic toxic reaction 28
- Tourniquet paralysis syndrome 113
- Toxemia contraindication to Pitressin 185
- Toxic erythema sign of allergic reaction of the
dermis 129
- Toxicity of anesthetic agents 10 11
- Trachea puncture 124
- Tracheal suction
prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia
81 254
removal of aspirated emesis 163 167
- Traction on viscera cause of
hiccough 256
nausea and vomiting 165
paralytic ileus 256
urine retention 250
- Transversal nerve block complications (see page
265)
- Transverse myelitis caused by
gasserian ganglion block 119
peripheral nerve block 49 122
spinal cord lesions 215
vasoconstrictor drugs 216
- Trauma resulting in
backache 195
hemorrhage 87
hypotension 140
intervertebral disc protrusion 215 216
meningitis 204
peripheral nerve injury from needle 114
spinal cord lesions 215
spinal headache 179
tissue damage 94
urine retention 250
- Traumatic dural puncture avoidance to prevent spinal
headache 159
- Tumors sign of
oxygen want 45 161
toxic reaction to
local anesthetic agent 17
vasoconstrictor drug 38
- Trendelenburg position in
cardiac failure 77
nausea and vomiting 167
- Trichlorethylene (Trilene Trimar) cause of cranial
nerve lesions 231
- Trigeminal nerve block complications (see Gasserian
[semilunar] Ganglion Block page 259)
- Trilene (Trimar trichlorethylene) cause of cranial
nerve lesions 231
- Trimar (Trilene trichlorethylene) cause of cranial
nerve lesions 231
- Tripeleminamine (see Pyribenzamine page 286)
- Trochlear nerve
anatomy 228
palsy following puncture of the dura 226
- Tropacocaine (benzoyl tropen) cause of
meningitis 203 229
nerve palsy 229
- Tuberculosis
contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
160 162
predisposing to oxygen want 45 160
- Tumor (intra abdominal) cause of high spinal 170
- Tumor removal (intra abdominal) cause of head
ache 179

Streptomycin (cont)

treatment of punctured organs 125

use in septic meningitis 210

Strontium bromide in dermatitis 131

Strophanthin use in cardiac failure 77

Subarachnoid block (see Spinal anesthesia page 287)

Subcutaneous emphysema 59 62

Sucrose treatment of cerebral edema 81

Suction catheter 23

Sulfa drugs use in septic meningitis 210

Sulfonamides destructive effects on spinal cord 214

Superficial placement of drugs cause of tissue damage 94 103

Superior cervical ganglion block in treatment of spinal headache 192

Superior laryngeal nerve block complications (see page 264)

Supraorbital nerve block complications (see page 264)

Suprascapular nerve block complications (see page 264)

Supratrochlear nerve block complications (see page 264)

Surgery type factor in spinal headache 180

Surgical exploration findings in arachnoiditis 219

damage to parenchyma of cord 218

leptomeninges damaged 219

nerve root damage 218

Surgical manipulation or trauma cause of

aseptic meningitis 204

cardiac failure 72

hypotension 153

nausea and vomiting 165

peripheral nerve lesions 113

urine retention 250

Survival time of the brain 74

Susceptibility definition 8

Swallowing of drugs 21 36

Sweating marked symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

Sweet almond cause of

dermatitis 127

tissue damage 100

Swelling

etiology

bleeding 89 91

dermatitis 128

extravasation of intravenous fluids 247

injection of drugs 93 94

prophylaxis 105

signs and symptoms 102

treatment 91 107

Sympathectomy in treatment of neuritis 120

peripheral nerve injury 116

Sympathetic block

complications

Sympathetic block

complications (cont)

in cervical area (see pages 264 265)

in lumbar area (see pages 262 265)

in thoracic area (see pages 262 265)

contraindicated with prolonged coagulation time 90

preparation of graft site 108

treatment of

neuritis 120

peripheral nerve injury 116

Sympathetic nervous system cardiac failure from its stimulation 71

Sympatholytic drugs contraindicated in cardiac failure 77

Symptomatic relief of spinal headache 190

Syncope result of

Aminophylline overdosage 35

systemic toxic reaction 19 28

Systemic toxic reactions

allergic type

delayed 36

local anesthetic agent 6 33

vasoconstrictor drug 37

classification 6 7

high blood level type

local anesthetic agent 6

vasoconstrictor drug 37

psychomotor type 28 29

T

Tabes

contraindication to spinal block 219

precipitated by lumbar puncture 215

Tachycardia sign of

overflow onto vagus nerve 45

oxygen want 45 143

pneumothorax 61

toxic reaction to

local anesthetic agent 7 19

vasoconstrictor drug 38

Tachypnea

caused by vasoconstrictor drug 38

symptom of

atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 253

oxygen want 18 45 144 161

Tars use in dermatitis 132

Technical assault 220

Temperature influence on absorption of drugs 16

Terramycin (also see Antibiotic therapy page 268)
prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 254

treatment of

aseptic meningitis 204

septic meningitis 210

Tests to avoid

allergic reactions 34

high blood level reaction 21

inadvertent spinal tap 174

- Tetracaine (see Linctocaine page 254)
- Theophylline with ethylenediamine (Aminophylline)
in treatment of
asthmatic breathing 35 47
hypertension 40
- Thiobarbiturate thiopental (see Pentothal page 253)
- Thiopental (see Pentothal page 253)
- Thoracic duct puncture 125
- Thoracic somatic nerve block complications (see Intercostal nerve block pages 260 261)
- Thoracic somatic nerves anesthesia from overstimulation 120
- Thoracic sympathetic ganglion
anatomy 55
complications of block (see pages 262 265)
- Thoracotomy 75
- Thorazine (see Chlorpromazine page 271)
- Thrombophlebitis 235
- Thrombosis
complication of
head lowering 149
hypotension 135 255
precipitated by bleeding 92
- Thyroid disease predisposing to oxygen want 45 159
- Thyroid gland puncture 125
- Thyrototoxicosis cause of rapid drug detoxification 15
- Tibial nerve block complications (see page 265)
- Tidal hypoxia
contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
160 162
definition 42
predisposing to further oxygen want 45
- Tinel's sign 113
- Tingling sign of nerve lesion 113 114
- Tinnitus symptom of oxygen want 144
- Tissue damage from drugs 96 102
- Toes gangrene 97
- Tolserol in treatment of backache 200
- Tongue anesthesia 45
- Topical application
suitable drugs 12 13
to mucous membranes complications (see page 265)
to skin complications (see page 265)
- Total spinal block (see High spinal page 276)
- Tourniquet
cause of peripheral nerve lesions 113
treatment of systemic toxic reaction 28
- Tourniquet paralysis syndrome 113
- Toxicemia contraindication to Pitressin 185
- Toxic erythema sign of allergic reaction of the dermis 129
- Toxicity of anesthetic agents 10 11
- Trachea puncture 124
- Tracheal suction
prophylaxis of atelectasis and bronchopneumonia 91 254
removal of aspirated emesis 163 167
- Traction on viscera cause of
hiccup 250
nausea and vomiting 165
paralytic ileus 250
urine retention 250
- Transverse nerve block complications (see page 265)
- Transverse myelitis caused by
gasserian ganglion block 119
peripheral nerve block 19 122
spinal cord lesions 215
vasoconstrictor drugs 216
- Trismus resulting in
brackche 195
hemorrhage 67
hypotension 140
intervertebral disc protrusion 215 216
meningitis 204
peripheral nerve injury from needle 114
spinal cord lesions 215
spinal headache 179
tissue damage 94
urine retention 250
- Traumatic dural puncture avoidance to prevent spinal
headache 169
- Tremors sign of
oxygen want 45 161
toxic reaction to
local anesthetic agent 17
vasoconstrictor drug 38
- Trendelenburg position in
cardiac failure 77
nausea and vomiting 167
- Trichlorethylene (Trilene Trimar) cause of cranial
nerve lesions 231
- Trigeminal nerve block complications (see Casserian
{semilunar} Ganglion Block page 259)
- Trilene (Trimar trichlorethylene) cause of cranial
nerve lesions 231
- Trimar (Trilene trichlorethylene) cause of cranial
nerve lesions 231
- Tripelennamine (see Pyribenzamine page 286)
- Trochlear nerve
anatomy 228
palsy following puncture of the dura 226
- Tropacocaine (benzoyl tropicaine) cause of
meningitis 203 229
nerve palsy 229
- Tuberculosis
contributing to hypoxia from spinal block 145
160 162
predisposing to oxygen want 45 160
- Tumor (intra abdominal) cause of high spinal 170
- Tumor removal (intra abdominal), cause of head
ache 179

Twitching

result of oxygen want 45 160 161

sign of

cortical stimulation 18

high spinal block 172

prosthigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

U

Ulcer corneal 121

Ulceration following the use of

local anesthetic agents 93

neurolytic drugs 121

Ulnar nerve block at elbow or wrist complications
(see page 265)

Unsatisfactory anesthesia 247

Urecholine (bethanechol) use in urine retention 251

Ureteral catheter (see Catheter ureteral or plastic
page 271)

Urinal preoperative training in use 251

Urine

incontinence result of spinal cord lesion 218

retention 250

urgency symptom of prosthigmine or physostigmine
reaction 252

Urticaria

sign of

allergic reaction of the dermis 129

systemic allergic reaction 33

treatment 34 132

Urticarial dermatosis treatment 132

V

Vagosympathetic reflex in cardiac failure 71

Vagotropic drugs use in urine retention 251

Vagovagal reflex in cardiac failure 71

Vagus nerve

anatomy 44

complications of block (see page 265)

function in cardiac failure 71

paralysis from overflow 44

stimulation cause of nausea and vomiting 165

Vascular spasm following intra arterial Pentothal 247

Vascularity of area injected relative to

bleeding tendency 88

dosage 11

Vasoconstrictor drugs

action 147

allergic reactions 33 96

complications

allergic reactions 33 96

Arthus phenomenon 96

hypotension from discontinuing 156

nausea and vomiting 165

oxygen want 43 160

spinal cord lesions 216 217

systemic toxic reactions 37

tissue damage 96

contraindications 39 92 106 150

optimal concentrations 39 147

Vasoconstrictor drugs (cont)

prophylaxis

hypotension 144

patients with cardiovascular disease 150

vomiting 166

site of injection 150

sterilization 207

treatment of

hypotension 27 28 35 92 147 150

nausea 166

vomiting 166

used to delay absorption 13 20

Vasodilatation from local anesthetic drugs 13 19

Vasodilators in treatment of pulmonary embolism
236

Vasovyl (methoxamine hydrochloride)

action 148

complications

spinal cord lesions 217

tissue damage 96

dosage 147

prophylaxis of hypotension 144

sterilization 207

treatment of hypotension 142 147

Ventricular fibrillation 19 69

Vertical position cause of headache 179

Vertigo symptom of oxygen want 45 160

Visceral traction cause of

hiccough 256

nausea and vomiting 165

paralytic ileus 256

Visual disturbances from spinal headache 183

Vitamin B deficiency as cause of cardiac failure 73

Vitamin B use in treatment of peripheral nerve
lesions 116Vitamin B (pyridoxine hydrochloride) prophylaxis
of nausea and vomiting 166

Vitamin C deficiency 15 21

Vitamin K in counteracting heparin 92

Vomiting

etiology

allergic reaction 34

Benadryl overdosage 34

cortical stimulation 18 38 165

ergotrate 167

hypertension (from vasoconstrictor drug) 38
165

hypotension 45 144 165

hypoxia 18 165

intestinal contraction 237

intestinal obstruction 168

local anesthetic agent 18 165

meningeal irritation 205

motion 165

odors 165

opiates 165

oxygen want 18 160 165

premedication 165

prosthigmine or physostigmine reaction 252

Vomiting
 etiology (cont.)
 traction on viscera 165
 vagus nerve stimulation 165
 vasoconstrictor drug 165
 prophylaxis 166
 sign of meningeal irritation 202
 signs and symptoms 166
 treatment 166

W

Wallern degeneration
 mechanism of tissue damage 99
 of gray matter ganglion cells 214
 Water distilled sterilization 207
 Weakness symptom of
 nerve damage 114
 oxygen want 161
 spinal cord lesions 217
 Wet dressings in dermatitis 132

Wheals

 cause of slough 95
 sign of allergy 8
 skin test 21 34

Wheezing sign of all rks 34 47

Whitene (pencilpoint) n cll

 illustrated 187
 loss of tip 246
 prophylaxis of
 cranial nerve lesions 230
 spinal headache 165

Whole blood in reversal of anticoagulant therapy 92

Wrong solution injection 94 105

Wyamine (N-methylphenyltertiary butylamine sulfate)

 action 148
 complications
 spinal cord lesions 217
 tissue damage 98
 dosage 148

Wyamine (N-methylphenyltertiary butylamine sulfate (cont.)

 prophylaxis of hypotension 144
 treatment of hypotension 147

Wydase (see Hyaluronidase page 277)

X

X-ray

 misdiagnosis from bedside use 61 62
 use in prevention of cranial nerve lesions 230
 use in treatment of dermatitis 132

Xylocaine (lido-caine Ligocaine Xylotox)

 absorption from esophagus and stomach 21
 atypical reactions 16
 chemical classification 20
 complications

 amnesia 248
 septic meningitis 203
 neuritis 114
 tissue reaction 94

 defibrillation of heart 79

 dosage 12

 release of metal ions 114

 sterilization 207

 toxicity 10 11

Xylotox (see Xylocaine above)

Y

Yawning sign of

 high spinal 172

 oxygen want 45 144 160

Z

Zinc ions as cause of

 peripheral nerve injuries 114

 tissue reactions 94 95

Twitching

- result of oxygen want 45 160 161
- sign of
 - cortical stimulation 18
 - high spinal block 172
 - prostagline or physostigmine reaction 252

U

Ulcer corneal 121

Ulceration following the use of

- local anesthetic agents 93
- neurolytic drugs 121

Ulnar nerve block at elbow or wrist complications
(see page 265)

Unsatisfactory anesthesia 247

Urecholine (bethanechol) use in urine retention 251

Ureteral catheter (see Catheter ureteral or plastic
page 271)

Urinal, preoperative training in use 251

Urine

- incontinence result of spinal cord lesion 218
- retention 250
- urgency symptom of prostigmine or physostigmine
reaction 252

Urticaria

- sign of
 - allergic reaction of the dermis 129
 - systemic allergic reaction 33
- treatment 34 132

Urticarial dermatosis treatment 132

V

Vagosympathetic reflex in cardiac failure 71

Vagotropic drugs use in urine retention 251

Vagovagal reflex in cardiac failure 71

Vagus nerve

- anatomy 44
- complications of block (see page 265)
- function in cardiac failure 71
- paralysis from overflow 44
- stimulation cause of nausea and vomiting 165

Vascular spasm following intra arterial Pentothal 247

Vascularity of area injected relative to

- bleeding tendency 88
- dosage 11

Vasoconstrictor drugs

- action 147
- allergic reactions 33 96
- complications
 - allergic reactions 33 96
 - Arthus phenomenon 96
 - hypotension from discontinuing 156
 - nausea and vomiting 165
 - oxygen want, 43 160
 - spinal cord lesions 216 217
 - systemic toxic reactions 37
 - tissue damage 96
- contraindications 39 92 106 150
- optimal concentrations 39 147

Vasoconstrictor drugs (cont)

- prophylaxis
 - hypotension 144
 - patients with cardiovascular disease 150
 - vomiting 166
- site of injection 150
- sterilization 207
- treatment of
 - hypotension 27 28 35 92 147 150
 - nausea 166
 - vomiting 166
- used to delay absorption 13 20

Vasodilatation from local anesthetic drugs 13 19

Vasodilators in treatment of pulmonary embolism
236

Vasoxyl (methoxamine hydrochloride)

- action 148
- complications
 - spinal cord lesions 217
 - tissue damage 96
- dosage 147
- prophylaxis of hypotension 144
- sterilization 207
- treatment of hypotension 142 147

Ventricular fibrillation 19 69

Vertical position cause of headache 179

Vertigo symptom of oxygen want 45 160

Visceral traction cause of

- hiccup 256
- nausea and vomiting 165
- paralytic ileus 256

Visual disturbances from spinal headache 183

Vitamin B deficiency as cause of cardiac failure 73

Vitamin B use in treatment of peripheral nerve
lesions 116Vitamin B₆ (pyridoxine hydrochloride) prophylaxis
of nausea and vomiting 166

Vitamin C deficiency 15 21

Vitamin K in counteracting heparin 92

Vomiting

- etiology
 - allergic reaction 34
 - Benadryl overdosage 34
 - cortical stimulation 18 38 165
 - ergotrate 167
 - hypertension (from vasoconstrictor drug) 38
165
 - hypotension 45 144 165
 - hypoxia 18 165
 - intestinal contraction 237
 - intestinal obstruction 168
 - local anesthetic agent 18 165
 - meningeal irritation 205
 - motion 165
 - odors 165
 - opiates 165
 - oxygen want 18 160 165
 - premedication 165
 - prostagline or physostigmine reaction 252

This Book

COMPLICATIONS OF REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

By

DANIEL C. MOORE, M.D.

was set, printed and bound by the Pantagraph Printing and Stationery Company of Bloomington, Illinois. The engravings were made by Capitol Engraving Company of Springfield, Illinois. The page trim size is 7¹/₄ x 10¹/₄ inches. The type page is 35 x 52 picas. The type face is Caledonia, set 10 point on 12 point. The text paper is 70 lb. Warren's Cumberland Gloss. The cover is Bancroft's Buckram 6170.



With THOMAS BOOKS careful attention is given to all details of manufacturing and design. It is the Publisher's desire to present books that are satisfactory as to their physical qualities and artistic possibilities and appropriate for their particular use. THOMAS BOOKS will be true to those laws of quality that assure a good name and good will.

